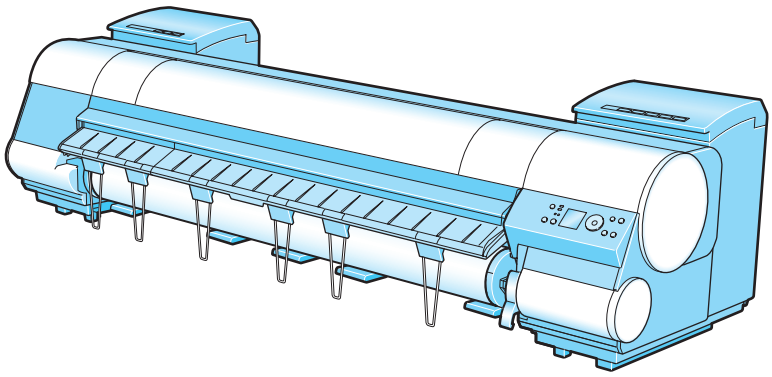
Canon

Large Format Printer

imagePROGRAF

iPF8100

User Manual



ENG

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Contents

Introduction 1

How to use this manual 1

About This User Manual 1
HTML Version of the Manual for Printing 3

Printer Parts 7

Printer parts 7

Front 7
Back 9
Top Cover (Inside) 10
Carriage 11
Ink Tank Cover (Inside) 12
Control Panel 14
Stand 16
Media Take-up Unit (Optional) 17
Output Stacker 18

Control Panel 19

Turning the Printer On and Off 19
Printer Modes 21
Switching Modes 26
Printer Menu Operations 28
Main Menu Operations 30
Menu Structure 35
Main Menu Settings 49
Main Menu Settings (During Printing) 60
Submenu Display 63
Status Print 64

Hard Disk 71

Printer Hard Disk Operations 71
Saved Print Jobs 72
Saving Print Jobs 74
Checking a List of Saved Jobs 80
Printing Saved Jobs 85
Managing Saved Jobs 91
Deleting Saved Jobs 109
Modifying the Current Job (Deleting or Preempting Other Jobs) 115
Modifying Personal Boxes 119
Checking the Free Hard Disk Space 129
Erasing all data on the printer's hard disk 132

Optional accessories 133

Roll Holder Set 133
Media Take-up Unit 133

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

IEEE 1394 (FireWire) Expansion Board 134
Printer Specifications 135
Specifications 135
Basic Environmental Performance 140
Print Area 141
Basic Printing Workflow 142
Printing procedure 142
Loading and Printing on Rolls 142
Loading and Printing on Sheets 146
Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets 149
Manually Loading Paper to the Position for Printing 150
Printing from Windows 151
Printing from Mac OS X 152
Printing from Mac OS 9 154
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows) 156
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X) 158
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS 9) 160
Canceling print jobs 162
Canceling Print Jobs from the Control Panel 162
Canceling Print Jobs from Windows 163
Canceling Print Jobs from Mac OS X 164
Canceling Print Jobs from Mac OS 9 166
Handling Paper 168
Paper 168
Paper 168
Types of Paper 169
Paper Sizes 175
Handling rolls 178
Selecting the Roll as the Paper Source 178
Setting the Roll on the Roll Holder 179
Removing a Roll from the Roll Holder 181
Loading the Roll in the Printer 182
Removing the Roll from the Printer 186
Selecting the Paper Type (Roll) 188
Specifying the Paper Length (Roll) 189
Feeding Roll Paper Manually 190
Detection of the Remaining Roll Paper 191
Cutting the Leading Edge of Roll Paper Automatically 192
Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls 193
Reducing Dust from Cutting Rolls 197
Specifying the Ink Drying Time for Rolls 198
Clearing Jammed Roll Paper 201
Roll Holder Set 205
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu (Windows) 206
Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Windows) 208

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS X) 209
Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS 9) 210
Handling sheets for paper feed slots 211
Selecting the Sheet as the Paper Source 211
Loading the Sheet in the Printer 212
Selecting the Paper Type (Sheet) 215
Removing the Sheet 216
Clearing a Jammed Sheet 217
Manually Loading Paper to the Position for Printing 220
Output Stacker 221
Using the Output Stacker 221
Stowing the Output Stacker 226
Media take-up unit 228
Media Take-up Unit 228
Media Take-up Unit (Optional) 229
Using the Media Take-up Unit (Optional) 230
Enabling the Take-Up Reel Function 231
Disabling the Take-Up Reel Function 231
Loading the Rewind Spool on the Media Take-up Unit 232
Removing Printed Documents from the Media Take-up Unit (Optional) 239
Enhanced Printing Options 242
Print quality and color settings 242
Choosing a Paper for Printing 242
Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing 243
Printing Photos and Images (Windows, Mac OS X) 247
Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS 9) 249
Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows, Mac OS X) 251
Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS 9) 252
Printing Office Documents 253
Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver 254
Printing in Ideal Colors for Light in the Viewing Environment 257
Printing Photos in Monochrome 258
Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Windows) 259
Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Mac OS X) 261
Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Mac OS 9) 264
Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Windows) 267
Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Mac OS X) 270
Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Mac OS 9) 273
Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Photos (Windows) 276
Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Photos (Mac OS X) 278
Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Photos (Mac OS 9) 281
Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows) 284
Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS X) 286
Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS 9) 289
Printing Office Documents (Windows) 291
Printing Office Documents (Mac OS X) 293
Printing Office Documents (Mac OS 9) 295

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Photos and Images (Windows) 297
Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS X) 299
Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS 9) 302
Printing Photos in Monochrome (Windows) 305
Printing Photos in Monochrome (Mac OS X) 307
Printing Photos in Monochrome (Mac OS 9) 310

Printing enlargements or reductions 313

Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size 313
Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width 314
Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value 315
Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER 316
Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Windows) 317
Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Mac OS X) 319
Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Windows) 321
Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Mac OS X) 323
Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Mac OS 9) 326
Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows) 330
Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS X) 332
Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS 9) 335
Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows) 338
Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS X) 340
Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS 9) 343

Printing at full size 346

Printing on Oversized Paper 346
Borderless Printing at Actual Size 348
Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Windows) 350
Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS X) 352
Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS 9) 355
Printing at Full Size (Windows) 358
Printing at Full Size (Mac OS X) 360
Printing at Full Size (Mac OS 9) 363

Borderless Printing 365

Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size 365
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width 367
Borderless Printing at Actual Size 369
Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Windows) 371
Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS X) 373
Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS 9) 376
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows) 379
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS X) 381
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS 9) 384
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows) 387
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS X) 389
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS 9) 392

Printing banners or at other non-standard sizes 395

Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing) 395
Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes 396
Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Windows) 397

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Mac OS X) 401
Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Mac OS 9) 403
Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Windows) 406
Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Mac OS X) 410
Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Mac OS 9) 413

Tiling and multiple pages per sheet 417

Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other 417
Printing Multiple Pages Continuously 419
Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet 420
Printing Posters in Sections 421
Printing Large Posters (Windows) 422
Printing Large Posters (Mac OS 9) 424
Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Windows) 426
Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Mac OS X) 428
Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Windows) 430
Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Mac OS X) 431
Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Mac OS 9) 433
Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Windows) 435
Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Mac OS X) 437
Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Mac OS 9) 440

Centering originals 443

Printing Originals Centered on Rolls 443
Printing Originals Centered on Sheets 444
Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Windows) 445
Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Mac OS X) 447
Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Mac OS 9) 450
Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Windows) 453
Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Mac OS X) 455
Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Mac OS 9) 457

Conserving roll paper 460

Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees 460
Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins 461
Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Windows) 462
Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Mac OS X) 464
Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Mac OS 9) 467
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Windows) 469
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Mac OS X) 471
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Mac OS 9) 474

Printing CAD Drawings 476

Printing CAD Drawings 476
Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows) 477
Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS X) 479
Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS 9) 482

Other useful settings 485

Printing With Watermarks 485
Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation 486
Using Favorites 487

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Cutting Roll Paper After Printing....487
Printing from Photoshop....488
Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals....489
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Windows)....490
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Mac OS X)....491
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Mac OS 9)....493
Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Windows)....495
Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Mac OS X)....497
Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Mac OS 9)....500
Printing with Watermarks-COPY, FILE COPY, and so on (Windows)....502
Printing with Watermarks-COPY, FILE COPY, and so on (Mac OS 9)....504

Software 507

Windows....507

Printer Driver Settings (Windows)....507
Confirming Print Settings (Windows)....509
Previewing Images Before Printing (Windows)....511
Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box (Windows)....512
Settings Summaries Dialog Box (Windows)....513
Using Favorites (Windows)....514
Main Sheet (Windows)....516
Page Setup Sheet (Windows)....520
Layout Sheet (Windows)....522
Gray Adjustment Sheet (Windows)....524
Favorites Sheet (Windows)....525
Utility Sheet (Windows)....526
Support Sheet (Windows)....527
Device Settings Sheet (Windows)....528
Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals (Windows)....529
Printing Adobe RGB Images (Windows)....531
imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)....534
imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility....535
Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility....536
Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility....537
Digital Photo Front-Access....538
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows)....539
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu (Windows)....541
Color Settings Sheet: Color (Windows)....543
Color Settings Sheet: Monochrome (Windows)....549
Confirming the Print Image Before Printing....551
Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Windows)....552
Media Size Options Dialog Box (Windows)....553
Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Windows)....554
Special Settings Dialog Box (Windows)....556
View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Windows)....557

Mac OS X....558

Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X)....558
Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)....559
Checking the Layout Before Printing....561

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Checking the Layout Before Printing (Mac OS X) 562
Previewing Images Before Printing (Mac OS X) 563
Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box (Mac OS X) 564
Main Pane (Mac OS X) 565
Page Setup Pane (Mac OS X) 567
Utility Pane (Mac OS X) 569
Gray Adjustment Pane (Mac OS X) 570
Additional Settings Pane (Mac OS X) 571
Support Pane (Mac OS X) 572
Using Favorites (Mac OS X) 572
Printing Adobe RGB Images (Mac OS X) 573
imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh) 576
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Mac OS X) 578
Color Settings Pane: Color (Mac OS X) 579
Color Settings Pane: Monochrome (Mac OS X) 581
Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS X) 582
View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Mac OS X) 583

Mac OS 9 584

Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS 9) 584
Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9) 585
Previewing Images Before Printing (Mac OS 9) 587
Main Pane (Mac OS 9) 588
Page Setup Pane (Mac OS 9) 590
Finishing Pane (Mac OS 9) 592
Gray Adjustment Pane (Mac OS 9) 593
Device Settings Pane (Mac OS 9) 594
Additional Settings Pane (Mac OS 9) 595
Using Favorites (Mac OS 9) 596
Printing Adobe RGB Images (Mac OS 9) 598
imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh) 601
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Mac OS 9) 603
Color Settings Pane: Color (Mac OS 9) 605
Color Settings Pane: Monochrome (Mac OS 9) 608
Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS 9) 610
Special Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS 9) 611
View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Mac OS 9) 612

Network Setting 613

Network Setting 613

Network Environment 613
Configuring the IP Address on the Printer 615
Initializing the Network Settings 616
Configuring the Printer's TCP/IP Network Settings 617
Configuring the IP Address Using the Printer Control Panel 619
Configuring the IP Address Using ARP and PING Commands 620
Specifying Printer-Related Information 622
Using RemoteUI 623
Email Notification When Printing is Finished or Errors Occur 624

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Network Setting (Windows) 625
Configuring the Printer's NetWare Network Settings 625
Specifying the Printer's Frame Type 627
Specifying NetWare Print Services 629
Specifying NetWare Protocols 632
Configuring NetWare Network Settings 634
Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Windows) 635
Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility 636
Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility 637
Network Setting (Macintosh) 638
Configuring the Printer's AppleTalk Network Settings 638
Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Macintosh) 639
Configuring the Destination for AppleTalk Network (Macintosh) 640
Configuring the Destination for TCP/IP Network (Macintosh) 644
Configuring the Destination for Bonjour Network (Macintosh) 648

Maintenance 650

Adjusting the Printhead 650
Correcting Print Misalignment 650
Adjusting the Printhead Alignment Automatically 650
Adjusting the Printhead Alignment Manually 652
Adjusting the Printhead Height 654
Adjusting the feed amount 655
Adjusting the Feed Amount Automatically 655
Adjusting the Feed Amount Manually 658
Adjusting the Vacuum Strength 661
Adjusting the Measurement Scale for Better Accuracy 662
Color adjustment 664
Using Color Calibration to Adjust Colors 664
Printing in Ideal Colors for Light in the Viewing Environment 668
By selecting color tones on Charts before printing (Windows) 669
Printing in Colors Matching the Measured Ambient Light 673
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows) 676
Ink Tanks 678
Ink Tanks 678
Replacing Ink Tanks 680
Checking Ink Tank Levels 692
When to Replace Ink Tanks 693
Printheads 694
Printhead 694
Checking the Print Quality 694
Improving the Print Quality 694
Checking for Nozzle Clogging 695
Cleaning the Printhead 696
Replacing the Printhead 697

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Cutter Unit 705
Cutter Unit 705
Replacing the Cutter Unit 705
Maintenance Cartridge 708
Maintenance Cartridge 708
Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge 708
Checking the Remaining Maintenance Cartridge Capacity 716
When to Replace the Maintenance Cartridge 717
Cleaning the Printer 718
Cleaning the Printer Exterior 718
Cleaning Inside the Top Cover 720
Cleaning the Printhead 723
Other Maintenance 724
Preparing to Transfer the Printer 724
Updating the Firmware 730

Troubleshooting 731

Frequently Asked Questions 731
Frequently Asked Questions 731
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver 733
Printing does not start 734
The Data lamp on the Control Panel does not light up 734
The Printer Does Not Respond Even if Print Jobs are Sent 734
The Display Screen indicates the system is filling with ink 734
Cannot print over a network 735
Cannot connect the printer to the network 735
Configuring the Communication Mode Manually 736
Cannot print over a TCP/IP network 737
Cannot print over AppleTalk or Bonjour networks 738
Cannot print over a NetWare network 739
The printer stops during a print job 740
An error message is shown on the Display Screen 740
The printer ejects blank, unprinted paper 740
Problems with the printing quality 741
Printing is faint 741
Paper rubs against the Printhead 742
The edges of the paper are dirty 743
The surface of the paper is dirty 744
The back side of the paper is dirty 744
Banding in different colors occurs 744
The contrast becomes uneven during printing 745
Colors in printed images are uneven 745
Problems with the printing quality caused by the type of paper 746
Lines are misaligned 746

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

The length of printed images is inaccurate....746
Documents are printed in monochrome....746
Printed colors are inaccurate....747
Image Edges are Blurred or White Banding Occurs....748
Documents are printed crooked....748
Line thickness is not uniform (Windows)....748
Installation problems....749
The IEEE 1394 Driver Cannot Be Installed Correctly....749
Removing Installed Printer Drivers....750
Clearing jammed paper....751
Clearing Jammed Roll Paper....751
Clearing a Jammed Sheet....755
If the Printer makes a strange sound....758
If the Printer Makes a Strange Sound....758
Other problems....759
The printer consumes a lot of ink....759
A message to check the Maintenance Cartridge is not cleared after you replace the Maintenance Cartridge....759
Paper is not cut neatly....759
Paper cannot be cut....760
The printer does not go on....760
Roll paper cannot be inserted into the Paper Feed Slot....760
Cannot Load Sheets....760
The Media Take-up Unit Continues Rotating....761
Ink level detection....762
Error Message 764
Responding to Messages....764
Responding to Messages....764
Error Messages....766
Messages regarding paper....768
Paper Mismatch....768
Papr Type Mismatch....768
Papr Size Mismatch....769
This paper cannot be used.....769
Insufficient paper for job....770
No sheets.....770
Regular printing is selected, but a roll is loaded.....771
Roll printing is selected, but sheets are loaded.....771
Roll printing is selected.....771
Sheet printing is selected.....771
Borderless printng not possible.....772
Paper loaded askew.....773
Paper size not detected.....774
Leading edge detection error.....774
End of paper feed.....774

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Cannot feed paper. 774
Paper jam. 774
Cannot cut paper. 775
Rel lever is in wrong position. 775
The roll is empty. 776
Rewinding error. 776
Turn on the media take-up unit. 776
Media take-up unit ready. 776
Messages regarding ink 777
Ink Level: Check 777
No ink tank loaded. 777
Ink insufficient. 778
Ink tank is empty. Press OK and replace the ink tank. 778
Ink tank is empty. Replace the ink tank. 778
Close Ink Tank Cover 779
Ink tank error. 779
Remaining level of the ink cannot be correctly detected. 779
Messages regarding printing or adjusment 780
Use another paper. 780
Cannot execute this command. Use other paper. 780
Cannot print as specified. 780
Cannot adjust band. 780
Cannot adjust printhead. 781
Excessive temperature or humidity. 781
Cannot calibrate. 781
Messages regarding printheads 782
Cannot adjust printhead. 782
Cannot adjust band. 782
x printhead needs cleaning. (x is Left or Right) 782
PHeads: wrong pos. 782
Problem with Printhead x (x is L, R, or LR) 783
x printhead error (x is Left or Right) 783
Messages regarding the maintenance cartridge 784
No maintenance cartridge. 784
Prepare for maint cart replacement. 784
No Maintenance Cartridge capacity. 784
Maintenance cartridge full. 784
Maintenance cartridge problem. 784
Messages regarding the hard disk 785
Mail box nearly full. 785
Mail box full. Now printing without saving data. 785
Mail box full. Cannot save. 785
Mail box full. Delete unwanted data on your computer to resume printing. 785
Mail box full. Delete unwanted data 785
Hard disk error. 786
File read error. 786

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Other Messages 787
GARO Wxxxx (x represents a number) 787
Top cover is open. 787
Carriage Cover is open. 787
ERROR Exxx-xxxx (x represents a letter or number) 787
Unknown file. 788
Prepare for parts replacement. 788
Parts replacement time has passed. 788
Multi-sensor error 788
Hardware error. xxxxxxxx-xxxx (x represents a letter or number) 788

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Introduction

How to use this manual

About This User Manual

- Symbols

  The following symbols are used in this User Manual to indicate safety information and explanations on restrictions or precautions in use.

	Important	Indicates important information that must be followed when using the printer. Be sure to read this information to prevent printer damage or operating errors.
	Caution	Indicates caution items for which operating error poses a risk of injury or damage to equipment or property. To ensure safe use, always follow these precautions.
	Note	Indicates helpful reference information and supplemental information on particular topics.

- Button names and user interface elements

  Key and button names on the control panel and user interface elements in software (such as menus and buttons) are indicated as follows in this User Manual.

Control Panel Buttons	Example: Press the **OK** button.
Control Panel Interface Items and Messages	Example: **Head Cleaning** is displayed.
Software Interface Items (Menus and Buttons)	Example: Click **OK** .
Keyboard Keys	Example: Press the Tab key.

- Part Names

  Names of printer parts are indicated as follows in this User Manual.

Printer part names	Example: Open the Top Cover .

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

- Cross-reference

  Other pages or manuals that provide related information are indicated as follows in this User Manual.

Cross-Reference in the Same User Manual	Example: see “Turning the Printer On and Off”. (→P.19) Click the link to jump to the corresponding page.
Cross-Reference in Related Manuals	Example: See the Paper Reference Guide .
Other Cross-Reference	Example: See the printer driver help.

- Figures and software screens
  - Figures in this User Manual may be different from the actual appearance of the printer in some cases.
  - Screens depicted in this User Manual for the printer driver or other software may be different from the actual screens because of subsequent updates.
  - Windows XP screens are used in explanations of Windows operations in this User Manual.
- Trademarks
  - Canon, the Canon logo, and imagePROGRAF are trademarks or registered trademarks of Canon Inc.
  - Microsoft and Windows are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.
  - Macintosh is a registered trademark of Apple Inc. in the United States and other countries.
  - Other company and product names are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners.
- Copyright

  © 2007 Canon Inc.
  - Unauthorized reproduction of this User Manual in whole or part is prohibited.
- May we request

  Thank you for understanding the following points.
  - The information in this User Manual is subject to change without notice.
  - We strive to ensure accuracy of information in this User Manual, but if you notice errors or omissions, please contact us.

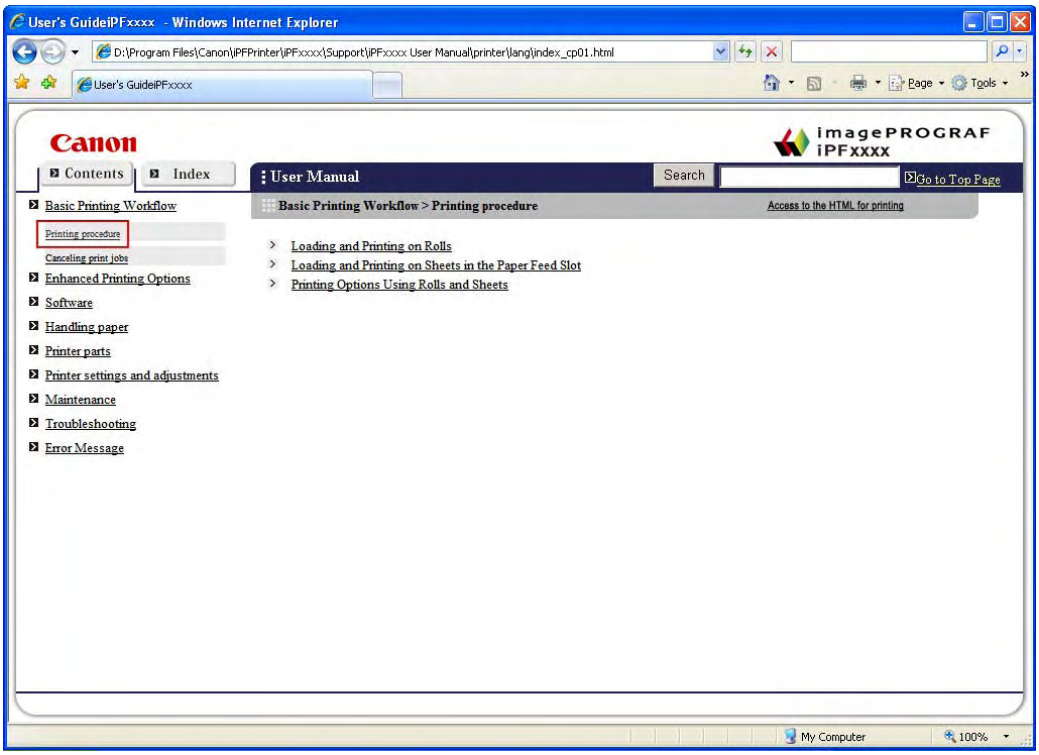
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

HTML Version of the Manual for Printing

For your convenience when printing this manual, HTML versions of the sections in “Using the Printer” on the top page are available. All topics in a section are combined in one file for printing. This section describes how to print sections of the manual, using the content of **Printing Procedure** in **Basic Printing Workflow** as an example.

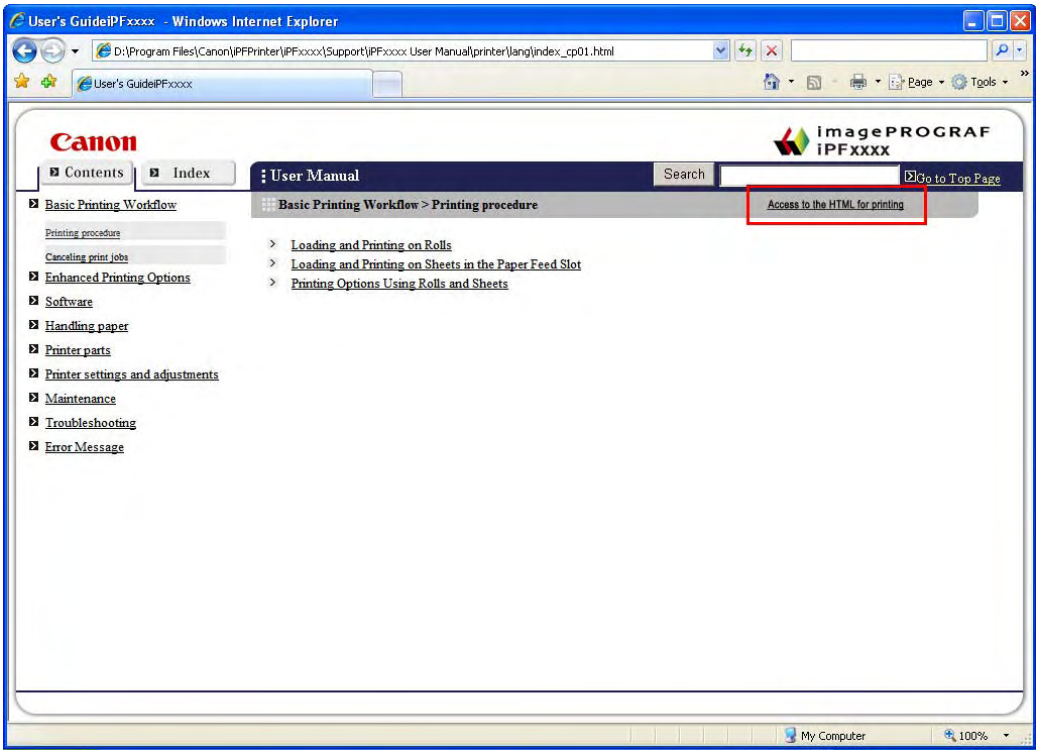
1. On the top page, click **Basic Printing Workflow**.

2. Under **Basic Printing Workflow** in the left frame, click **Printing Procedure**.

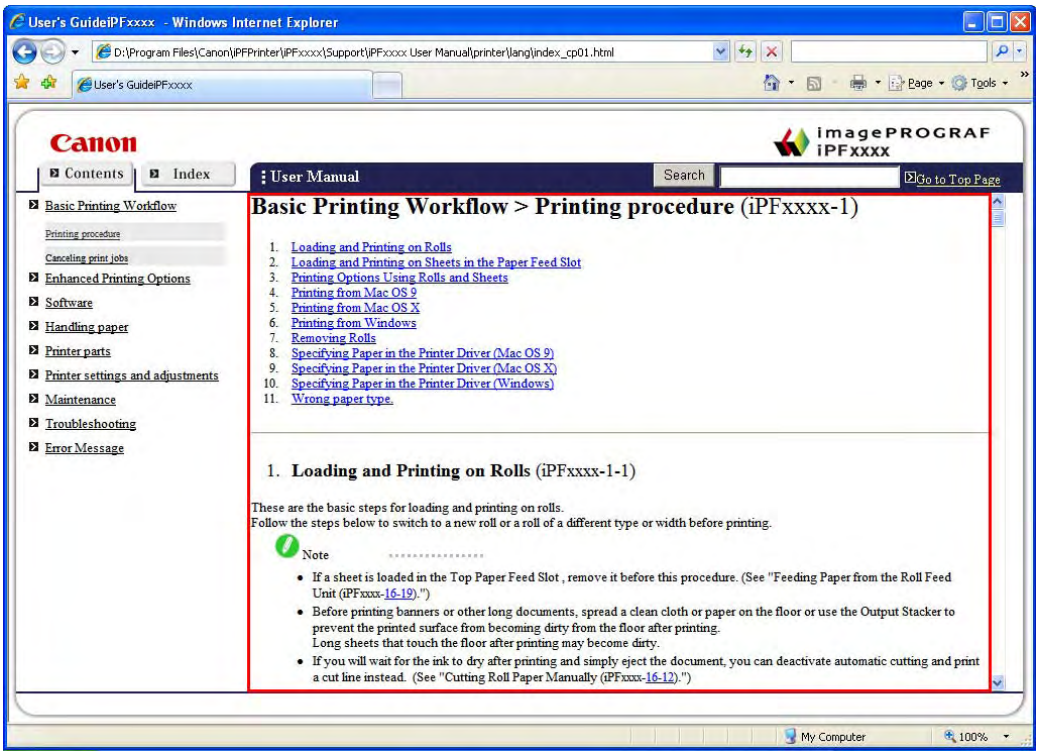


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

3. In the title area of **Printing Procedure**, click **Access to the HTML for printing**.



An HTML version of the topics in **Printing Procedure** is displayed, suitable for printing.

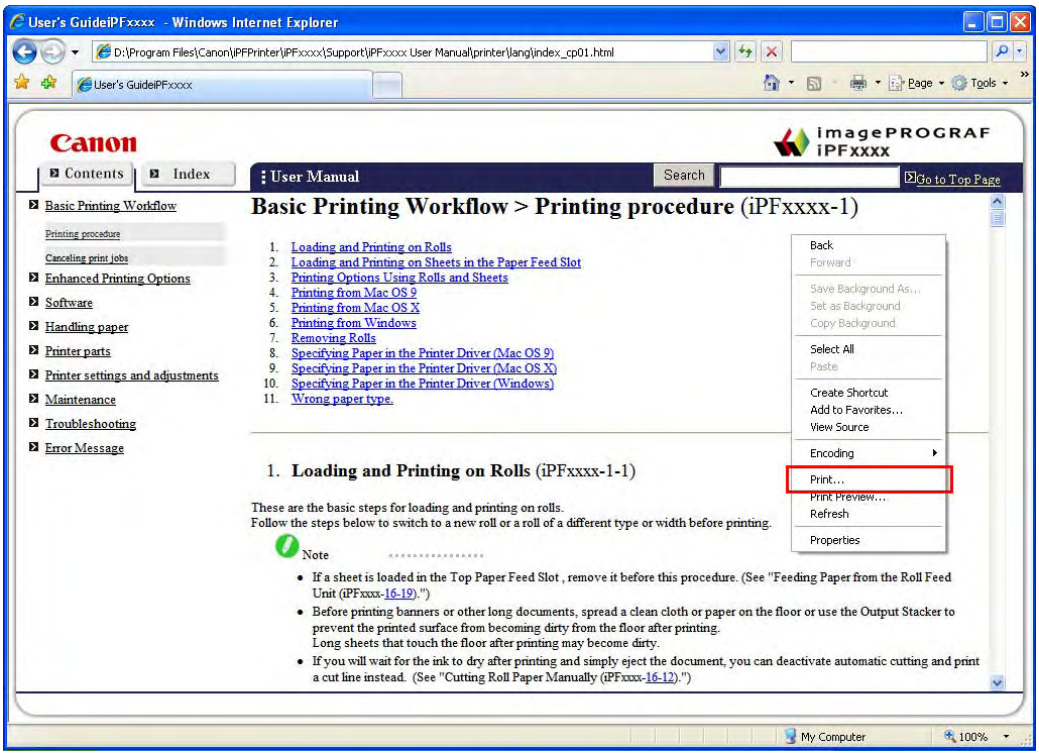

User's GuideiPFxxxx - Windows Internet Explorer
Canon
imagePROGRAF iPFxxxx
Contents
Index
User Manual
Search
Go to Top Page
Basic Printing Workflow
Printing procedure
Canceling print jobs
Enhanced Printing Options
Software
Handling paper
Printer parts
Printer settings and adjustments
Maintenance
Troubleshooting
Error Message
Basic Printing Workflow > Printing procedure (iPFxxxx-1)
1. Loading and Printing on Rolls
2. Loading and Printing on Sheets in the Paper Feed Slot
3. Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets
4. Printing from Mac OS 9
5. Printing from Mac OS X
6. Printing from Windows
7. Removing Rolls
8. Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS 9)
9. Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X)
10. Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows)
11. Wrong paper type.
1. Loading and Printing on Rolls (iPFxxxx-1-1)
These are the basic steps for loading and printing on rolls.
Follow the steps below to switch to a new roll or a roll of a different type or width before printing.
Note
If a sheet is loaded in the Top Paper Feed Slot , remove it before this procedure. (See "Feeding Paper from the Roll Feed Unit (iPFxxxx-16-19).")
Before printing banners or other long documents, spread a clean cloth or paper on the floor or use the Output Stacker to prevent the printed surface from becoming dirty from the floor after printing.
Long sheets that touch the floor after printing may become dirty.
If you will wait for the ink to dry after printing and simply eject the document, you can deactivate automatic cutting and print a cut line instead. (See "Cutting Roll Paper Manually (iPFxxxx-16-12).")

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

4. Access the printing dialog box as follows, depending on your computer's operating system.

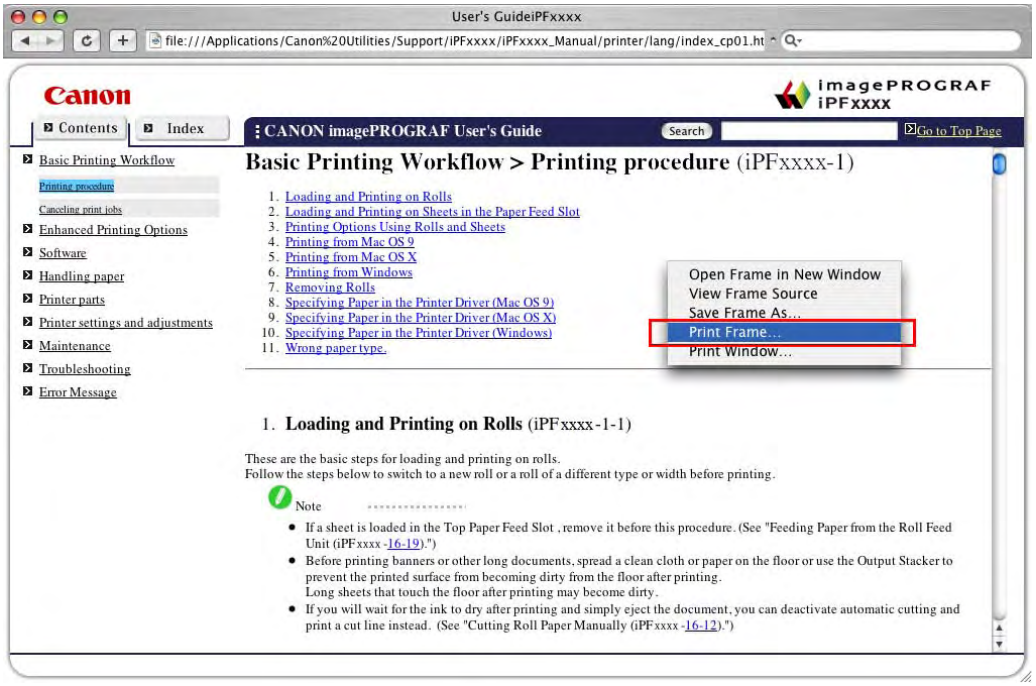
- Windows

  In Windows, right-click anywhere in the explanation area except on a figure or a link. In the shortcut menu, click **Print** to display the **Print** dialog box.


User's GuideiPFxxxx - Windows Internet Explorer
Canon
imagePROGRAF iPFxxxx
Contents
Index
User Manual
Search
Go to Top Page
Basic Printing Workflow
Printing procedure
Canceling print jobs
Enhanced Printing Options
Software
Handling paper
Printer parts
Printer settings and adjustments
Maintenance
Troubleshooting
Error Message
Basic Printing Workflow > Printing procedure (iPFxxxx-1)
1. Loading and Printing on Rolls
2. Loading and Printing on Sheets in the Paper Feed Slot
3. Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets
4. Printing from Mac OS 9
5. Printing from Mac OS X
6. Printing from Windows
7. Removing Rolls
8. Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS 9)
9. Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X)
10. Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows)
11. Wrong paper type.
Back
Forward
Save Background As...
Set as Background
Copy Background
Select All
Paste
Create Shortcut
Add to Favorites...
View Source
Encoding
Print...
Print Preview...
Refresh
Properties
1. Loading and Printing on Rolls (iPFxxxx-1-1)
These are the basic steps for loading and printing on rolls.
Follow the steps below to switch to a new roll or a roll of a different type or width before printing.
Note
If a sheet is loaded in the Top Paper Feed Slot , remove it before this procedure. (See "Feeding Paper from the Roll Feed Unit (iPFxxxx-16-19).")
Before printing banners or other long documents, spread a clean cloth or paper on the floor or use the Output Stacker to prevent the printed surface from becoming dirty from the floor after printing.
Long sheets that touch the floor after printing may become dirty.
If you will wait for the ink to dry after printing and simply eject the document, you can deactivate automatic cutting and print a cut line instead. (See "Cutting Roll Paper Manually (iPFxxxx-16-12).")
My Computer
100%

- Macintosh

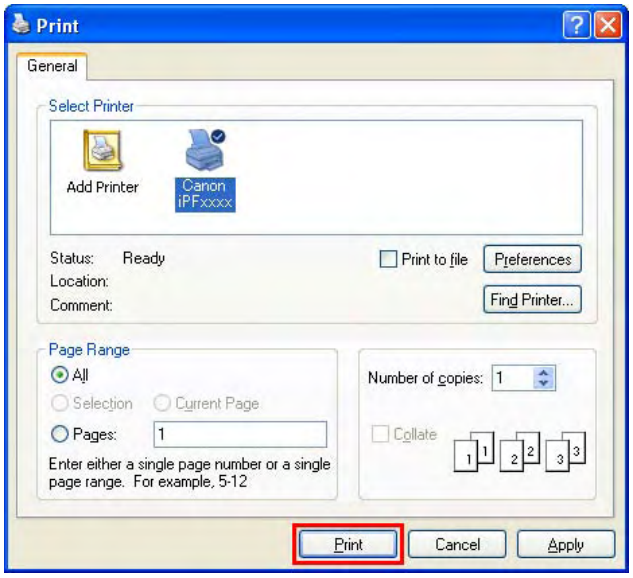
  On a Macintosh computer, click anywhere in the explanation area except on a figure or a link while holding the Ctrl key. In the shortcut menu, click **Print Frame** to display the **Print** dialog box.


User's GuideiPFxxxx
file:///Applications/Canon%20Utilities/Support/iPFxxxx/iPFxxxx_Manual/printer/lang/index_cp01.ht
Canon
imagePROGRAF iPFxxxx
Contents
Index
CANON imagePROGRAF User's Guide
Search
Go to Top Page
Basic Printing Workflow
Printing procedure
Canceling print jobs
Enhanced Printing Options
Software
Handling paper
Printer parts
Printer settings and adjustments
Maintenance
Troubleshooting
Error Message
Basic Printing Workflow > Printing procedure (iPFxxxx-1)
1. Loading and Printing on Rolls
2. Loading and Printing on Sheets in the Paper Feed Slot
3. Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets
4. Printing from Mac OS 9
5. Printing from Mac OS X
6. Printing from Windows
7. Removing Rolls
8. Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS 9)
9. Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X)
10. Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows)
11. Wrong paper type.
Open Frame in New Window
View Frame Source
Save Frame As...
Print Frame...
Print Window...
1. Loading and Printing on Rolls (iPFxxxx-1-1)
These are the basic steps for loading and printing on rolls.
Follow the steps below to switch to a new roll or a roll of a different type or width before printing.
Note
If a sheet is loaded in the Top Paper Feed Slot , remove it before this procedure. (See "Feeding Paper from the Roll Feed Unit (iPFxxxx-16-19).")
Before printing banners or other long documents, spread a clean cloth or paper on the floor or use the Output Stacker to prevent the printed surface from becoming dirty from the floor after printing.
Long sheets that touch the floor after printing may become dirty.
If you will wait for the ink to dry after printing and simply eject the document, you can deactivate automatic cutting and print a cut line instead. (See "Cutting Roll Paper Manually (iPFxxxx-16-12).")

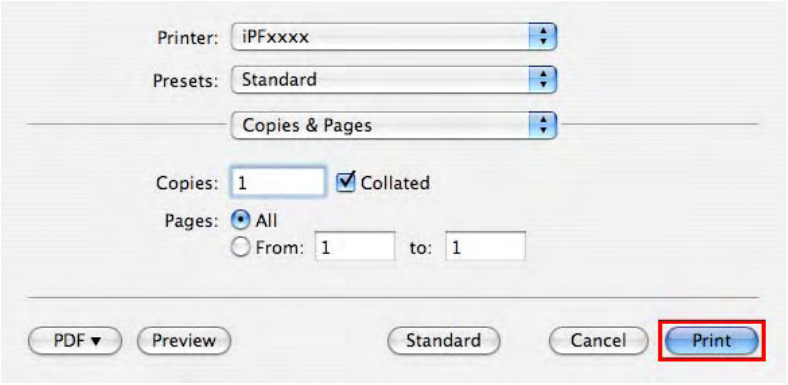
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

5. Specify conditions as needed, and then click **Print** (Windows) or **Print** (Macintosh).

- Windows



- Macintosh



Note

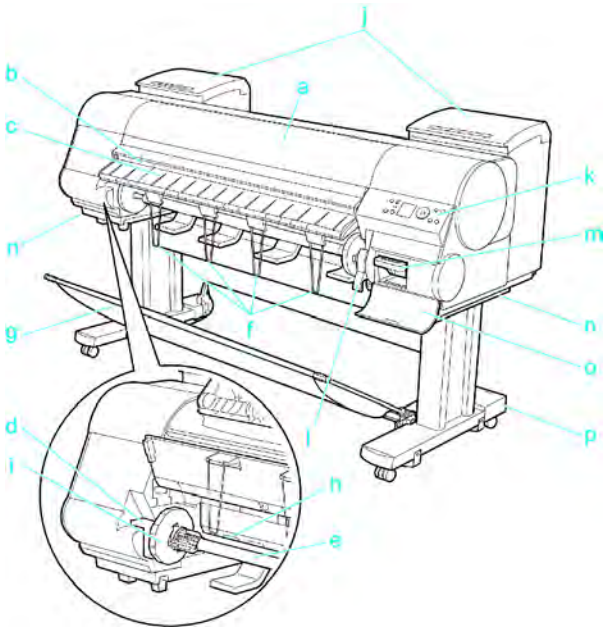
- To print “Software” on the top page or individual topics that are displayed, follow steps 4 and 5.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printer Parts

Printer parts

Front



a. Top Cover

Open this cover to install the Printhead, load paper, and remove any jammed paper from inside the printer as needed. (→P.10)

b. Cutter Groove

Paper is cut (using the cutter or manually with scissors) over this groove.

c. Ejection Guide

Guides printed documents as they are ejected. Open this guide when loading a roll.

d. Roll Holder Slot

Slide the Roll Holder into this slot.

e. Roll Holder

Load the roll on this holder.

f. Ejection Support

Prevents printed documents from winding around the Roll Holder or Paper Feed Slot.

g. Output Stacker

A cloth tray that catches ejected documents. (→P.18)

h. Paper Feed Slot

When loading a roll, insert the edge of the roll paper here.

i. Holder Stopper

Secure the roll on the Roll Holder with this part.

j. Ink Tank Cover

Open this cover to replace an Ink Tank. (→P.12)

k. Control Panel

Use this panel to operate the printer and check the printer status. (→P.14)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

l. Release Lever

Releases the Paper Retainer. Lift this lever toward the front of the printer when loading paper.

m. Maintenance Cartridge

Absorbs ink used for maintenance purposes such as head cleaning. (Replace the cartridge when it becomes full.)

n. Carrying handles

When carrying the printer, have four people hold it by these handles under both sides.

o. Maintenance Cartridge Cover

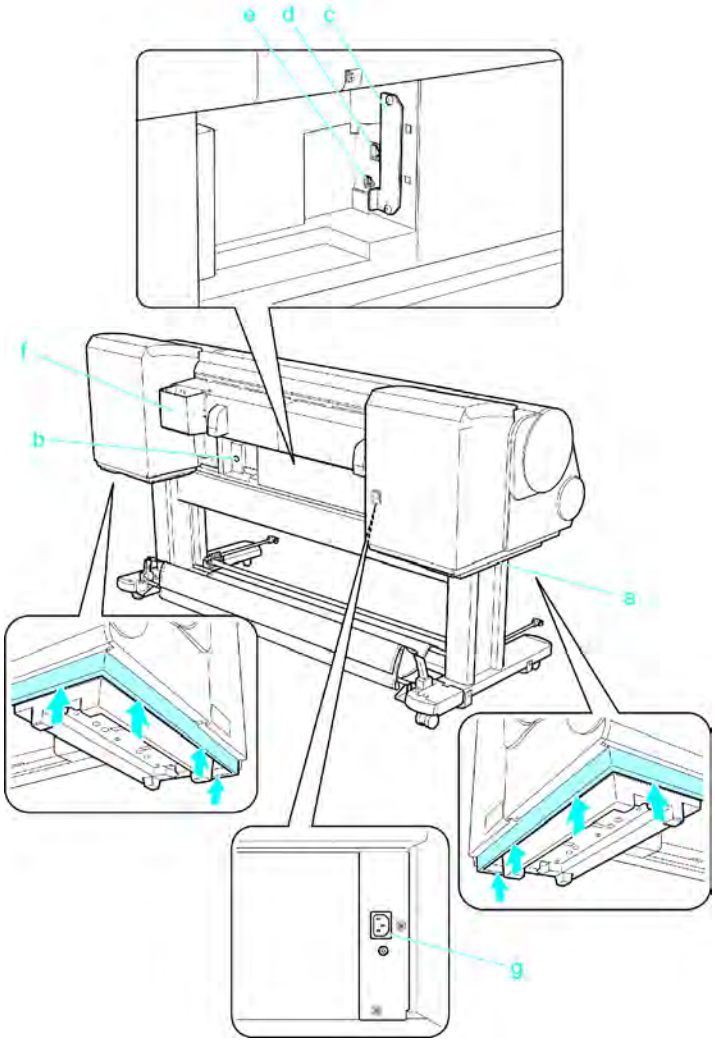
Open this cover to replace the Maintenance Cartridge.

p. Stand

A stand that holds the printer. Equipped with casters to facilitate moving the printer. (→P.16)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Back



a. Carrying handles

When carrying the printer, have four people hold it by these handles under both sides.

b. Media Take-up Unit Power Inlet

Connect the power cord of the optional Media Take-up Unit here.

c. Expansion Board Slots

Install an optional IEEE 1394 (FireWire) expansion board, as desired.

d. Ethernet Port

Connect an Ethernet cable to this port. The lamp is lit if the Ethernet cable is connected correctly and communication is possible between the computer and printer.

e. USB Port

Connect a USB cable to this port. This port is compatible with USB 2.0 High Speed mode.

f. Accessory Pocket

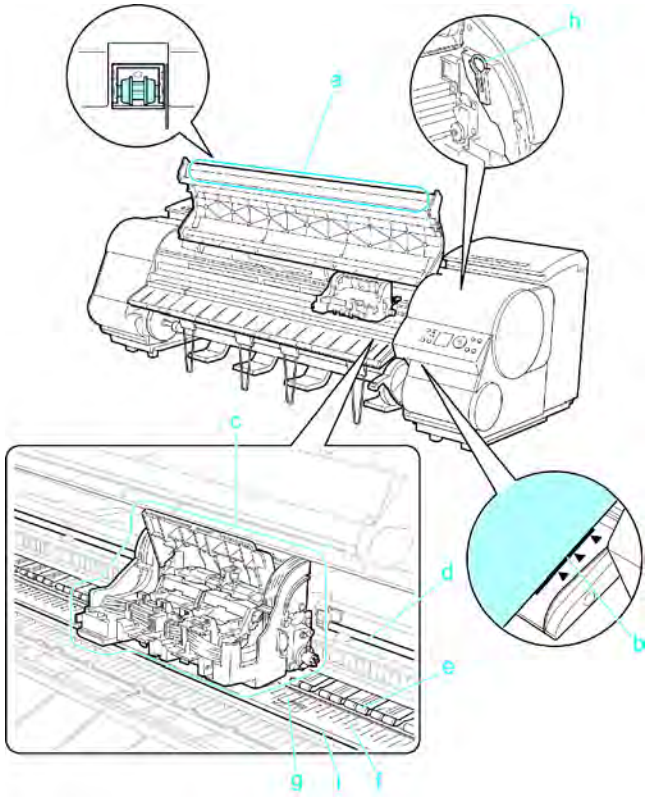
Holds printer manuals, assembly tools, and other items.

g. Power Supply Connector

Connect the power cord to this connector.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Top Cover (Inside)



a. Top Cover Roller

Prevents paper from rising when ejected.

b. Paper Alignment Line

Align paper with this line when loading it.

c. Carriage

Moves the Printhead. The carriage serves a key role in printing. (→P.11)

d. Carriage Shaft

The Carriage slides along this shaft.

e. Paper Retainer

Important in supplying the paper. This retainer holds paper as it is fed.

f. Platen

The Printhead moves across the platen to print. The Vacuum holes on the platen hold paper in place.

g. Borderless Printing Ink Grooves

These grooves catch ink outside the edges of paper during borderless printing.

h. Cleaning Brush

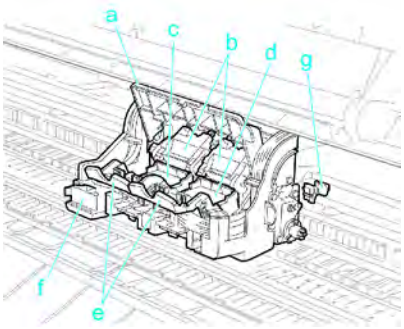
When cleaning inside of the Top Cover, use this brush to sweep away paper dust on the Platen.

i. Fixed Blade

The Cutter Unit passes through this blade to cut paper.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Carriage



a. Carriage Cover

Protects the Carriage.

b. Printhead Fixer Cover

Holds the Printhead in place.

c. Printhead L

Equipped with ink nozzles. Printheads serve a key role in printing.

d. Printhead R

Equipped with ink nozzles. Printheads serve a key role in printing.

e. Printhead Fixer Lever

Locks the Printhead Fixer Cover.

f. Cutter Unit

A round-bladed cutter for automatic paper cutting. The cutter blade is retracted inside when not cutting.

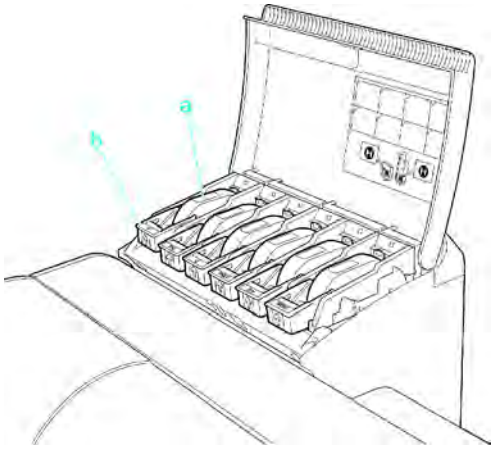
g. Shaft Cleaner

Prevents the Carriage Shaft from becoming dirty.

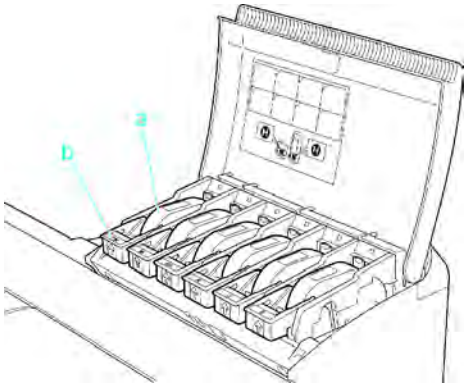
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Ink Tank Cover (Inside)

Left Side



Right Side



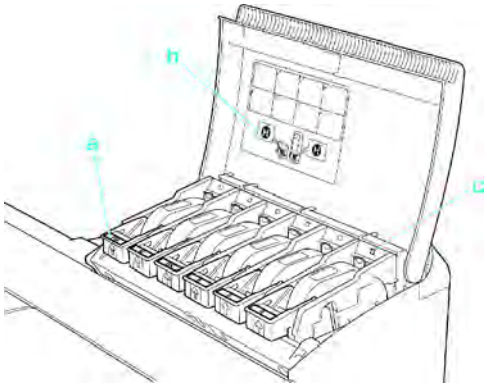
Note: The figure shows the printer as loaded with 700 ml (23.7 fl oz) Ink Tank.

a. Ink Tank

Cartridges of ink in each color.

b. Ink Tank Lock Lever

A lever that locks the Ink Tank in place and protects it. Lift and press down the lever when replacing an Ink Tank. To open it, lift the stopper of the lever until it stops, and then push it down toward the front. To close it, push it down until it clicks into place.



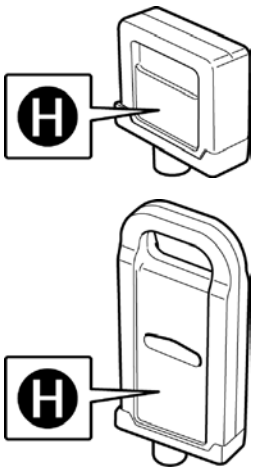
a. Ink Color Label

Load an Ink Tank that matches the color and name on this label.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

b. Ink Set

An Ink Tank that can be used in the printer (→P.678) is labeled with a white letter “H” in a black circle on the side. When purchasing an Ink Tank, make sure an “H” is printed on the label.



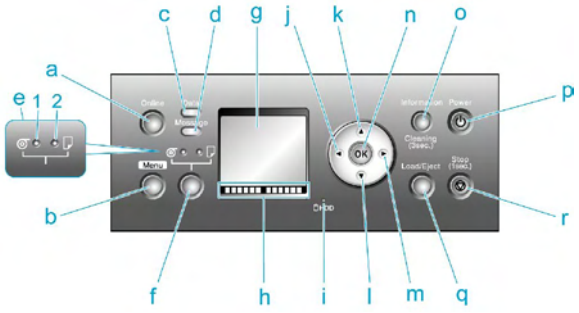
c. Ink Lamp (Red)

Indicates the state of the Ink Tank as follows when the Ink Tank Cover is opened.

- On
  The Ink Tank is installed correctly.
- Off
  No Ink Tank is installed, or the ink level detection function is disabled.
- Flashing Slowly
  Not much ink is left.
- Flashing Rapidly
  Ink tank is empty.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Control Panel



a. **Online** Button (Green)

Switches the printer online and offline. (→P.26)

- On
  The printer is online.
- Flashing
  The printer is switching modes.
- Off
  The printer is offline.

b. **Menu** Button

Displays the main menu of the printer. (→P.49)

c. **Data lamp** (Green)

- Flashing
  During printing, the Data lamp flashes when the printer is receiving or processing print jobs. Otherwise, this lamp flashes when the print job is paused or the printer is updating the firmware.
- Off
  There are no active print jobs when the Data lamp is off.

d. **Message lamp** (Orange)

- On
  A warning message is displayed.
- Flashing
  An error message is displayed.
- Off
  The printer is off or is operating normally.

e. Paper Source Section

After you press the **Feeder Selection** button, the lamp for your chosen paper source is lit.

1. **Roll Media lamp** (Green)
   - On
     Indicates that a roll is selected as the paper source.
   - Off
     Indicates that a sheet is selected as the paper source.
2. **Cut Sheet lamp** (Green)
   - On
     Indicates that a sheet is selected as the paper source.
   - Off
     Indicates that a roll is selected as the paper source.

f. **Feeder Selection** Button

Switches the paper source. Each time you press this button, the paper source switches between the roll and the sheet, and the corresponding lamp on the Paper Source Section is lit.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

g. Display Screen

Shows the printer menu, as well as the printer status and messages.

h. Color Label

This label indicates the Ink Tank color. The label corresponds to the ink level on the Display Screen.

i. **HDD lamp** (Green)

- On
  Indicates the printer is accessing the hard disk.
- Off
  Indicates the printer is not accessing the hard disk.

j. ◄ Button

Menu mode: Press this button to display the menu one level higher.

k. ▲ Button

Offline: Press this button to rewind rolls manually. (→P.190)

Menu mode: Press this button to display the previous menu item or setting value.

l. ▼ Button

Offline mode: Press this button to feed the roll manually in the direction of ejection, as needed. (→P.190)

Menu mode: Press this button to display the next menu item or setting value.

m. ► Button

Menu mode: Press this button to display the menu one level lower.

n. **OK** Button

In Menu mode, press this button to confirm or execute the selected item or setting. Also press this button if the Display Screen indicates to press the **OK** button.

o. **Information** Button

Displays printer submenus. Press this button to display information about ink, paper, and so on. (→P.63)

You can also hold down this button for three seconds to clean the Printhead (**Head Cleaning A**).

p. **Power** Button

Turns the printer on and off. (→P.19)

q. **Load/Eject** Button

By pressing this button, you can check instructions on loading and removing paper. Instructions for loading paper are shown on the Display Screen if pressed when no paper is loaded, and instructions for removing paper are shown if paper is loaded.

r. **Stop** Button

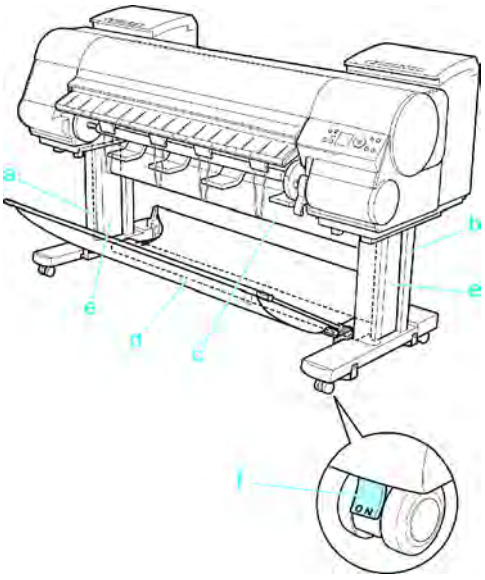
Hold down for at least a second to cancel print jobs in progress or end the ink drying period.

Note

- In Sleep mode, you can press any button except the **Power** button to bring the printer online again.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Stand



a. Stand L

The left leg of the Stand.

b. Stand R

The right leg of the Stand.

c. Top Stand Stay

Supports Stand L and Stand R. Attach the optional Media Take-up Unit to this part.

d. Bottom Stand Stay

Supports Stand L and Stand R.

e. Leg Covers

Covers for Stand L and Stand R.

f. Stopper

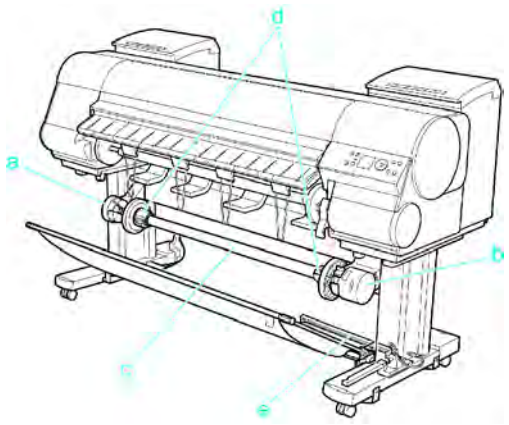
Locks the Stand casters.

Always release the Stopper before moving the printer. Moving the printer while a Stopper is locked may scratch the casters or the floor.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Media Take-up Unit (Optional)

■Main Unit



a. Left Media Take-up Unit

Load the Rewind Spool here.

b. Right Media Take-up Unit

Load the Rewind Spool here. Includes the Media Take-up Unit **Power** button, ▲ and ▼ buttons to advance or rewind paper, and a power cord.

c. Rewind Spool

Winds documents printed on rolls.

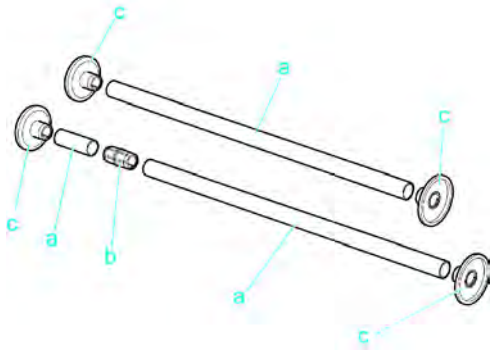
d. 3-inch Adapter

When rewinding rolls with 3-inch paper cores, attach the adapter to the Rewind Spool.

e. Media Take-up Sensor

A sensor for automatically rewinding rolls.

■Weight



a. Weight Roll (6)

Weights required when rewinding rolls. Use one roll or combine two (with a Weight Joint), depending on the roll width.

b. Weight Joint

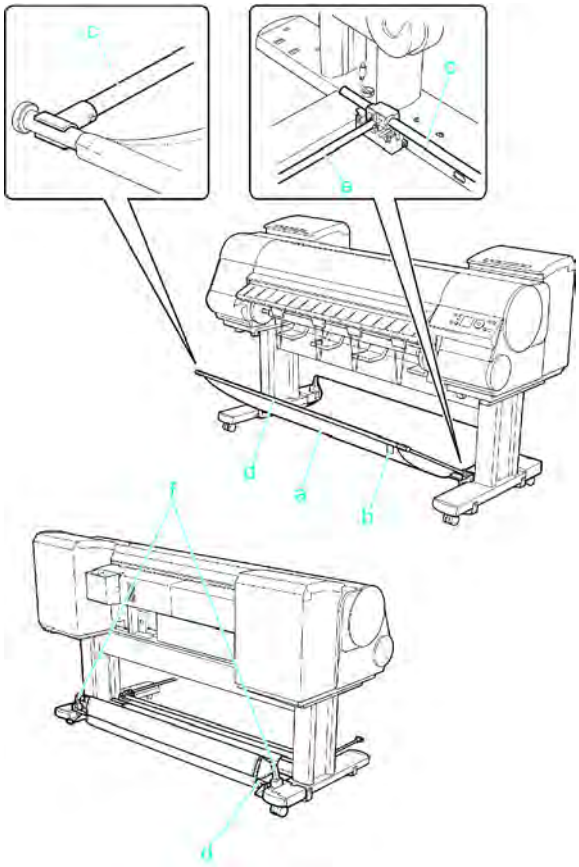
Fastens two Weight Rolls.

c. Weight Flange (2 Sets)

Attached to the ends of Weight Roll to adjust the weight. Use Weight Flange 1 or Weight Flange 2, depending on the type of paper. (→P.232)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Output Stacker



a. Output Stacker

A cloth tray that catches ejected documents. (→P.221)

b. White tag

A point of reference for attaching the Output Stacker in the right direction.

c. Basket Arm R and Basket Arm L

Holds the Basket Rod (tag side) attached to the Output Stacker. When the Output Stacker is not used, push it down and store it next to the Stand Leg.

d. Basket Rod (tag side) and Basket Rod (cord side)

Holds the cloth Output Stacker securely in specific positions.

e. Basket Rod

Keeps Basket Arm R and Basket Arm L at the same angle.

f. Rod Holder

Holds the middle of the Basket Rod (cord side).

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

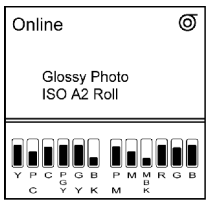
Control Panel

Turning the Printer On and Off

Turning the printer on

1. Press the **Power** button to turn on the printer.
   The printer will now start up.
   After the Display Screen shows the Canon logo, **Starting up... Please wait.** is displayed.

2. The printer goes online in preparation for printing after startup, and the Online lamp and paper source section lamp remain lit.



The printer will not go online in the following situations. Take action as needed.

- The Top Cover is open
  Close the Top Cover.
- The Ink Tank Cover is open
  Close the Ink Tank Cover.
- The Printhead is not installed
  Please see “Replacing the Printhead”. (→P.697)
- Ink Tank is not installed
  Please see “Replacing Ink Tanks”. (→P.680)
- “ERROR” is shown on the Display Screen
  Turn off the printer and contact your Canon dealer.
- The Online lamp and **Message lamp** are not lit (even once), and nothing appears on the Display Screen
  Make sure the printer is plugged in correctly. Check the connection at the plug and electrical outlet.
- No paper is loaded
  Load paper. (→P.142) (→P.146)

Important

- Starting the printer when it is connected via the USB cable to a Macintosh computer that is off may cause the computer to start up at the same time. To prevent this, disconnect the USB cable before starting the printer. Connecting the printer to the computer via a USB hub may solve this issue.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Turning the printer off

Important

- Never disconnect the printer's power supply or unplug it during a print job. This could damage the printer.

1. Make sure no print jobs are in progress.
   If the **Message lamp** is flashing, check the message on the Display Screen and take action as necessary. (→P.766)

   If the **Data lamp** is flashing, the printer is receiving a print job. Turn off the printer only after printing is finished.

2. Hold down the **Power** button for more than a second.

   After **Shut Down.. Please Wait..** is shown on the Display Screen, the printer shuts off.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printer Modes

Printer modes are classified as follows and described in this topic.

- Modes (→P.21)
- Mode transition (→P.22)
- Online, and state of the Control Panel (→P.23)
- Offline, and state of the Control Panel (→P.24)
- Menu mode, and state of the Control Panel (→P.25)
- Submenu mode, and state of the Control Panel (→P.25)

Modes

The printer has five modes as follows:

- Online

  The printer is ready to receive jobs sent from the computer. Jobs sent from the computer are processed immediately. If jobs are received in other modes, they are printed the next time the printer goes online.
- Offline

  Any jobs sent from the computer are held without being processed.

  While the printer is offline, you can feed or cut roll paper manually.

  The printer goes offline automatically if jobs cannot be processed, such as if errors occur.
- Menu mode

  Menus are displayed on the printer, and you can select, set, or execute menu items. Any jobs sent from the computer are held without being printed.
- Submenus

  Submenus are displayed regarding ink and paper information. Jobs can be received and printing is possible while submenus are displayed and the printer is online. In other modes, any jobs sent from the computer are held without being printed while submenus are displayed.
- Sleep mode

  The printer is in power-saving mode. The printer automatically enters Sleep mode to conserve power if it is idle for a specific period (by factory default, five minutes), that is, if no print jobs are received or buttons are pressed while all covers are closed.

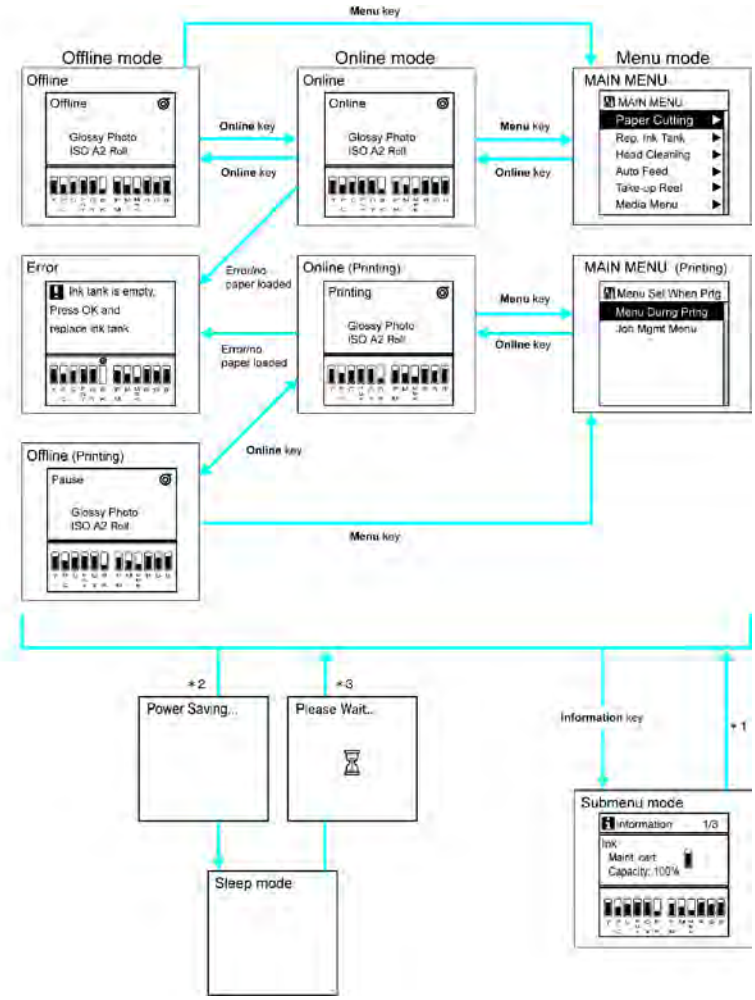
  You can specify the period before the printer enters Sleep mode in the **Sleep Timer** menu. (→P.49)

  If any print jobs are received when the printer is in Sleep mode (after it was originally online), the printer goes online and prints the jobs.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Mode transition

The printer mode transitions are as follows:



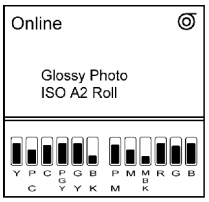
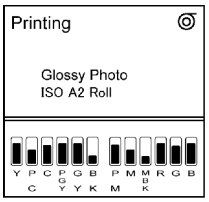
*1: When submenus are displayed, you can press any button other than the **Information** button to return to the previous mode.

*2: The printer automatically enters Sleep mode if it is idle for a specific period (by factory default, five minutes), that is, if no print jobs are received or buttons are pressed while all covers are closed. However, it does not enter Sleep mode while error messages are displayed.

*3: In Sleep mode, the printer can be restored to the previous state by pressing any button. Sleep mode is also terminated if a print job is received or a command is issued from RemoteUI.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Online, and state of the Control Panel

Not printing	Printing in progress (receiving or processing print jobs)
	

Display Screen

- Top Level of the Display Screen
  The printer status is displayed here. The selected paper source is indicated by an icon in the upper-right corner.
  Any warning messages are displayed here on lines 2-4. Take action as needed. (→P.766)
- Middle Level of the Display Screen
  The first and second lines display the paper type and size.
- Bottom Level of the Display Screen
  Here, the remaining ink level is indicated. (→P.692)

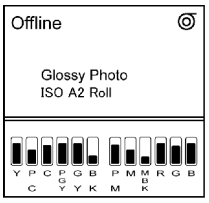
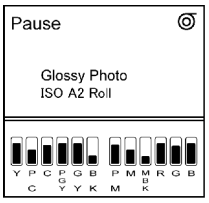
Control Panel

- Online lamp
  Lit when the printer is online.
- **Data lamp**
  Flashes when print jobs are being received or processed.
- **Message lamp**
  Lit when warning messages are displayed.

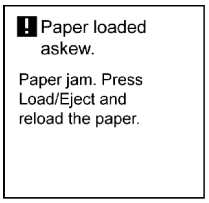
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Offline, and state of the Control Panel

Offline

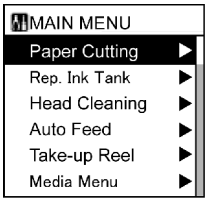
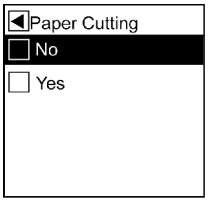
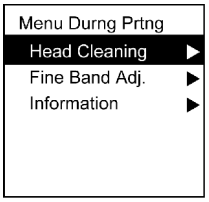
Not printing	Printing is paused
	
Display Screen • Display Screen The printer status is displayed here. The selected paper source is indicated by an icon in the upper-right corner. Any warning messages are displayed here on lines 2-4. Take action as needed. (→P.766) • Middle Level of the Display Screen The first and second lines display the paper type and size. • Bottom Level of the Display Screen Here, the remaining ink level is indicated. (→P.692) Control Panel • **Message lamp** Lit when warning messages are displayed.	

Error Messages

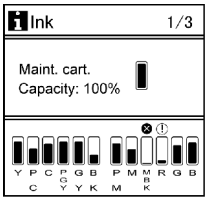
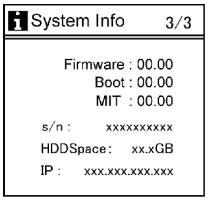
If action can be taken		If no action can be taken	
			
• Top and Middle Levels of the Display Screen Error messages are displayed. • Bottom Level of the Display Screen Here, the remaining ink level is indicated. (→P.692)	• Top and Middle Levels of the Display Screen Error messages are displayed. • Bottom Level of the Display Screen The corrective actions are displayed here.	• Top and Middle Levels of the Display Screen The error message is displayed with the following instructions: **Turn off printer, wait, then turn on again.**	• Display Screen “ERROR” is displayed, followed by the error code and **Call for service.**
• **Data lamp** Flashes when print jobs are being received. • **Message lamp** Flashes when error messages are displayed.		• **Data lamp** Flashes when print jobs are being received. • **Message lamp** Flashes when error messages are displayed.	
Take action as needed. (→P.766)		Turn off the printer and wait at least three seconds before restoring the power. If the message is still displayed after this, write down the error code and message, turn off the printer, and contact the Canon dealer for assistance.	

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Menu mode, and state of the Control Panel

Main menu	Menu items and settings	Main menu (during printing)
		
• Display Screen Pressing the **Menu** button when printing is not in progress displays the main menu. The title of the selected menu is displayed on the first line, and menus immediately under the current menu are displayed on the second and subsequent lines. The lower level menus are available if "►" is displayed at right. (→P.30)	• Display Screen The title of the selected menu is displayed on the first line, and menu items or settings are displayed on the second and subsequent lines. (→P.30) The menu of options available during printing (top figure) can be displayed by pressing the ► button when the main menu is displayed (left figure).	• Display Screen Menus available during printing are displayed if you press the **Menu** button during printing. If you select a menu, the title of the selected menu is displayed on the first line, and menus immediately under the current menu are displayed on the second and subsequent lines. The lower level menus are available if "►" is displayed at right. (→P.30)

Submenu mode, and state of the Control Panel

Remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity and ink levels	Information of the loaded paper	Printer information
		
Press the **Information** button to display this information, one after another: the Maintenance Cartridge capacity and remaining ink levels, paper information, and printer information. (→P.63)		

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Switching Modes

Switching the Printer Online/Offline

Press the **Online** button to switch the printer online or offline.

The Online lamp is lit in Online mode. Printing is possible in this mode.

The Online lamp is off in Offline mode.

Depending on the status, the printer switches online and offline as follows.

Printer Status	When the Online Button is Pressed
Online	The printer switches offline and the Online lamp goes off.
Online, printing	Switches offline and printing is paused. When printing is paused, the **Printing** menu is available.
Offline	If paper has been advanced, the printer goes online and the Online lamp is lit.
Offline, when an error message is displayed	In the case of error messages other than those shown below or if paper is not loaded, the printer remains offline until you solve the problem. The Online lamp remains off.
	If the following error messages are displayed, the printer switches online and printing is resumed. • **Insufficient paper for job** • **PHead needs cleaning.** • **Papr Size Mismatch** • **Papr Type Mismatch**
Menu mode	If paper has been advanced, the printer goes online and the Online lamp is lit.
Menu mode, printing	Switches online and the Online lamp is lit. Printing is resumed.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Switching to Menu Mode

Press the **Menu** button to display the main menu.

Depending on the status, the printer switches to Menu mode as follows.

Printer Status	When the Menu Button is Pressed
Online	Switches to Menu mode.
Online, printing	Either menus available during printing or a screen to manage print jobs is displayed. If you select a menu, the printer switches to that menu mode.
Offline	Switches to Menu mode.
Offline, printing	Menus available during printing are displayed.
Offline, when an error message is displayed	Not switch to Menu mode until the problem is solved.

Press the **Information** button to display the submenus.

Press the **Information** button to display the Maintenance Cartridge capacity and remaining ink levels, as well as information on the loaded paper and the printer. Press the **Information** button repeatedly to change the information displayed. (→P.63)
Press any button other than the **Information** button to restore the previous mode.
After you display a submenu, the printer will revert to the previous mode in about five seconds if no print job is received or if you do not operate the printer.

Note

- You can start **Head Cleaning A** by holding down the **Information** button for three seconds or more. (→P.696)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printer Menu Operations

The printer menu includes a main menu and submenus.

- Main menu operations when no print job is in progress (→P.28)
- Main menu operations during printing (→P.28)
- Submenu operations (→P.29)

Main menu operations when no print job is in progress

Access the main menu by pressing the **Menu** button on the Control Panel.

Note

- The main menu will not be displayed in the following case even if you press the **Menu** button.
  - An error message is displayed:
    Switches to Menu mode after the problem is solved.

The following operations are available from the main menu.

- Paper settings
- Print settings
- Printer settings
- Job management

For a description of specific items available in the main menu, see “Main Menu Settings”. (→P.49)
For instructions on selecting and setting main menu items, see “Main Menu Operations”. (→P.30)

Note

- By default, main menu settings apply to all print jobs. However, for settings that are also available in the printer driver, the values specified in the printer driver take priority.

Main menu operations during printing

After pressing the **Online** button during printing to pause printing, if you press the **Menu** button on the Control Panel, only the menu options you can execute during printing (**Head Cleaning**, **Fine Band Adj.**, **Information**, and **Job Mgmt Menu**) are displayed.

Note

- The main menu will not be displayed during printing in the following case even if you press the **Menu** button.
  - An error message is displayed:
    Switches to Menu mode after the problem is solved.

The following operations are available from the main menu during printing.

- Printhead cleaning
- Manual adjustment of the paper feed amount
- Display of printer-related information
- Job management

For a description of specific items available in the main menu during printing, see “Main Menu Settings (During Printing)”. (→P.60)
For instructions on selecting and setting main menu items during printing, see “Main Menu Operations”. (→P.30)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Submenu operations

Access submenus by pressing the **Information** button on the Control Panel. You can check the following information in submenus.

- Remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity
- Ink levels
- Information on the loaded paper
- Printer information

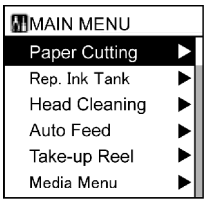
For a description of specific items displayed in submenus, see “Submenu Display”. (→P.63)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

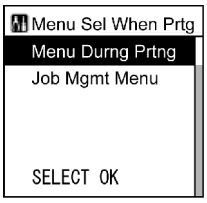
Main Menu Operations

Press the **Menu** button to display the main menu. For details, see “Main Menu Settings”. (→P.49)

- Main menu (displayed if you press the **Menu** button when printing is not in progress)



- Menu selection (if you press the **Menu** button when printing is in progress)



Note

- The main menu will not be displayed in the following cases even if you press the **Menu** button.
  - An error message is displayed
    You can access the Menu mode after you have solved the problem.

To access each function menu from the main menu, and set or execute menu items, use buttons on the Control Panel.
The following section describes menu operations and how they are presented in this **User Manual**.

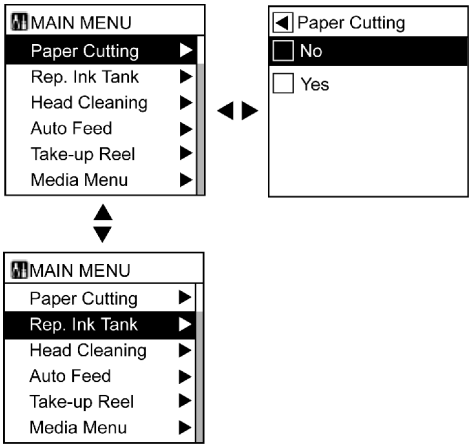
- Accessing Menus (→P.31)
- Specifying menu items (→P.32)
- Specifying numerical values (→P.33)
- Executing menu commands (→P.34)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

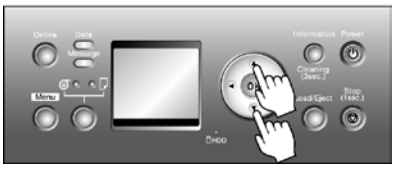
Accessing Menus

Printer menus are grouped by function.

Menus are displayed with the upper line selected. Use the buttons on the Control Panel to access each menu.



- Press ▲ to access a higher menu in the menu list, and press ▼ to access a lower one. If items of the menu list are more than the lines of the screen, press ▲ and ▼ to scroll the menu. Items you select are highlighted.



The scroll bar at right indicates the current position in the overall menu.

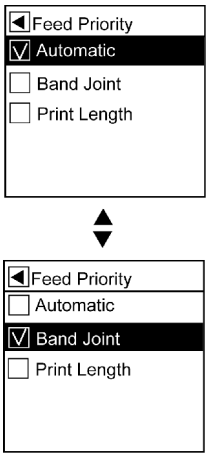
- The lower level menus are available if "►" is displayed at right. To access these lower level menus, select a menu and press ►.
- The upper level menus are available if "◄" is displayed at left. To access these upper level menus, select a menu and press ◄.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Specifying menu items

Follow the steps below to specify menu items.

1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a menu, and then press the ► button.
   Repeat these steps until the desired menu options are displayed.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the desired setting, and then press the **OK** button.
   The check box at left is selected, and the setting is confirmed.



   After two seconds, the display reverts to the upper level menu.
3. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.

Note

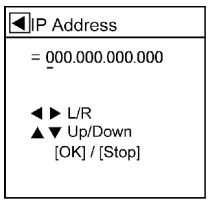
- If a confirmation message is displayed regarding the setting you entered, press the **OK** button. The setting is applied, and the printer goes online.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Specifying numerical values

Follow the steps below to enter numbers for items such as network settings.

1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Interface Setup**, and then press the ► button.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **TCP/IP**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **IP Setting**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **IP Address**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ◄ or ► to move the cursor (_) to each field for entering numbers.



6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the number, and then press the **OK** button.

Note

- Hold down ▲ or ▼ to increase or decrease the value continuously.
- Make sure the IP address you enter for the printer is not the same as any computer IP address in your network.

7. Repeat steps 2 and 3 to continue entering numbers.
8. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.

Note

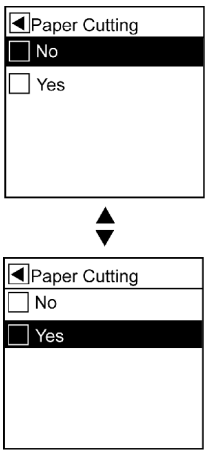
- If a confirmation message is displayed regarding the setting you entered, press the **OK** button. The setting is applied, and the printer goes online.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Executing menu commands

Follow the steps below to execute menu commands.

1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a menu, and then press the ► button.
   Repeat these steps until the desired menu options are displayed.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the action to execute, and then press the **OK** button.



After two seconds, the menu command is executed. After commands are executed, the printer commonly reverts to the state before the menu operation, either online or offline.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Menu Structure

Main Menu

The structure of the main menu is as follows. Values at right indicated by an asterisk "*" are the defaults.
For instructions on menu operations, see "Main Menu Operations". (→P.30)
For details on menu items, see "Main Menu Settings". (→P.49)

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level
Paper Cutting (*1)	**No** *			
	Yes			
Rep. Ink Tank	**No** *			
	Yes			
Head Cleaning	**Head Cleaning A** *			
	Head Cleaning B			
Auto Feed (*11)	**No** *			
	Yes			
Take-up Reel (*9)	**Disable** *			
	Enable			
Media Menu	**Cut Sheet Type**	**Plain Paper** (*5)		
		Plain Paper HQ (*5)		
		Plain Paper HG (*5)		
		Recycled Coated (*5)		
		Coated Paper (*5)		
		HW Coated (*5)		
		Ex HW Coated (*5)		
		Premium MatteP (*5)		
		Glossy Photo (*5)		
		Semi-Gl Photo (*5)		
		HW GlossyPhoto2 (*5)		
		HW SemiGlPhoto2 (*5)		
		Poster Semi-Gl (*5)		
		Syn. Paper (*5)		
		Adh. Syn. Paper (*5)		
		Backlit Film (*5)		

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level
		Backprint Film (*5)		
		Flame-Res.Cloth (*5)		
		Fabric Banner (*5)		
		ThinFab.Banner (*5)		
		Proofing Paper (*5)		
		News Proof 1 (*5)		
		News Proof 2 (*5)		
		FineArt Photo (*5)		
		FneArt HW Photo (*5)		
		FineArt Txtr (*5)		
		FineArt Wtrclr (*5)		
		FineArtBlockP (*5)		
		Canvas Matte (*5)		
		JPN Paper Washi (*5)		
		Colored Coated (*5)		
		CAD Trace Paper (*5)		
		CAD Matte Film (*5)		
		CAD Clear Film (*5)		
		Special # Here, the number is 1-10 (*5)		
	Roll Media Type (*1)	**Plain Paper** (*5)		
		Plain Paper HQ (*5)		
		Plain Paper HG (*5)		
		Recycled Coated (*5)		
		Coated Paper (*5)		
		HW Coated (*5)		
		Ex HW Coated (*5)		

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level
		Premium MatteP (*5)		
		Glossy Photo (*5)		
		Semi-Gl Photo (*5)		
		HW GlossyPhoto2 (*5)		
		HW SemiGlPhoto2 (*5)		
		Poster Semi-Gl (*5)		
		Syn. Paper (*5)		
		Adh. Syn. Paper (*5)		
		Backlit Film (*5)		
		Backprint Film (*5)		
		Flame-Res.Cloth (*5)		
		Fabric Banner (*5)		
		ThinFab.Banner (*5)		
		Proofing Paper (*5)		
		News Proof 1 (*5)		
		News Proof 2 (*5)		
		FineArt Photo (*5)		
		FneArt HW Photo (*5)		
		FineArt Txtr (*5)		
		FineArt Wtrclr (*5)		
		FineArtBlockP (*5)		
		Canvas Matte (*5)		
		JPN Paper Washi (*5)		
		Colored Coated (*5)		
		CAD Trace Paper (*5)		
		CAD Matte Film (*5)		

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level
		CAD Clear Film (*5)		
		Special # Here, the number is 1-10 (*5)		
	Chk Remain.Roll	**Off** *		
		On		
	Roll Length Set (*1, *2)	**### m**		
		### feet		
Paper Details	(The paper type is displayed here.) (*5)	**Roll DryingTime**	**Off**	
			30 sec.	
			1 min.	
			3 min.	
			5 min.	
			10 min.	
			30 min.	
			60 min.	
		Scan Wait Time	**Off**	
			1 sec.	
			3 sec.	
			5 sec.	
			7 sec.	
			9 sec.	
		Feed Priority	**Automatic** *	
			Band Joint	
			Print Length	
		Adjust Length	From -0.70% to 0.70%	
		Head Height	**Automatic** *	
			Highest	
			High	
			Standard	
			Low	
			Lowest	
		Skew Check Lv.	**Standard** *	
			Loose	

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level
			Off	
		VacuumStrngth	Automatic *	
			Strongest	
			Strong	
			Standard	
			Weak	
			Weakest	
		Width Detection	Off	
			On *	
		NearEnd RollMrgn	5mm	
			20mm	
		Cut Speed	Fast	
			Standard	
			Slow	
		Trim Edge First	Automatic	
			Off	
			On	
		Cutting Mode	Automatic	
			Eject	
			Manual	
		Bordless Margin	Automatic	
			Fixed	
		CutDustReduct.	Off	
			On	
		NearEnd Sht Mrgn	3mm	
			20mm	
		Return Defaults	No	
			Yes	
Job Management	Job Queue Ope.	Job List	(Choose a print job.)	Delete
				Priority
	Com. BOX Ope.	Job List	(Choose a print job.)	Print
				Delete
		Print Job List	No	
			Yes	
	Psnl. BOX Ope.	Job List	Print	

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level
			Delete	
		Print Job List	**No**	
			Yes	
Adjust Printer	**Auto Head Adj.**	**Standard Adj.**	**No**	
			Yes	
		Advanced Adj.	**No**	
			Yes	
		Auto Print	**Off**	
			On *	
	Manual Head Adj (*10)	**No**		
		Yes		
	Auto Band Adj.	**Standard Adj.**	**No**	
			Yes	
		Advanced Adj.	**No**	
			Yes	
	Manual Band Adj	**No**		
		Yes		
	Adjust Length (*3)	**No**		
		Yes		
	Calibration	**Auto Adjust**	**No**	
			Yes	
		Calibration Log	**Date**	
			Paper Type	
		Use Adj. Value	**Disabled**	
			Enabled *	
		Return Defaults	**No**	
			Yes	
Interface Setup	**EOP Timer**	**10 sec.**		
		30 sec.		
		1 min.		
		2 min.		
		5 min.		
		10 min. *		
		30 min.		

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level
		60 min.		
	TCP/IP	**IP Mode**	**Automatic**	
			Manual *	
		Protocol (*4)	**DHCP**	**On**
				Off *
			BOOTP	**On**
				Off *
			RARP	**On**
				Off *
		IP Setting	**IP Address**	0.0.0.0 - 255.255.255.255
			Subnet Mask	0.0.0.0 - 255.255.255.255
			Default G/W	0.0.0.0 - 255.255.255.255
	NetWare	**NetWare**	**On**	
			Off *	
		Frame Type (*6)	**Auto Detect**	
			Ethernet 2	
			Ethernet 802.2 *	
			Ethernet 802.3	
			Ethernet SNAP	
		Print Service (*6)	**BinderyPServer**	
			RPrinter	
			NDSPServer *	
			NPrinter	
	AppleTalk	**On**		
		Off *		
	Ethernet Driver	**Auto Detect**	**On** *	
			Off	
		Comm.Mode (*7)	**Half Duplex** *	
			Full Duplex	
		Ethernet Type (*7)	**10 Base-T** *	
			100 Base-TX	
		Spanning Tree	**Not Use** *	
			Use	

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level
		MAC Address	000085XXXXXX	
	Ext. Interface	**No** *		
		IEEE1394		
	Return Defaults	**No** *		
		Yes		
Maintenance	**Repl. maint cart**	**No**		
		Yes		
	Replace P.head	**Printhead L**	**No**	
			Yes	
		Printhead R	**No**	
			Yes	
		L & R Printheads	**No**	
			Yes	
	Repl. S. Cleaner	**No**		
		Yes		
	Change Cutter	**No**		
		Yes		
	Move Printer	**Level 1** *		
		Level 2		
		Level 3		
System Setup	**Warning**	**Buzzer**	**Off**	
			On *	
		Detect Mismatch	**Pause**	
			Warning	
			None *	
		Skip Take-Up Err (*9)	**Off** *	
			On	
	Keep Media Size	**Off** *		
		On		
	Paper Size Basis	**Sht Selection 1**	**ISO A3+** *	
			13"x19"(Super B)	
		Sht Selection 2	**ISO B1**	
			28"x40" (ANSI F)	
	Noz. Check Freq.	**Off**		

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level
		1 page		
		10 pages		
		Automatic *		
	Sleep Timer	5 min. *		
		10 min.		
		15 min.		
		20 min.		
		30 min.		
		40 min.		
		50 min.		
		60 min.		
		240 min.		
	Length Unit	meter *		
		feet/inch		
	Time Zone	0:London (GMT)		
		+1:Paris,Rome		
		+2:Athens,Cairo		
		+3:Moscow		
		+4:Eerevan,Baku		
		+5:Islamabad		
		+6:Dacca		
		+7:Bangkok		
		+8:Hong Kong		
		+9:Tokyo,Seoul		
		+10:Canberra		
		+11NewCaledonia		
		+12:Wellington		
		-12:Eniwetok		
		-11:Midway is.		
		-10Hawaii(AHST)		
		-9:Alaska(AKST)		
		-8:Oregon (PST)		
		-7:Arizona(MST)		
		-6:Texas (CST)		
		-5:NewYork(EST)		

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level
		-4:Santiago		
		-3:Buenos Aires		
		-2:		
		-1:Cape Verde		
	Date Format	yyyy/mm/dd *		
		dd/mm/yyyy		
		mm/dd/yyyy		
	Date & Time	Date	yyyy/mm/dd (*8)	
			Time	hh:mm
	Language	[English]*		
		日本語		
		[Français]		
		[Italiano]		
		[Deutsch]		
		[Español]		
		[Русский]		
		中文 (简体字)		
		한국어		
	Contrast Adj.	-4,-3,-2,-1,0*, +1,+2,+3,+4		
	Reset PaprSetngs	No		
		Yes		
	Erase HDD Data	Null	No	
			Yes	
		Random Data 1x	No	
			Yes	
		Random Data 3x	No	
			Yes	
Test Print	Status Print	No		

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level
		Yes		
	Media Details	**No**		
		Yes		
	Print Job Log	**No**		
		Yes		
	Menu Map	**No**		
		Yes		
	Nozzle Check	**No**		
		Yes		
Information	**System Info**			
	Error Log	**########-####**		
	Job Log	(Choose from information about the latest three print jobs.)	**Document Name**	
			User Name	
			Page Count	
			Job Status	
			Print Start Time	**yyyy/mm/dd hh:mm**
			Print End Time	**yyyy/mm/dd hh:mm**
			Print Time	**xxx sec.**
			Print Size	**xxxxxxxxsq.mm**
			Media Type	
			Interface	
			Ink Consumed	**xx.x ml**

*1: Available only if a roll is loaded.
*2: Available only if **Chk Remain.Roll** is **On**.
*3: Available if **Feed Priority** is **Automatic** or **Print Length**.
*4: Not displayed if **IP Mode** is **Manual**.
*5: For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.169) The paper type setting in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) is updated when you install the printer driver from the User Software CD-ROM or if you change paper information by using the Media Configuration Tool.See the Media Configuration Tool Guide (Windows) or Media Configuration Tool Guide (Macintosh).
*6: Not displayed if **NetWare** is **Off**.
*7: Not displayed if **Auto Detect** is **On**.
*8: Follows the setting in **Date Format**.
*9: Displayed if the Media Take-up Unit is attached.
*10: Available after you have used **Advanced Adj.** in **Auto Head Adj.** once.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

*11: Available if: (a) **Take-up Reel** is **Enable**, (b) roll paper is loaded, and (c) you have not executed **Auto Feed** for the loaded roll.
*12: Not displayed if **IP Mode** is **Automatic**.
*13: Follows the setting in **Length Unit**.

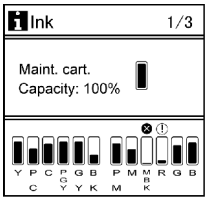
Caution

- Only the following menus are displayed during printing.
  - Menu Durng Prtng
    Choose this menu to display **Head Cleaning**, **Fine Band Adj.**, and **Information**.
  - Job Mgmt Menu
    Choose this menu to display **Job Management**.

Submenus

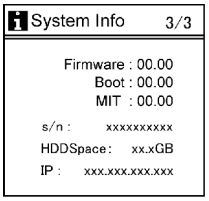
Each time you press the **Information** button on the Control Panel, printer information is displayed in the following order.

■The remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity and ink levels



■Information on the loaded paper

■Printer information



For details on submenu screens, see “Submenu Display”. (→P.63)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Main menu during printing

The structure of the main menu during printing is as follows.
For instructions on menu operations, see “Main Menu Operations”. (→P.30)
For details on menu items available during printing, see “Main Menu Settings (During Printing)”. (→P.60)

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level	Sixth Level	Seventh Level
Menu Durng Prtng	**Head Cleaning**	**Head Cleaning A**				
		Head Cleaning B				
	Fine Band Adj.	From -5 to 5				
	Information	**System Info**				
		Error Log	**######## - ####**			
		Job Log	(Choose from information about the latest three print jobs.)	**Document Name**		
				User Name		
				Page Count		
				Job Status		
				Print Start Time		
				Print End Time		
				Print Time		
				Print Size		
				Media Type		
				Interface		
				Ink Consumed		
		HDD Information				
Job Mgmt Menu	**Job Queue Ope.**	**Job List**	(Choose a print job.)	**Priority**		
				Delete		
	Com. BOX Ope.	**Job List**	(Choose a print job.)	**Print**		
				Delete		
		Print Job List	**No**			
			Yes			

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level	Sixth Level	Seventh Level
	Psnl. BOX Ope.	**Folder List**	(Enter a password if one has been set.)	**Job List**	(Choose a print job.)	**Print**
						Delete
				Print Job List	**No**	
					Yes	

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Main Menu Settings

Main menu items are described in the following tables.
For instructions on menu operations, see “Main Menu Operations”. (→P.30)
For details on menu levels and values, see “Menu Structure”. (→P.35)

Setting Item	Description, Instructions
Paper Cutting	This command is available only if a roll is loaded. Choose **Yes** to cut the roll at the current position. However, if paper cannot be advanced to the cut position, it will not be cut. In this case, manually advance the roll before cutting it. (→P.190)
Rep. Ink Tank	When replacing the Ink Tank , choose **Yes** and follow the instructions on the screen. (→P.680)
Head Cleaning	Specify Printhead cleaning options. (→P.696) Choose **Head Cleaning A** if printing is faint, oddly colored, or contains foreign substances. Choose **Head Cleaning B** if no ink is printed at all, or if printing is not improved by **Head Cleaning A**.
Auto Feed	This command is available only if **Take-up Reel** is set to **Enable**. Choose **Yes** to advance roll paper automatically on the Rewind Spool , up to the fastening position.
Take-up Reel	Choose **Enable** to use the Media Take-up Unit .
Media Menu	Specify the type and size of paper. (→P.50)
Paper Details	Specify detailed paper-related settings, including the ink drying time and borderless printing options. (→P.51)
Job Management	Manage print jobs on the printer’s hard disk. (→P.53)
Adjust Printer	Adjust the Printhead alignment or amount of feed by printing a test pattern. (→P.54)
Interface Setup	Configure the EOP timer and network settings. (→P.55)
Maintenance	Access maintenance settings when replacing the Printhead or preparing to move the printer. (→P.56)
System Setup	Specify the printer system settings, including the date format and display language. (→P.57)
Test Print	Choose **Status Print** to print information about the printer. Choose **Media Details** to print the paper settings as specified in **Paper Details**. Choose **Print Job Log** to print a record of print jobs, including the paper type and size, amount of ink used, and so on. (Information on ink consumption is general, not specific in nature.) Choose **Menu Map** to print a list of the main menu options. Choose **Nozzle Check** to print a test pattern for checking the nozzles.
Information	Displays information about the printer and record of print jobs. (→P.59)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Media Menu

Setting Item	Description, Instructions
Cut Sheet Type (*1)	Choose the type of sheets. (→P.215)
Roll Media Type (*1)	Choose the type of roll. (→P.188)
Chk Remain.Roll	Choose **On** to print a barcode at the end of a roll before you remove it. The printed barcode can be used in managing the amount of roll paper left. Choose **Off** if you prefer not to print the barcode.
Roll Length Set	Displayed if **Chk Remain.Roll** is **On**. If a barcode is not printed on rolls, specify the roll length. The roll length is displayed in meters or feet, depending on the setting in **Length Unit**.

*1: For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.169) The paper type setting in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) is updated when you install the printer driver from the User Software CD-ROM or if you change paper information by using the Media Configuration Tool. See the Media Configuration Tool Guide (Windows) or Media Configuration Tool Guide (Macintosh).

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Paper Details

Setting Item		Description, Instructions
(The paper type is displayed here.)(*1)	**Roll DryingTime**	Specify the time to wait for the ink to dry for each sheet.
	Scan Wait Time	Specify the time to wait for the ink to dry between each scan in bidirectional printing, in consideration of how quickly the ink dries. Note that printing will take longer if you specify a wait time.
	Feed Priority	Specify exact paper feeding, if desired. Normally, select **Automatic**. Choose **Print Length** if you prefer to feed the paper an exact amount. However, note that choosing **Print Length** may result in slight banding in the direction of Carriage scanning.
	Adjust Length	Displayed if **Feed Priority** is **Print Length**. Adjustment relative to the amount of stretching or shrinkage of the current paper. Enter either the adjustment results from **Print Pattern** or the discrepancy that you measured (as a percentage). For paper that tends to stretch, increase the feed amount by choosing a higher adjustment value. For paper that tends to shrink, decrease the feed amount by choosing a lower adjustment value.
	Head Height	Adjust the Printhead height. (→P.654)
	Skew Check Lv.	If you print on Japanese paper (washi) or other handmade paper that has an irregular width, choose **Loose** for a higher skew detection threshold, or choose **Off** to disable skew detection. However, if paper is loaded askew when detection is **Off**, note that paper jams or Platen soiling may occur.
	VacuumStrngth	Specify the level of suction that holds paper against the Platen . (→P.661)
	Width Detection	When this setting is set to **Off** , the printer prints without detecting the paper width. Specify **Off** when printing at a width different from the paper width.
	NearEnd RollMrgn	Specify the minimum margin at the leading edge of roll paper to ensure better printing quality at the leading edge. Note that if you choose **5mm** , it may lower the printing quality at the leading edge and affect feeding accuracy. The printed surface may be scratched, and ink may adhere to the leading edge. It may also cause the Platen to become soiled.
	Cut Speed	Choose the cutting speed. If you use adhesive paper, choosing **Slow** helps prevent adhesive from sticking to the cutter and keeps the cutter sharp.
	Trim Edge First	If a roll is loaded, the end of the paper will be cut.
	Cutting Mode	Specify whether or not to cut with the standard round-bladed cutter. Choose **Automatic** to have the roll cut automatically after printing. If you choose **Manual**, the paper will not be cut after printing. Instead, a line will be printed at the cut position. Choose **Eject** if you prefer not to have documents dropped immediately after printing, as when waiting for ink to dry.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Setting Item		Description, Instructions
(The paper type is displayed here.)(*1)	**Bordless Margin**	Adjust the margin during borderless printing. Choose **Automatic** to have the printer automatically detect the paper width and configure the margin settings for borderless printing. If margins are mistakenly created when **Automatic** is selected, choose **Fixed**. In this case, the paper width is not detected automatically, and the document is printed without borders, using the margin settings required by the printer.
	CutDustReduct.	Choose **On** to reduce the amount of debris generated when cutting film and similar media by printing a line at the cut position. This option reduces the amount of debris given off after cutting. It also helps prevent adhesive from sticking to the cutter and keeps the cutter sharp if you use adhesive paper. (→P.197)
	NearEnd Sht Mrgn	Specify a margin at the leading edge of sheets to ensure better printing quality at the leading edge. Note that if you choose **3mm** , it may lower the printing quality at the leading edge and affect feeding accuracy. The printed surface may be scratched, and ink may adhere to the leading edge.
	Return Defaults	Choose **Yes** to restore **Paper Details** to the factory default values.

*1: For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.169) The paper type setting in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) is updated when you install the printer driver from the User Software CD-ROM or if you change paper information by using the Media Configuration Tool.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Job Management

Setting Item					Description, Instructions
Job Queue Ope.	**Job List**	(Choose a print job)	**Delete**		Delete the current job or queued jobs. (→P.115)
			Priority		Print the job first after the current print job is finished. (→P.115)
Com. BOX Ope.	**Job List**	(Choose a print job)	**Print**		Print jobs in the Common Box.
			Delete		Delete jobs in the Common Box.
	Print Job List				Print a list of jobs in the Common Box.
Psnl. BOX Ope.	**Folder List**	(Enter a password if one has been set.)	**Job List**	**Print**	Print jobs in Personal Boxes.
				Delete	Delete jobs in Personal Boxes.
			Print Job List		Print a list of jobs in Personal Boxes.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Adjust Printer

Setting Item		Description, Instructions
Auto Head Adj.	**Standard Adj.**	Choose **Yes** to have the printer print and read a test pattern for the automatic adjustment of Printhead alignment relative to the printing direction. (→P.650)
	Advanced Adj.	Choose **Yes** to have the printer print and read a test pattern for the automatic adjustment of Printhead alignment relative to the nozzle and printing direction. (→P.650)
	Auto Print	Choose **On** to have the printer automatically execute the **Advanced Adj.** operations after you replace the Printhead . (→P.650)
Manual Head Adj		Choose **Yes** to print a test pattern for adjustment of Printhead alignment relative to the printing direction. Enter the adjustment value manually based on the resulting pattern. (→P.652)
Auto Band Adj.	**Standard Adj.**	Choose **Yes** to have the printer print and read a band adjustment test pattern for automatic adjustment of the feed amount. (→P.655)
	Advanced Adj.	Choose this option when using paper other than genuine Canon paper, or paper for purposes other than checking output. Choose **Yes** to have the printer print and read a band adjustment test pattern for automatic adjustment of the feed amount. Note that this function takes more time and requires more ink than **Standard Adj.** (→P.655)
Manual Band Adj		Choose **Yes** to print a test pattern for adjusting the feed amount based on the paper type. (→P.658)
Adjust Length		Choose **Yes** to print a test pattern for adjustment relative to paper stretching or shrinkage, after which you can enter the amount of adjustment. (→P.662)
Calibration	**Auto Adjust**	Choose **Yes** for automatic adjustment of the adjustment value after a test pattern for color calibration is printed. The latest color calibration adjustment value is applied for all paper.
	Calibration Log	The date of color calibration and the paper type is indicated on the Display Screen .
	Use Adj. Value	Choose **Disabled** and press the **OK** button to print without applying the color calibration adjustment value. The printer driver settings are given priority. Select **Enabled** and press the **OK** button to apply the color calibration adjustment value in printing. However, the printer driver settings will be given priority.
	Return Defaults	Clears the color calibration adjustment value and log.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Interface Setup

Setting Item			Description, Instructions
EOP Timer			Specify the timeout period before cancellation of print jobs that cannot be received by the printer.
TCP/IP	**IP Mode**		Choose whether the printer IP address is configured automatically or a static IP address is entered manually.
	Protocol	**DHCP**	Specify the protocol used to configure the IP address automatically.
		BOOTP	
		RARP	
	IP Setting	**IP Address**	Specify the printer network information when using a static IP address. Enter the IP address assigned to the printer, as well as the network subnet mask and default gateway.
		Subnet Mask	
		Default G/W	
NetWare	**NetWare**		Specify the NetWare protocol. To apply your changes, choose **Register Setting** .
	Frame Type		Specify the frame type to use.
	Print Service		Choose the print service.
AppleTalk			Specify whether to use the AppleTalk protocol. To apply your changes, choose **Register Setting** .
Ethernet Driver	**Auto Detect**		Specify the communication method. To apply your changes, choose **Register Setting** . Choose **On** for automatic configuration of the LAN communication protocol. Choose **Off** to use settings values of **Comm.Mode** and **Ethernet Type**.
	Comm.Mode		Choose the LAN communication method.
	Ethernet Type		Choose the LAN transfer rate.
	Spanning Tree		Choose whether spanning-tree packets are supported over the LAN.
	MAC Address		Displays the MAC address.
Ext. Interface			Choose the expansion interface.
Return Defaults			**Execute?** is displayed if you press the ▼ button. Choose **OK** to restore the network settings to the default values.

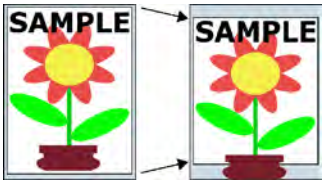
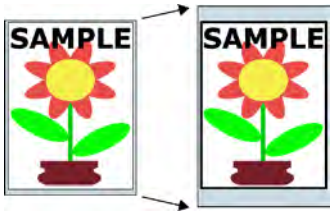
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Maintenance

Setting Item	Description, Instructions
Repl. maint cart	When replacing the Maintenance Cartridge , choose **Yes** and follow the instructions on the screen. (→P.708)
Replace P.head	Not displayed during a warning message that the remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity is low. When replacing the Printhead , choose **Yes** and follow the instructions on the screen. (→P.697)
Repl. S. Cleaner	When replacing the Shaft Cleaner , choose **Yes** and follow the instructions on the screen. (→P.708)
Change Cutter	When replacing the Cutter Unit , choose **Yes** and follow the instructions on the screen. (→P.705) You can also reset the cut counter after the Cutter Unit is replaced.
Move Printer	When transferring the printer to another location, choose the level of transfer and follow the instructions on the screen. (→P.724)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

System Setup

Setting Item		Description, Instructions
Warning	**Buzzer**	Set the buzzer. Choose **On** for the buzzer to sound once for warnings and three times for errors.
	Detect Mismatch	Choose **Warning** for notification (display of a warning message) during printing if the paper type specified in the printer menu does not match the paper type in the printer driver. Choose **None** to continue to print without notification. Choose **Pause** to have printing paused under these circumstances. In this case, you can continue printing by pressing the **Online** button.
	Skip Take-Up Err	Choose **On** to continue with printing even if an error occurs with the Media Take-up Unit . Choose **Off** to have the printer pause before printing if a rewinding error occurs.
Keep Media Size		Choose **On** to use the paper size setting as the basis for printing instead of other settings. The margin setting of the printer menu will be used instead of the margin setting of the printer driver if the latter is smaller, which may prevent text or images in the margin from being printed.  Choose **Off** to use the printer driver settings instead. Even if the margin setting of the printer driver is smaller than that of the printer driver, text or images will not be cut off. However, this requires longer paper because the actual margin will be equal to the margin setting of the printer driver plus the margin setting of the printer menu. 
Paper Size Basis	**Sht Selection 1**	If sheet size detection is activated, choose whether **ISO A3+** or **13"x19"(Super B)** is applied when an intermediate size is detected.
	Sht Selection 2	If sheet size detection is activated, choose whether **ISO B1** or **28"x40" (ANSI F)** is applied when an intermediate size is detected.
Noz. Check Freq.		Specify the timing for automatic checks of nozzle clogging. Choose **1 page** to check once per printed page. Choose **10 pages** to check once per ten printed pages. Choose **Automatic** to have the printer automatically adjust the timing for checks based on the frequency of nozzle use.
Sleep Timer		Specify the period before the printer enters Sleep mode.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Setting Item		Description, Instructions
Length Unit		Choose the unit of measurement when roll length is displayed. You can switch the unit displayed for **Roll Length Set** and the remaining paper amount displayed in the submenu.
Time Zone		Specify the time zone. Time zone options indicate a main city in this time zone and the difference from Greenwich Mean Time.
Date Format		Specify the date format.
Date & Time	**Date**	Set the current date.
	Time	Set the current time.
Language		Specify the language used on the Display Screen .
Contrast Adj.		Adjust the Display Screen contrast level.
Reset PaprSetngs		Restores settings that you have changed with Media Configuration Tool to the factory default values. If paper added using the Media Configuration Tool was used for color calibration, such color calibration can no longer be applied to any type of paper.
Erase HDD Data		Erase all data on the hard disk.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Information

Setting Item			Description, Instructions
System Info	**Version**	**Firm**	Displays the printer firmware version.
		Boot	Displays the version of the boot ROM.
		MIT	Displays the version of the MIT database format.
	s/n		Displays the printer's serial number.
	MAC		Displays the MAC address of the printer.
	IP		Displays the printer's IP address.
Error Log	**########-####**		Displays the most recent error messages (up to two).
Job Log	(Choose from information about the latest three print jobs.)	**Document Name**	Displays the document name in the last print job.
		User Name	Displays the name of the user who sent the print job.
		Page Count	Displays the number of pages in the print job.
		Job Status	Displays the results of the print job processed.
		Print Start Time	Displays the time when the print job was started.
		Print End Time	Displays the time when the print job was finished.
		Print Time	Displays the time required to print the job.
		Print Size	Displays the paper size in the print job.
		Media Type	Displays the paper type in the print job.
		Interface	Displays the interface used for the print job.
		Ink Consumed	Displays the ink consumption.
HDD Information	**HDDSpace**		Displays the space available on the printer's hard disk.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Main Menu Settings (During Printing)

Main menu items during printing are described in the following tables.
For instructions on menu operations, see “Main Menu Operations”. (→P.30)
For details on menu levels and values, see “Menu Structure”. (→P.35)

Setting Item		Description, Instructions
Menu Durng Prtng	**Head Cleaning**	Specify Printhead cleaning options. (→P.696) Choose **Head Cleaning A** if printing is faint, oddly colored, or contains foreign substances. Choose **Head Cleaning B** if no ink is printed at all, or if printing is not improved by **Head Cleaning A**.
	Fine Band Adj.	Fine-tune the feed amount manually.
	Information	Displays information about the printer and record of print jobs. (→P.61)
Job Mgmt Menu		Perform operations related to print jobs on the printer’s hard disk. (→P.62)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Information

Setting Item			Description, Instructions
System Info	**Version**	**Firm**	Displays the version of the printer and firmware.
		Boot	Displays the version of the boot ROM.
		MIT	Displays the version of the MIT database format.
	Ext I/F		Displays the name of interfaces compatible with the expansion slot.
	s/n		Displays the printer's serial number.
	MAC		Displays the MAC address.
	HDDSpace		Displays the space available on the printer's hard disk.
Error Log	**########-####**		Displays the most recent error messages (up to two).
Job Log	(Choose from information about the latest three print jobs.)	**Document Name**	Displays the document name in the last print job.
		User Name	Displays the name of the user who sent the print job.
		Page Count	Displays the number of pages in the print job.
		Job Status	Displays the results of the print job processed.
		Print Start Time	Displays the time when the print job was started.
		Print End Time	Displays the time when the print job was finished.
		Print Time	Displays the time required to print the job.
		Print Size	Displays the paper size in the print job.
		Media Type	Displays the paper type in the print job.
		Interface	Displays the interface used for the print job.
		Ink Consumed	Displays the ink consumption.
HDD Information	**HDDSpace**		Displays the space available on the printer's hard disk.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Job Mgmt Menu

Setting Item					Description, Instructions
Job Queue Ope.	**Job List**	(Choose a print job.)	**Priority**		Print the job first after the current print job is finished printing. (→P.115)
			Delete		Delete the current job or queued jobs. (→P.115)
Com. BOX Ope.	**Job List**	(Choose a print job.)	**Print**		Print jobs in the Common Box.
			Delete		Delete jobs in the Common Box.
	Print Job List				Print a list of jobs in the Common Box.
Psnl. BOX Ope.	**Folder List**	(Enter a password if one has been set.)	**Job List**	**Print**	Print jobs in Personal Boxes.
				Delete	Delete jobs in Personal Boxes.
			Print Job List		Print a list of jobs in Personal Boxes.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

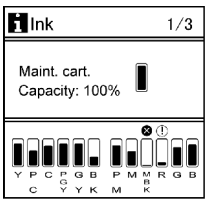
Submenu Display

Press the **Information** button to display this information, one after another: the Maintenance Cartridge capacity and remaining ink levels, paper information, and printer information.
Each time you press the **Information** button, the following submenus are displayed.

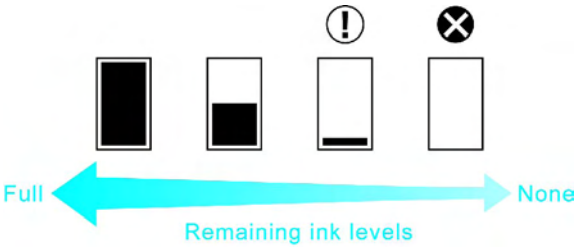
Note

- Press any button other than the **Information** button to restore the previous mode.
- After you display a submenu, the printer will revert to the previous mode in about five seconds if no print job is received or if you do not operate the printer.

Remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity and ink levels



The remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity is shown on the top level of the Display Screen.
The remaining level of each ink is shown on the bottom level of the Display Screen. Ink levels shown on the Display Screen correspond to the inks identified by the color labels on the bottom of the Display Screen.
These symbols may be displayed above the ink level: “!” if ink is low, “×” if no ink is left, and “?” if you have deactivated ink level detection.
Remaining ink is indicated as follows.

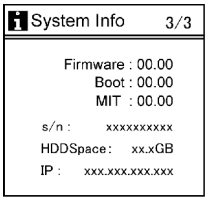


Information of the loaded paper

Here, the paper size, type, and related printer settings are displayed.

Printer information

Displays the firmware version, serial number, IP address, and hard disk capacity.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Status Print

You can print a **Status Print** report indicating the current status of the printer.
With **Status Print**, information is printed regarding the printer firmware version, various settings, and the utilization level of consumables.

Printing Status Print Reports

1. Load paper.
   If using sheets, load paper A4/Letter-sized. You will need at least four sheets.
2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Test Print**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Status Print**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.

Checking the information in the Status Print report

The following information is included in the **Status Print** report.

Canon imagePROGRAF iPFxxxx Status Print	Printer model

Firm	Firmware Version
Boot	Boot ROM Version
MIT(DBF)	MIT Database Format Version
MIT(DB)	MIT Database Version
S/N	Printer serial number
MC	Maintenance Cartridge capacity (%)
Y, PC, C, PGY, GY, BK, PM, M, MBk, R, G, and B	Ink levels. The remaining ink is displayed in a five-level scale.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Takeup-Reel			Status of the Media Take-up Unit
Media Menu			Information on the loaded paper.
	Roll Media Type		
	Check Remain. Roll		
	Cut Sheet Type		

Adjust Printer			Current printer settings.
	Head Adjust		Printhead adjustment value.
		Auto Print	
		A1-F2	
Feed Priority			Settings related to paper feeding.
Adjust Length			
Calibration			The color calibration setting value.
	Execution Log		The calibration log.
		Date:	Indicates the date calibration was performed and the type of paper used.
		Media:	
	Use Adj. Value:		This value indicates whether the results of color calibration are used or not.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Interface Setup				Current network settings.
	EOP Timer			Sets the elapsed time between receiving last data and canceling printing.
	TCP/IP			Settings related to **TCP/IP** .
		IP Mode		
		Protocol		
			DHCP	
			BOOTP	
			RARP	
		IP Setting		**IP Setting** values.
			IP Address	
			Subnet Mask	
			Default G/W	
	NetWare			**NetWare** settings.
		NetWare		
		Frame Type		
		Print Service		
	AppleTalk			Values that specify whether **AppleTalk** is active or not.
	Ethernet Driver			**Ethernet Driver** settings.
		Auto Detect		
		Comm.Mode		
		Ethernet Type		
		Spanning Tree		
		MAC Address		

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

System Setup			
	Warning		Current warning and error settings.
		Buzzer	
		Detect Mismatch	
		Skip Take-Up Err	
	Keep Media Size		Current paper-related settings.
	Sheet Selection 1		
	Sheet Selection 2		
	Nozzle Check		Nozzle-check settings.
	Sleep Timer		General printer settings.
	Length Unit		
	Time Zone		
	Date Format		
	Language		
	Contrast Adj.		

Information		
	RAM	
	Error Log	
	HDD Capacity	

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Network (RemoteUI)		Current network settings used by RemoteUI.
TCP/IP		
	Frame Type	
	Use BOOTP	
	Use DHCP	
	Use RARP	
	Enable DNS Dynamic Update	
	Use Zeroconf Function	
	IP Address*	
	Subnet Mask*	
	Gateway Address*	
	LPD Printing	
	IPP Printing	
	IPP Printer URI	
	RAW Printing	
	Raw Port Number	
	Raw Mode Bi-direction	
	FTP Printing	
	Primary DNS Server Address*	
	Secondary DNS Server Address*	
	DNS Host Name*	
	DNS Domain Name*	
	SMTP Server Address*	
	Multicast DNS Service Name	

*: Blank if the status has been saved by using Status Monitor.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

NetWare			Current **NetWare** settings.
	Frame Type		
	IPX External Network Number*		
	Node Number*		
	Print Service		

*: Depending on the NetWare print service settings, information on one of the following four items is printed.

	Bindery PServer		Values set when **NetWare** > **Print Service** > **Bindery PServer** is selected.
		File Server Name*	
		Print Server Name*	
		Print Server Password*	
		Polling Interval	
	RPrinter		Values set when **NetWare** > **Print Service** > **RPrinter** is selected.
		Print Server Name*	
		Printer Number*	
	NDS PServer		Values set when **NetWare** > **Print Service** > **NDS PServer** is selected.
		Tree Name*	
		Context name*	
		Print Server Name*	
		Print Server Password*	
	NPrinter		Values set when **NetWare** > **Print Service** > **NPrinter** is selected.
		Print Server Name*	
		Printer Number*	

*: Blank if the status has been saved by using Status Monitor.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

AppleTalk			Current **AppleTalk** settings.
	Phase Type		
	Name*		
	Network Number*		
	Zone*		

*: Blank if the status has been saved by using Status Monitor.

HEAD LOT NUMBER			Printhead lot number.
	LOT R,L		

PARTS STATUS			Utilization status of replacement parts that require servicing.
	COUNTER A-V		

COUNTER			Utilization status of the cutter, media, and other items (indicating how much they have been used).
	CUTTER		
	MEDIA		
	MEDIA1-7		
		NAME	
		TTL	
		ROLL	
		CUTSHEET	
	AFTER INSTALLATION		

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Hard Disk

Printer Hard Disk Operations

Printer hard disk operations are available through the Control Panel, printer driver, imagePROGRAF Print Plug-in, RemoteUI, imagePROGRAF Status Monitor, and imagePROGRAF Printmonitor.
The hard disk operations available through each interface are as follows.

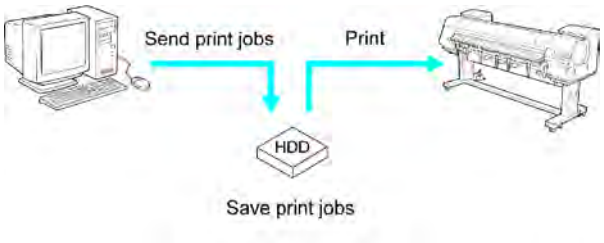
Operation		Printer Driver or imagePROGRAF Print Plug-in	imagePROGRAF Status Monitor or imagePROGRAF Printmonitor	RemoteUI	Control Panel
Saving print jobs	Print	Yes	No	No	No
	Print (auto delete)	Yes	No	No	No
	Save in mail box	Yes	No	No	No
	Save data before printing(*1)	Yes	No	No	No
Operations with saved jobs	Print saved jobs	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Delete saved jobs	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
Job queue management	Display job queue	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Delete	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Priority	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
Mail box management	Move saved jobs	No	Yes	Yes	No
	Modify saved jobs	No	Yes	Yes	No
	Modify mail boxes	No	Yes	Yes	No
	Print a list of saved jobs	No	No	No	Yes
	Display a list of saved jobs	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
Other operations	Display free hard disk space	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Initialize hard disk	No	No	No	Yes
	Recover after errors	No	No	No	Yes
Display error messages		No	Yes	Yes	Yes

*1: This option is available with **Print**, **Print (auto delete)**, and **Save in mail box**. Print jobs are saved and then printed.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Saved Print Jobs

Saving print jobs refers to the process of sending print jobs from a computer and storing them on the printer's hard disk. By saving print jobs, you can print them repeatedly as needed without sending them from a computer again.



Saving print jobs enables you to do the following things.

- Save the time spent using a computer

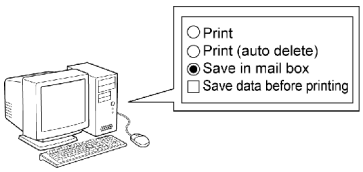
  When you send a print job to the printer, you can either print it and save it on the printer at the same time or simply save it on the printer without printing it yet. Saved print jobs can be printed in the required quantity later without the need to use a computer again.
- Simplify reprinting, if any errors occur

  If errors occur in the middle of printing (as when paper runs out), you can resume printing after clearing the error without resending the print job from a computer.
- Streamline printing work

  Without using a computer, you can select print jobs and print in the desired quantity. You can also select multiple print jobs to print during the same period. This enables unattended operation at night, for example.

Format of saved print jobs

When saving print jobs on the printer's hard disk, choose the format in the printer driver or on the imagePROGRAF Print Plug-in screen. Choose from three formats for saving print jobs: **Print**, **Print (auto delete)**, and **Save in mail box**. You can also choose **Save data before printing**, as desired.



- **Print**

  Save print jobs automatically at the same time they are printed. (This is the default format.)
- **Print (auto delete)**

  Save print jobs temporarily at the same time they are printed and delete them after printing.
- **Save in mail box**

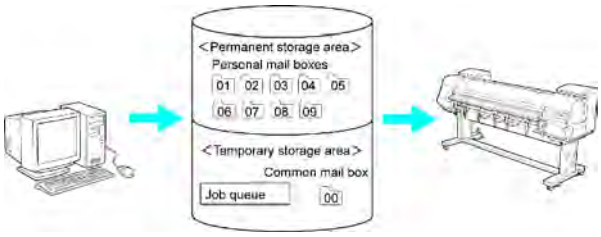
  Save print jobs on the printer without printing them.
- **Save data before printing**

  This option is available in combination with **Print**, **Print (auto delete)**, and **Save in mail box**. Print jobs are saved on the hard disk and then printed.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Storage destination

The storage area on the printer's hard disk is divided into a temporary storage area and a permanent storage area. Print jobs in the "job queue" or "Common Box" are saved in the temporary storage area. Jobs in "Personal Boxes" are saved in the permanent storage area.



- Job queue

  Current print jobs are temporarily saved in the job queue, a storage space where jobs are saved in the order they will be printed.(*1)

  Up to ten jobs can be stored in the queue. Subsequent jobs are treated as "standby" jobs, to be processed when possible.

  *1: Jobs that are being saved, received, printed, or deleted, or jobs that have been interrupted or are waiting to print

- Common Box

  If you have specified **Print** as the format, jobs sent from the computer are saved in the Common Box.

  There is one Common Box, with the Common Box number "00". A password cannot be set for the Common Box.

  Up to 100 print jobs can be saved here, but they will be deleted one after another starting with the oldest job in the following situations.

  - If there are more than 101 jobs in the Common Box and job queue combined
  - If no more temporary storage space is available when jobs in the format **Print** or **Print (auto delete)** are received
  - If there is not enough space in the temporary or permanent storage area when jobs in the format **Save in mail box** are received

- Personal Boxes

  You can store jobs in Personal Boxes in either of the following ways.

  - By moving a job stored in the Common Box into a Personal Box
  - By selecting **Save in mail box** as the format

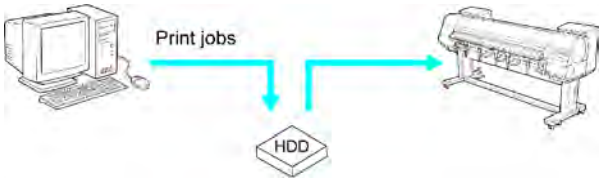
  There are nine Personal Boxes, with Personal Boxes numbered "01" to "09". You can specify a name and password for each Personal Box.

  Up to 100 print jobs can be saved in all Personal Boxes combined.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

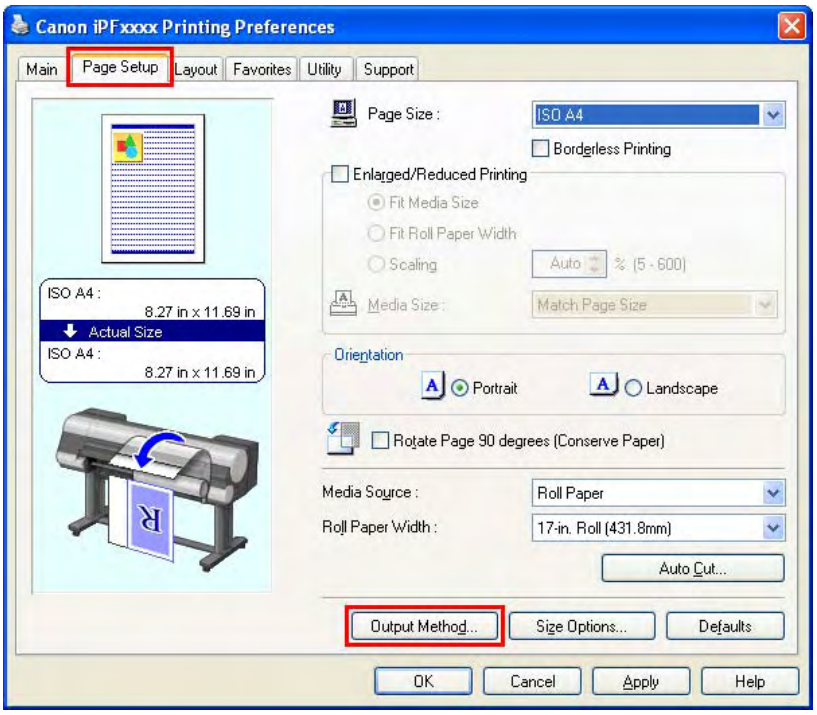
Saving Print Jobs

You can use the printer driver or imagePROGRAF Print Plug-in to save print jobs on the printer's hard disk.

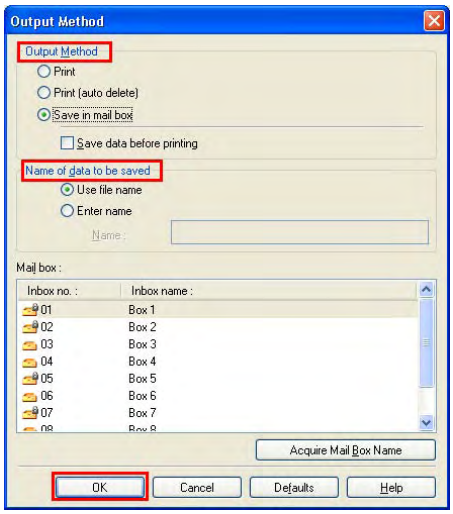


Using the printer driver (Windows)

1. Access the **Page Setup** sheet.



2. Click **Output Method** to display the **Output Method** dialog box.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

3. In **Output Method**, choose the format for saved print jobs.
   - **Print**
     Save print jobs automatically at the same time they are printed. (This is the default format.)
   - **Print (auto delete)**
     Save print jobs temporarily at the same time they are printed and delete them after printing.
   - **Save in mail box**
     Save print jobs on the printer without printing them.
     If you choose **Save in mail box**, also specify the destination Personal Box in the **Mail box** list.

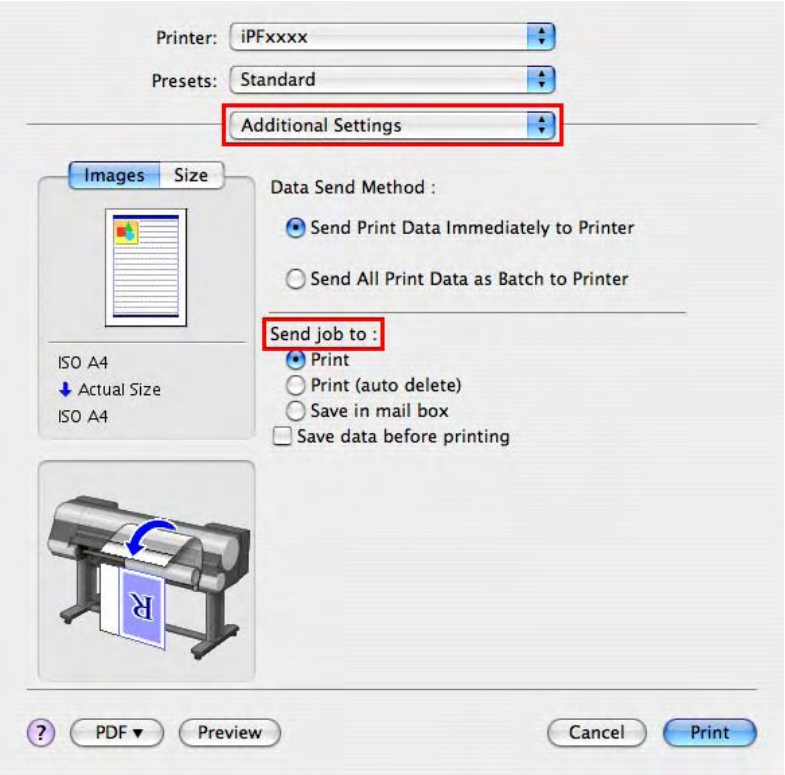
   Note
   - Click **Acquire Mail Box Name** to display Personal Box names in the **Mail box** list, as acquired from the printer.
   - **Save data before printing**
     This option is available in combination with **Print**, **Print (auto delete)**, and **Save in mail box**. Print jobs are saved on the hard disk and then printed.

4. In **Name of data to be saved**, specify how to name saved print jobs.
   - To use the file name, choose **Use file name**.
   - Otherwise choose **Enter name** and enter a name in **Name**.
5. Click **OK** to close the **Output Method** dialog box.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Using the printer driver (Mac OS X)

1. Access the **Additional Settings** pane.



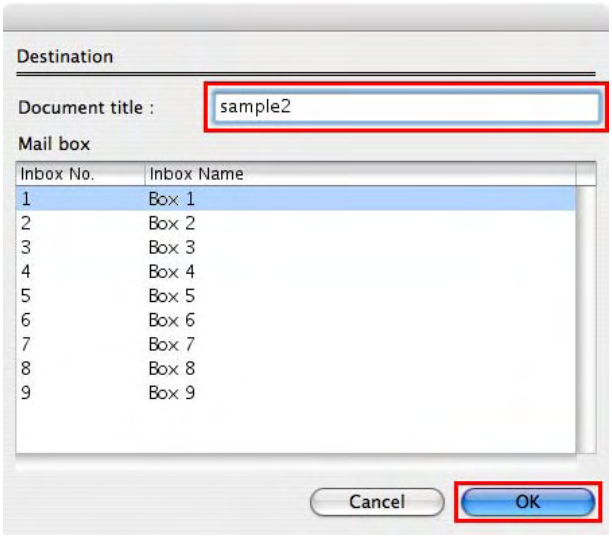
2. In **Send job to**, choose the format for saved print jobs.
   - **Print**
     Save print jobs automatically at the same time they are printed.
   - **Print (auto delete)**
     Save print jobs temporarily at the same time they are printed and delete them after printing.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

- **Save in mail box**

  Save print jobs on the printer without printing them.

  The **Destination** dialog box is displayed if you select **Save in mail box**. Here, specify the name and Personal Box number for saved print jobs.



1. In **Document title**, enter a name to identify saved print jobs.
2. Select the Personal Box number in the **Mail box** list.
3. Click **OK** to close the **Destination** dialog box.

Note

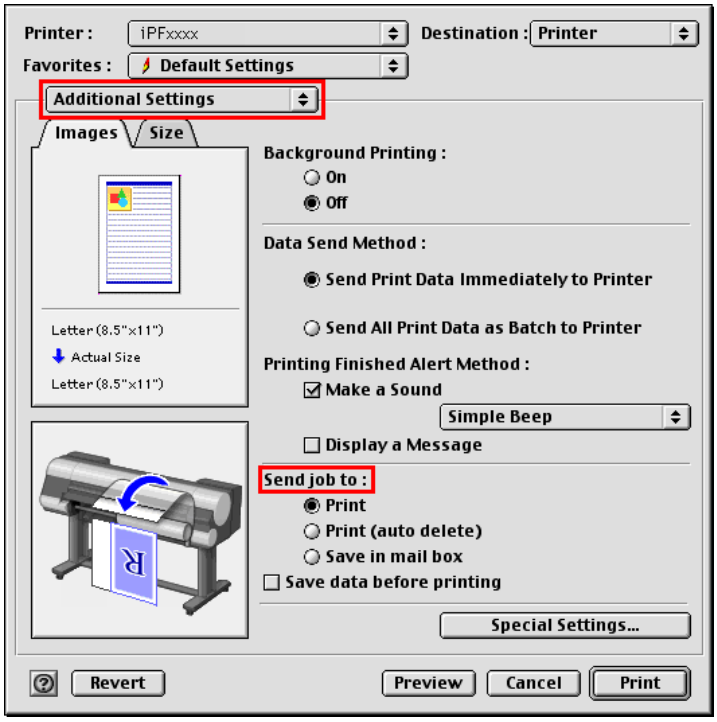
- **Save data before printing**

  This option is available in combination with **Print**, **Print (auto delete)**, and **Save in mail box**. Print jobs are saved on the hard disk and then printed.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Using the printer driver (Mac OS 9)

1. Access the **Additional Settings** pane.



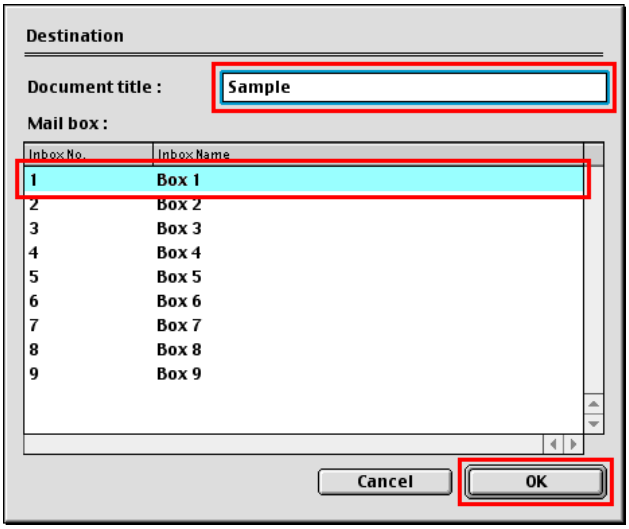
2. In **Send job to**, choose the format for saved print jobs.
   - **Print**
     Save print jobs automatically at the same time they are printed.
   - **Print (auto delete)**
     Save print jobs temporarily at the same time they are printed and delete them after printing.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

- **Save in mail box**

  Save print jobs on the printer without printing them.

  The **Destination** dialog box is displayed if you have selected **Save in mail box**. Here, specify the name and Personal Box number for saved print jobs.



1. In **Document**, enter a name to identify saved print jobs.
2. Select the Personal Box number in the **Mail box** list.
3. Click **OK** to close the **Destination** dialog box.

Note

- **Save data before printing**

  This option is available in combination with **Print**, **Print (auto delete)**, and **Save in mail box**. Print jobs are saved on the hard disk and then printed.

Using imagePROGRAF Print Plug-in

For details, refer to the topic for the **Set Configuration** button on the **Main** sheet in the Print Plug-In Guide. There is a Windows and Macintosh version of the Print Plug-In Guide. You can access them from the top page of this user manual.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Checking a List of Saved Jobs

Displaying a List of Saved Jobs

You can display saved print jobs in the Common Box and each Personal Box.
You can view a list of stored print jobs as follows.

- Using the Control Panel
- Using RemoteUI
- Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)
- Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh)

(Using the Control Panel)

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Display a list of saved print jobs.
   - To display jobs saved in the Common Box
     1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Job Management**, and then press the ► button.
     2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Com. BOX Ope.**, and then press the ► button.
     3. Press ▲ or ▼ button to select **Job List**.
   - To display jobs saved in Personal Boxes
     1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Job Management**, and then press the ► button.
     2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Psnl. BOX Ope.**, and then press the ► button.
     3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the folder, and then press the ► button.
     4. Enter a password if one has been set, and then press the ► button.
     5. Press ▲ or ▼ button to select **Job List**.

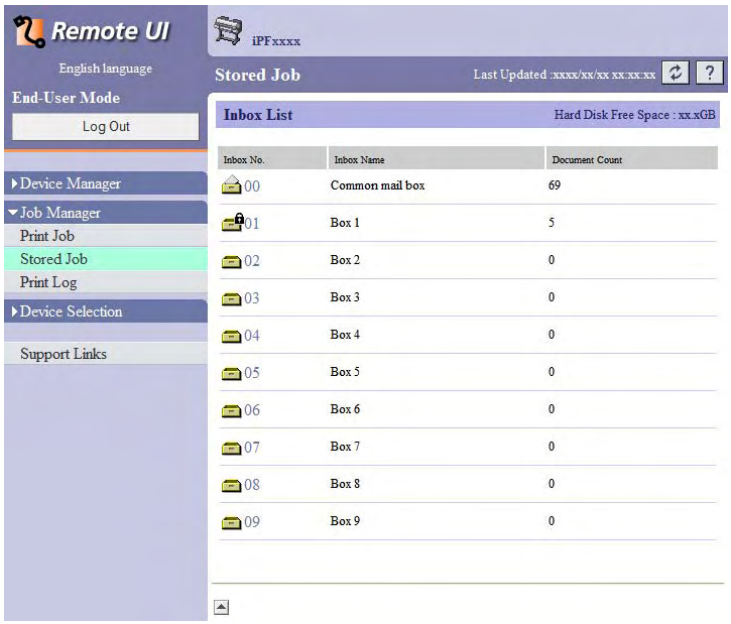
Note

- You can check a list of print jobs in the queue by choosing **Job Management** → **Job Queue Ope.**

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

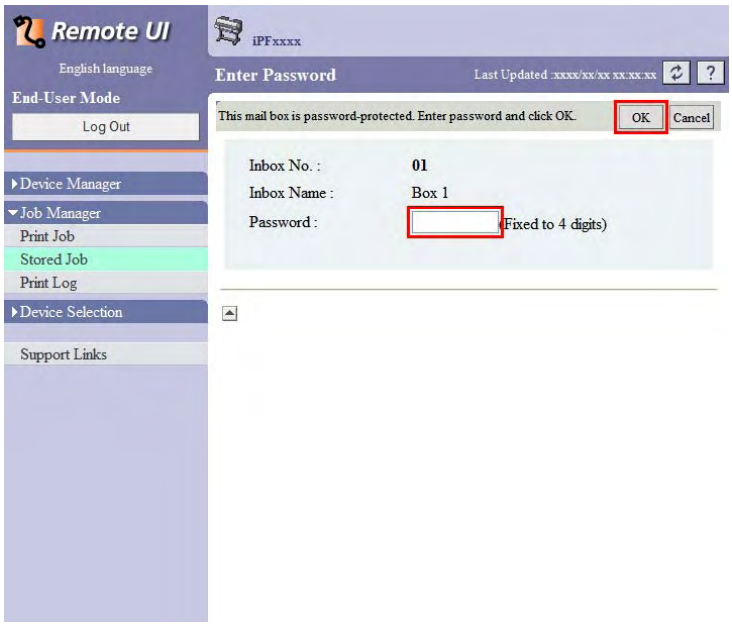
(Using RemoteUI)

Choose a mail box on the **Stored Job** page to display a list of jobs saved in that mail box.



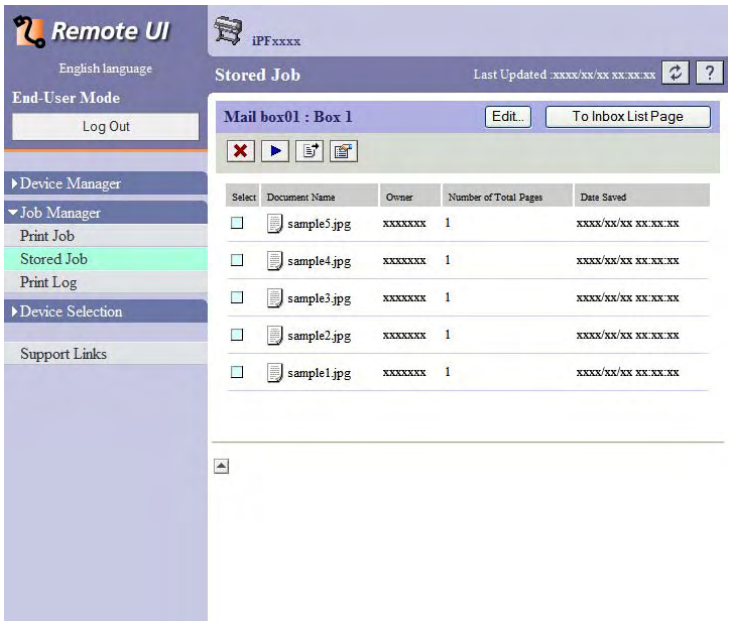
Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

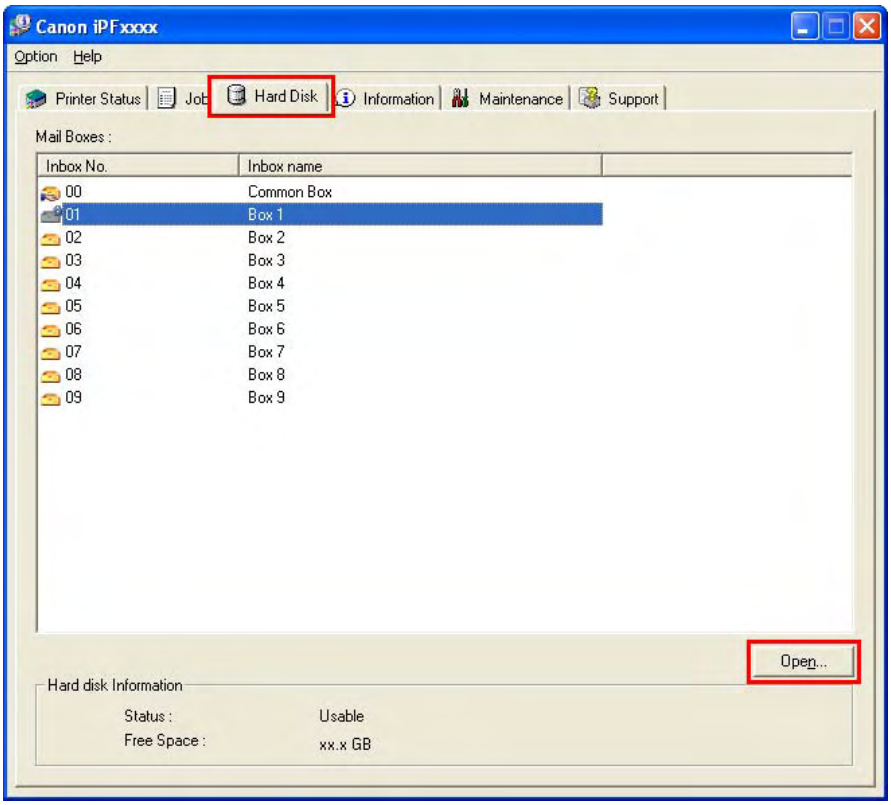
Jobs saved in the mail box are listed.



For details, refer to the RemoteUI help.

(Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor)

On the **Hard Disk** sheet, select a mail box in the list and click **Open**.

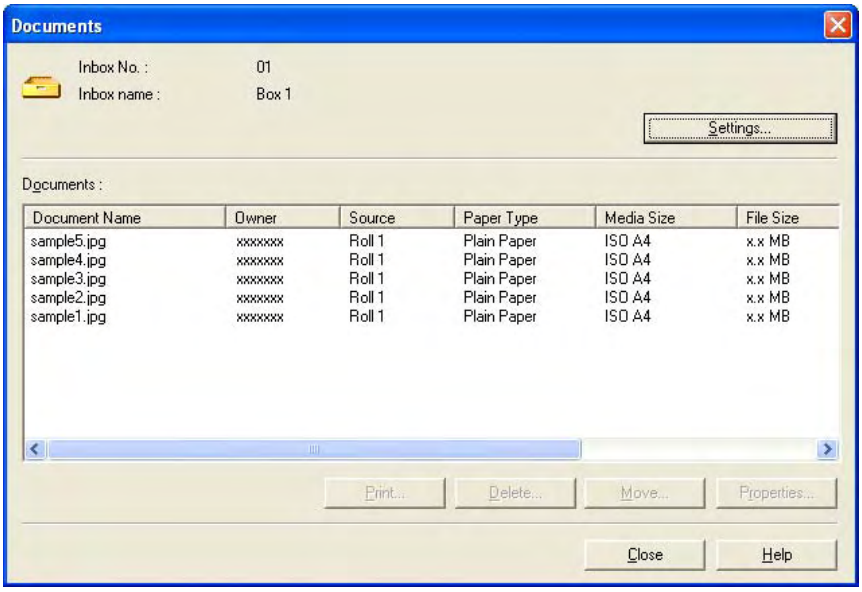


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.

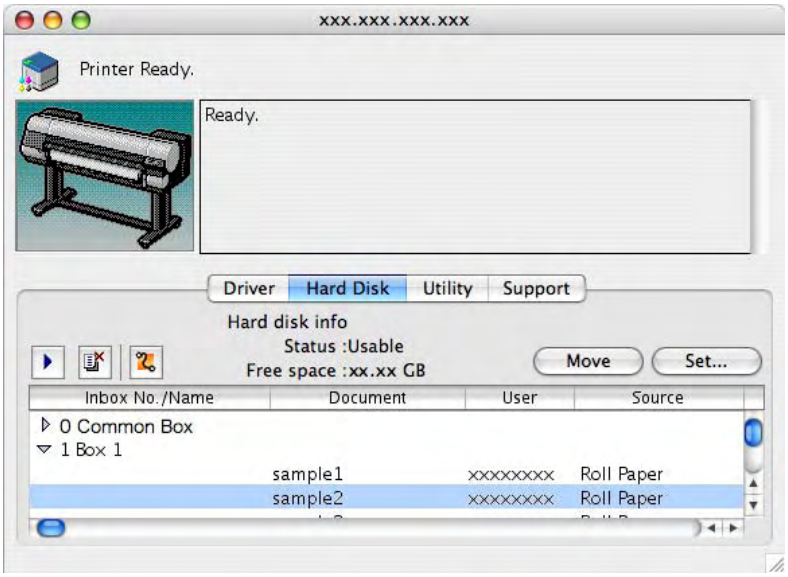
Jobs saved in that mail box are displayed in the **Documents** dialog box.


Documents
Inbox No. : 01
Inbox name : Box 1
Settings...
Documents :
Document Name | Owner | Source | Paper Type | Media Size | File Size
sample5.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
sample4.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
sample3.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
sample2.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
sample1.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
Print...
Delete...
Move...
Properties...
Close
Help

For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help.

(Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor)

On the **Hard Disk** pane, click "►" next to **Inbox No./Name** to list saved jobs.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.

For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help.

Printing a List of Saved Jobs

You can print a list of saved print jobs in the Common Box and each Personal Box.
You can also print a print job list by using the Control Panel.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

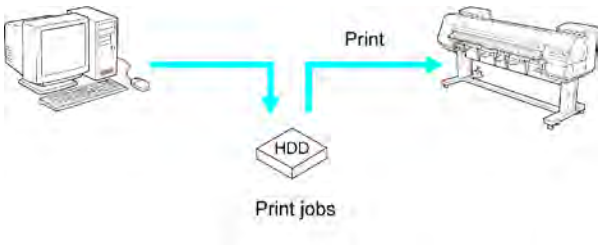
2. Print a list of saved print jobs.
   - To print a list of jobs saved in the Common Box
     1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Job Management**, and then press the ► button.
     2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Com. BOX Ope.**, and then press the ► button.
     3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print Job List**, and then press the ► button.
     4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
   - To print a list of jobs saved in Personal Boxes
     1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Job Management**, and then press the ► button.
     2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Psnl. BOX Ope.**, and then press the ► button.
     3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the folder, and then press the ► button.
     4. Enter a password if one has been set, and then press the ► button.
     5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print Job List**, and then press the ► button.
     6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Saved Jobs

You can print jobs stored on the printer's hard disk as follows.

- Using the Control Panel
- Using RemoteUI
- Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)
- Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh)



Using the Control Panel

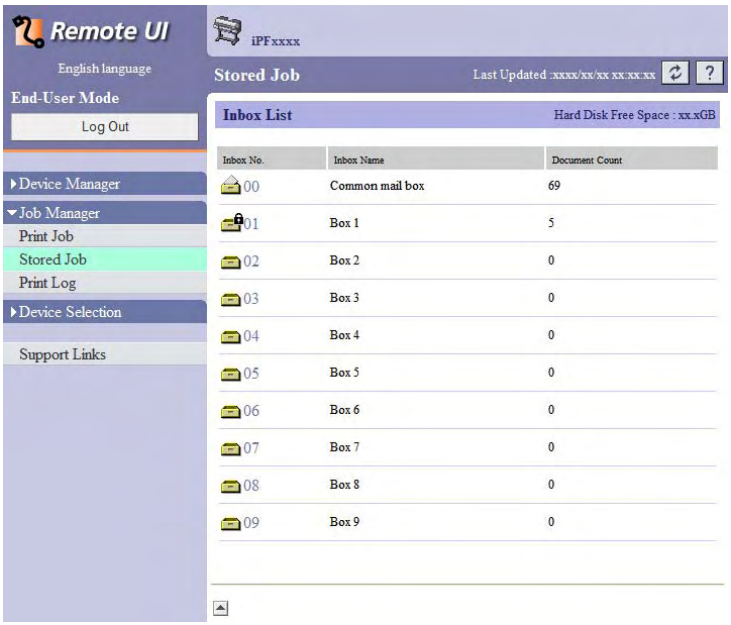
1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Print the saved job.
   - Printing jobs in the Common Box
     1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Job Management**, and then press the ► button.
     2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Com. BOX Ope.**, and then press the ► button.
     3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Job List**, and then press the ► button.
     4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the saved job to print, and then press the ► button.
     5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print**, and then press the ► button.
     6. Confirm the paper to use for printing and press the **OK** button.
     7. Specify the number of copies and press the **OK** button.
   - Printing jobs in Personal Boxes
     1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Job Management**, and then press the ► button.
     2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Psnl. BOX Ope.**, and then press the ► button.
     3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the folder, and then press the ► button.
     4. Enter a password if one has been set, and then press the ► button.
     5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Job List**, and then press the ► button.
     6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the saved job to print, and then press the ► button.
     7. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print**, and then press the ► button.
     8. Confirm the paper to use for printing and press the **OK** button.
     9. Specify the number of copies and press the **OK** button.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

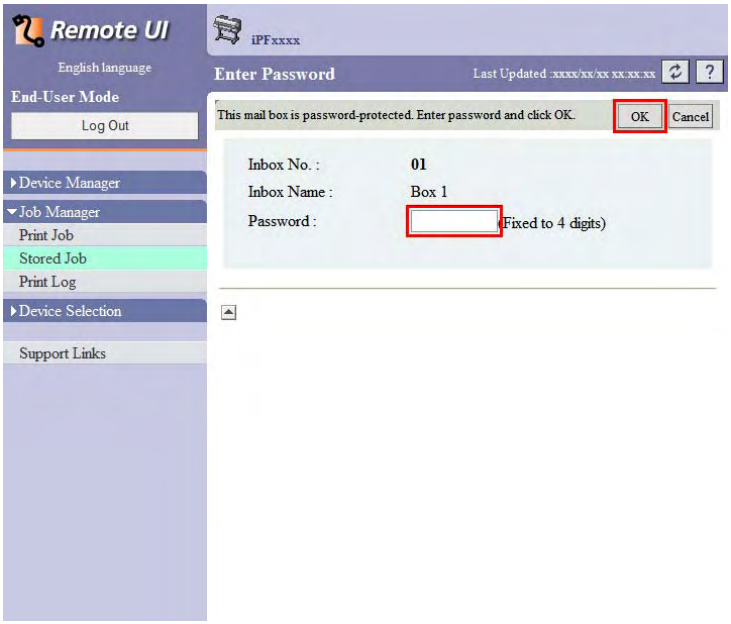
Using RemoteUI

1. On the **Stored Job** page, choose the mail box.



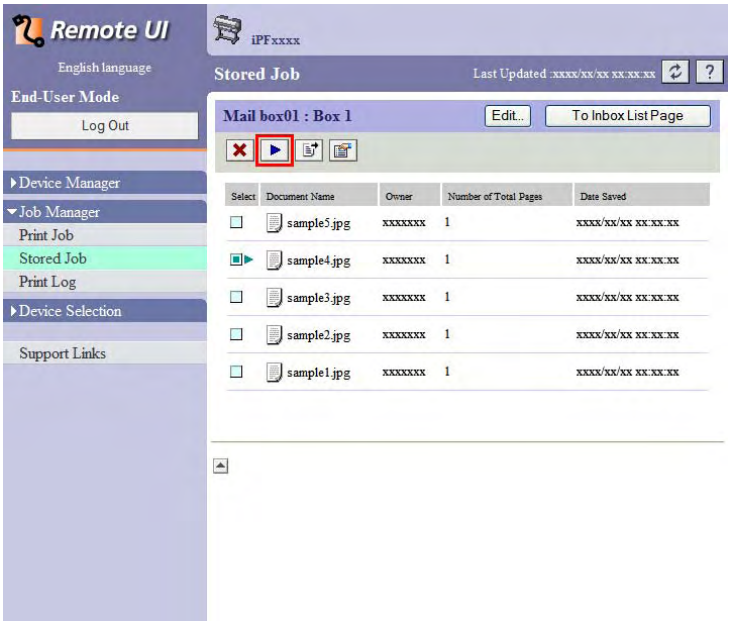
Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.

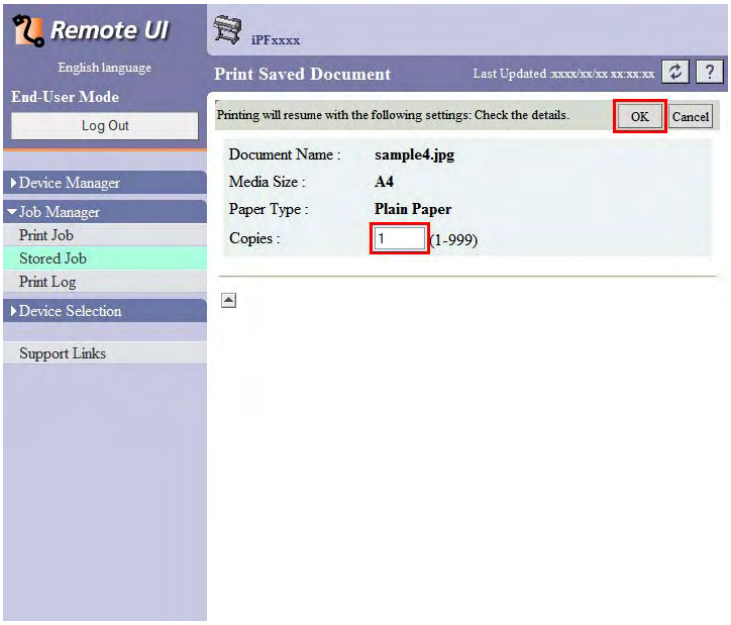


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

2. Select the print job in the list and click **Print**.



3. On the **Print Saved Document** page, enter the quantity to print in **Copies** and click **OK**.

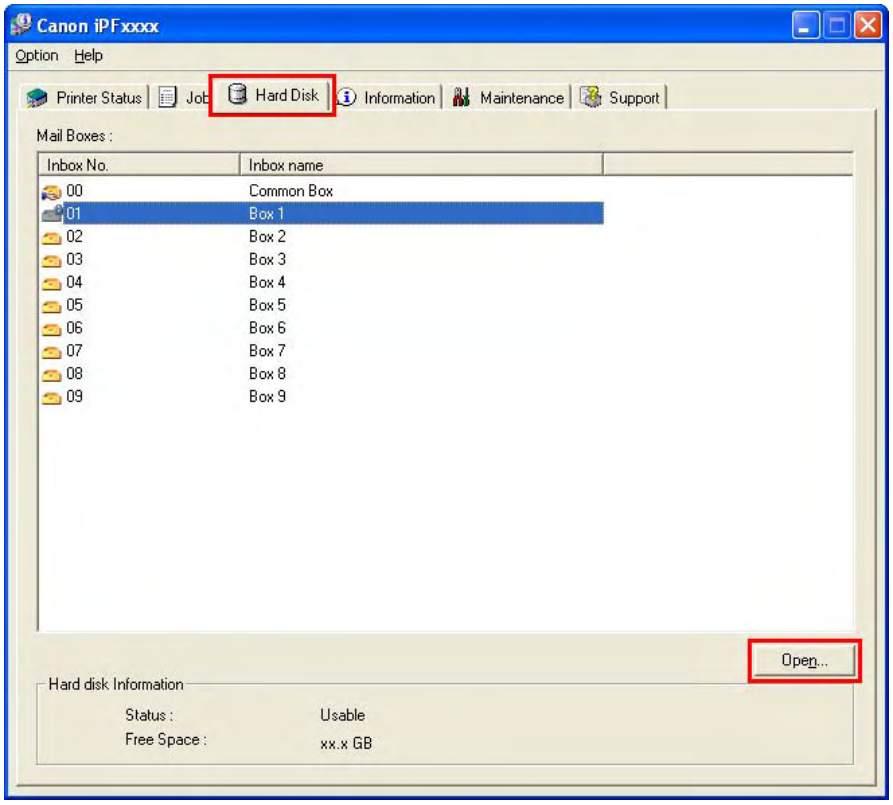


For details, refer to the RemoteUI help.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor

1. On the **Hard Disk** sheet, select a mail box in the list and click **Open**.

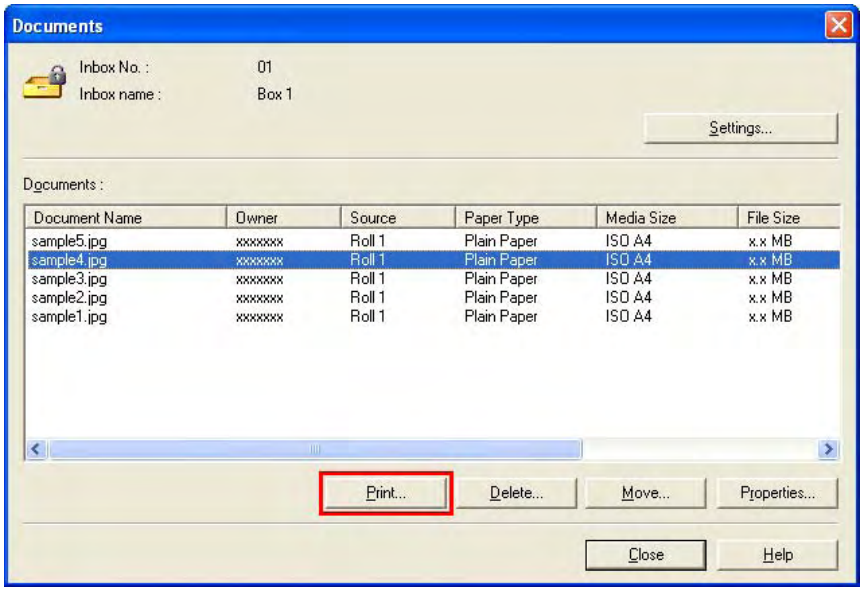


Note

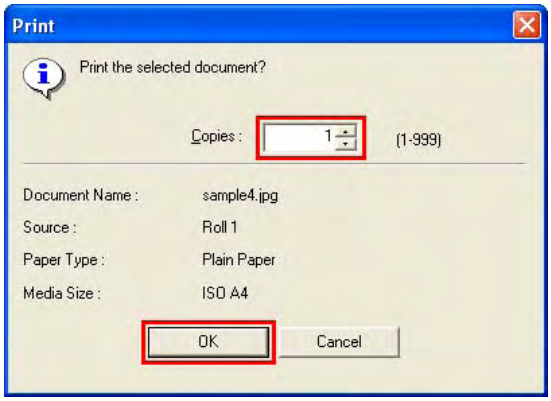
- Enter a password if one has been set.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

2. In the **Documents** dialog box, select the print job in the list and click **Print**.


Documents
Inbox No. : 01
Inbox name : Box 1
Settings...
Documents :
Document Name | Owner | Source | Paper Type | Media Size | File Size
sample5.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
sample4.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
sample3.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
sample2.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
sample1.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
Print...
Delete...
Move...
Properties...
Close
Help

3. In the **Print** dialog box, enter the quantity to print in **Copies** and click **OK**.

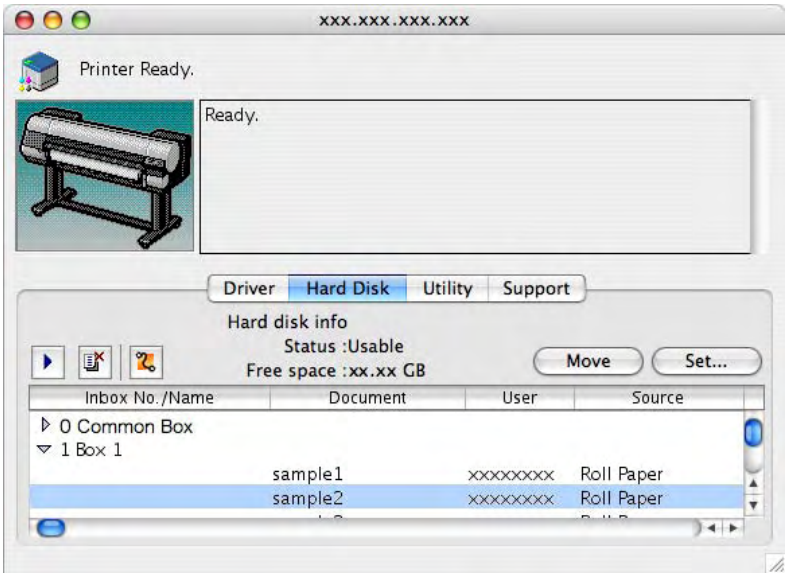


For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor

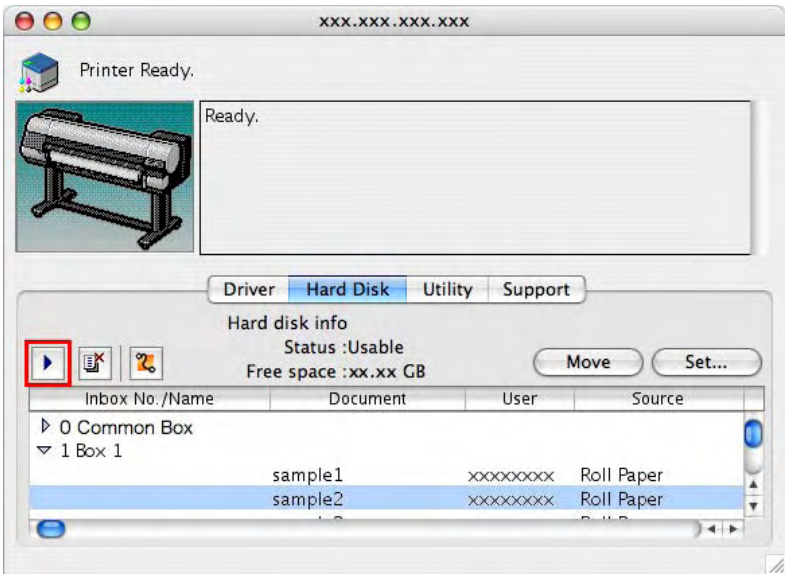
1. On the **Hard Disk** pane, click "►" next to **Inbox No./Name** to list saved jobs.



Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.

2. Select the saved job in the list and click **Resume Printing** to display the **Resume Printing** dialog box.



3. Specify the number of copies and press the **OK** button.

For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

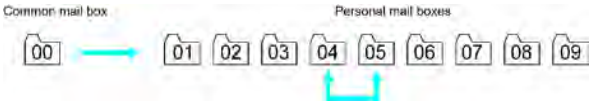
Managing Saved Jobs

Moving saved jobs

Print jobs that you have saved in the **Print** format are saved in the Common Box, number “00”. However, jobs in this mail box will be deleted one after another starting with the oldest job in the following situations.

- If there are more than 101 saved jobs in the Common Box and job queue combined
- If no more temporary storage space is available when jobs in the format **Print** or **Print (auto delete)** are received
- If there is not enough space in the temporary or permanent storage area when jobs in the format **Save in mail box** are received

You can move jobs to Personal Boxes “01” to “09” to prevent them from being deleted. (Up to 100 jobs can be stored here.)
You can also move saved jobs from one Personal Box to another.



You can move stored print jobs as follows.

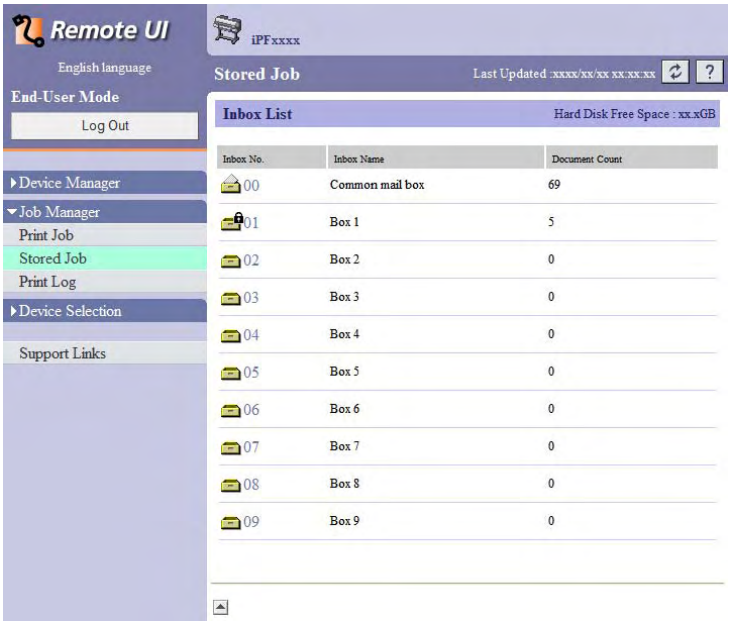
- Using RemoteUI
- Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)
- Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh)

Note

- Jobs saved in Personal Boxes cannot be moved to the Common Box.

(Using RemoteUI)

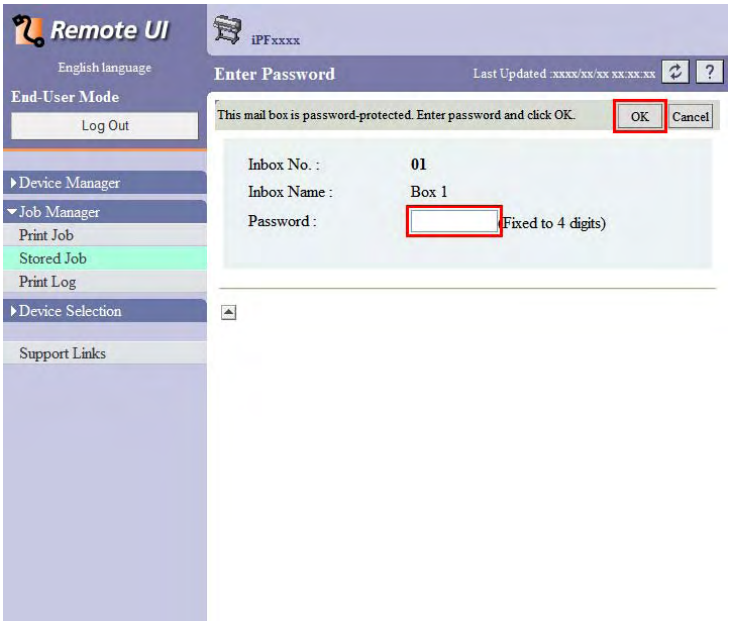
1. On the **Stored Job** page, choose the mail box.



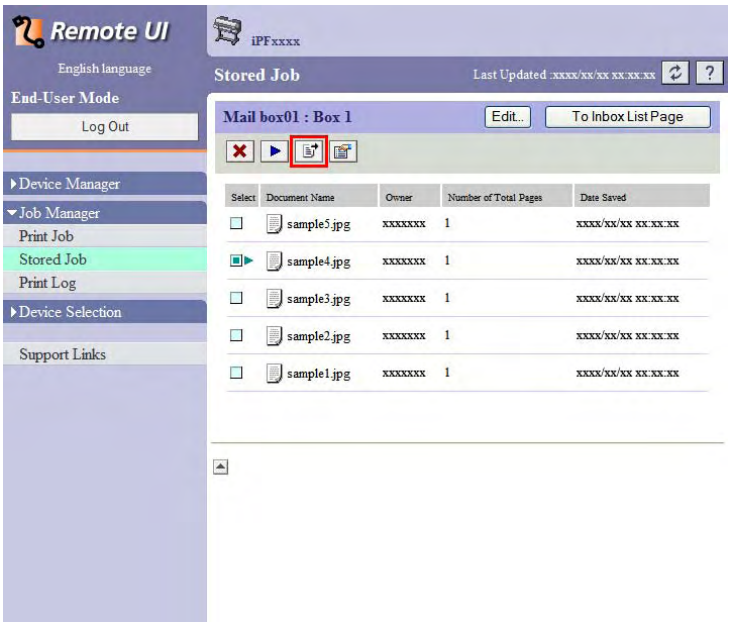
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.

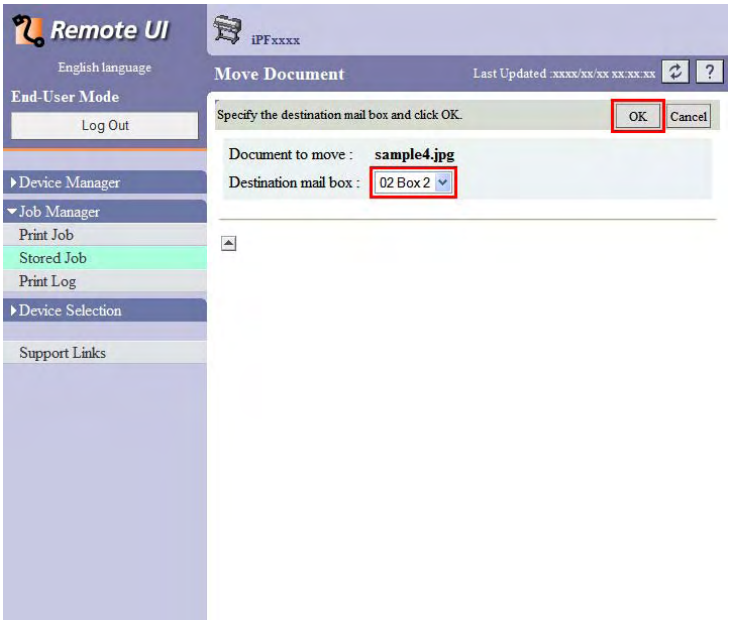


2. Select the print job in the list and click **Move**.



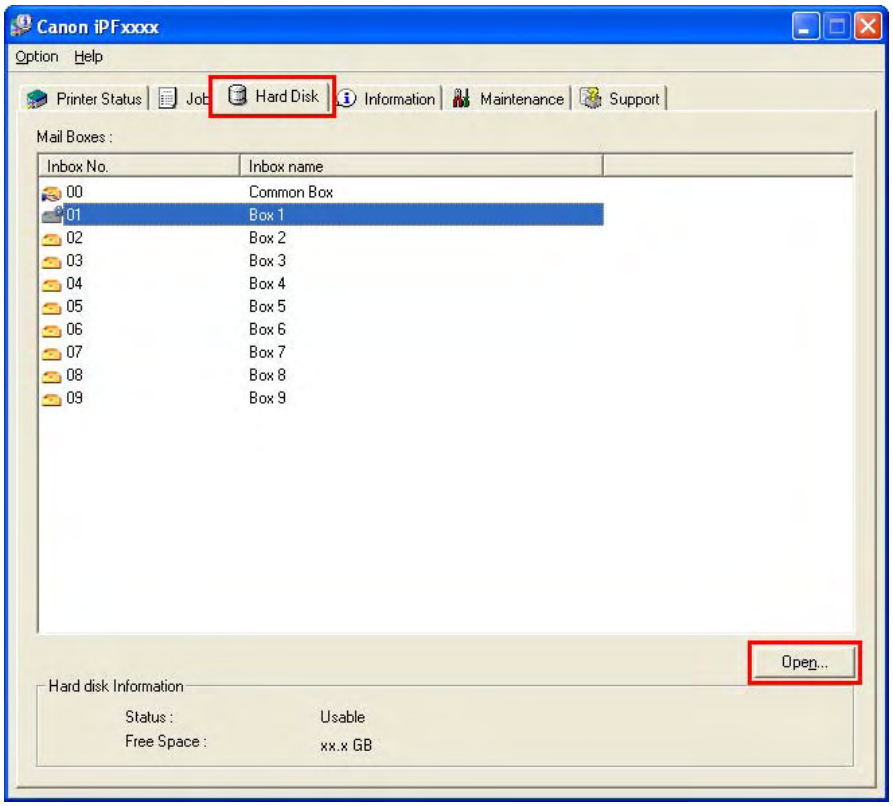
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

3. On the **Move Document** page, select the name or number of the destination Personal Box in the **Destination mail box** list and click **OK**.



For details, refer to the RemoteUI help.
(Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor)

1. On the **Hard Disk** sheet, select a mail box in the list and click **Open**.

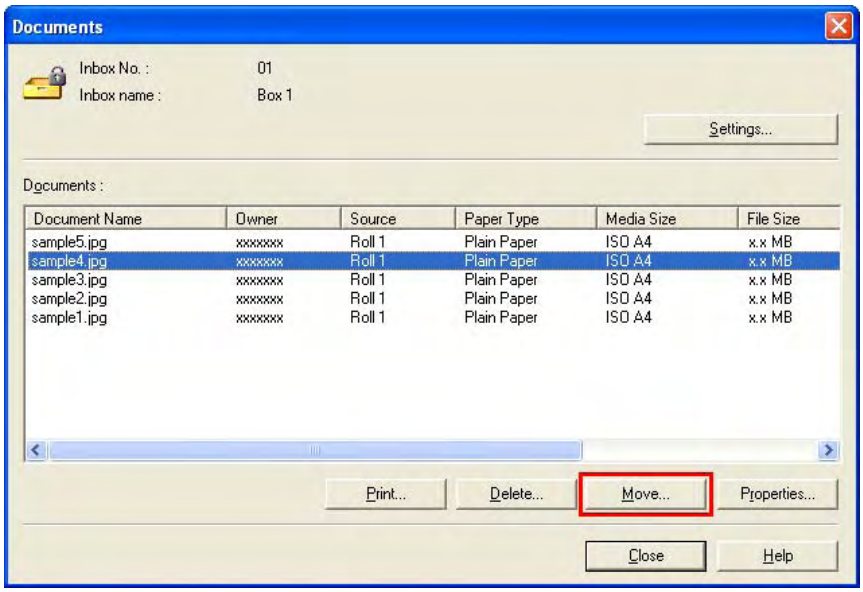


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

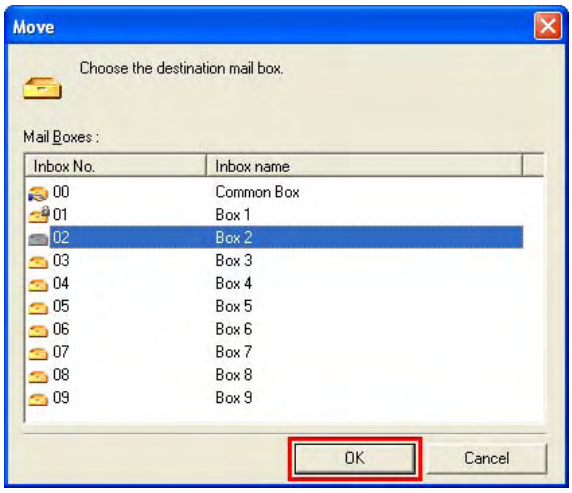
Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.

2. In the **Documents** dialog box, select the print job in the list and click **Move**.


Documents
Inbox No. : 01
Inbox name : Box 1
Settings...
Documents :
Document Name | Owner | Source | Paper Type | Media Size | File Size
sample5.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
sample4.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
sample3.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
sample2.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
sample1.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
Print...
Delete...
Move...
Properties...
Close
Help

3. In the **Move** dialog box, select the destination Personal Box and click **OK**.

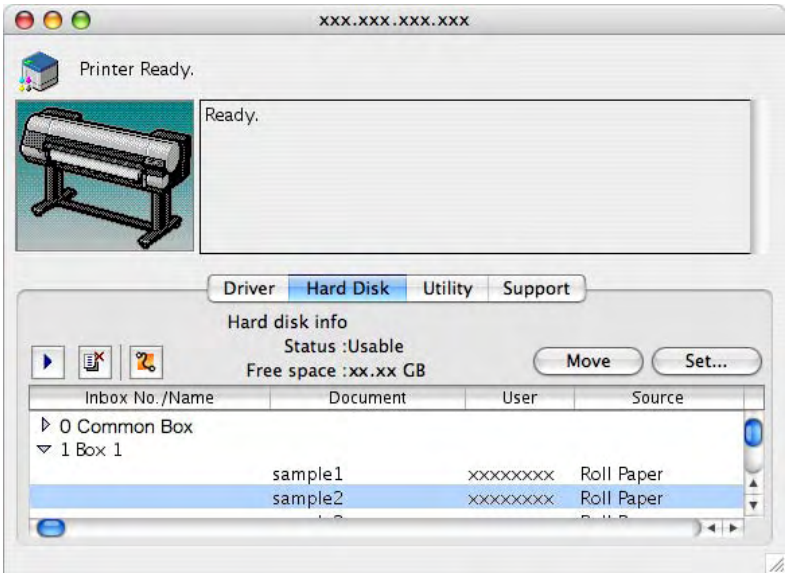


For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

(Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor)

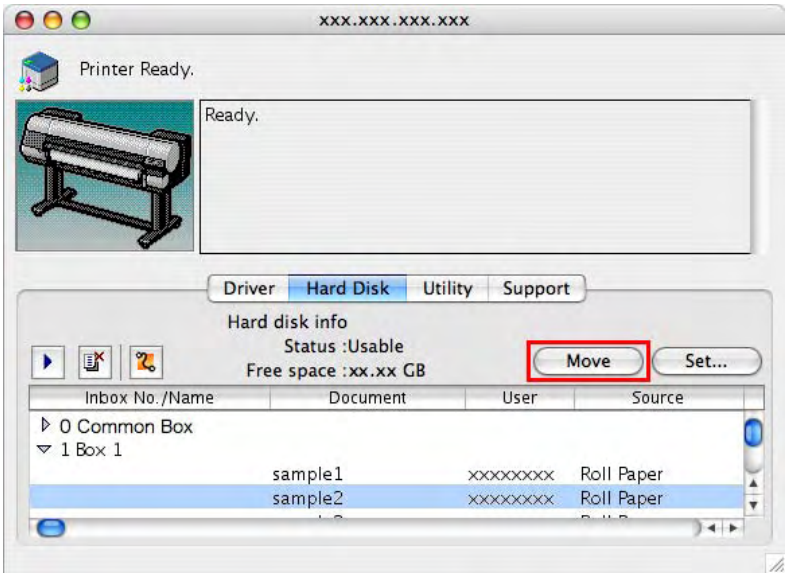
1. On the **Hard Disk** pane, click "►" next to **Inbox No./Name** to list saved jobs.



Note

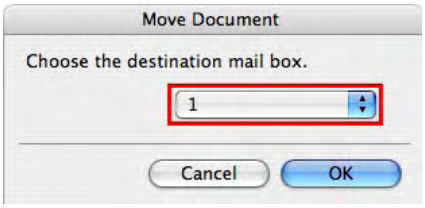
- Enter a password if one has been set.

2. Select the saved job in the list and click **Move**.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

3. In the **Move Document** dialog box, select the destination Personal Box and click **OK**.



For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

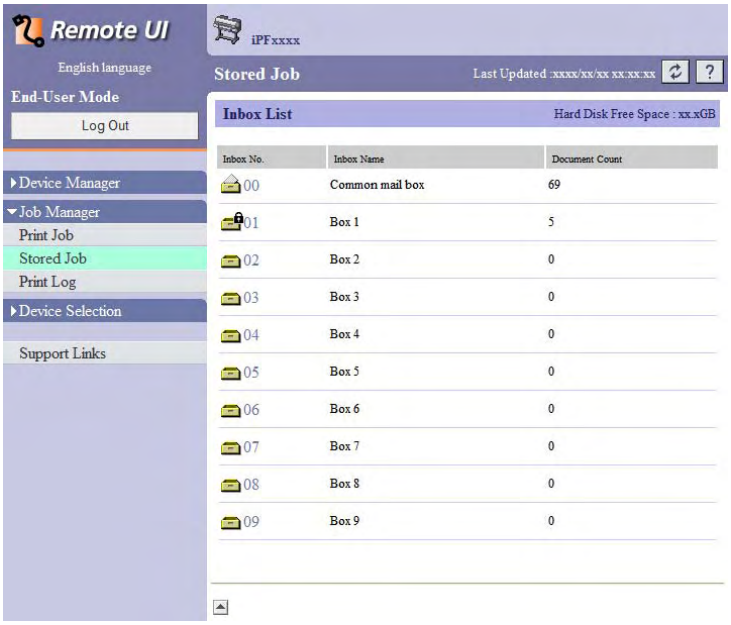
Displaying details of saved jobs

You can view details of stored print jobs as follows.

- Using RemoteUI
- Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor
- Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor

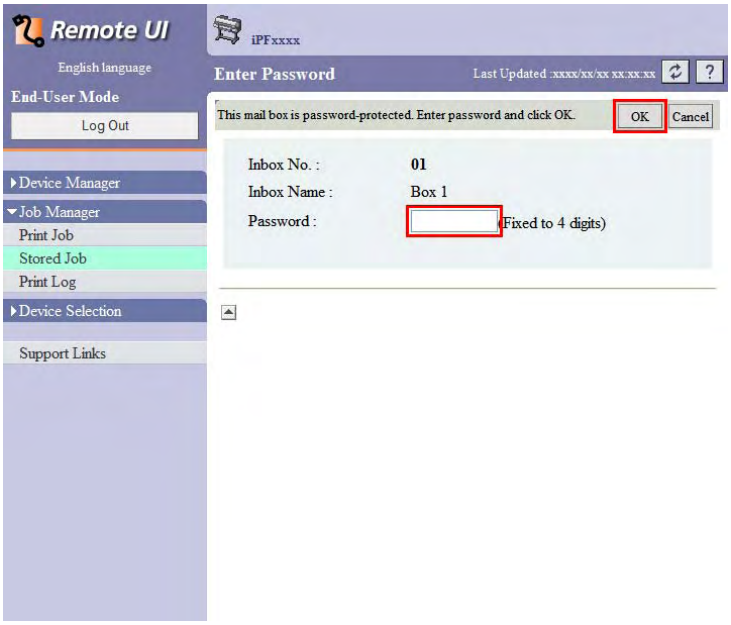
(Using RemoteUI)

1. On the **Stored Job** page, choose the mail box.



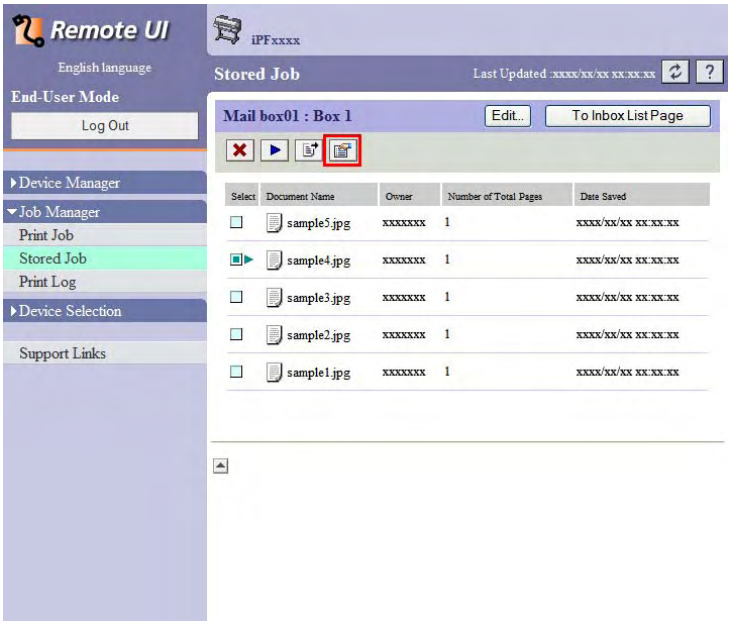
Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.

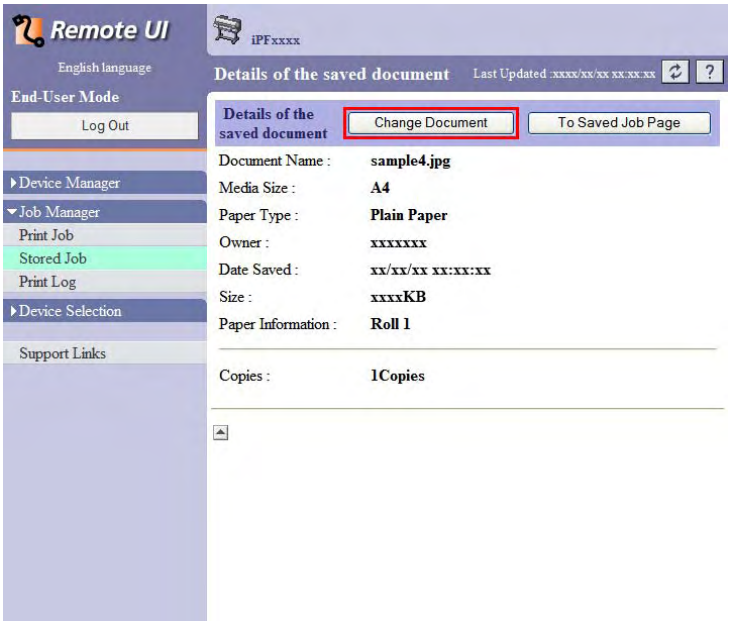


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

2. Select the saved job in the list and click **Details**.



The **Details of the saved document** page is displayed.

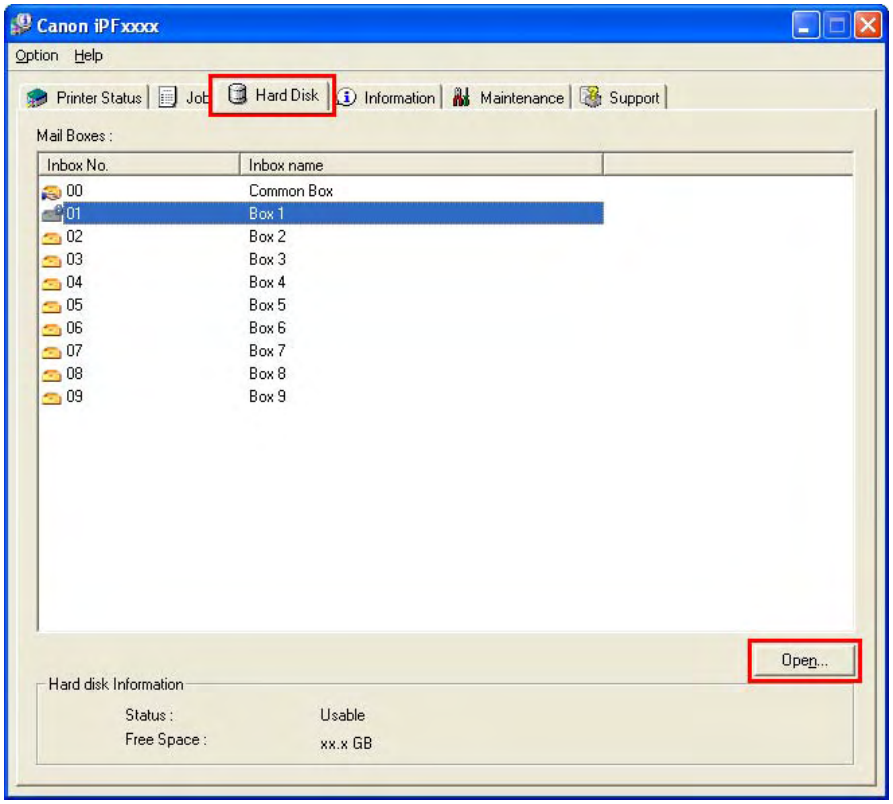


For details, refer to the RemoteUI help.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

(Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor)

1. On the **Hard Disk** sheet, select a mail box in the list and click **Open**.

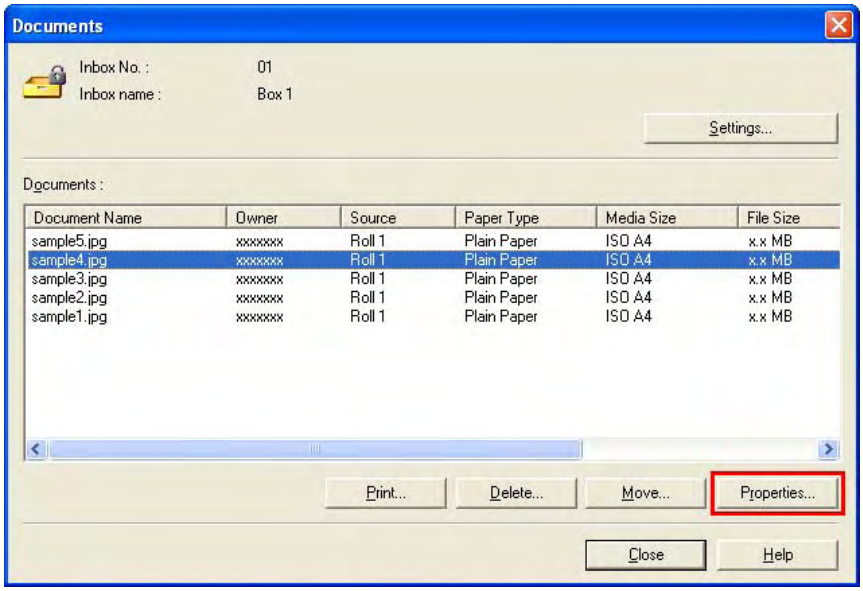


Note

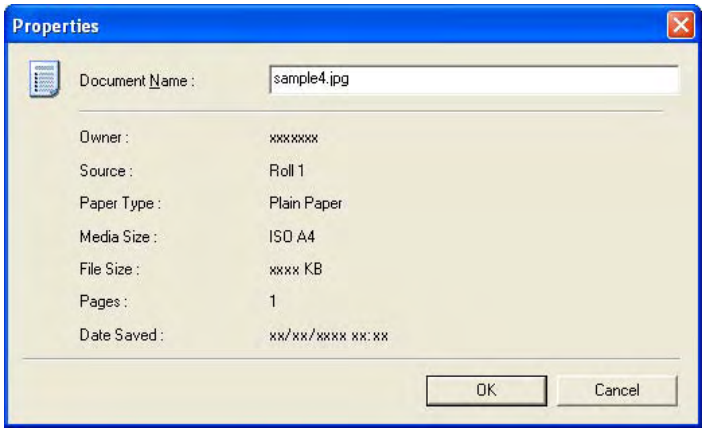
- Enter a password if one has been set.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

2. In the **Documents** dialog box, select the saved job in the list and click **Properties**.


Documents
Inbox No. : 01
Inbox name : Box 1
Settings...
Documents :
Document Name | Owner | Source | Paper Type | Media Size | File Size
sample5.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
sample4.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
sample3.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
sample2.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
sample1.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
Print...
Delete...
Move...
Properties...
Close
Help

The **Properties** dialog box is displayed.

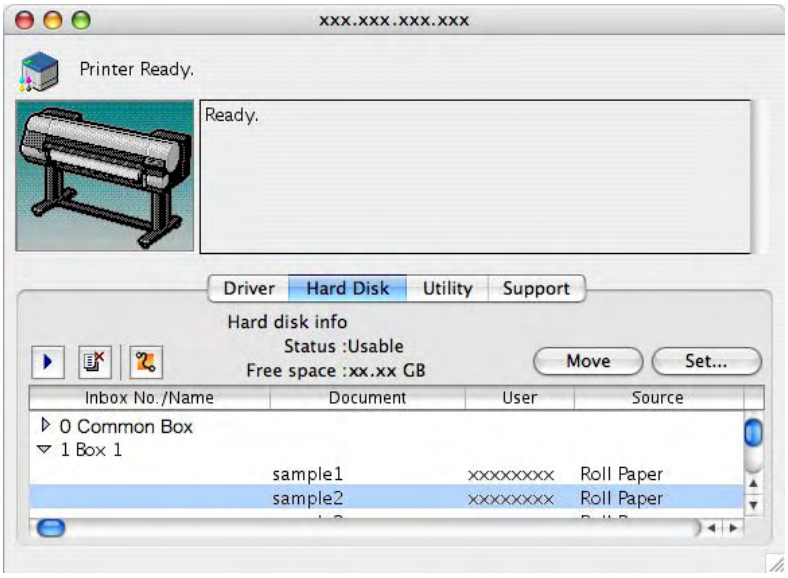


For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

(Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor)

1. On the **Hard Disk** pane, click ► next to **Inbox No./Name** to list saved jobs.



Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.

For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

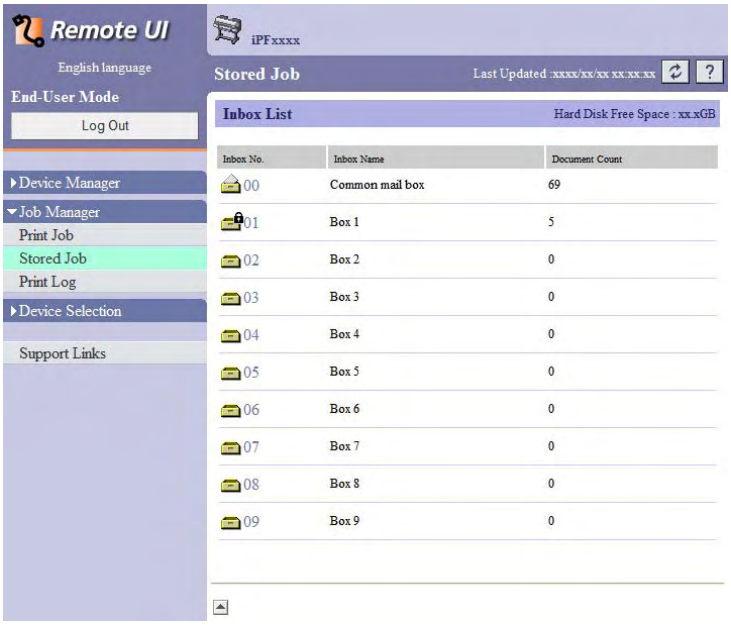
Renaming saved jobs

You can rename stored print jobs as follows.

- Using RemoteUI
- Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor
- Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor

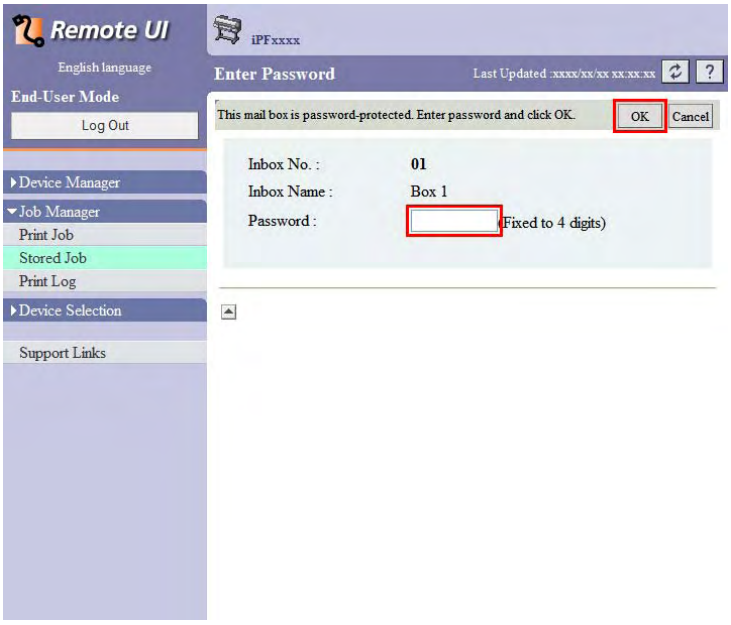
(Using RemoteUI)

1. On the **Stored Job** page, choose the mail box.



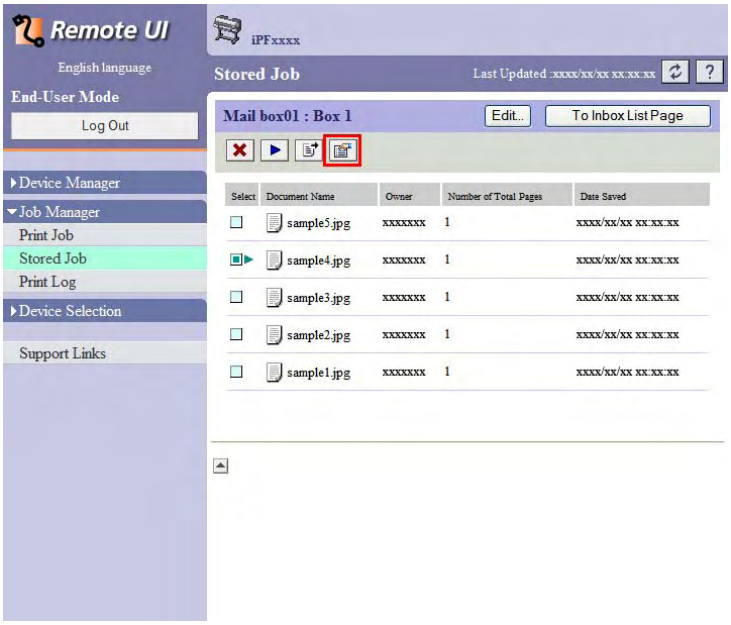
Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.

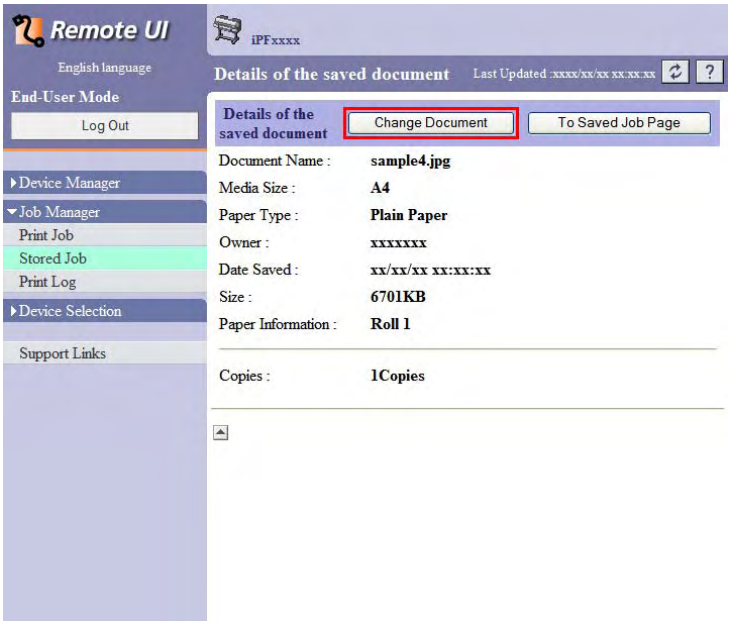


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

2. Select the saved job in the list and click **Details**.

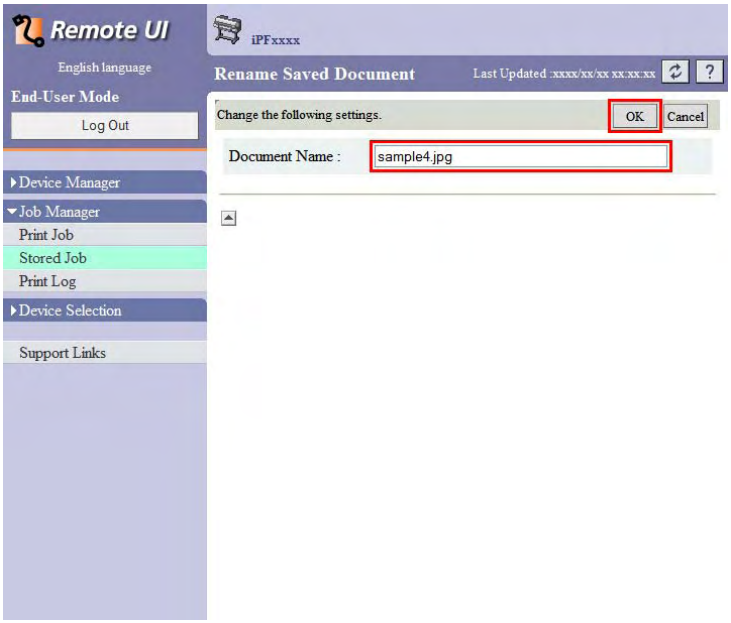


3. On the **Details of the saved document** page, click **Change Document**.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

4. On the **Rename Saved Document** page, enter the new job name in **Document Name** and click **OK**.

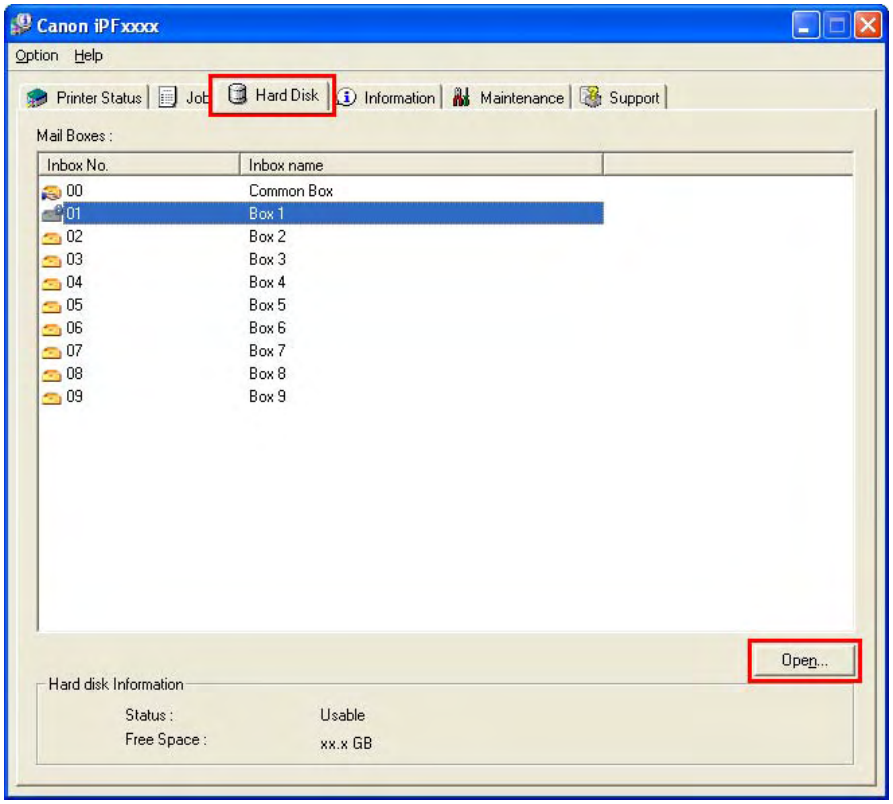


For details, refer to the RemoteUI help.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

(Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor)

1. On the **Hard Disk** sheet, select a mail box in the list and click **Open**.

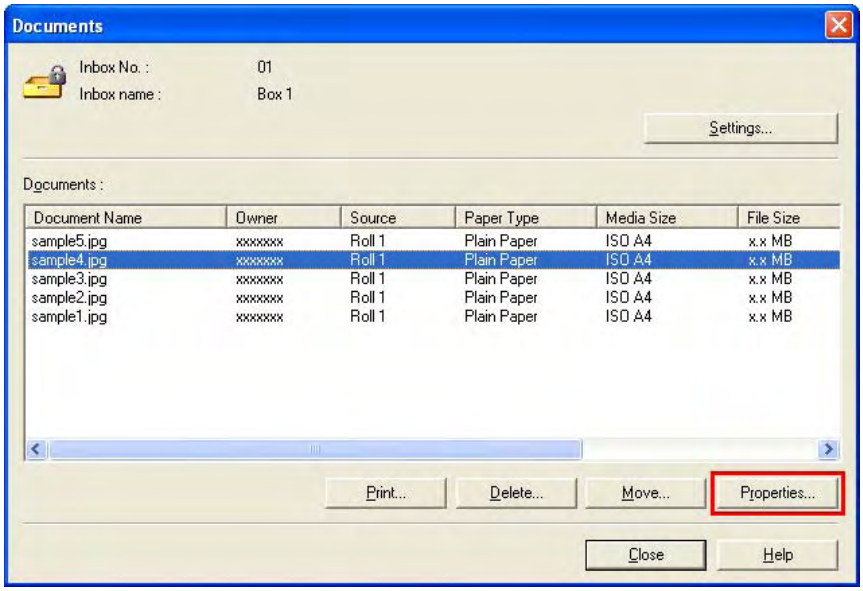


Note

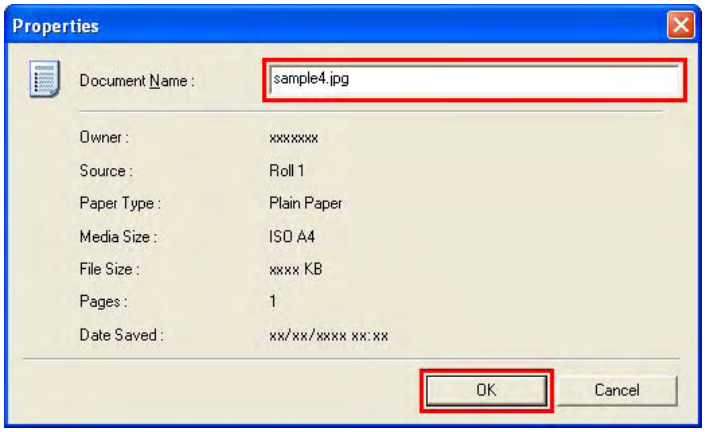
- Enter a password if one has been set.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

2. In the **Documents** dialog box, select the saved job in the list and click **Properties**.


Documents
Inbox No. : 01
Inbox name : Box 1
Settings...
Documents :
Document Name | Owner | Source | Paper Type | Media Size | File Size
sample5.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
sample4.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
sample3.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
sample2.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
sample1.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
Print...
Delete...
Move...
Properties...
Close
Help

3. In the **Properties** dialog box, enter the job name and click **OK**.

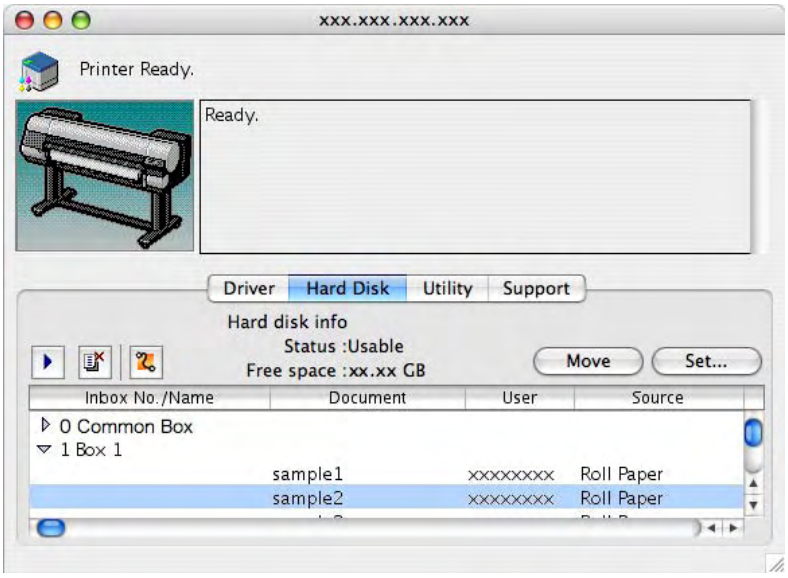


For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

(Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor)

1. On the **Hard Disk** pane, click ► next to **Inbox No./Name** to list saved jobs.

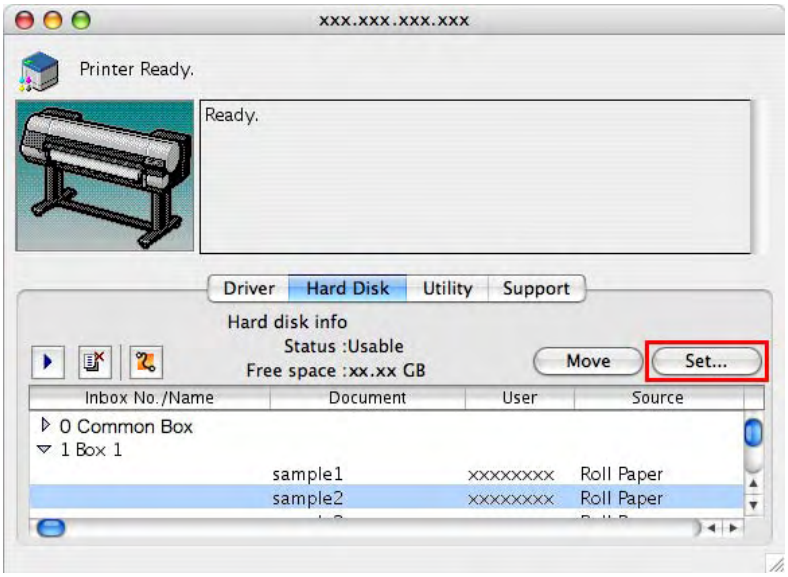


Note

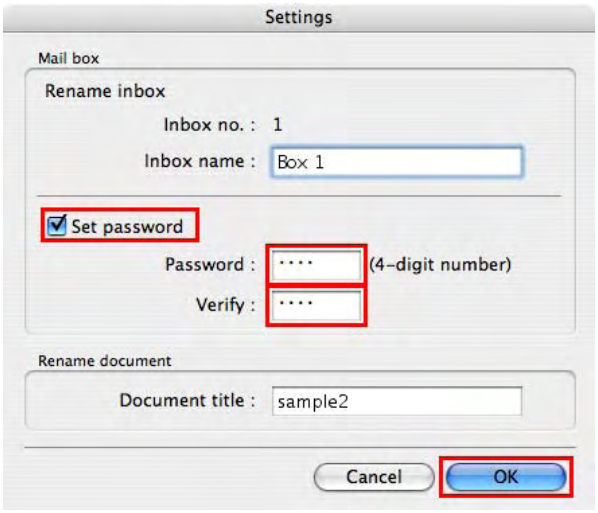
- Enter a password if one has been set.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

2. Select the saved job in the list and click **Settings**.



3. In the **Settings** dialog box, enter the new job name and click **OK**.
Documents cannot be renamed unless a password has been set. In this case, specify a password. After renaming, you can cancel the password as needed.



For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Deleting Saved Jobs

You can delete saved jobs in the Common Box or Personal Boxes.
You can delete stored print jobs as follows.

- Using the Control Panel
- Using RemoteUI
- Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)
- Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh)

Using the Control Panel

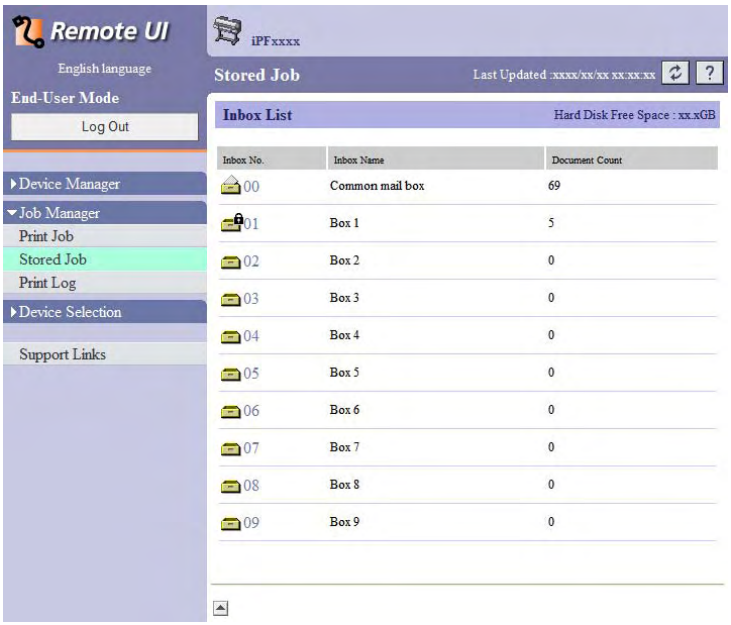
1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Delete the saved job.
   - To delete saved jobs in the Common Box
     1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Job Management**, and then press the ► button.
     2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Com. BOX Ope.**, and then press the ► button.
     3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Job List**, and then press the ► button.
     4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the saved job to delete, and then press the ► button.
     5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Delete**, and then press the ► button.
     6. Confirm the print job for deletion and press the **OK** button.
   - To delete saved jobs in Personal Boxes
     1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Job Management**, and then press the ► button.
     2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Psnl. BOX Ope.**, and then press the ► button.
     3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the folder, and then press the ► button.
     4. Enter a password if one has been set, and then press the ► button.
     5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Job List**, and then press the ► button.
     6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the saved job to delete, and then press the ► button.
     7. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Delete**, and then press the ► button.
     8. Confirm the print job for deletion and press the **OK** button.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

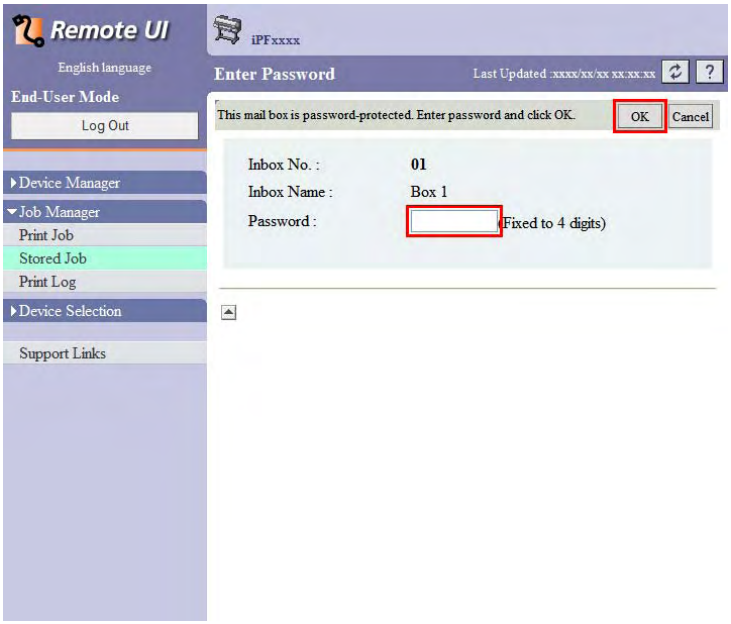
Using RemoteUI

1. On the **Stored Job** page, choose the mail box.



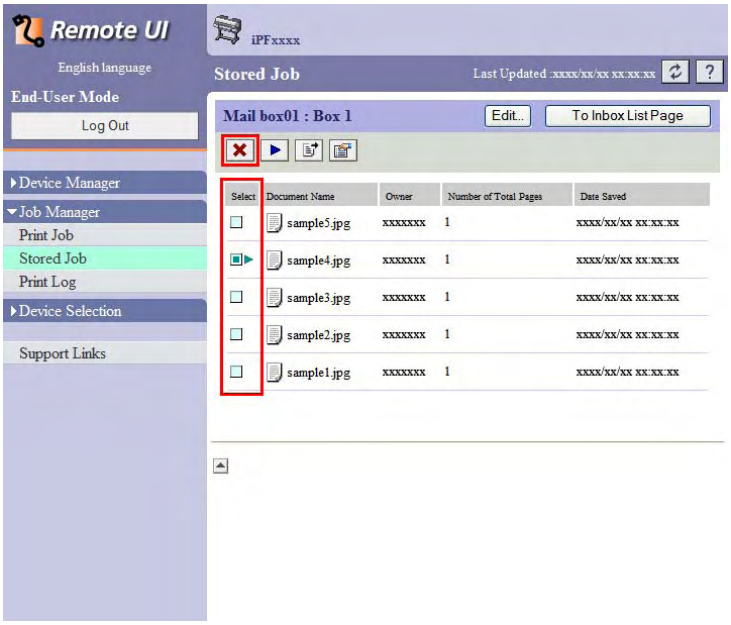
Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

2. Select the saved job in the list and click **Delete**.

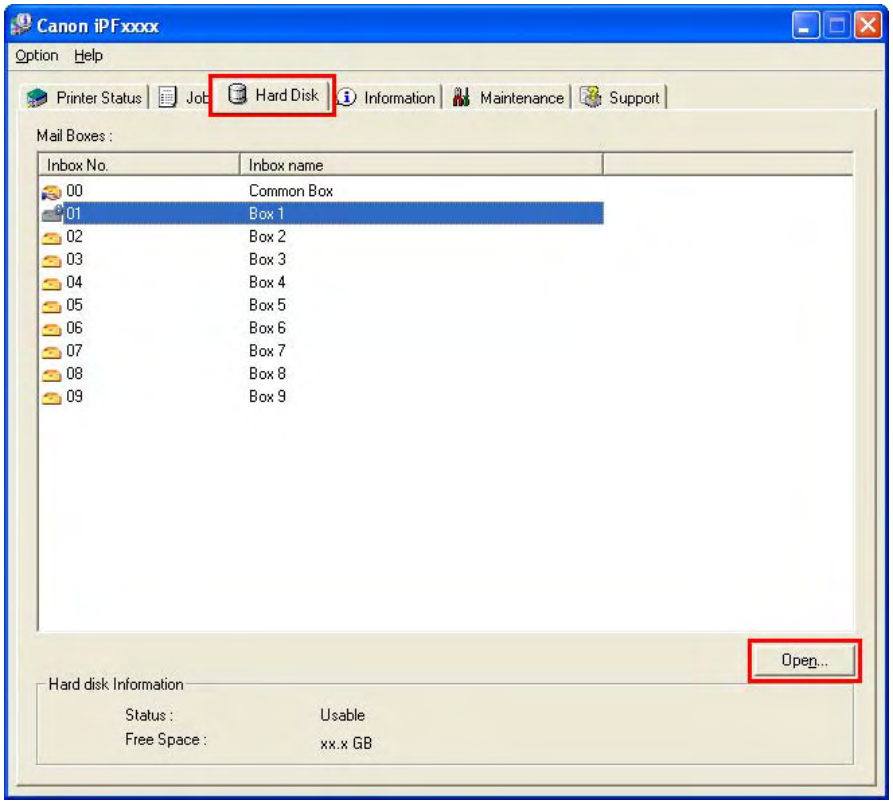


For details, refer to the RemoteUI help.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor

1. On the **Hard Disk** sheet, select a mail box in the list and click **Open**.

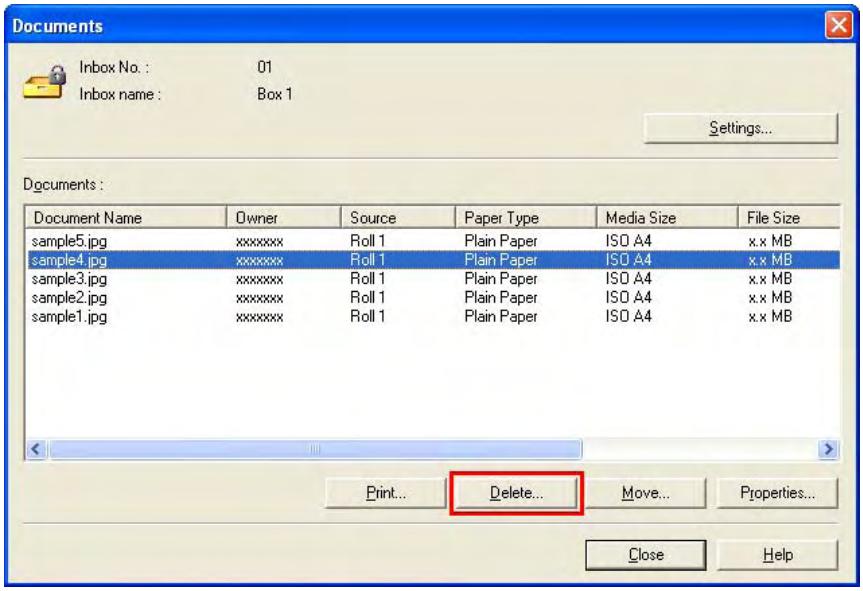


Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

2. In the **Documents** dialog box, select the print job in the list and click **Delete**.

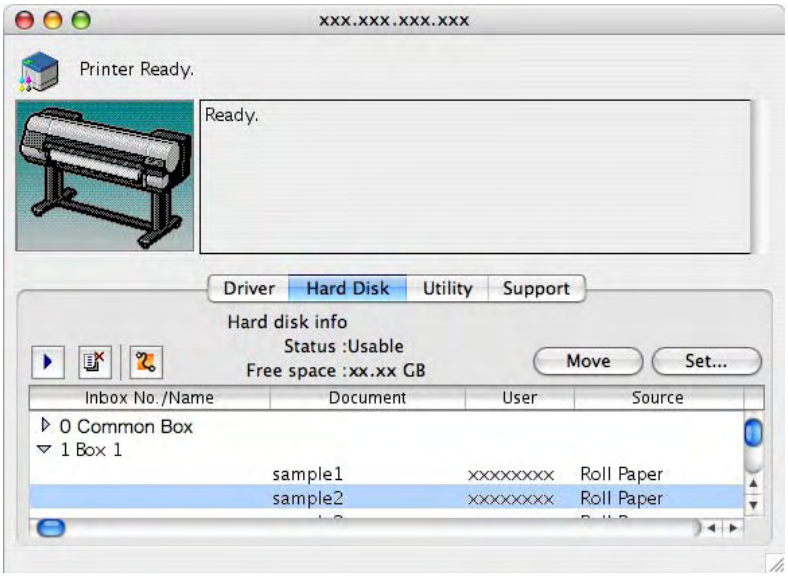

Documents
Inbox No. : 01
Inbox name : Box 1
Settings...
Documents :
Document Name | Owner | Source | Paper Type | Media Size | File Size
sample5.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
sample4.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
sample3.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
sample2.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
sample1.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
Print...
Delete...
Move...
Properties...
Close
Help

For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor

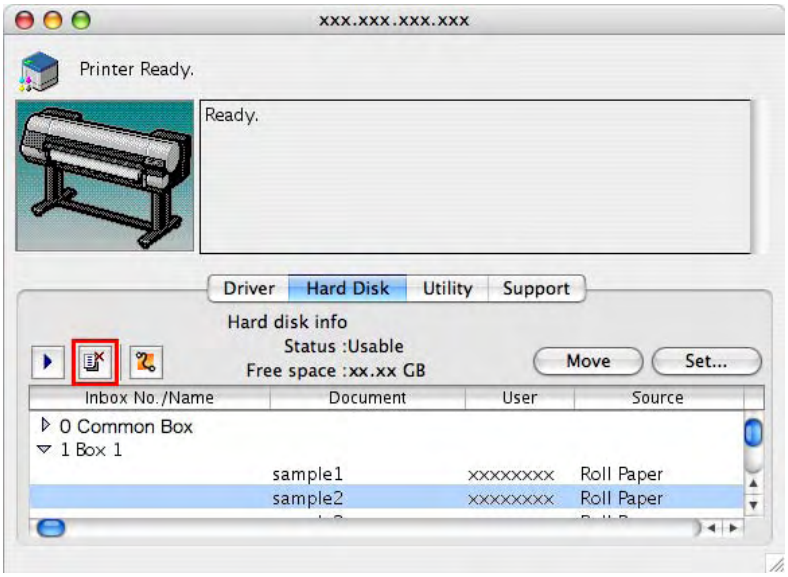
1. On the **Hard Disk** pane, click ► next to **Inbox No./Name** to list saved jobs.



Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.

2. Select the saved job in the list and click **Delete**.

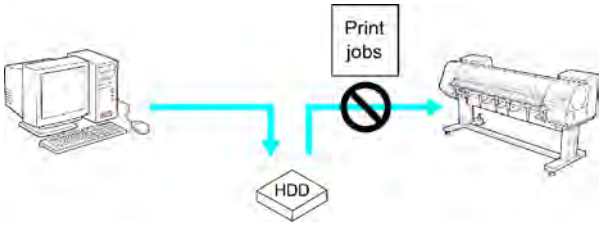


For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help.

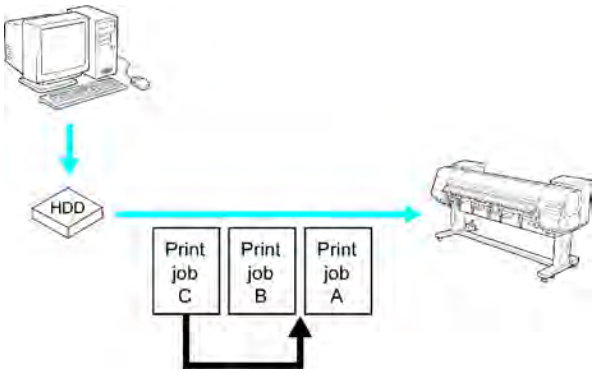
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Modifying the Current Job (Deleting or Preempting Other Jobs)

You can delete jobs that are currently being printed.



You can also select queued jobs and give them first priority, to print them before other jobs.



Note

- You cannot preempt queued jobs with jobs that are currently being saved, printed, or deleted.

You can modify current print jobs as follows.

- Using the Control Panel
- Using RemoteUI
- Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)
- Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

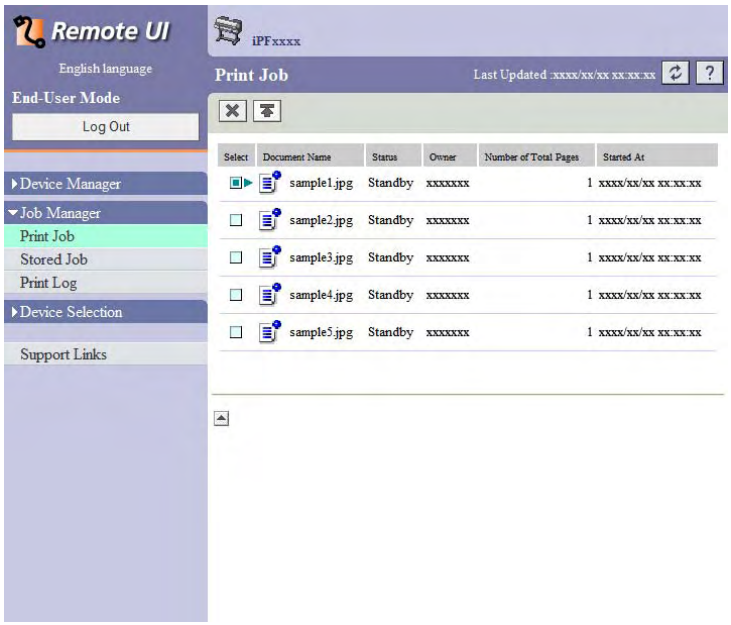
Using the Control Panel

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Modify the job currently being printed.
   - Deleting jobs currently being printed
     1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Job Management**, and then press the ► button.
     2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Job Queue Ope.**, and then press the ► button.
     3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the print job to delete, and then press the ► button.
     4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Delete**, and then press the **OK** button.
   - Changing the order of printing
     1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Job Management**, and then press the ► button.
     2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Job Queue Ope.**, and then press the ► button.
     3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the job to print first, and then press the ► button.
     4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Priority**, and then press the **OK** button.

Using RemoteUI

On the **Print Job** page, select the job to modify and how to modify it. For details, refer to the RemoteUI help.

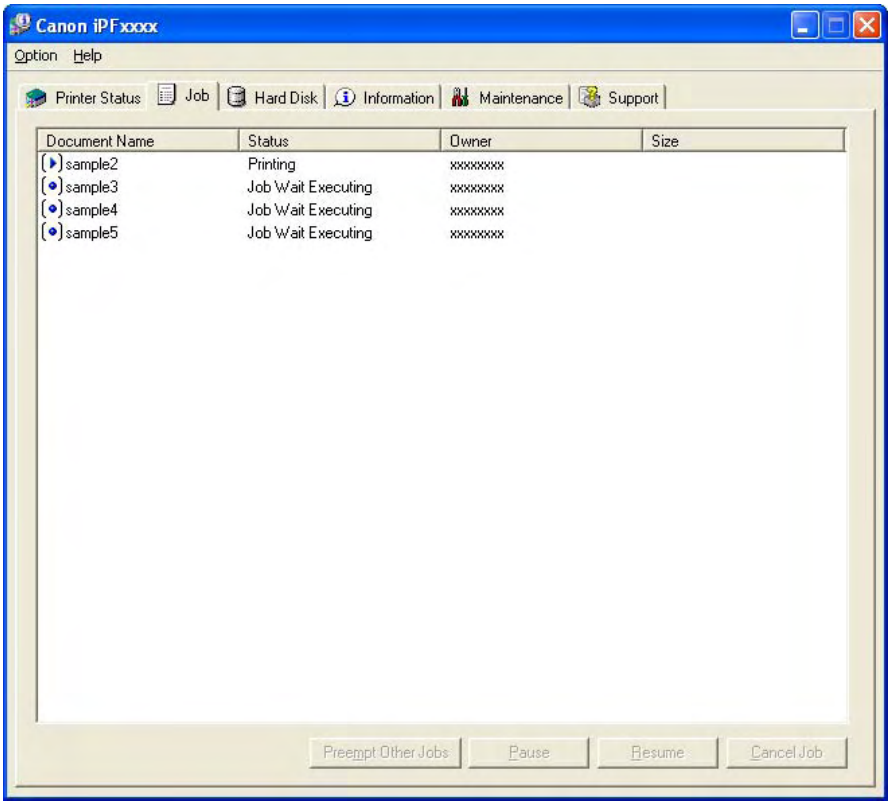


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor

On the **Job** sheet, select the job and the desired function. The following functions are available.

- Preempting other jobs
- Pausing printing
- Resuming printing
- Canceling print jobs



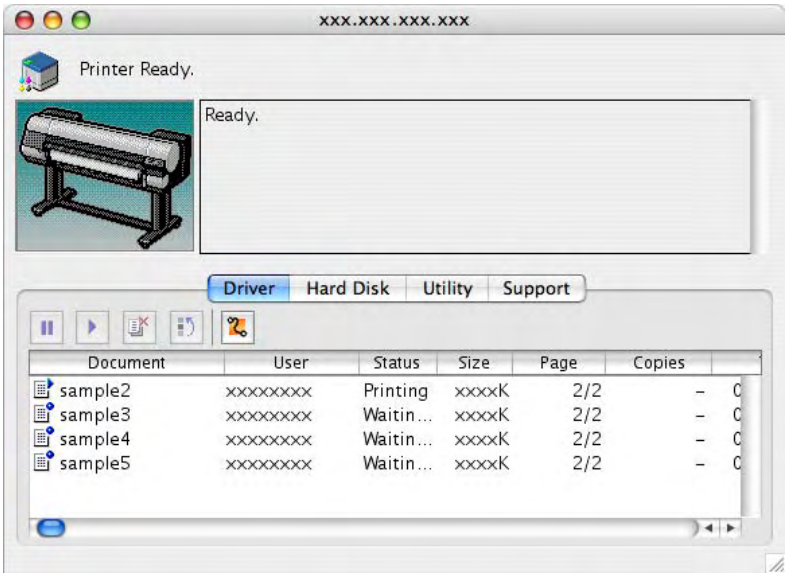
For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor

On the **Driver** pane, select the job and the desired function. The following functions are available.

- Preempting other jobs
- Pausing printing
- Resuming printing
- Canceling print jobs



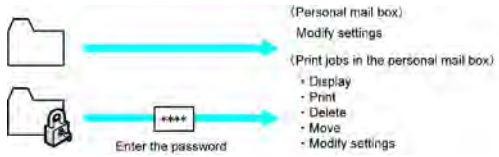
For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Modifying Personal Boxes

Setting Passwords for Personal Boxes

By factory default, no passwords are set for Personal Boxes. For greater security, you can set passwords for each Personal Box. After you set a password, it will be required to modify the Personal Box settings, as well as to display, print, delete, move, and modify jobs saved in the Personal Box.



Note

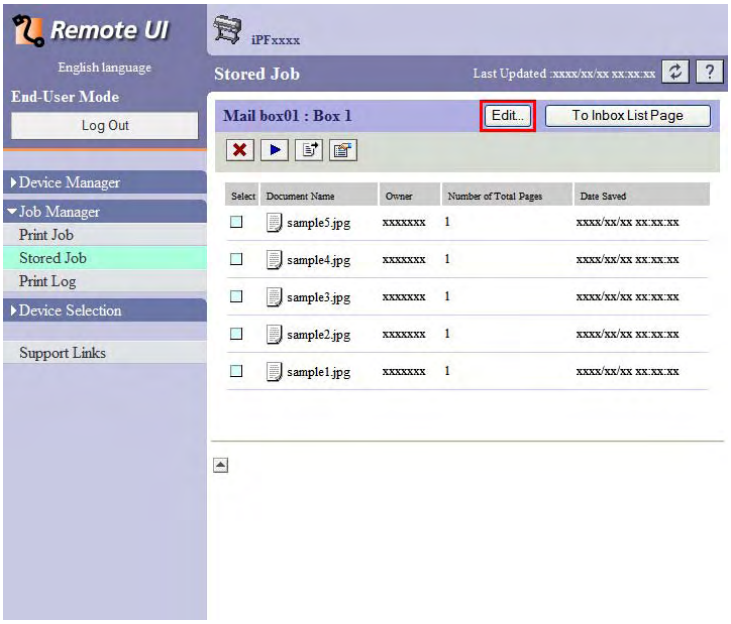
- A password cannot be set for the Common Box.
- Enter a four-digit number as the password, in the range 0001-9999.
- Even if you have set passwords, they are not required to access Personal Boxes in Administrator Mode in RemoteUI.

You can set a password for a Personal Box as follows.

- Using RemoteUI
- Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)
- Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh)

(Using RemoteUI)

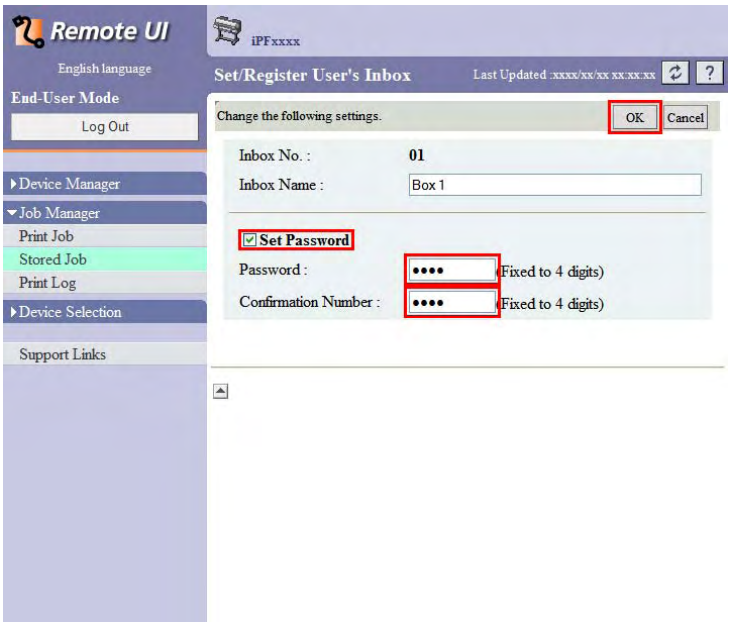
1. On the **Stored Job** page, select the Personal Box for a password.
2. Click **Edit**.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

3. In the **Set/Register User's Inbox** dialog box, specify the password and click **OK**.

- Set Password: Select the check box.
- Password: Enter the password. (This field is limited to four digits in the range 0001-9999.)
- Confirm: Re-enter the password.

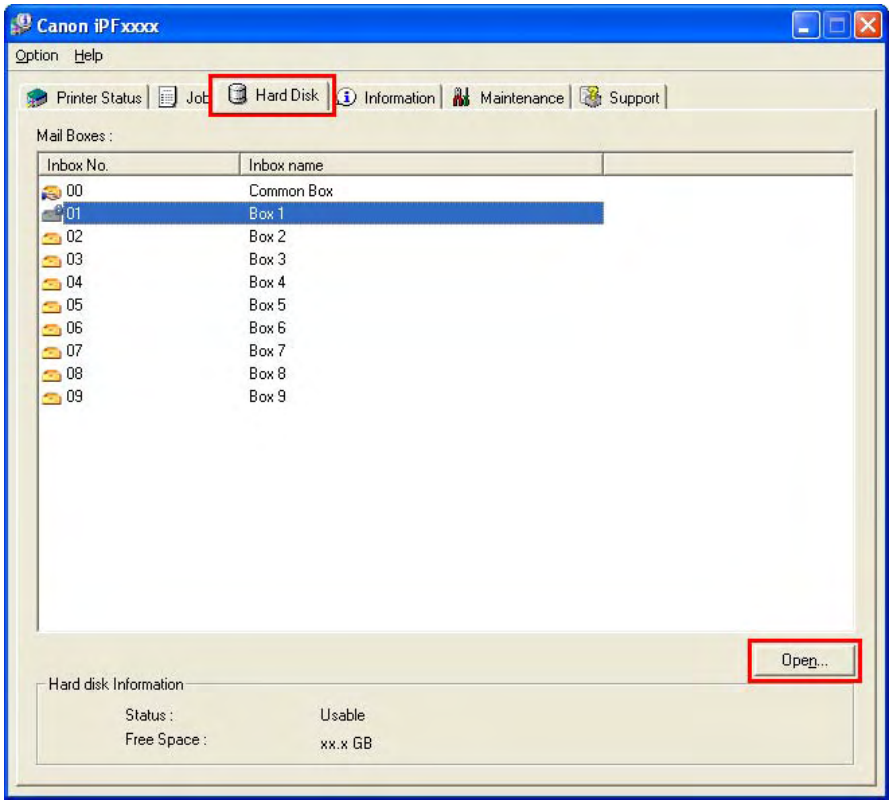


For details, refer to the RemoteUI help.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

(Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor)

1. On the **Hard Disk** sheet, select a listed Personal Box for a password and click **Open**.

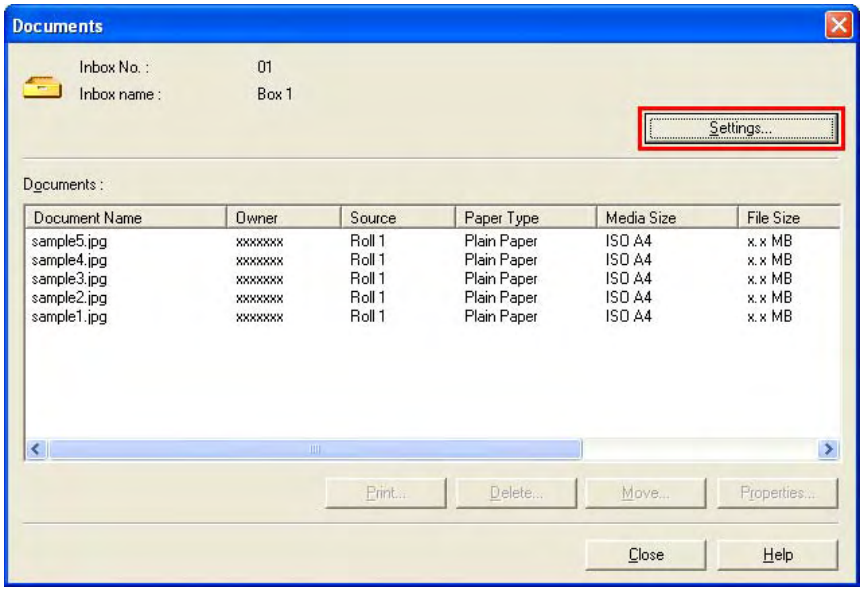


Note

- Enter a password if one has been set for the Personal Box.

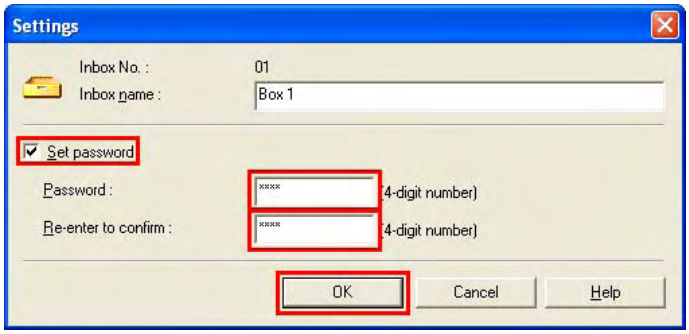
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

2. In the **Documents** dialog box, click **Settings**.


Documents
Inbox No. : 01
Inbox name : Box 1
Settings...
Documents :
Document Name | Owner | Source | Paper Type | Media Size | File Size
sample5.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
sample4.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
sample3.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
sample2.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
sample1.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
Print...
Delete...
Move...
Properties...
Close
Help

3. In the **Settings** dialog box, specify the password and click **OK**.

- Set Password: Select this check box.
- Password: Enter the password. (This field is limited to four digits in the range 0001-9999.)
- Confirmation Number: Re-enter the password.

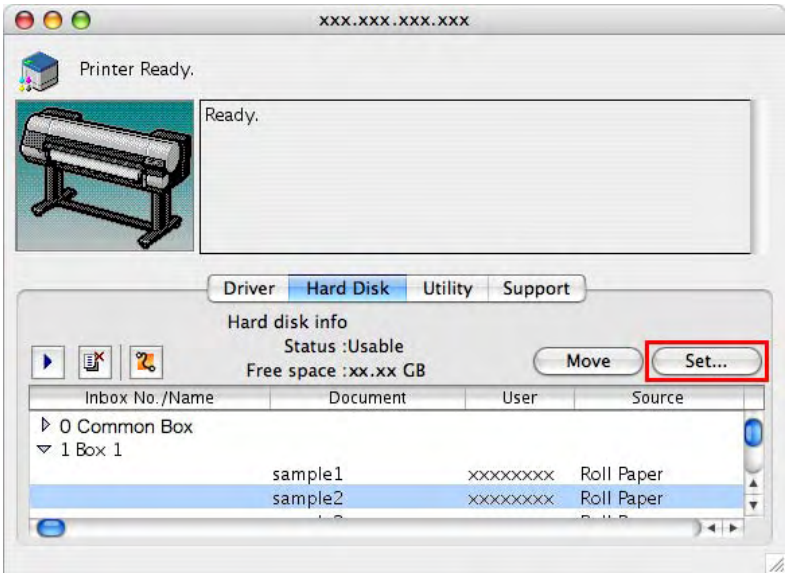


For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help.

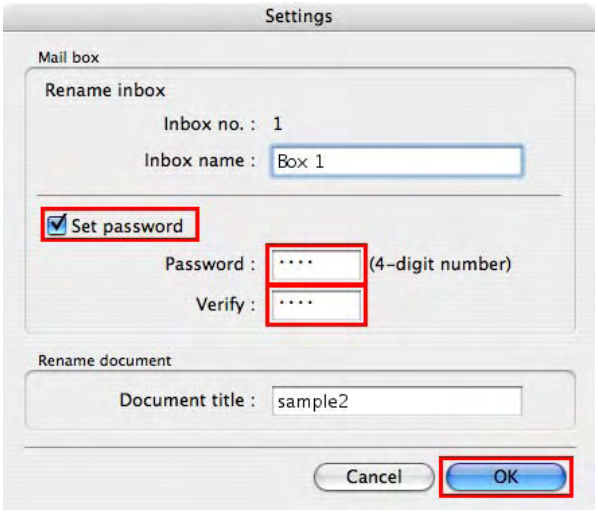
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

(Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor)

1. On the **Hard Disk** pane, click "►" next to **Inbox No./Name** to list saved jobs. Select a saved job and click **Settings**.



2. In the **Settings** dialog box, specify the password and click **OK**.
   - Set Password: Select this check box.
   - Password: Enter the password. (This field is limited to four digits in the range 0001-9999.)
   - Confirmation Number: Re-enter the password.



For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

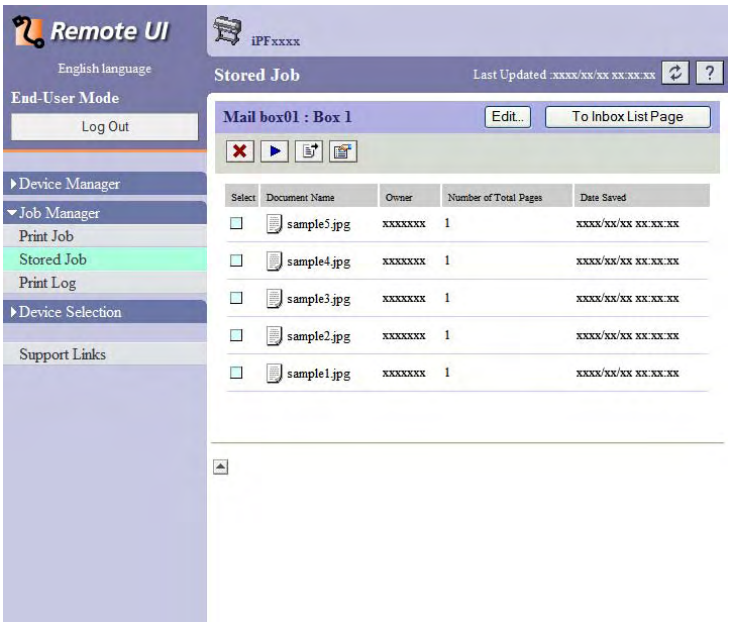
Naming Personal Boxes

By factory default, Personal Boxes are unnamed. You can name them for easier management. You can assign a name to a Personal Box as follows.

- RemoteUI
- imagePROGRAF Status Monitor
- imagePROGRAF Printmonitor

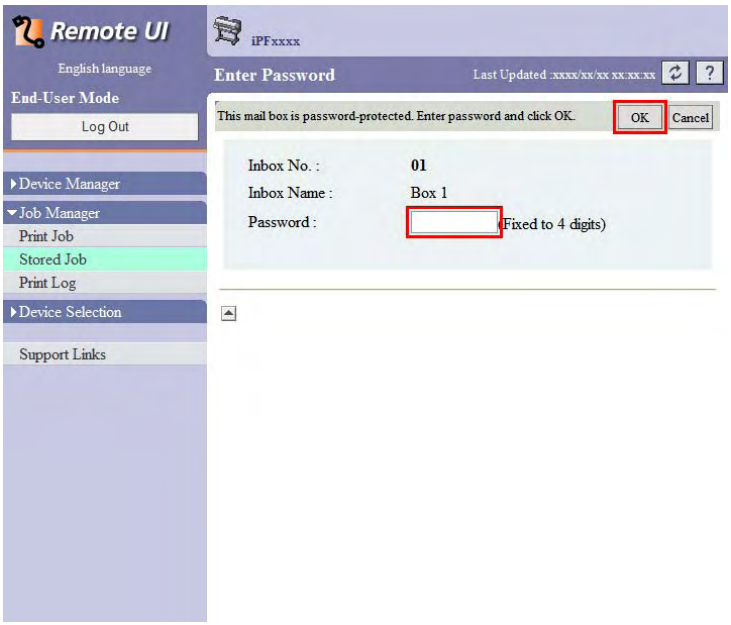
(Using RemoteUI)

1. On the **Stored Job** page, select the Personal Box to identify.



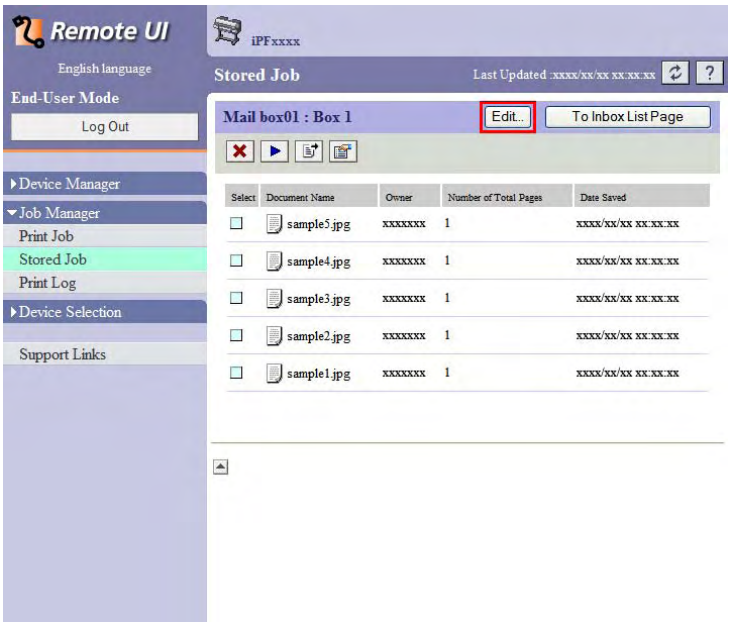
Note

- Enter a password if one has been set for the Personal Box.

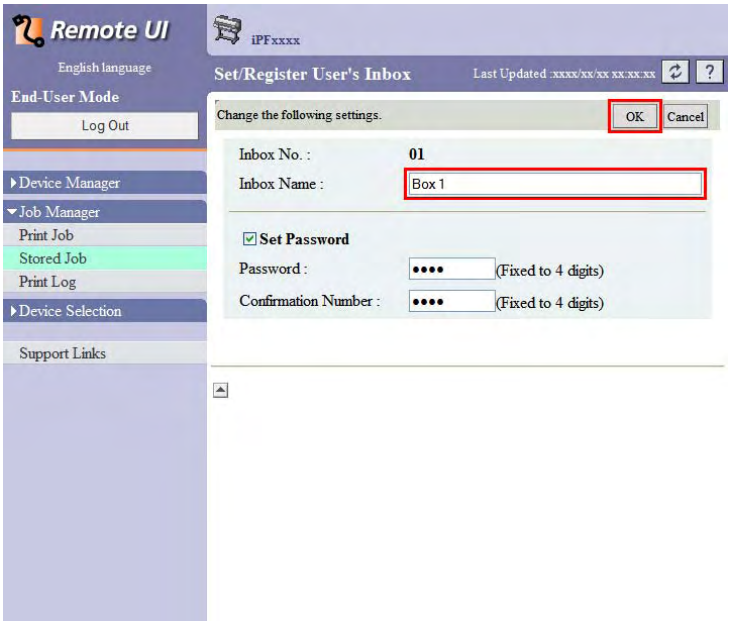


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

2. Click **Edit**.



3. In the **Set/Register User's Inbox** dialog box, enter the Personal Box name in **Inbox Name** and click **OK**.

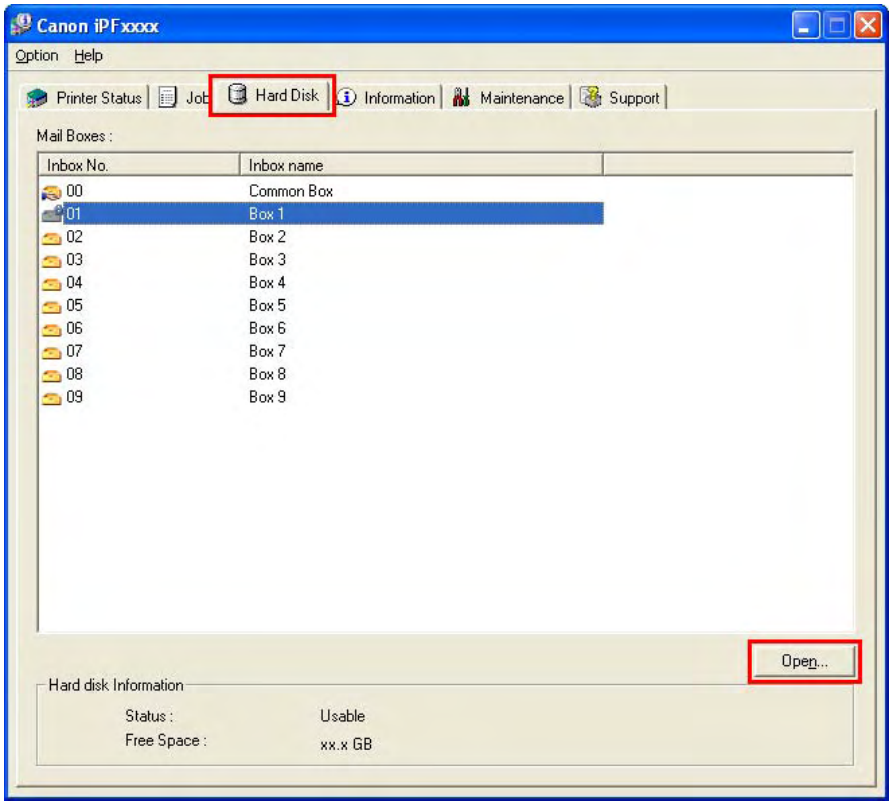


For details, refer to the RemoteUI help.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

(Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor)

1. On the **Hard Disk** sheet, select a listed Personal Box to identify and click **Open**.

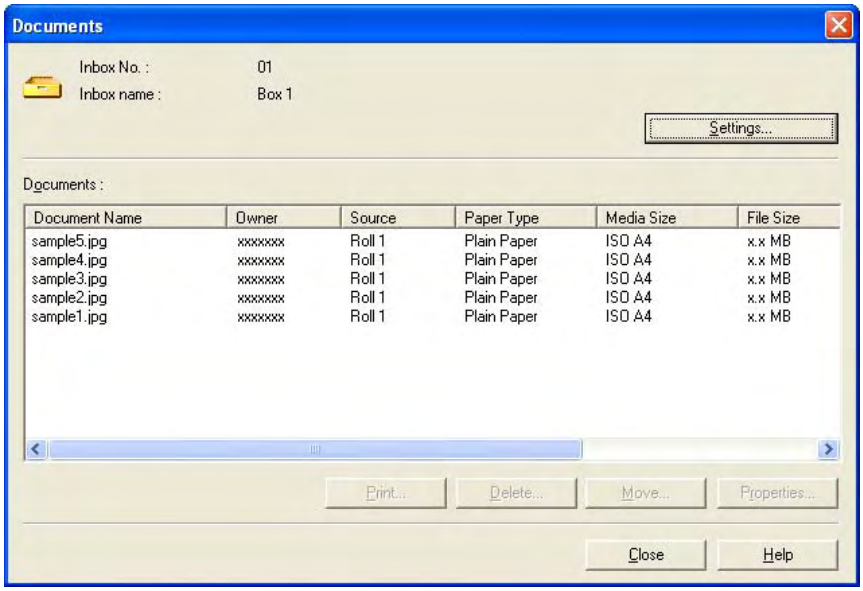


Note

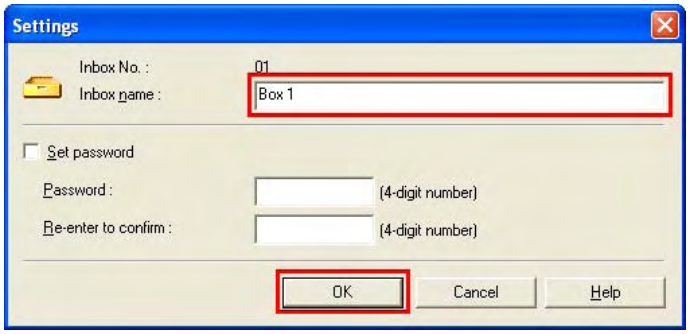
- Enter a password if one has been set for the Personal Box.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

2. In the **Documents** dialog box, click **Settings**.


Documents
Inbox No. : 01
Inbox name : Box 1
Settings...
Documents :
Document Name | Owner | Source | Paper Type | Media Size | File Size
sample5.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
sample4.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
sample3.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
sample2.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
sample1.jpg | xxxxxxx | Roll 1 | Plain Paper | ISO A4 | x.x MB
Print...
Delete...
Move...
Properties...
Close
Help

3. In the **Settings** dialog box, enter the Personal Box name and click **OK**.

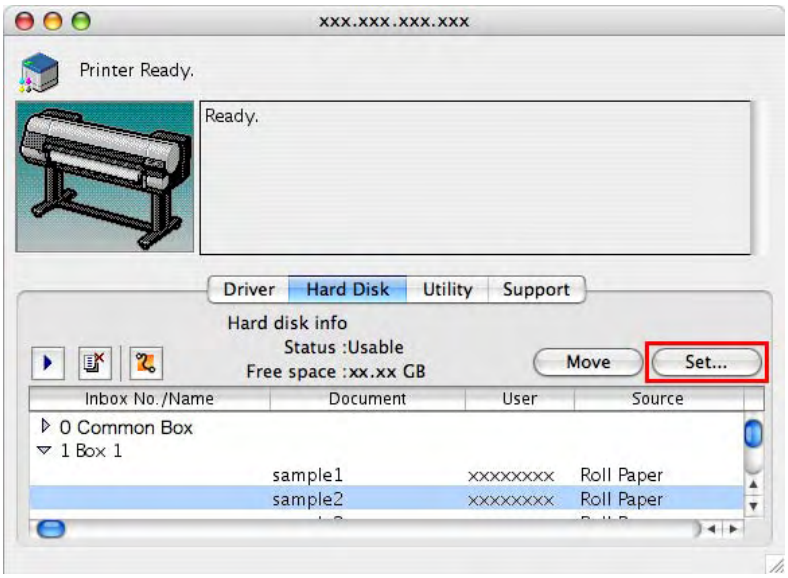


For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help.

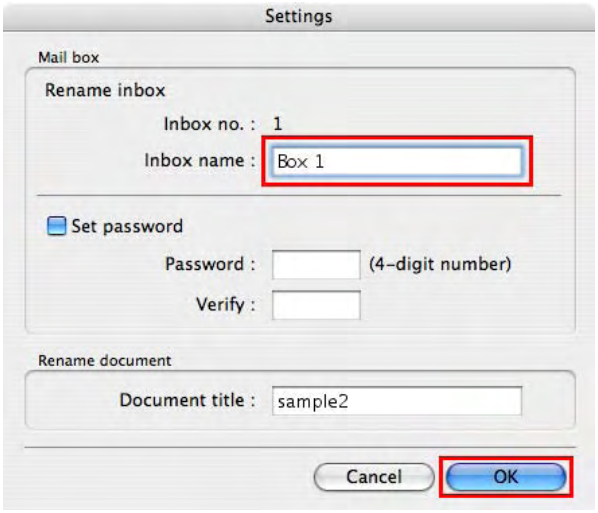
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

(Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor)

1. On the **Hard Disk** pane, click "►" next to **Inbox No./Name** to list saved jobs. Select a saved job and click **Settings**.



2. In the **Settings** dialog box, enter the Personal Box name and click **OK**.



For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Checking the Free Hard Disk Space

You can check the space available on the printer's hard disk as follows.

- Using the Control Panel
- Using RemoteUI
- Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)
- Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh)

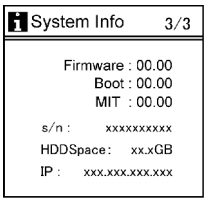
Using the Control Panel

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Information**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **HDD Information**, and then press the ► button.

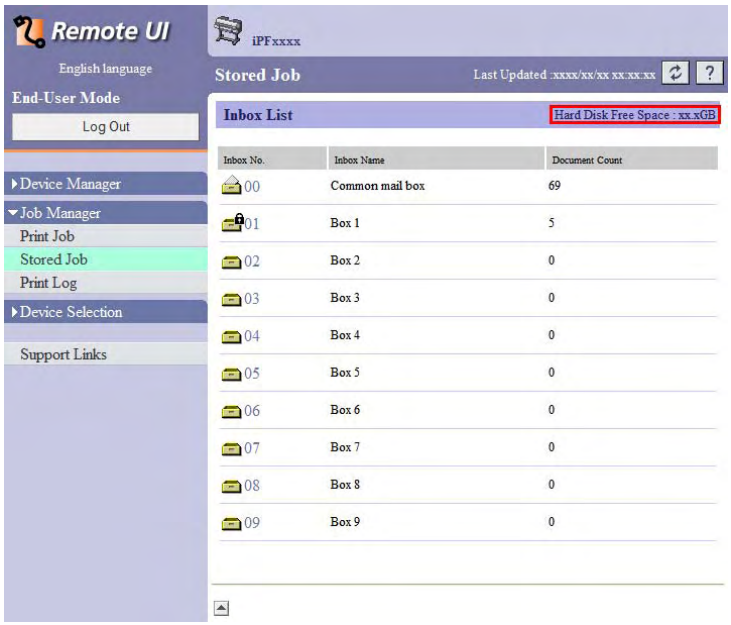
Note

- You can also check the free hard disk space by pressing the **Information** button three times.



Using RemoteUI

To view the box list, select **Stored Job** in Job Management. On the **Stored Job** page, the free hard disk space is shown in the upper-right corner when boxes are listed.



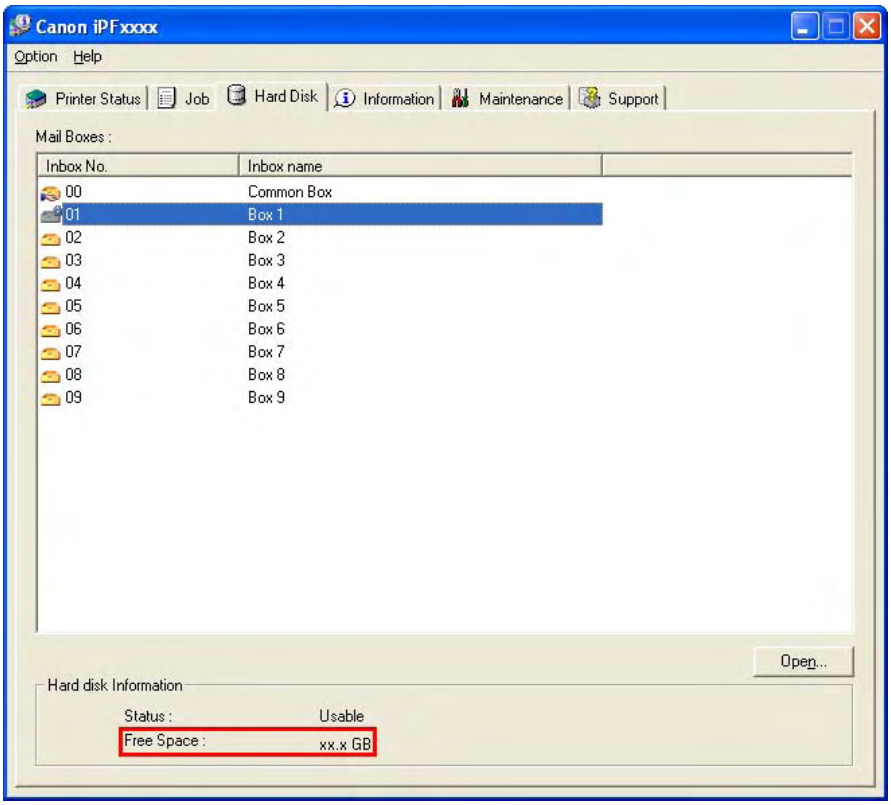
For details, refer to the RemoteUI help.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor

The **Hard Disk** sheet shows the free hard disk space.

■Hard Disk Sheet in imagePROGRAF Status Monitor



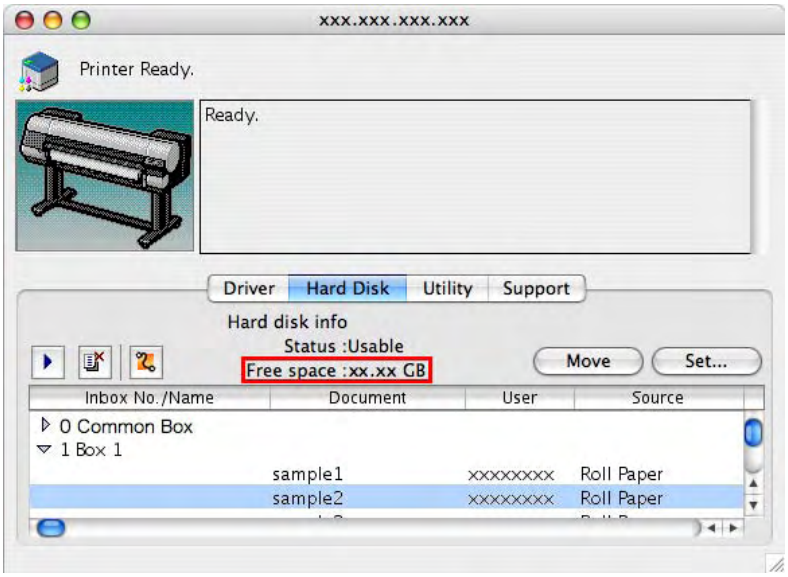
For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor

The **Hard Disk** pane shows the free hard disk space.

■Hard Disk Pane in imagePROGRAF Printmonitor



For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Erasing all data on the printer's hard disk

You can erase all data on the printer's hard disk from the Control Panel.

Note

- You cannot erase all data on the hard disk during print jobs.
- Conversely, print jobs cannot be processed during erasure of all hard disk data.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **System Setup**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Erase HDD Data**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of deletion, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.

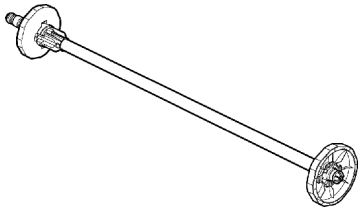
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Optional accessories

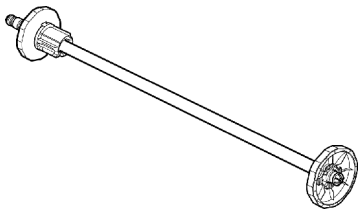
Roll Holder Set

A set of parts comprising the Roll Holder and Holder Stopper. If you want to prepare a few rolls with paper of various types and widths for different purposes, it is convenient to have several sets ready. Sets are available for 2- and 3-inch paper cores. (2-inch versions match the set included with the printer.)

- Roll Holder Set RH2-42 (for 2-inch paper cores)



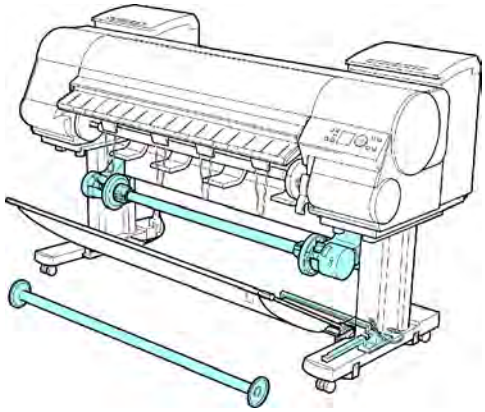
- Roll Holder Set RH3-42 (for 3-inch paper cores)



Media Take-up Unit

This unit automatically winds up printed documents.

- Media Take-up Unit TU-06



Note

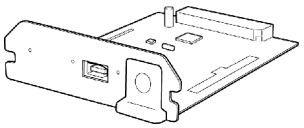
- For instructions on installing the Media Take-up Unit, refer to the Media Take-up Unit Setup Guide.
- For information on the types of paper compatible with the Media Take-up Unit, refer to the Paper Reference Guide.
- For Media Take-up Unit instructions, see “Using the Media Take-up Unit (Optional)”. (→P.230)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

IEEE 1394 (FireWire) Expansion Board

An optional interface board to add an IEEE 1394 (also called "FireWire") port.

- IEEE1394 Expansion Board EB-05
  Note that EB-04 is incompatible.



For instructions on installing the IEEE 1394 expansion board, refer to the documentation provided with the IEEE 1394 expansion board.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printer Specifications

Specifications

Important

- This information is subject to change as the printer is updated.
- The following values may vary depending on the operating environment.

Printer

Power supply		100-120 V AC (50/60 Hz), 220-240 V AC (50/60 Hz)
Power consumption	During operation	190 W max.
	Sleep mode	100-120 V: 5 W max. (10 W max. when an IEEE 1394 (FireWire) expansion board is installed.) 220-240 V: 6 W max. (11 W max. when an IEEE 1394 (FireWire) expansion board is installed.)
	Off	1 W max. (*1)
Operating noise	During operation	Approx. 50 dB (A) max. (6.6 bels or less)
	Standby	Approx. 35 dB (A) max.
Operating environment	Temperature	15-30°C (59-86°F)
	Humidity	10-80%, non-condensing
Dimensions (W × D × H)	Printer and Stand (including Roll Holder and Output Stacker)	1,893 × 975× 1,144 mm (74.5 × 38.4 × 45.0 in)
Weight	Printer and Stand (not including the Printhead and Ink Tank)	Approx. 142 kg (313.1 lb)
Space for installation (W × D × H)	Printer only	2,293 × 1,675 × 1,500 mm (90.3 × 65.9 × 59.1 in)
Applicable standards		International Energy Star Program, Law on Promoting Green Purchasing, GPN, RoHS, IT Eco Declaration, WEEE, U.S. presidential directives, J-MOSS (Green Mark)

*1: The printer uses a trace amount of power even when turned off. To stop all power consumption, turn off the printer and unplug the power cord.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing performance

Print method	Bubblejet
Maximum resolution	2400 dpi horizontally (*1) × 1200 dpi vertically
Printhead	PF-03 ×2
Number of nozzles	2,560 per color

*1: Prints with a minimum 1/2400 inch dot pitch between ink droplets.

Interface

Expansion Board Slots		1
USB 2.0(*1)	Format	Internal port
	Mode	Full-speed (12 Mbps), high-speed (480 Mbps), bulk transfer
	Connector	Series B (4-pin)
Ethernet(*2)	Format	Internal port
	Specification	IEEE 802.3 10BASE-T, IEEE 802.3u 100BASE-TX/Auto-Negotiation, IEEE 802.3x Full Duplex
	Protocols	IPX/SPX (Netware 4.2, 5.1, 6.0), SNMP, TCP/IP, AppleTalk
IEEE 1394	Format	Optional board (compatible with the expansion slot)
	Specification	IEEE 1394-1995, conforms to P1394a Specification ver. 2.0, half duplex, Data/Strb differential serial
	Transfer speed	100/200/400 Mbps
	Connector	Conforms to IEEE 1394-1995 (6-pin), no power supply

*1: Use in USB 2.0 High Speed mode requires the following environment:

- Computer: USB 2.0 High-Speed-compatible
- Operating system: Windows Server 2003/Windows XP/Windows 2000 or Mac OS X ver. 10.3.3 or later
- USB 2.0 driver: Microsoft USB 2.0 driver (available from Windows Update or the Service Pack.)
- USB cable: Certified USB 2.0 cable

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Ink

Ink Tank	MBK Ink Tank (Matte Black Ink , or black ink for matte paper)	Pigment ink	PFI-302MBK (330 ml [11.2 fl oz]) or PFI-702MBK (700 ml [23.7 fl oz])
	BK Ink Tank (Black Ink)	Pigment ink	PFI-302BK (330 ml [11.2 fl oz]) or PFI-702BK (700 ml [23.7 fl oz])
	C Ink Tank (Cyan Ink)	Pigment ink	PFI-301C (330 ml [11.2 fl oz]) or PFI-701C (700 ml [23.7 fl oz])
	M Ink Tank (Magenta Ink)	Pigment ink	PFI-301M (330 ml [11.2 fl oz]) or PFI-701M (700 ml [23.7 fl oz])
	Y Ink Tank (Yellow Ink)	Pigment ink	PFI-301Y (330 ml [11.2 fl oz]) or PFI-701Y (700 ml [23.7 fl oz])
	PC Ink Tank (photo cyan ink)	Pigment ink	PFI-301PC (330 ml [11.2 fl oz]) or PFI-701PC (700 ml [23.7 fl oz])
	PM Ink Tank (photo magenta ink)	Pigment ink	PFI-301PM (330 ml [11.2 fl oz]) or PFI-701PM (700 ml [23.7 fl oz])
	R Ink Tank (red ink)	Pigment ink	PFI-301R (330 ml [11.2 fl oz]) or PFI-701R (700 ml [23.7 fl oz])
	G Ink Tank (green ink)	Pigment ink	PFI-301G (330 ml [11.2 fl oz]) or PFI-701G (700 ml [23.7 fl oz])
	B Ink Tank (blue ink)	Pigment ink	PFI-301B (330 ml [11.2 fl oz]) or PFI-701B (700 ml [23.7 fl oz])
	GY Ink Tank (gray ink)	Pigment ink	PFI-302GY (330 ml [11.2 fl oz]) or PFI-702GY (700 ml [23.7 fl oz])
	PGY Ink Tank (photo gray ink)	Pigment ink	PFI-302PGY (330 ml [11.2 fl oz]) or PFI-702PGY (700 ml [23.7 fl oz])
Capacity			330 or 700 ml (11.2 or 23.7 fl oz) per color (*1)

*1: The provided Starter Ink Tanks contain 330 ml (11.2 fl oz) each.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Paper (*1)

Paper width	Rolls	254-1,117.6 mm (10-44 in)
	Sheets	203-1,117.6 mm (8-44 in)
Length of one page	Rolls	203 (*2)-18,000 mm (8-708.7 in)
	Sheets	203-1,600 mm (8-63 in)
Thickness	Rolls	0.07-0.8 mm (0.0028-0.031 in)
	Sheets	0.07-0.8 mm (0.0028-0.031 in)
Media Size	Roll width	**44-in. Roll (1117.6mm)**, **42-in. Roll (1066.8mm)**, **JIS B0/B1 Roll (1030.0mm)**, **36-in. Roll (914.4mm)**, **ISO A0/A1 Roll (841.0mm)**, **30-in. Roll (762.0mm)**, **JIS B1/B2 Roll (728.0mm)**, **24-in. Roll (609.6mm)**, **ISO A1/A2 Roll (594.0mm)** , **JIS B2/B3 Roll (515.0mm)**, **17-in. Roll (431.8mm)**, **ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**, **16-in. Roll (406.4mm)**, **14-in. Roll (355.6mm)**, **ISO A3/A4 Roll (297.0mm)**, **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**
	Sheets	**ISO A0** , **ISO A1** , **ISO A2** , **ISO A2+** , **ISO A3** , **ISO A3+** , **ISO A4** , **ISO B0** , **ISO B1** , **ISO B2** , **ISO B3** , **ISO B4** , **JIS B0** , **JIS B1** , **JIS B2** , **JIS B3** , **JIS B4** , **34"x44" (ANSI E)** , **28"x40" (ANSI F)** , **22"x34"(ANSI D)** , **17"x22"(ANSI C)** , **13"x19" (Super B)** , **11"x17" (Ledger)** , **Legal (8.5"x14")** , **Letter (8.5"x11")** , **36"x48" (ARCH E)** , **30"x42" (ARCH E1)** , **26"x38" (ARCH E2)** , **27"x39" (ARCH E3)** , **24"x36" (ARCH D)** , **18"x24" (ARCH C)** , **12"x18" (ARCH B)** , **9"x12" (ARCH A)** , **DIN C0** , **DIN C1** , **DIN C2** , **DIN C3** , **DIN C4** , **20"x24"** , **18"x22"** , **14"x17"** , **12"x16"** , **10"x12"** , **10"x15"** , **8"x10"** , **US Photo 16"x20"** , **Poster 20"x30"** , **Poster 30"x40"** , **Poster 42"x60"** , **Poster 44"x62"** , **13"x22"** , **Poster 300x900mm**
Print area	Normal size	Printable area • Rolls 5 mm (0.20 in) from each side • Sheets 5 mm (0.20 in) from the top, 23 mm (0.91 in) from the bottom, and 5 mm (0.20 in) from the left and right sides For information on the recommended print area, see “Print Area”. (→P.141)
	Borderless printing (*3)	Printable area (rolls) 0 mm from the top, 0 from the bottom, and 0 mm from the left and right sides
Supported width for borderless printing		**42-in. Roll (1066.8mm)**, **JIS B0/B1 Roll (1030.0mm)**, **36-in. Roll (914.4mm)**, **ISO A0/A1 Roll (841.0mm)**, **24-in. Roll (609.6mm)**, **ISO A1/A2 Roll (594.0mm)** , **JIS B2/B3 Roll (515.0mm)**, **16-in. Roll (406.4mm)**, **14-in. Roll (355.6mm)**, **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**

*1: For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.169)

*2: When supplying paper, use a roll approximately 1,000 mm (1,093.6 yd) or longer.

*3: Printing may not be possible in some cases, depending on the type and size of paper.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Hard Disk

Capacity on the hard disk to store image data	48 GB
Print job storage capacity	• Common mail box: 100 jobs • Personal boxes: 100 jobs

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Basic Environmental Performance

Printer

Power consumption	Sleep mode	100-120 V: 5 W max. (10 W max. when an IEEE 1394 (FireWire) expansion board is installed.) 220-240 V: 6 W max. (11 W max. when an IEEE 1394 (FireWire) expansion board is installed.)
	Off	1 W max.
Resource efficiency	Weight	Printer and Stand : Approx. 142kg (313 lb)
	Dimensions (W × D × H)	Printer and Stand : 1,893 × 975 × 1,144 mm (74.5 × 38.4 × 45.0 in)
	Recycling	Recyclable plastic used for printer body
Product safety	Toxic substances	Structural components: No prohibited brominated flame retardants used (PBB, PBDE)
		Body plastic: No heavy metals (Pb, Hg, Cr[VI], Cd) or halogenated flame retardants used
	Operating noise	During operation: Approx. 50 dB (A) max. (6.6 bels or less) Standby: Approx. 35 dB (A) max.

Packaging materials

Heavy metal content (Pb, Hg, Cr[VI], Cd)	None (none in packaging)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Print Area

A margin required by the printer is added with respect to the size of paper loaded in the printer. Except in borderless printing, the actual printing area corresponds to the paper size minus the space for this margin.

Note

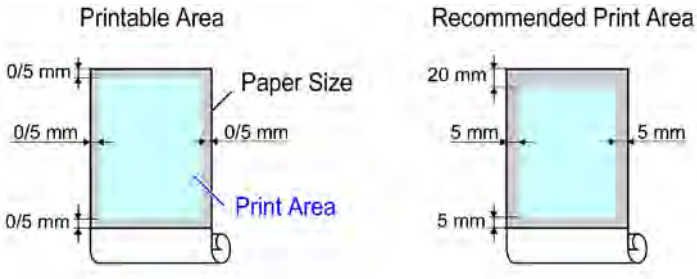
- Printable area: The area that can be printed.
- There is no margin (that is, a margin of 0 mm) during borderless printing on rolls.
- Guaranteed Print Area: We recommend printing within this area.
- To print so that your original matches the print area exactly, use an oversized paper size that includes the required margin. (→P.346)

	Margins of Printable Area			Margins of Recommended Print Area		
	Top Edge	Bottom Edge	Sides	Top Edge	Bottom Edge	Sides
Sheets	5 mm (0.20 in)	23 mm (0.91 in)	5 mm (0.20 in)	20 mm (0.79 in)	23 mm (0.91 in)	5 mm (0.20 in)
Rolls	0/5 mm (0/0.20 in)	0/5 mm (0/0.20 in)	0/5 mm (0/0.20 in)	20 mm (0.79 in)	5 mm (0.20 in)	5 mm (0.20 in)

Sheets

- Printable Area:
  A margin of 5 mm (0.20 in) on top, 23 mm (0.91 in) on bottom, and 5 mm (0.20 in) on left and right sides is required.
- Recommended print area:
  A margin of 20 mm (0.79 in) on top, 23 mm (0.91 in) on bottom, and 5 mm (0.20 in) on left and right sides is required.

Rolls



- Printable Area:
  A margin of 5 mm (0.20 in) on all sides is required. During borderless printing, the margin on all sides is 0 mm. For information on paper compatible with borderless printing, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.169)
- Recommended print area:
  A margin of 20 mm (0.79 in) on top, 5 mm (0.20 in) on bottom, and 5 mm (0.20 in) on left and right sides is required.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Basic Printing Workflow

Printing procedure

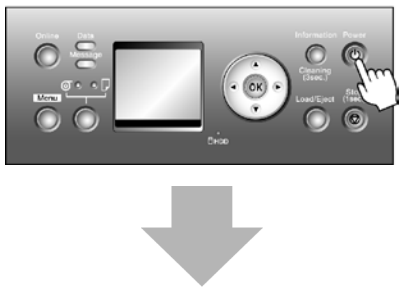
Loading and Printing on Rolls

These are the basic steps for loading and printing on rolls.
Follow the steps below to switch to a new roll or a roll of a different type or width before printing.

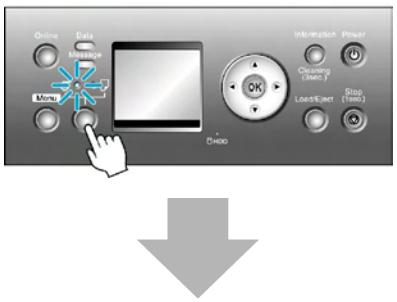
Note

- If you are not using the optional Media Take-up Unit when printing long documents such as banners, spread a clean cloth or paper on the floor. Use the Output Stacker to prevent the floor from soiling printed documents after they are printed. (→P.221)
- If you prefer to wait for the ink to dry after printing and simply eject the document, you can deactivate automatic cutting and cut the paper manually. (→P.193)

1. Turn the printer on. (→P.19)

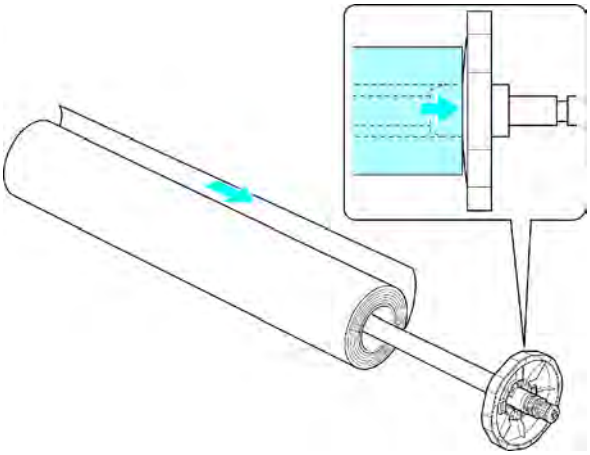


2. Select a roll as the paper source. (→P.178)

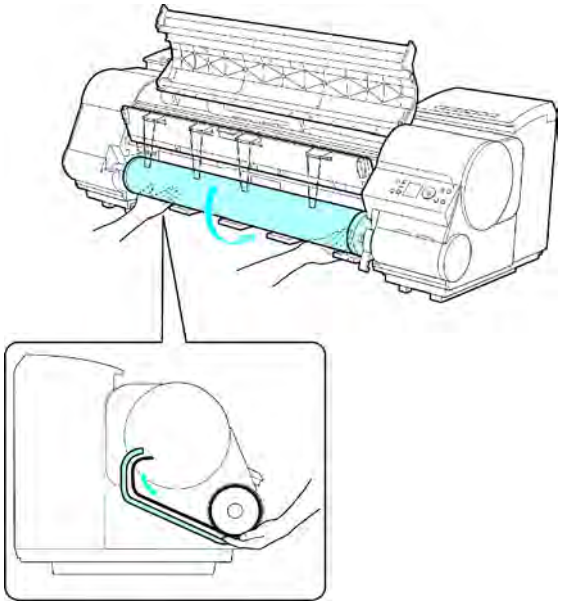


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

3. Set a roll on the Roll Holder. (→P.179)



4. Load the roll in the printer. (→P.182)



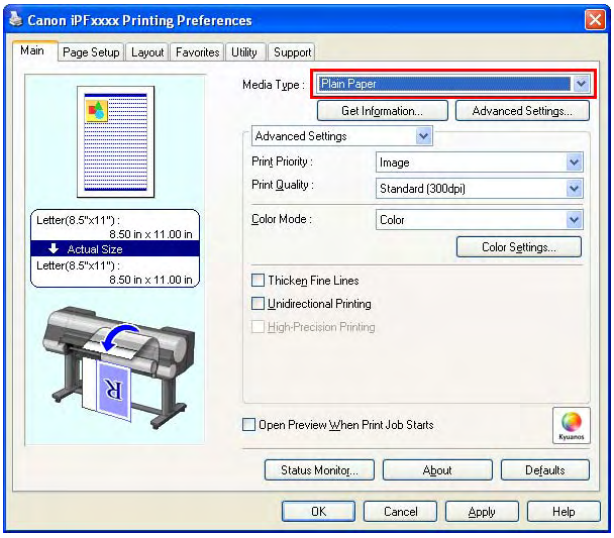
5. Select the paper type. (→P.188)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

6. Select the paper length. (→P.189)

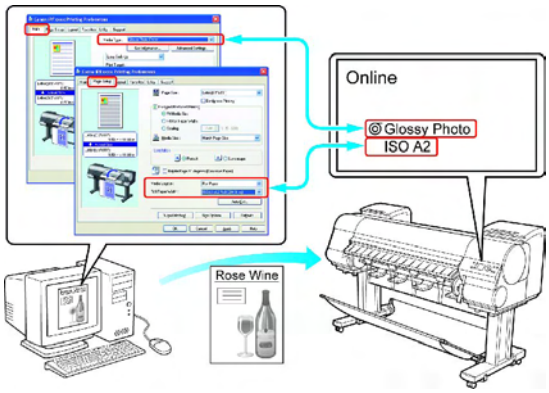
7. Complete settings in the printer driver for the type of paper and other details.

- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows) (→P.156)
- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X) (→P.158)
- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS 9) (→P.160)



Important

- Always specify the same type and size of paper in the printer menu and printer driver.
  If the type and size do not match, an error message is displayed and the printing quality may be affected, or printing may not be possible.
  - Papr Size Mismatch (→P.769)
  - Papr Type Mismatch (→P.768)
  - Paper Mismatch (→P.768)



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

8. Start printing.

- Printing from Windows (→P.151)
- Printing from Mac OS X (→P.152)
- Printing from Mac OS 9 (→P.154)

Note

- You can skip steps 5 and 6 if a barcode has been printed on the roll paper and you have activated automatic detection of the remaining roll. The paper type and amount of paper left are automatically detected. The barcode will automatically be cut off after it has been read.
- You can skip step 6 if you have deactivated automatic detection of the remaining roll paper.
- If you have deactivated width detection, you will need to enter the roll width after choosing the paper type in step 5. (→P.49)
- For details on supported sizes and types of rolls, see Paper Sizes (→P.175) or the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.169)
- When printing on rolls after printing on sheets, if the lit paper selection lamp does not switch from the **Cut Sheet lamp** to the **Roll Media lamp**, press the **Feeder Selection** button.

Important

- After changing rolls, clean the Platen. (→P.720)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

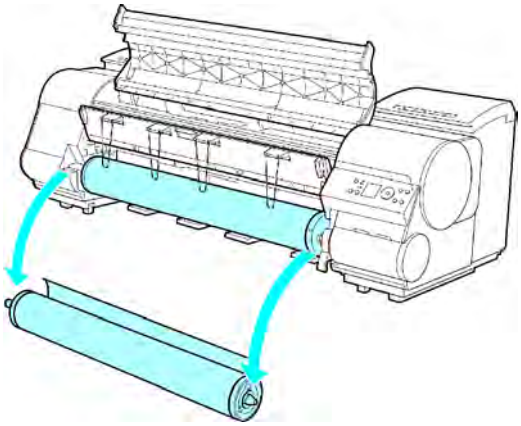
Loading and Printing on Sheets

These are the basic steps for loading sheets and then printing.
Follow the steps below to load and print on sheets.

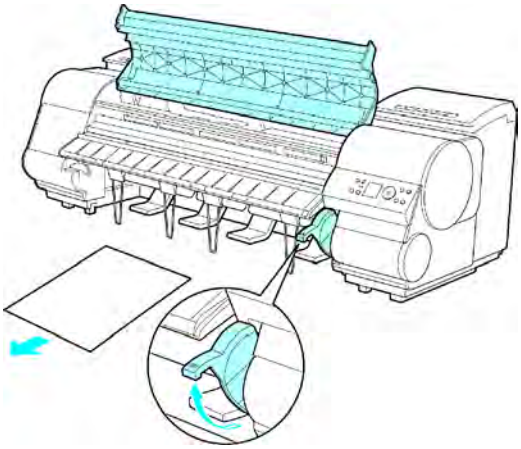
1. Turn the printer on. (→P.19)

2. Remove any loaded paper that will not be used.

- Roll (→P.186)



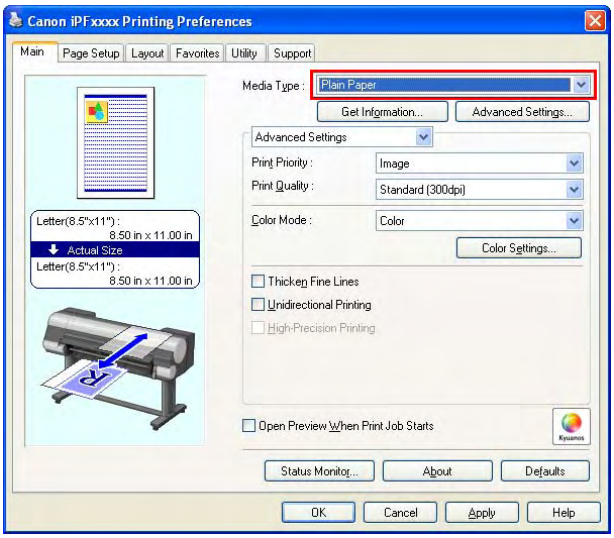
- Sheet (→P.216)



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

3. Complete settings in the printer driver for the type of paper and other details.

- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows) (→P.156)
- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X) (→P.158)
- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS 9) (→P.160)



4. Send the print job.

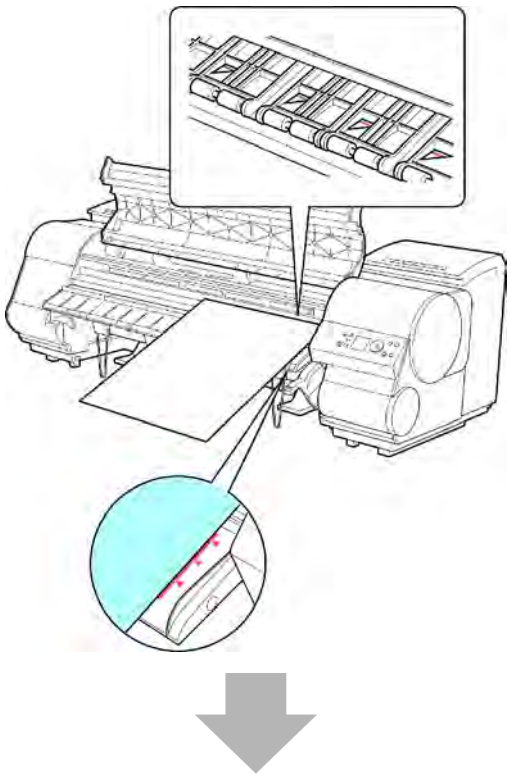
- Printing from Windows (→P.151)
- Printing from Mac OS X (→P.152)
- Printing from Mac OS 9 (→P.154)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

5. Load the sheet. (→P.212)

Note

- If you will load a sheet before sending a print job, after you load the sheet, the printer automatically shows a menu for selection of the paper type on the Display Screen. Follow these steps.
  - Selecting the Paper Type (Sheet) (→P.215)



Start printing.

Note

- If you select a type of paper for which Media Width Detection is deactivated (**Off** is selected), you must advance the paper manually to the position for printing. (→P.150)
- For details on supported types and sizes of the paper, see Paper Sizes (→P.175) or the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.169)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets

The printer supports both rolls and sheets. Take advantage of each type of paper for a wide range of printing applications.

Rolls and sheets

- Media in spooled rolls is generally called Roll Media.
  Rolls can be used to print large photos or create posters or banners that cannot be printed on regular sheets.
- Sheets refers to individual sheets of paper in regular sizes.
  Insert the sheet between the Platen and the Paper Retainer.

Paper size

- Page Size: The size of the image to be printed, as specified in the application.
- Paper size:
  - In the case of sheets, paper size refers to the actual size of the paper loaded in the printer.
  - In the case of rolls, paper size is an imagined size set as the printing area for a single page.

Printing options using rolls and sheets

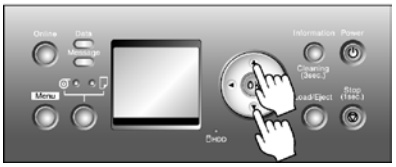
Printing Method	Rolls
Large-Format Printing	Easily print vertical or horizontal banners from familiar applications such as Microsoft Office applications. Print documents up to 18 m (19.7 yd) long.
Borderless Printing	Print without a margin (border) around posters or photos.
Free Layout (Windows)	Print multiple documents from multiple applications (such as word-processing programs, spreadsheet programs, and so on) next to each other.
Free Layout (Macintosh)	
Banner printing	Print pages of a multi-page document consecutively without blank space between pages.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

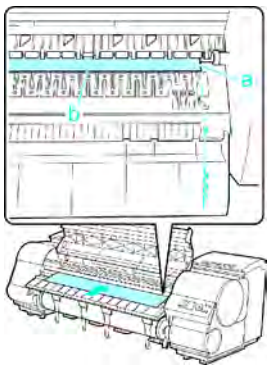
Manually Loading Paper to the Position for Printing

After loading sheets, if you select a type of paper in the printer menu with width detection deactivated, you will need to feed the paper a different way than usual. Specifically, you must manually advance the paper to the position of printing.
In this case, advance the paper as far into the paper feed slot as possible because it will be printed starting at that position.
Manually advance paper as follows.

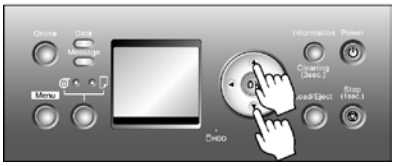
1. When **Width Detection OFF. OK to continue?** is shown on the Display Screen, press ▲ or ▼ to select **Leave OFF** and then press the **OK** button.
   If you select **Width Detection ON**, change the Media Detailed Settings information for that paper and use the regular feeding method.



2. Keeping the right edge of the sheet aligned with the extended line of the paper alignment line (a) on the right side of the printer, load the sheet so that the near edge is aligned with the groove (b) at the far end of the platen.



3. Check the position of the loaded paper and press the **OK** button.
4. After a menu for selection of the paper size is shown on the Display Screen, press ▲ or ▼ to select the paper size, and then press the **OK** button.



Note

- If a print job received requires paper larger than the selected paper, it may soil the Platen.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing from Windows

Print from the application software menu.

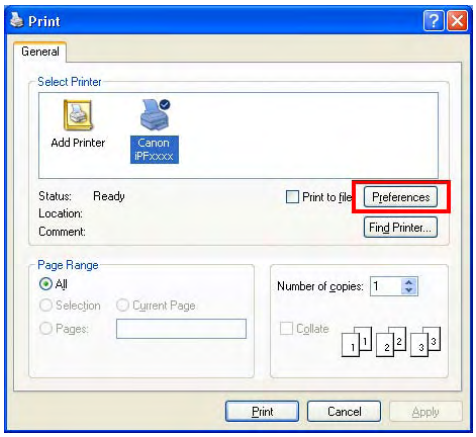
Important

- The Windows printer driver can be used in the following versions of Windows:
  - Windows 2000 (Professional or Server)
  - Windows XP (Home Edition or Professional)
  - Windows Server 2003 (Standard Edition)
  - Windows Vista
- We recommend exiting unnecessary applications before printing. Running several applications while printing may interrupt the transfer of print data and affect printing quality.

1. In the application software, select **Print** from the **File** menu to display the dialog box for printing conditions.
2. After confirming that the printer is selected in the dialog box, click **Print** or **OK** to start printing.

Note

- The appearance of the dialog box varies depending on the application software. In most cases, the dialog box includes basic printing options and enables you to choose the printer, specify the range of pages, number of copies, and so on.
  Example: Print dialog box displayed by the application software



Note

- If another printer is selected, select the printer you want to use under **Select Printer** or in the dialog box displayed after clicking **Printer**.

Settings for many printing methods (including enlarged or reduced printing, borderless printing, and so on) are displayed in the printer driver dialog box. There are two ways to access the printer driver dialog box, as follows:

- From the application software
  (→P.539)
- From the operating system menu
  (→P.206)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing from Mac OS X

Print from the application menu after registering the printer.

Important

- We recommend exiting unnecessary applications before printing. Running several applications while printing may interrupt the transfer of print data and affect printing quality.

Registering the printer

Before printing, you must register the printer in **Printer Setup Utility** (or **Print Center**).
For instructions on registering the printer, see “Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Macintosh)”. (→P.639)

Important

- During this setup process, the printer will not be listed among available printers if it is off or disconnected.
- By factory default, the AppleTalk protocol is disabled on the printer. You must enable the AppleTalk protocol before using the printer in an AppleTalk network. For instructions on activating AppleTalk protocol, see “Configuring the Destination for AppleTalk Network (Macintosh)”. (→P.640)

Note

- When registering the printer, choose **USB** if the printer is connected via USB, **Canon FireWire(iPF)** if connected via IEEE 1394, or **AppleTalk**, **Canon IP(iPF)**, or **Bonjour** if connected via a network.
- For **Canon IP(iPF)** connections, enter the printer’s IP address.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

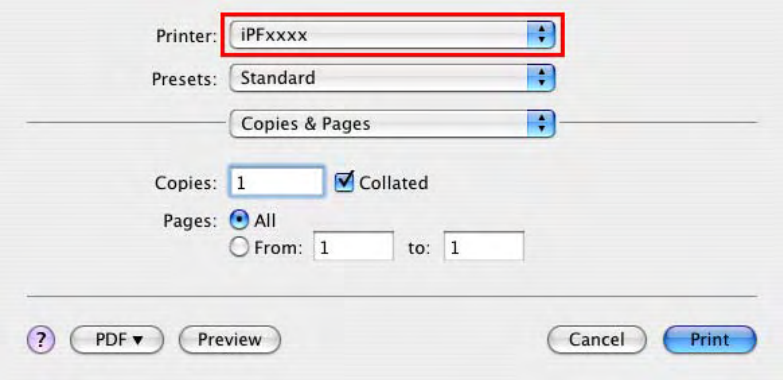
Printing from the application software

1. In the application software, select **Print** from the **File** menu to display the dialog box for printing conditions.

   Note

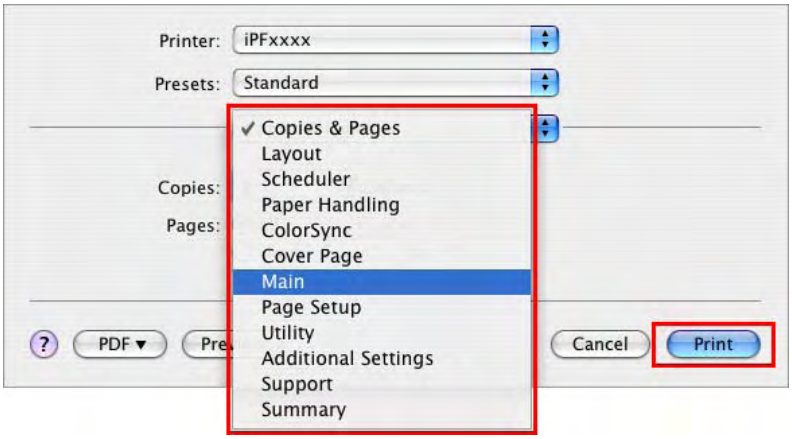
   - This dialog box includes basic printing options and enables you to choose the printer, specify the range of pages, number of copies, and so on.

2. Select the printer in the **Printer** list.



3. Click **Print** to start printing.

As shown in the following illustration, you can switch to other panes in this dialog box to complete settings for various methods of printing, including enlarged and reduced printing, borderless printing, and so on.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing from Mac OS 9

After selecting the printer in **Chooser** from the Apple menu, print by using menus in the source application.

Important

- We recommend exiting unnecessary applications before printing. Running several applications while printing may interrupt the transfer of print data and affect printing quality.

Selecting the printer

Before printing, you must confirm that the printer is selected in **Chooser**.
For instructions on selecting the printer, see “Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Macintosh)”. (→P.639)

Important

- During this setup process, the printer will not be listed in **Chooser** if it is off or disconnected.
- By factory default, the AppleTalk protocol is disabled on the printer. You must enable the AppleTalk protocol before using the printer in an AppleTalk network. For instructions on activating AppleTalk protocol, see “Configuring the Destination for AppleTalk Network (Macintosh)”. (→P.640)

Note

- In **Chooser**, choose **GARO Printer Driver**.
- In **Destination**, choose **USB** if the printer is connected via USB, **FireWire** if connected via IEEE 1394, or **AppleTalk**, **IP Print**, or **IP Print (Auto)** if connected via network.
- If the printer is connected via **AppleTalk** under **AppleTalk**, click **Active** in the lower-right corner of the **Chooser** window.
- If the printer is connected via **IP Print**, click **Registering IP Address** under the **Destination** list to register the printer’s IP address, and then click **IP Print**.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

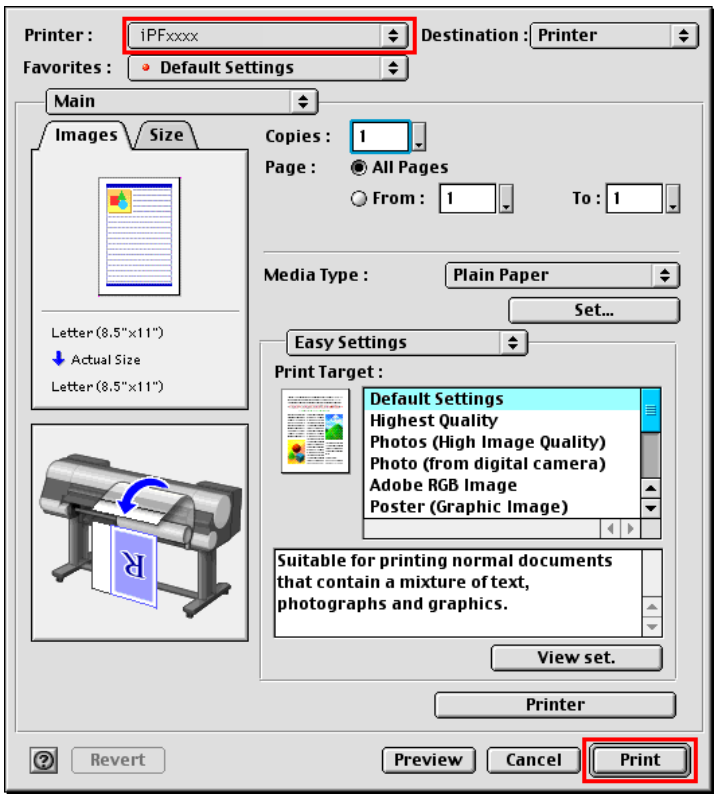
Printing from the application software

1. In the application software, select **Print** from the **File** menu to display the dialog box for printing conditions.

   Note

   - This dialog box includes basic printing options for the range of pages, number of copies, and so on. You can also specify enlargement or reduction, borderless printing, and a variety of other print settings.

2. Make sure the printer is selected in the **Printer** list.



3. Click **Print** to start printing.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

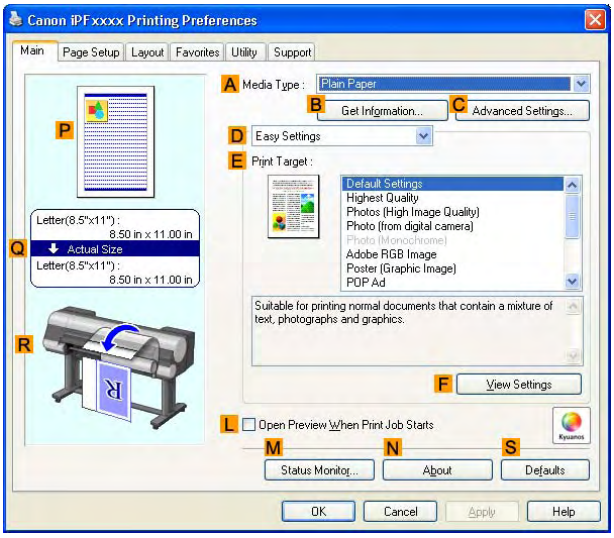
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows)

If you have replaced the paper, you must complete the following settings in the printer driver.

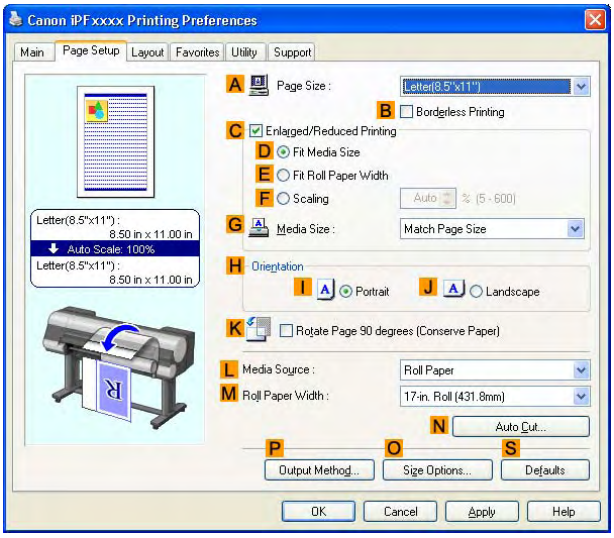
Important

- Always specify the same type and size of paper in the printer menu and printer driver.
  If the type and size do not match, an error message will be displayed and printing is not possible.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.539)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.
5. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

6. In the A **Page Size** list, select the size of the original as specified in the application.
7. In the L **Media Source** list, select how paper is supplied.
8. If you have selected **Roll Paper** in L **Media Source**, select the width of the loaded roll in M **Roll Paper Width**.

Note

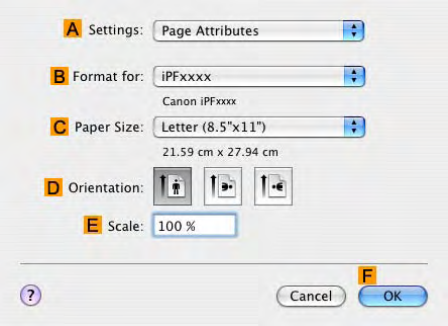
- A variety of settings are available in the printer driver to suit different printing applications.
  For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Windows)”. (→P.507)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

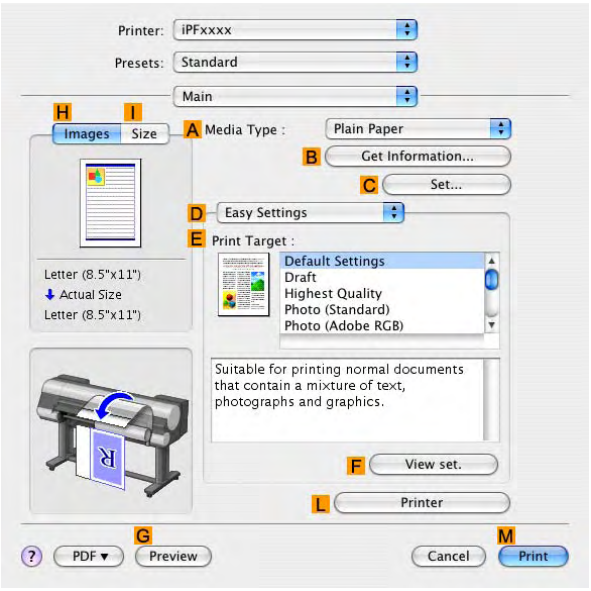
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X)

If you have replaced the paper, you must complete the following settings in the printer driver.

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

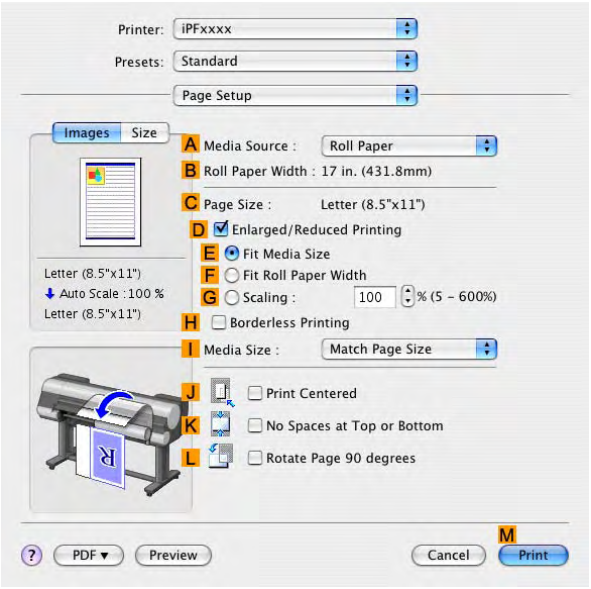


2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. Choose the original size in the C **Paper Size** list.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

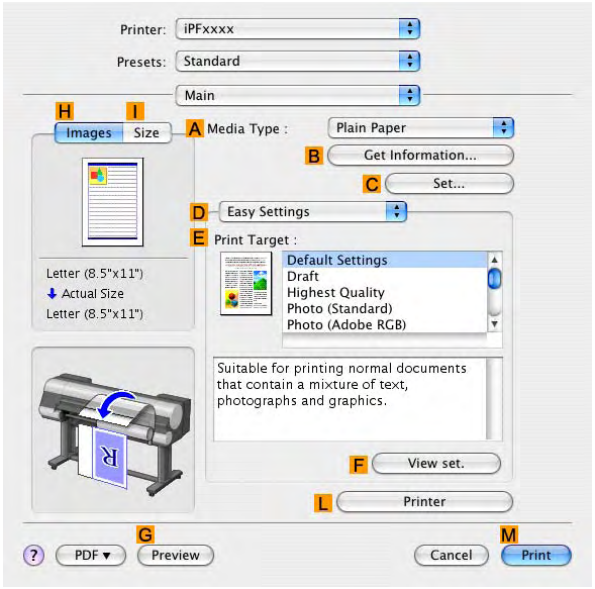
7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.
8. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



9. In the A **Media Source** list, select how paper is supplied.
10. If you have selected **Cut Sheet** or **Manual** in A **Media Source**, make sure the size as selected in **Page Setup** is displayed in C **Page Size**. If you have selected **Roll Paper** in A **Media Source**, make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**.

Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



Note

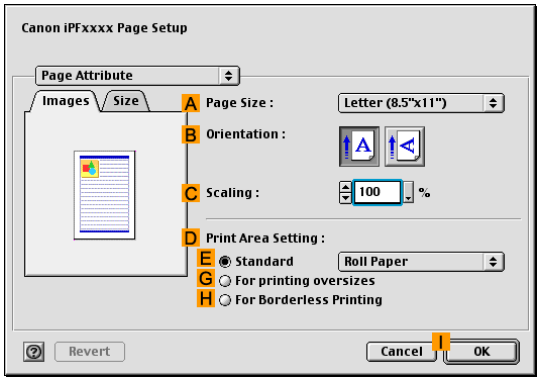
- A variety of settings are available in the printer driver to suit different printing applications.
  For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.558)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

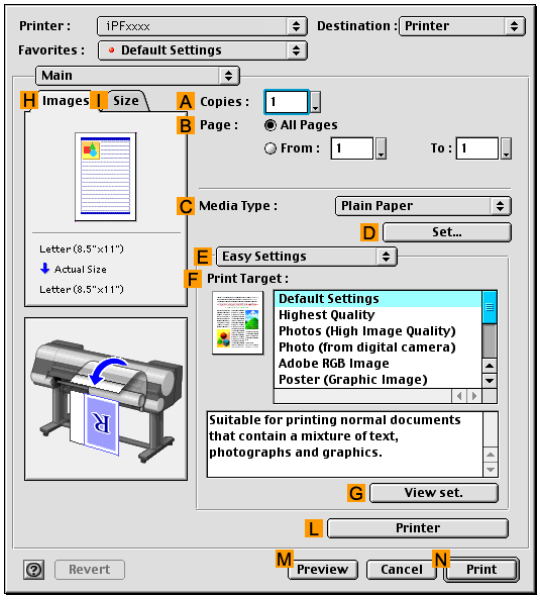
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS 9)

If you have replaced the paper, you must complete the following settings in the printer driver.

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

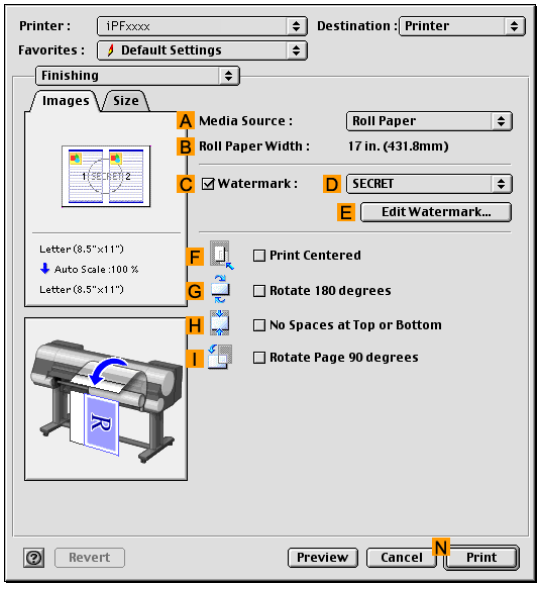


3. Choose the original size in the A **Page Size** list.
4. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

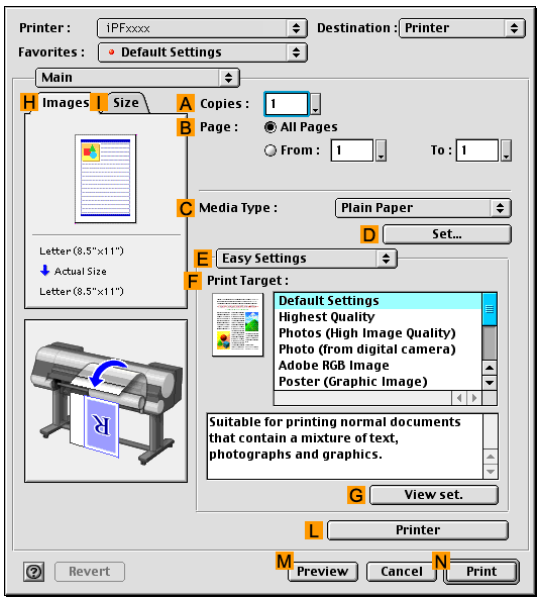
7. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.
8. Access the **Finishing** pane.



9. In the A **Media Source** list, select how paper is supplied.
10. If you have selected **Roll Paper** in A **Media Source**, make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**.

Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



Note

- A variety of settings are available in the printer driver to suit different printing applications. For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.584)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

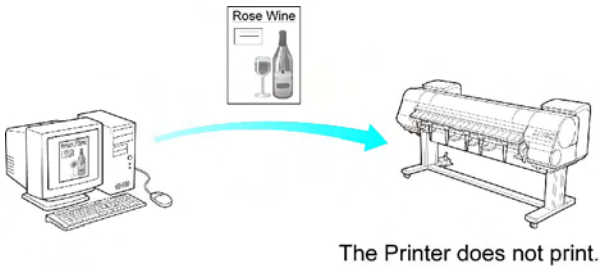
Canceling print jobs

Canceling Print Jobs from the Control Panel

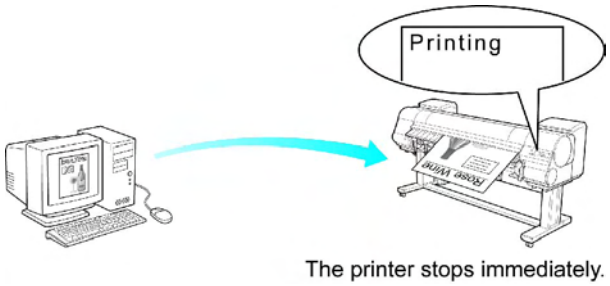
Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel print jobs or ink drying in progress when the printer is online, offline, or in Menu mode.

Printer operation varies depending on the status when you hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more during printing.

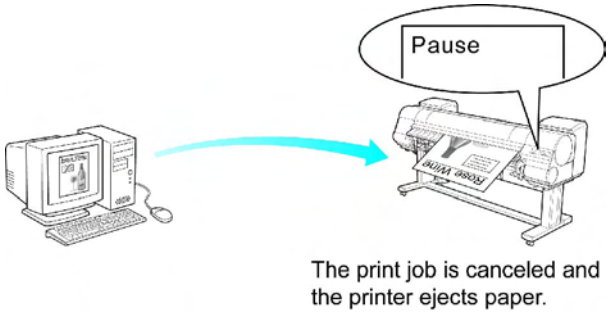
- If you press the **Stop** button before printing starts
  Holding down the **Stop** button for a second or more before printing cancels the print job and brings the printer online.
  When the roll is selected as the paper source, the printer goes online, and when sheet is selected, the printer goes offline.



- If you press the **Stop** button during printing
  Holding down the **Stop** button for a second or more during printing stops printing immediately.



- If you press the **Stop** button when printing is paused
  Holding down the **Stop** button for a second or more when printing is paused cancels the print job.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Canceling Print Jobs from Windows

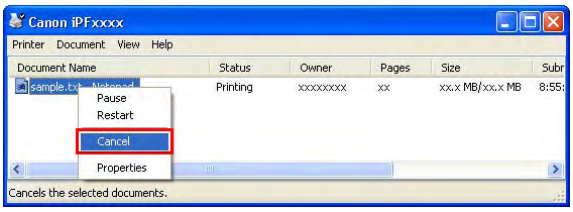
You can cancel print jobs in the printer window.

1. Click the printer icon in the taskbar to display the printer window.

Note

- You can also display this window by double-clicking the printer icon in the **Printers and Faxes** (or **Printers**) folder, accessible through the Windows **start** menu.

2. Right-click the job to cancel and select **Cancel**.



Note

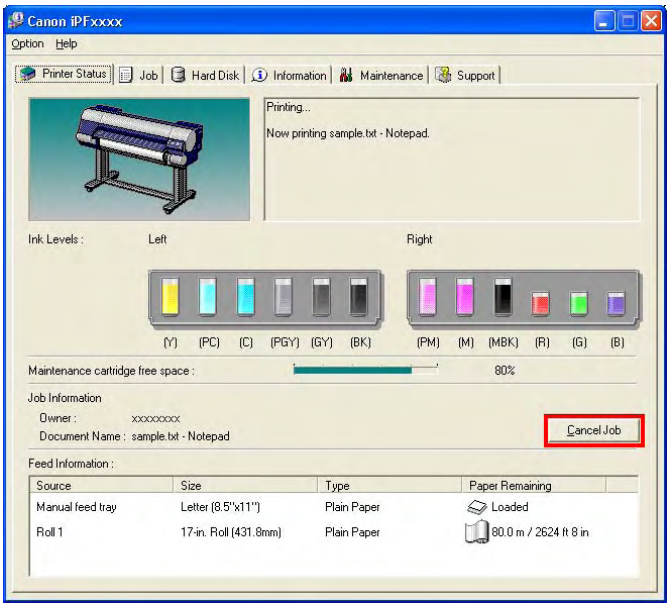
- The print job is displayed on the printer screen during the transmission of print data from the computer. When the transmission is finished, the job is not displayed even during printing.

To cancel print jobs from the Control Panel, follow these steps.

1. If the Display Screen of the Control Panel still indicates that the job is in progress and the **Data lamp** continues flashing, hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to stop printing.

Do the following if no print jobs are shown in the printer window (because they have already been sent to the printer).

1. Double-click the taskbar icon to access the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor.
2. On the **Printer Status** sheet, click **Cancel Job**.

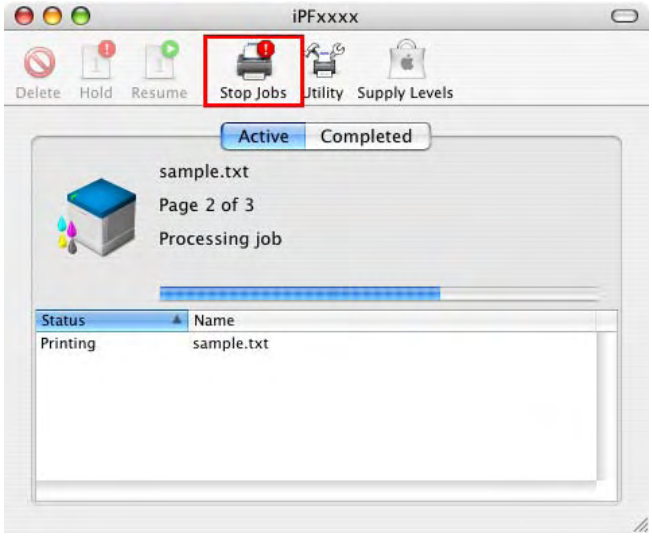

Canon iPFxxxx
Option Help
Printer Status Job Hard Disk Information Maintenance Support
Printing...
Now printing sample.txt - Notepad.
Ink Levels : Left Right
(Y) (PC) (C) (PGY) (GY) (BK) (PM) (M) (MBK) (R) (G) (B)
Maintenance cartridge free space : 80%
Job Information
Owner : xxxxxxxx
Document Name : sample.txt - Notepad
Cancel Job
Feed Information :
Source Size Type Paper Remaining
Manual feed tray Letter (8.5"x11") Plain Paper Loaded
Roll 1 17-in. Roll (431.8mm) Plain Paper 80.0 m / 2624 ft 8 in

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Canceling Print Jobs from Mac OS X

You can cancel print jobs in **imagePROGRAF Printmonitor**.

1. Click the printer icon in the **Dock** to display the printer window.
2. Click **Stop Jobs** to stop printing.

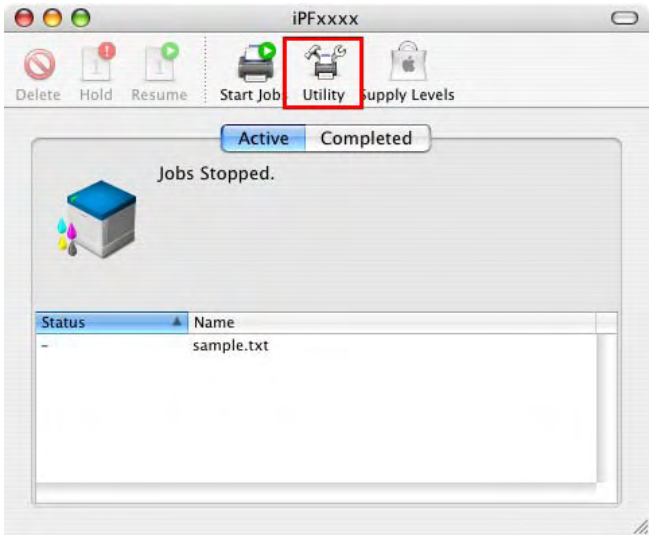


In this window, you can cancel jobs sent to the printer.

Note

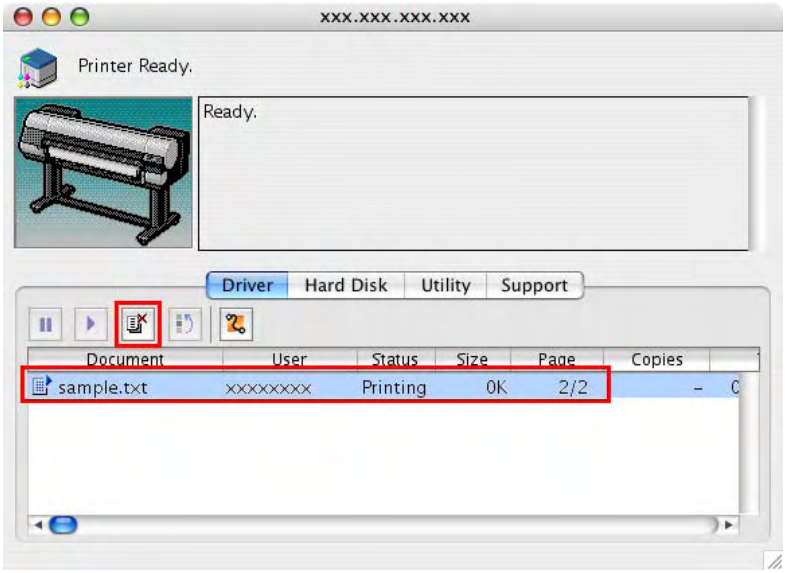
- The print job is displayed on the printer's screen during the transmission of print data from the computer. When the transmission is finished, the job is not displayed even during printing.

3. Click **Utility** to display **imagePROGRAF Printmonitor**.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

4. Select the print job to cancel and click **Cancel Job** to remove the print job.



The job sent to the printer is canceled.

Note

- The print job is displayed on the **imagePROGRAF Printmonitor** window while the printer receives the print data from the computer. It is not displayed before transmission of print data to the printer, even if the computer has started the process of the data.

5. Exit **imagePROGRAF Printmonitor**. In the printer window, click **Start Jobs**.

Important

- Always follow these steps if you cancel print jobs. If you do not restart job processing, the next job cannot be printed.

To cancel print jobs from the Control Panel, follow these steps.

1. If the Display Screen of the Control Panel still indicates that the job is in progress and the **Data lamp** continues flashing, hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to stop printing.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Canceling Print Jobs from Mac OS 9

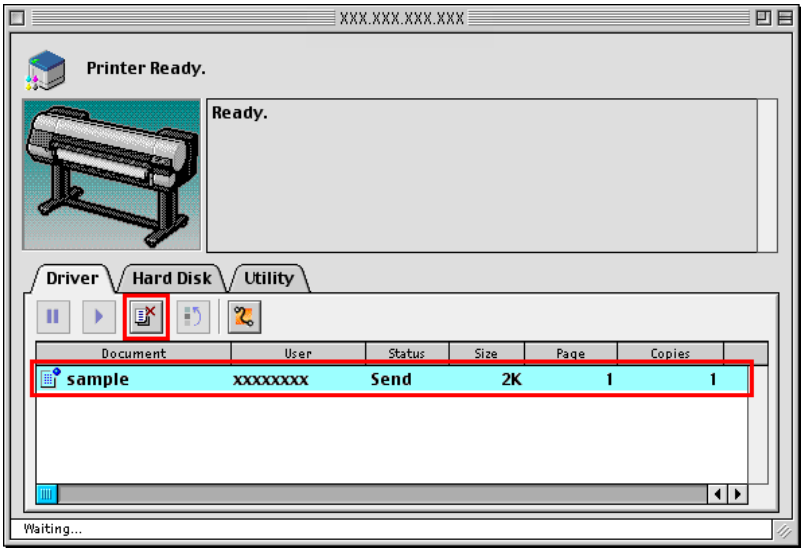
How to cancel print jobs varies depending on whether you are printing in the foreground or background.

Canceling background print jobs

1. Open the **Garo Printer Extra** folder, which was installed on the hard disk at the same time as the printer driver.
2. Open **imagePROGRAF Printmonitor**.
3. Choose **Pause Printing** in the **File** menu to stop print processing.

The job status changes from **Sending** to **Send**.

4. Select the print job to cancel and click **Cancel Job** to remove the print job.



5. Choose **Resume Printing** in the **File** menu.

Important

- Always follow these steps if you cancel print jobs. If you do not restart the print queue, the next job cannot be printed.

To cancel print jobs from the Control Panel, follow these steps.

1. If the Display Screen of the Control Panel still indicates that the job is in progress and the **Data lamp** continues flashing, hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to stop printing.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Canceling foreground print jobs

1. When the progress indicator is displayed, hold down the Command key and press the period (.) key to cancel print jobs.
2. If the Display Screen of the Control Panel still indicates that the job is in progress and the **Data lamp** continues flashing, hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to stop printing.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Handling Paper

Paper

Paper

The printer supports the following paper.

Types of paper

For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.169)

Paper size

Rolls	Paper width	**44-in. Roll (1117.6mm), 42-in. Roll (1066.8mm), JIS B0/B1 Roll (1030.0mm), 36-in. Roll (914.4mm), ISO A0/A1 Roll (841.0mm), 30-in. Roll (762.0mm), JIS B1/B2 Roll (728.0mm), 24-in. Roll (609.6mm), ISO A1/A2 Roll (594.0mm) , JIS B2/B3 Roll (515.0mm), 17-in. Roll (431.8mm), ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm), 16-in. Roll (406.4mm), 14-in. Roll (355.6mm), ISO A3/A4 Roll (297.0mm), 10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**
	Outer diameter	Up to 150 mm (5.9 in)
	Inner diameter of paper core	2 or 3 inches
	Printing surface	Top (outside)
Sheets		**ISO A0 , ISO A1 , ISO A2 , ISO A2+ , ISO A3 , ISO A3+ , ISO A4 , ISO B0 , ISO B1 , ISO B2 , ISO B3 , ISO B4 , JIS B0 , JIS B1 , JIS B2 , JIS B3 , JIS B4 , ANSI E , ANSI F , ANSI D , ANSI C , ANSI B , ANSI B Super , ANSI Letter , ANSI Legal , ARCH E , ARCH E1 , ARCH E2 , ARCH E3 , ARCH D , ARCH C , ARCH B , ARCH A , DIN C0 , DIN C1 , DIN C2 , DIN C3 , DIN C4 , 20"x24" , 18"x22" , 14"x17" , 12"x16" , 10"x12" , 10"x15" , 8"x10" , US Photo 16"x20" , Poster 20"x30" , Poster 30"x40" , Poster 42"x60" , Poster 44"x62" , 13"x22" , Poster 300x900mm**

Note

- Paper quality varies among manufacturers. For advice before buying paper, contact the Canon dealer where you purchased the printer.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Types of Paper

For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide . This guide identifies supported plain paper, coated paper, photo paper (such as glossy photo paper), proofing paper, CAD paper, and other types of paper. The Paper Reference Guide identifies types and specifications of paper, describes printer driver settings, gives tips on handling paper, and identifies paper you can use with the Media Take-up Unit (optional).
You can update paper information in the Paper Reference Guide , on the printer Control Panel, and in the printer driver by downloading the latest version of the Media Configuration Tool from the imagePROGRAF website.

Note

- The media types with "†" marked in the product name are those specified as genuine Canon media. For other media, please contact the respective media manufacturer after reading the instruction manuals supplied with the media.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Viewing the Paper Reference Guide

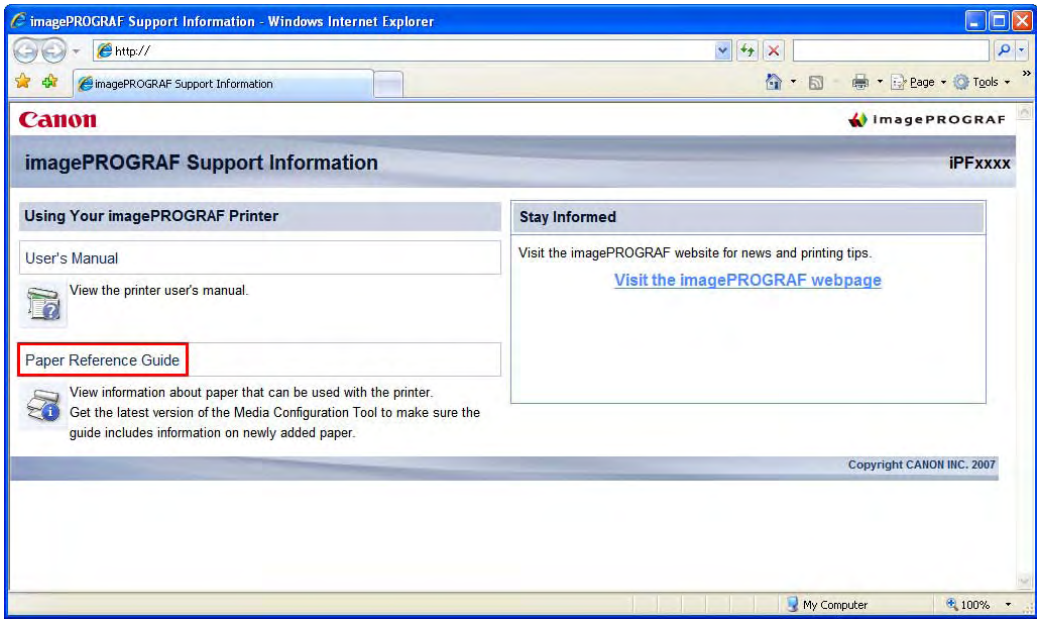
You can access the Paper Reference Guide as follows. Follow the steps for your particular operating system.

- Windows

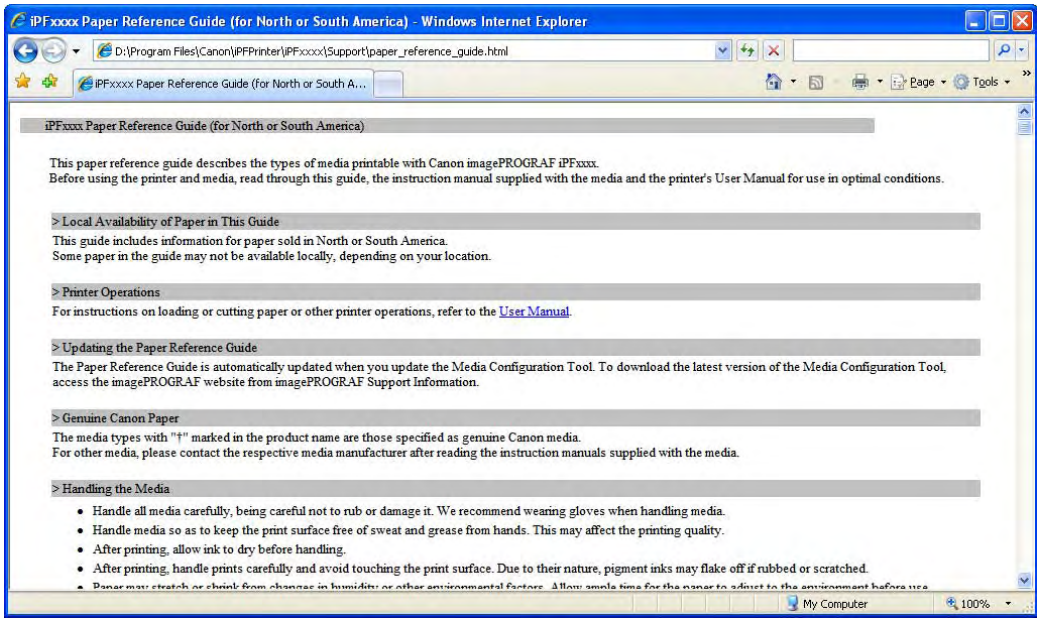
1. Double-click the **iPFxxxx Support** icon on the desktop. (Here, iPFxxxx represents the printer model.)

The online support window is displayed.

2. Select **Paper Reference Guide**.


imagePROGRAF Support Information - Windows Internet Explorer
http://
imagePROGRAF Support Information
Page
Tools
Canon
imagePROGRAF
imagePROGRAF Support Information
iPFxxxx
Using Your imagePROGRAF Printer
User's Manual
View the printer user's manual.
Paper Reference Guide
View information about paper that can be used with the printer.
Get the latest version of the Media Configuration Tool to make sure the guide includes information on newly added paper.
Stay Informed
Visit the imagePROGRAF website for news and printing tips.
Visit the imagePROGRAF webpage
Copyright CANON INC. 2007
My Computer
100%

The Paper Reference Guide is displayed.


iPFxxxx Paper Reference Guide (for North or South America) - Windows Internet Explorer
D:\Program Files\Canon\iPFPrinter\iPFxxxx\Support\paper_reference_guide.html
iPFxxxx Paper Reference Guide (for North or South A...
Page
Tools
iPFxxxx Paper Reference Guide (for North or South America)
This paper reference guide describes the types of media printable with Canon imagePROGRAF iPFxxxx.
Before using the printer and media, read through this guide, the instruction manual supplied with the media and the printer's User Manual for use in optimal conditions.
> Local Availability of Paper in This Guide
This guide includes information for paper sold in North or South America.
Some paper in the guide may not be available locally, depending on your location.
> Printer Operations
For instructions on loading or cutting paper or other printer operations, refer to the User Manual.
> Updating the Paper Reference Guide
The Paper Reference Guide is automatically updated when you update the Media Configuration Tool. To download the latest version of the Media Configuration Tool, access the imagePROGRAF website from imagePROGRAF Support Information.
> Genuine Canon Paper
The media types with "†" marked in the product name are those specified as genuine Canon media.
For other media, please contact the respective media manufacturer after reading the instruction manuals supplied with the media.
> Handling the Media
Handle all media carefully, being careful not to rub or damage it. We recommend wearing gloves when handling media.
Handle media so as to keep the print surface free of sweat and grease from hands. This may affect the printing quality.
After printing, allow ink to dry before handling.
After printing, handle prints carefully and avoid touching the print surface. Due to their nature, pigment inks may flake off if rubbed or scratched.
My Computer
100%

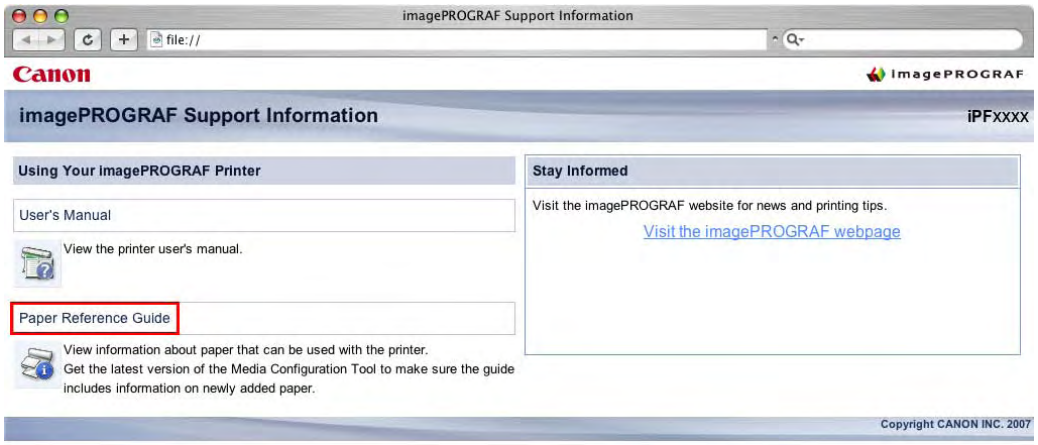
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

- Mac OS X

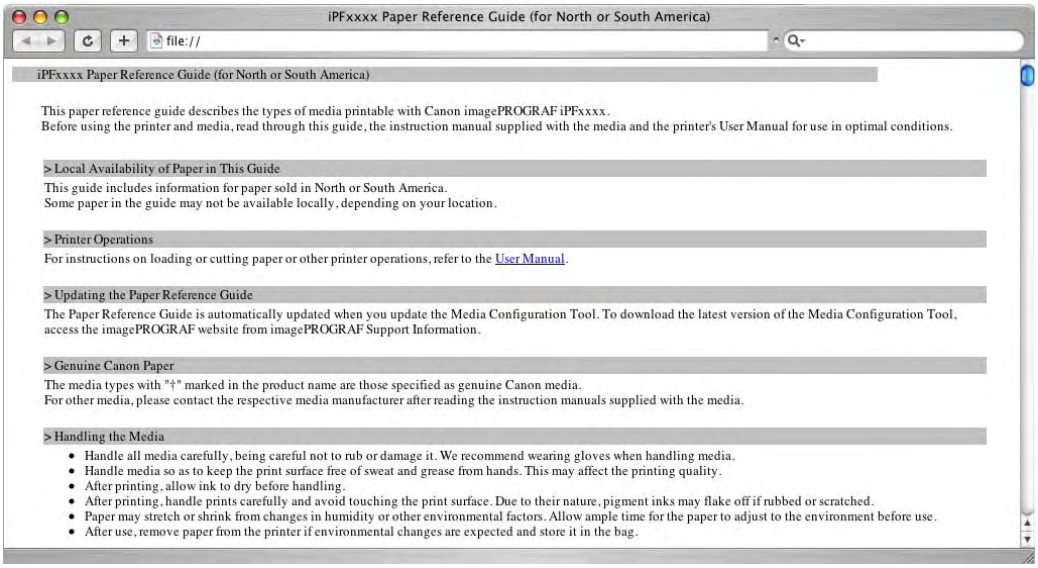
1. Click the **iPF Support** icon in the **Dock**.

The online support window is displayed.

2. Select **Paper Reference Guide**.


imagePROGRAF Support Information
file://
Canon
imagePROGRAF
imagePROGRAF Support Information
iPFxxxx
Using Your imagePROGRAF Printer
User's Manual
View the printer user's manual.
Paper Reference Guide
View information about paper that can be used with the printer.
Get the latest version of the Media Configuration Tool to make sure the guide includes information on newly added paper.
Stay Informed
Visit the imagePROGRAF website for news and printing tips.
Visit the imagePROGRAF webpage
Copyright CANON INC. 2007

The Paper Reference Guide is displayed.

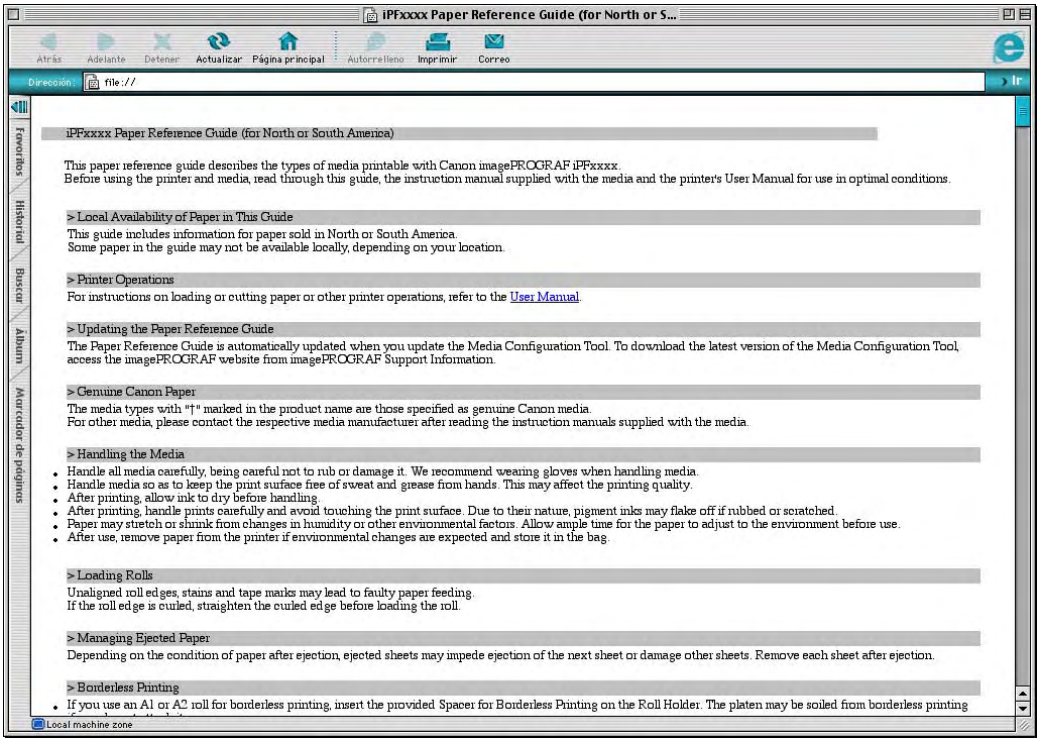

iPFxxxx Paper Reference Guide (for North or South America)
file://
iPFxxxx Paper Reference Guide (for North or South America)
This paper reference guide describes the types of media printable with Canon imagePROGRAF iPFxxxx.
Before using the printer and media, read through this guide, the instruction manual supplied with the media and the printer's User Manual for use in optimal conditions.
> Local Availability of Paper in This Guide
This guide includes information for paper sold in North or South America.
Some paper in the guide may not be available locally, depending on your location.
> Printer Operations
For instructions on loading or cutting paper or other printer operations, refer to the User Manual.
> Updating the Paper Reference Guide
The Paper Reference Guide is automatically updated when you update the Media Configuration Tool. To download the latest version of the Media Configuration Tool, access the imagePROGRAF website from imagePROGRAF Support Information.
> Genuine Canon Paper
The media types with "†" marked in the product name are those specified as genuine Canon media.
For other media, please contact the respective media manufacturer after reading the instruction manuals supplied with the media.
> Handling the Media
Handle all media carefully, being careful not to rub or damage it. We recommend wearing gloves when handling media.
Handle media so as to keep the print surface free of sweat and grease from hands. This may affect the printing quality.
After printing, allow ink to dry before handling.
After printing, handle prints carefully and avoid touching the print surface. Due to their nature, pigment inks may flake off if rubbed or scratched.
Paper may stretch or shrink from changes in humidity or other environmental factors. Allow ample time for the paper to adjust to the environment before use.
After use, remove paper from the printer if environmental changes are expected and store it in the bag.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

- Mac OS 9

1. Double-click the **iPFxxxx Paper Reference Guide** icon on the desktop. (Here, iPFxxxx represents the printer model.)

The Paper Reference Guide is displayed.


iPFxxxx Paper Reference Guide (for North or S...
Atrás
Adelante
Detener
Actualizar
Página principal
Autorrelleno
Imprimir
Correo
Dirección
file://
Ir
Favoritos
Historial
Buscar
Álbum
Marcador de páginas
iPFxxxx Paper Reference Guide (for North or South America)
This paper reference guide describes the types of media printable with Canon imagePROGRAF iPFxxxx.
Before using the printer and media, read through this guide, the instruction manual supplied with the media and the printer's User Manual for use in optimal conditions.
> Local Availability of Paper in This Guide
This guide includes information for paper sold in North or South America.
Some paper in the guide may not be available locally, depending on your location.
> Printer Operations
For instructions on loading or cutting paper or other printer operations, refer to the User Manual.
> Updating the Paper Reference Guide
The Paper Reference Guide is automatically updated when you update the Media Configuration Tool. To download the latest version of the Media Configuration Tool, access the imagePROGRAF website from imagePROGRAF Support Information.
> Genuine Canon Paper
The media types with "†" marked in the product name are those specified as genuine Canon media.
For other media, please contact the respective media manufacturer after reading the instruction manuals supplied with the media.
> Handling the Media
Handle all media carefully, being careful not to rub or damage it. We recommend wearing gloves when handling media.
Handle media so as to keep the print surface free of sweat and grease from hands. This may affect the printing quality.
After printing, allow ink to dry before handling.
After printing, handle prints carefully and avoid touching the print surface. Due to their nature, pigment inks may flake off if rubbed or scratched.
Paper may stretch or shrink from changes in humidity or other environmental factors. Allow ample time for the paper to adjust to the environment before use.
After use, remove paper from the printer if environmental changes are expected and store it in the bag.
> Loading Rolls
Unaligned roll edges, stains and tape marks may lead to faulty paper feeding.
If the roll edge is curled, straighten the curled edge before loading the roll.
> Managing Ejected Paper
Depending on the condition of paper after ejection, ejected sheets may impede ejection of the next sheet or damage other sheets. Remove each sheet after ejection.
> Borderless Printing
If you use an A1 or A2 roll for borderless printing, insert the provided Spacer for Borderless Printing on the Roll Holder. The platen may be soiled from borderless printing
Local machine zone

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

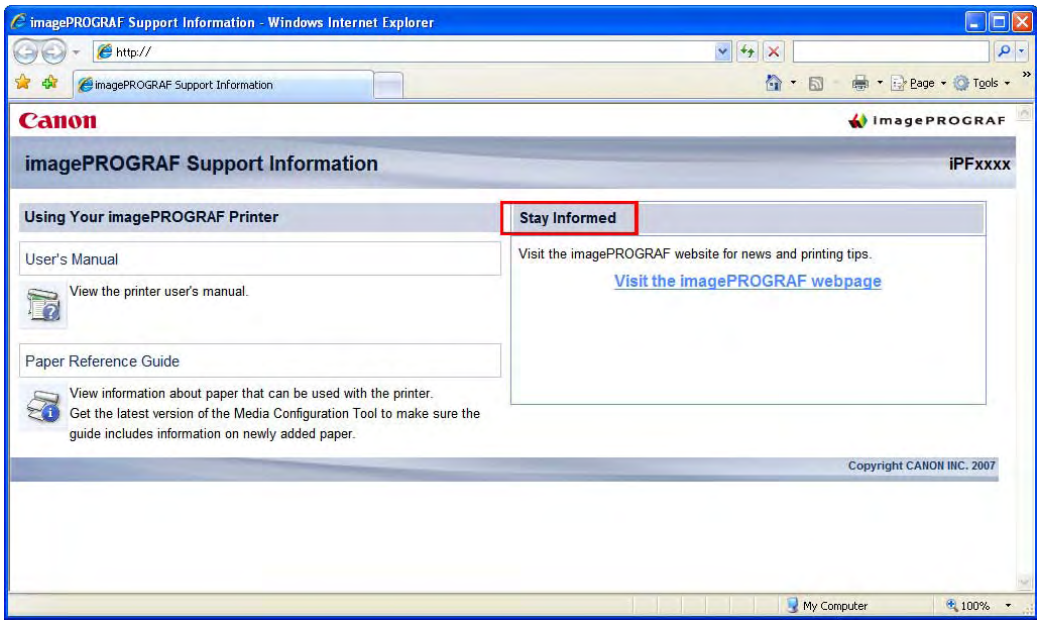
Updating paper information

You can update paper information in the Paper Reference Guide and on the printer by downloading the latest version of the Media Configuration Tool from the imagePROGRAF website. For information about the Media Configuration Tool, see the Media Configuration Tool Guide (Windows) or Media Configuration Tool Guide (Macintosh).
Follow these steps to access the imagePROGRAF website.

Important

- When you update paper information by using the Media Configuration Tool, the paper type setting on the Control Panel, in the printer driver, and in related software is updated.
- Windows
  1. Double-click the **iPFxxxx Support** icon on the desktop. (Here, iPFxxxx represents the printer model.)

  The online support window is displayed.
  2. Select **Stay Informed**.


imagePROGRAF Support Information - Windows Internet Explorer
http://
imagePROGRAF Support Information
Page
Tools
Canon
imagePROGRAF
imagePROGRAF Support Information
iPFxxxx
Using Your imagePROGRAF Printer
Stay Informed
User's Manual
View the printer user's manual.
Visit the imagePROGRAF website for news and printing tips.
Visit the imagePROGRAF webpage
Paper Reference Guide
View information about paper that can be used with the printer.
Get the latest version of the Media Configuration Tool to make sure the guide includes information on newly added paper.
Copyright CANON INC. 2007
My Computer
100%

  The default browser is started, and the imagePROGRAF webpage is displayed.

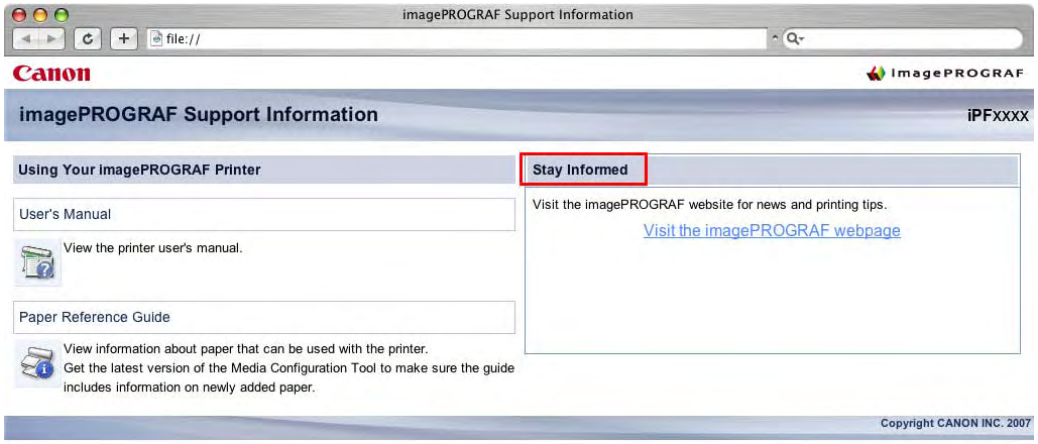
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

- Mac OS X

  1. Click the **iPF Support** icon in the **Dock**.

  The online support window is displayed.

  2. Select **Stay Informed**.

  
  imagePROGRAF Support Information
file://
Canon
imagePROGRAF
imagePROGRAF Support Information
iPFxxxx
Using Your imagePROGRAF Printer
Stay Informed
User's Manual
View the printer user's manual.
Paper Reference Guide
View information about paper that can be used with the printer.
Get the latest version of the Media Configuration Tool to make sure the guide includes information on newly added paper.
Visit the imagePROGRAF website for news and printing tips.
Visit the imagePROGRAF webpage
Copyright CANON INC. 2007

  The default browser is started, and the imagePROGRAF webpage is displayed.

Note

- In Windows, you can also access the imagePROGRAF webpage by clicking the **start** menu, selecting **Programs** > iPFxxxx Media Configuration Tool (here, iPFxxxx represents the printer model) > iPFxxxx Media Configuration Tool to start the Media Configuration Tool, and clicking Extra Information.
- On a Macintosh computer, you can also access the imagePROGRAF website from the Finder by selecting Applications (in Mac OS X or OS 9) > Canon Utilities > iPFxxxx Media Configuration Tool (here, iPFxxxx represents the printer model)) > MCTxxxx to start the Media Configuration Tool and then clicking Extra Information.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Paper Sizes

Rolls

Rolls that meet the following conditions are supported.

- Outer diameter: up to 150 mm (6.0 in)
- Inner diameter of paper core: 2 or 3 inches
- Printing side out

Roll width	Roll Paper Width Settings in Printer Driver	Borderless Printing (*1)
1,118 mm (44 in)	**60-in. Roll (1524mm)**	No
1,067 mm (42 in)	**44-in. Roll (1188mm)**	Yes
1,030 mm (41 in)	**JIS B0/B1 Roll (1030mm)**	Yes
914 mm (36 in)	**36-in. Roll (914mm)**	Yes
841 mm (33 in)	**ISO A0/A1 Roll (841mm)**	Yes
762 mm (30 in)	**30-in. Roll (762mm)**	No
728 mm (29 in)	**JIS B1/B2 Roll (728mm)**	No
610 mm (24 in)	**24-in. Roll (610mm)**	Yes
594 mm (23 in)	**ISO A1/A2 Roll (594mm)**	Yes
515 mm (20 in)	**JIS B2/B3 Roll (515mm)**	Yes
432 mm (17 in)	**17-in. Roll (432mm)**	No
420 mm (16.5 in)	**ISO A2/A3 Roll (420mm)**	No
406 mm (16 in)	**16-in. Roll (407mm)**	Yes
356 mm (14 in)	**14-in. Roll (356mm)**	Yes
297 mm (12 in)	**ISO A3/A4 Roll (297mm)**	No
254 mm (10 in)	**10-in. Roll (254mm)**	Yes
Custom Media Width	254 mm (10 in) - 1,118 mm (44 in)	

*1: For information on types of paper compatible with borderless printing, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.169)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Sheets

Sheets of the following sizes are supported.

Paper size	Dimensions
ISO A0	841 × 1,189 mm (33 × 47 in)
ISO A1	594 × 841 mm (23 × 33 in)
ISO A2	420 × 594 mm (16.5 × 23 in)
ISO A2+	432 × 610 mm (17 × 24 in)
ISO A3	297 × 420 mm (12 × 17 in)
ISO A3+	329 × 483 mm (13 × 19 in)
ISO A4	210 × 297 mm (8 × 12 in)
ISO B0	1,000 × 1,414 mm (39.5 × 56 in)
ISO B1	707 × 1,000 mm (28 × 39.5 in)
ISO B2	500 × 707 mm (20 × 28 in)
ISO B3	353 × 500 mm (14 × 20 in)
ISO B4	250 × 353 mm (10 × 14 in)
JIS B0	1,030 × 1,456 mm (40.5 × 57 in)
JIS B1	728 × 1,030 mm (29 × 40.5 in)
JIS B2	515 × 728 mm (20 × 29 in)
JIS B3	364 × 515 mm (14 × 20 in)
JIS B4	257 × 364 mm (10 × 14 in)
34"x44" (ANSI E)	864 × 1,118 mm (34 × 44 in)
28"x40" (ANSI F)	711 × 1,016 mm (28 × 40 in)
22"x34"(ANSI D)	559 × 864 mm (22 × 34 in)
17"x22"(ANSI C)	432 × 559 mm (17 × 22 in)
11"x17" (Ledger)	279 × 432 mm (11 × 17 in)
13"x19" (Super B)	330 × 483 mm (13 × 19 in)
Letter (8.5"x11")	216 × 279 mm (8.5 × 11 in)
Legal (8.5"x14")	216 × 356 mm (8.5 × 14 in)
36"x48" (ARCH E)	914 × 1,219 mm (36 × 48 in)
30"x42" (ARCH E1)	762 × 1,062 mm (30 × 42 in)
26"x38" (ARCH E2)	660 × 965 mm (26 × 38 in)
27"x39" (ARCH E3)	686 × 991 mm (27 × 39 in)
24"x36" (ARCH D)	610 × 914 mm (24 × 36 in)
18"x24" (ARCH C)	457 × 610 mm (18 × 24 in)
12"x18" (ARCH B)	305 × 457 mm (12 × 18 in)
9"x12" (ARCH A)	229 × 305 mm (9 × 12 in)
DIN C0	917 × 1,296 mm (36 ×51 in)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Paper size	Dimensions
DIN C1	648 × 917 mm (26 ×36 in)
DIN C2	458 × 648 mm (18 × 26 in)
DIN C3	324 × 458 mm (13 × 18 in)
DIN C4	229 × 324 mm (9 × 13 in)
20"x24"	508 × 610 mm (20 × 24 in)
18"x22"	457 × 559 mm (18 × 22 in)
14"x17"	355 × 432 mm (14 × 17 in)
12"x16"	304 × 406 mm (12 × 16 in)
10"x12"	254 × 305 mm (10 × 12 in)
10"x15"	254 × 381 mm (10 × 15 in)
8"x10"	203 × 254 mm (8 × 10 in)
US Photo 16"x20"	406 × 508 mm (16 × 20 in)
Poster 20"x30"	508 × 762 mm (20 × 30 in)
Poster 30"x40"	762 × 1,016 mm (30 × 40 in)
Poster 42"x60"	1,067 × 1,524 mm (42 × 60 in)
Poster 44"x62"	1,118 × 1,575 mm (44 × 62 in)
13"x22"	329 × 558 mm (13 ×22 in)
Poster 300x900mm	300 × 900 mm (12 × 35 in)
Custom Media Size	203 × 203 mm (8 × 8 in) - 1,118 × 1,600 mm (44 × 63 in)

Note

- In the printer driver, paper sizes are categorized into groups based on the “size system” such as ISO A or ANSI.
  In Windows and Mac OS 9, some size systems are not available by default. Follow the steps below to make them available.
  Windows:
  1. Display the printer driver dialog box.
  2. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.
  3. Click **Size Options** to display the **Media Size Options** dialog box.
  4. Select the Display Series check box.

  Mac OS 9:
  1. In **Chooser**, choose **GARO Printer Driver**.
  2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the dialog box for page settings.
  3. Click **Media Design** in the **Page Attribute** list to display the **Media Design** pane.
  4. Select the Display Series check box.
- For details on non-standard paper sizes, see “Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes”. (→P.396)
- Borderless printing is not supported on sheets.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Handling rolls

Selecting the Roll as the Paper Source

You can switch the paper source between the roll and the sheet by pressing the **Feeder Selection** button. Each time you press this button, the paper source switches between the roll (indicated by the **Roll Media lamp**) and the sheet (indicated by the **Cut Sheet lamp**).
Press the **Feeder Selection** button to activate the **Roll Media lamp** (a).

Note

- You cannot switch the paper source in the following situations:
  - If the **Message lamp** is flashing
    Check the message on the Display Screen and take action as necessary. (→P.764)
  - If the **Data lamp** is flashing
    Select the paper source after printing.
  - If a printer menu operation is in progress
    Select the paper source after the menu operation.
  - When in the process of loading paper
    Finish loading the paper before selecting the paper source.
  - When in the process of replacing Ink Tanks
    Finish replacing the Ink Tanks before selecting the paper source.
  - If the Top Cover is open
    Close the Top Cover before selecting the paper source.

After you select the roll as the paper source, a message is displayed instructing you to load the roll. At this point, load the roll. (→P.182)

Note

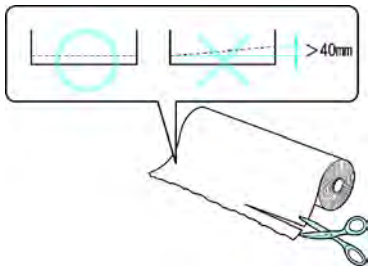
- If any paper is loaded that will not be used, remove it before loading the roll.
  (→P.186)
  (→P.216)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

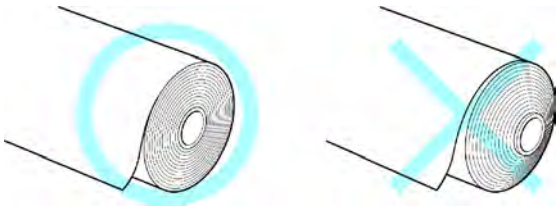
Setting the Roll on the Roll Holder

Note

- Printed rolls will not work correctly. Cut away the printed portion before loading the roll.
- For details on supported sizes and types of rolls, see Paper Sizes (→P.175) or the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.169)
- Cut the edge of the roll paper if it is uneven, dirty, or has tape residue.
  Uneven, dirty, or sticky edges may cause feeding problems and affect the printing quality.

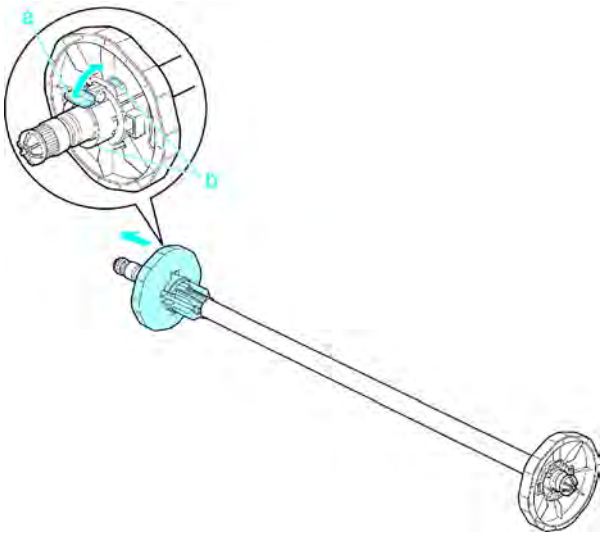


  Be careful not to cut through any barcodes printed on the roll.
- Wind up the roll so that the edge is even across the roll.



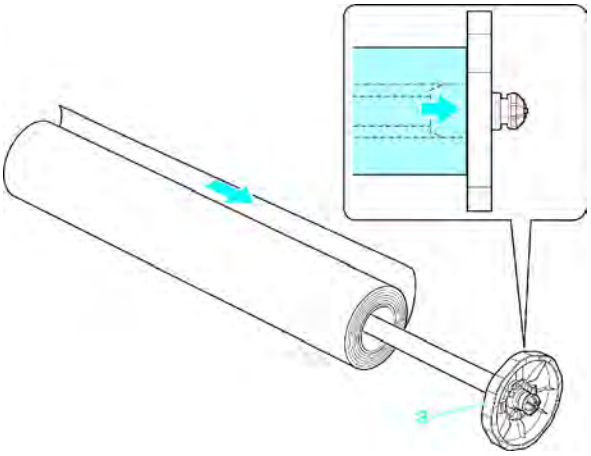
- After pressing the **Load/Eject** button, you can refer to instructions on the Display Screen as you load the paper.

1. Lift the Holder Stopper lever (a) from the shaft side to unlock it. Holding the Holder Stopper at the position indicated (b), remove it from the Roll Holder.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

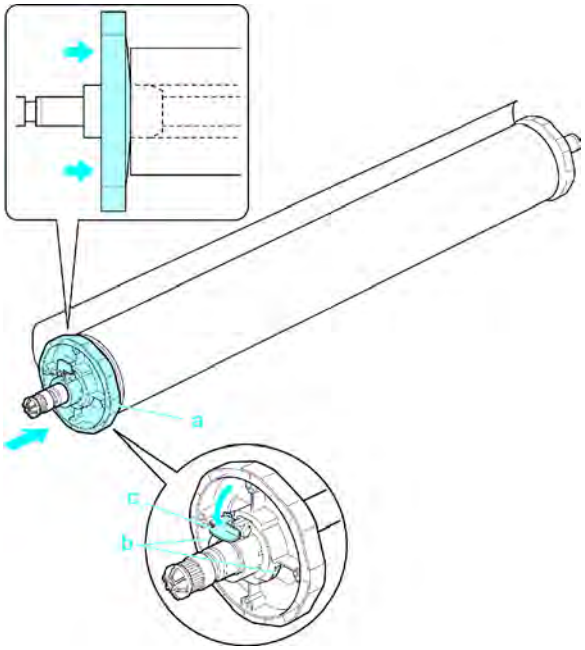
2. With the edge of the roll paper facing forward as shown, insert the roll in the Roll Holder from the left. Insert the roll firmly until it touches the flange (a) of the Roll Holder.



Important

- Insert the roll firmly so that there is no gap between the roll and the flange of the Roll Holder. If there is a gap, it may cause feeding problems.
- Set the roll on a table or other flat surface so that it does not roll or fall. Rolls are heavy, and dropping a roll may cause injury.
- When setting a roll, be careful to avoid hitting the roll holder flange hard with the roll. This may damage the Roll Holder.

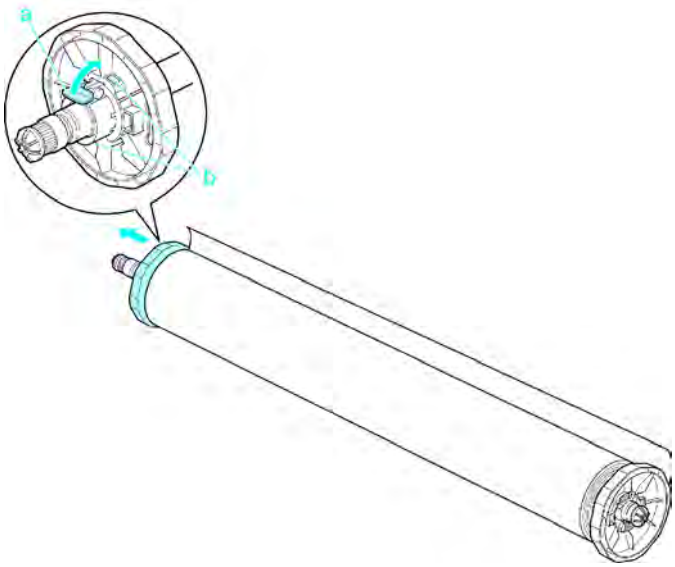
3. Insert the Holder Stopper from the left in the Roll Holder as shown. Holding it at the position shown (b), push it firmly in until the flange (a) of the Holder Stopper touches the roll. Lock the Holder Stopper lever (c) by pushing it down toward the shaft side.



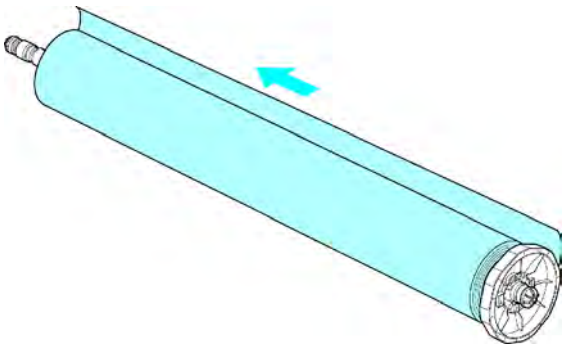
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Removing a Roll from the Roll Holder

1. Lift the Holder Stopper lever (a) from the shaft side to unlock it. Holding the Holder Stopper at the position indicated (b), remove it from the Roll Holder.



2. Remove the roll from the Roll Holder.



Important

- After removal, store the roll in the original bag or box, away from high temperature, humidity, and direct sunlight. If paper is not stored properly, the printing surface may become scratched, which may affect the printing quality when you use it again.

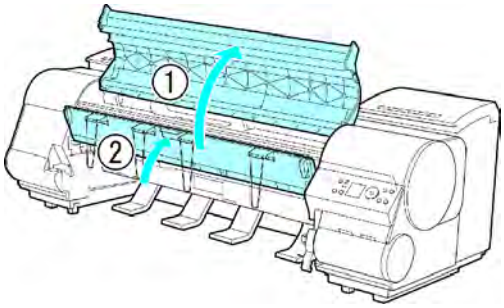
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Loading the Roll in the Printer

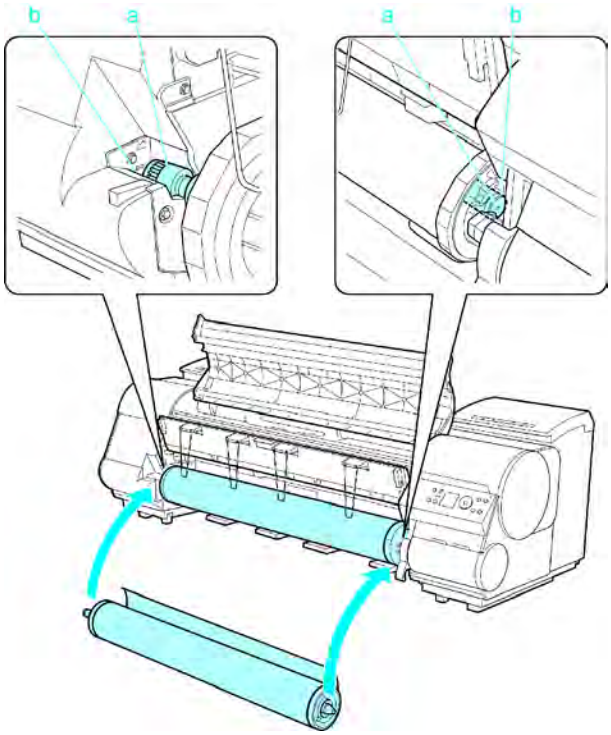
Note

- Remove any loaded paper that will not be used.
  - Roll (→P.186)
  - Sheet (→P.216)
- If the Platen is dirty, clean inside the Top Cover. (→P.720)

1. Open the Top Cover and lift the Ejection Guide.



2. With the edge of the roll paper facing forward as shown, insert the Roll Holder shaft (a) into the guide grooves (b) of the Roll Holder Slot on both sides.

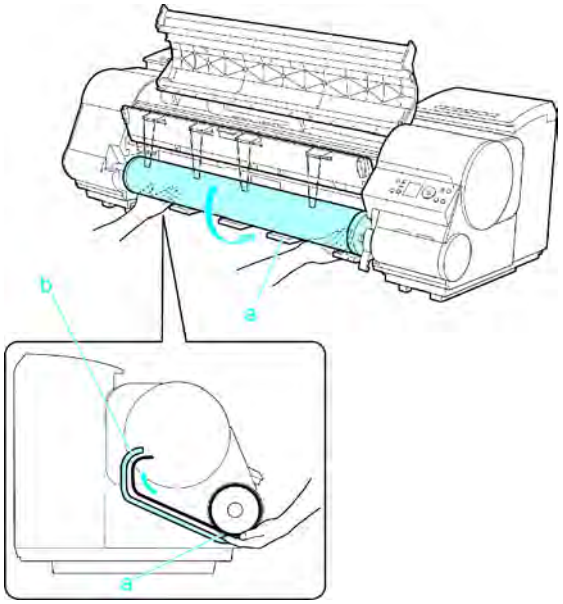


Caution

- Be careful not to drop a roll and hurt yourself when loading the roll.
- Be careful not to put your fingers between the guide grooves (b) and the Roll Holder shaft (a) when loading roll. Otherwise, you may hurt yourself.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

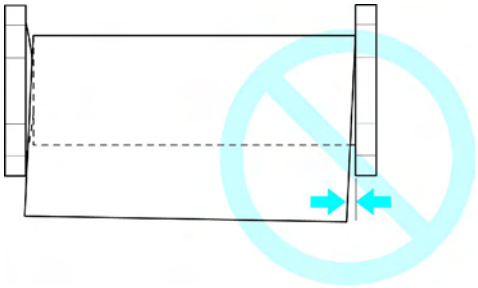
3. Pull out the roll paper evenly on both ends, insert the roll paper in the Paper Feed Slot (a), and advance the roll paper until the roll paper touches the Paper Retainer.



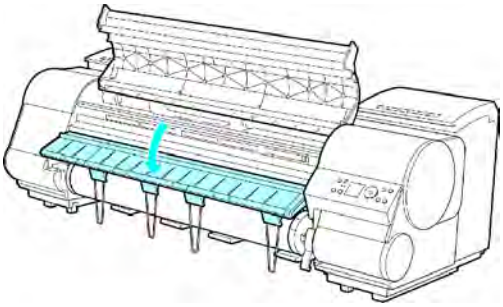
After the paper reaches the Paper Retainer, it is automatically advanced over the Platen.

Important

- Be careful not to soil the printing surface of roll paper as you insert it in the slot. This may affect the printing quality.
- If the paper is wrinkled or warped, straighten it out before loading it.
- When loading paper that curls easily, lift the Release Lever to manually pull out the roll paper over the Platen.
- Load the roll so that there is no gap between the right edge of the paper and the Roll Holder.

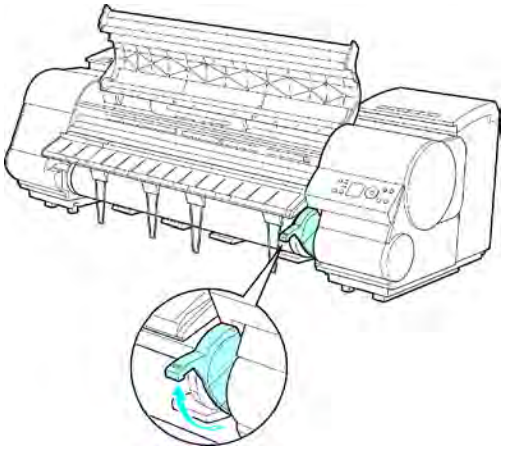


4. Lower the Ejection Guide.

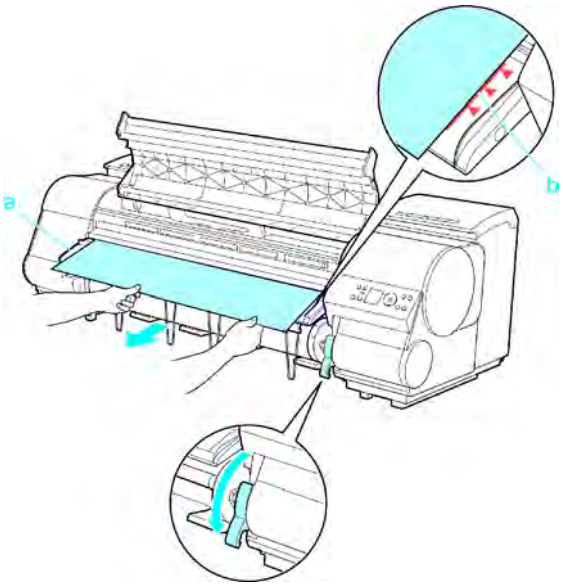


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

5. While holding the edge of the roll paper, lift the Release Lever.



6. Hold the roll edge as you gently pull it evenly to the position of the Ejection Guide (a) using the both hands. Align the right side of the roll paper with the Paper Alignment Line (b) so that the paper side is parallel to the line and lower the Release Lever.



Important

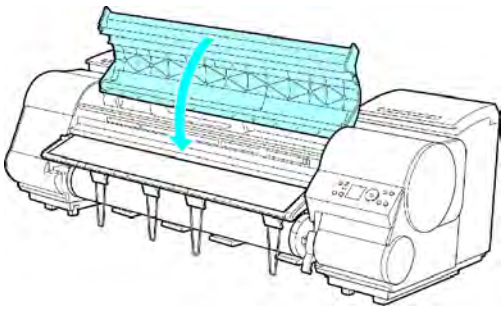
- Be sure to follow steps 5 and 6. If paper cannot be advanced straight or if it wrinkles, it may jam or rub against the Printhead.
- Do not force the roll paper into alignment with the Paper Alignment Line (b). This may prevent the paper from being advanced straight.

Note

- You can adjust the strength of vacuum holding paper against the Platen when the Release Lever is open. If it is difficult to load paper, press the ▲ or ▼ button on the Control Panel to adjust the strength. Set vacuum stronger by pressing the ▲ button or weaker with the ▼ button. Three settings are available.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

7. Close the Top Cover.



After you load a roll, the printer automatically shows a menu for selection of the paper type on the Display Screen.
At this point, specify the paper type. (→P.188)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Removing the Roll from the Printer

Caution

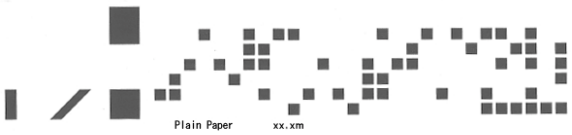
- If you have activated automatic detection of the remaining roll paper, always follow the steps below to remove rolls. You will be unable to manage the amount of roll paper left if you move the Release Lever and remove the roll before the barcode is printed.

1. Press the **Load/Eject** button.
   A confirmation message is displayed regarding removal of the roll.

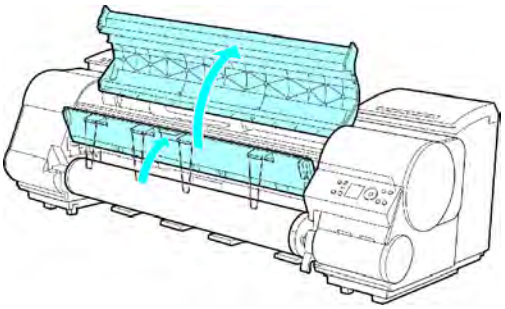
2. Press the **OK** button.
   The roll can now be removed.

Note

- If you need to cut the roll, execute **Paper Cutting** on the Control Panel. (→P.193)
- If you have selected **Media Menu** > **Chk Remain.Roll** > **On** in the printer menu and the printed document has been ejected, a barcode and brief text message are printed on the leading edge of rolls.
  If the document is not cut but kept in the printer, only the text message is printed. In this case, cut the roll with scissors and remove the sheet.

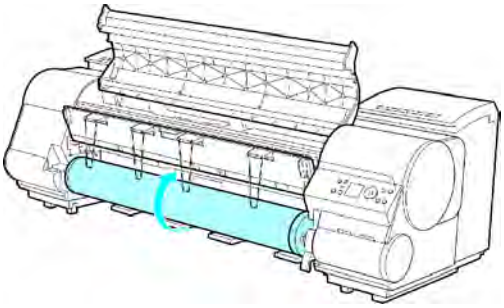


3. Open the Top Cover and lift the Ejection Guide.

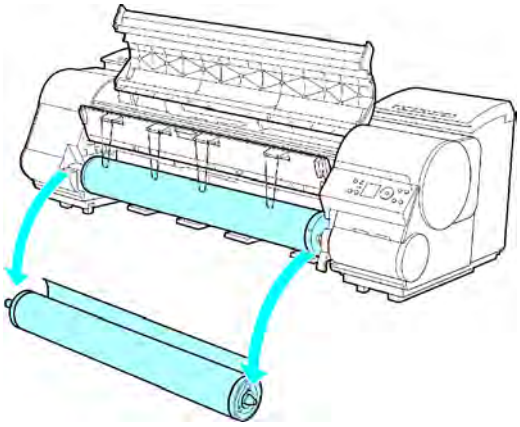


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

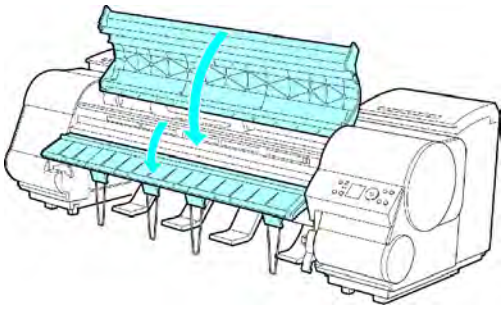
4. Using both hands, rotate the Roll Holder in the direction of the arrow to rewind the roll.



5. Remove the Roll Holder from the Roll Holder Slot.



6. Lower the Ejection Guide and close the Top Cover.



Important

- If the Platen inside the Top Cover becomes dirty, it may soil the underside of paper. Clean the Platen after borderless printing or printing on small paper.
- Setting **CarriageScanWdth** to **Fixed** on the Control Panel may reduce soiling on the underside of the paper. However, this requires more time for printing.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Selecting the Paper Type (Roll)

When changing the type of paper after the paper has been advanced, specify the type of paper as follows.

Important

- For best printing results, the printer fine-tunes the feed amount for each type of paper. Be sure to select the type of paper to use correctly before printing.
- Because the printer fine-tunes the feed amount for each type of paper, the margins and the size of printed images may vary depending on the type of paper used. If margins and the size of images are not as you expected, adjust the paper feed amount and Printhead height.
(→P.655)
(→P.654)

Note

- After you load the roll, the printer automatically shows a menu for selection of the paper type on the Display Screen, unless a barcode has been printed on the roll or you have activated automatic detection of the remaining roll paper. Select the type of paper, and then press the **OK** button.
If no barcode has been printed on the roll and you have activated automatic detection of the remaining roll paper, specify the roll length after the paper type. (→P.189)

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Media Menu**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Roll Media Type**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper loaded in the printer, and then press the **OK** button.

Note

- For details on types of paper, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.169) By factory default, Plain Paper is selected.
- If you move the Release Lever, the setting automatically reverts to the previously selected paper.
- Be sure to select the correct paper type. If this setting does not match the loaded paper, it may cause feed errors and affect the printing quality.

5. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Specifying the Paper Length (Roll)

When changing the length of paper after the paper has been advanced, specify the length as follows.

Note

- When you specify the roll length in the printer menu, **Chk Remain.Roll** must be set to **On**. If it is **Off**, the **Roll Length Set** menu is not shown.
- After you specify the roll type, the printer automatically shows a menu for selection of the roll length on the Display Screen if no barcode has been printed on the roll and you have activated automatic detection of the remaining roll paper. Select the roll length, and then press the **OK** button. The printer will automatically go online.

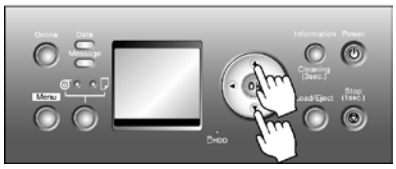
1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Media Menu**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Roll Length Set**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the length of paper loaded in the printer, and then press the **OK** button.
   Specify the roll length as follows.
   1. Press ◄ or ► to move the cursor (_) to each field for entering numbers.
   2. Press the ▲ or ▼ button to enter the value.
   3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 to finish entering the value, and then press the **OK** button.
5. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Feeding Roll Paper Manually

You can bring the printer offline by pressing the **Online** button.
When the printer is offline and roll paper is selected as the paper source, you can advance or retract the roll by pressing ▲ or ▼.

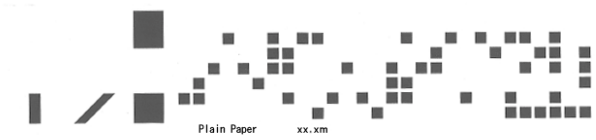


Press ▲ to retract the roll manually.
Press ▼ to advance the roll manually.
If you hold down the ▲ or ▼ button for less than a second, the roll paper will move about 1 mm (0.039 in).
If you hold down ▲ or ▼ for more than a second, the paper will move until you release the button. Release the button when the Display Screen indicates **End of paper feed. Cannot feed paper more.**

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Detection of the Remaining Roll Paper

If you have activated automatic detection of the remaining roll paper, when the roll is ejected, a barcode with text is printed on the roll paper that identifies the type of paper and amount left. If this function is activated and barcodes are printed on the roll paper, the type of paper and amount left are automatically detected when you load a roll. The barcode will be cut off after it has been read.



Note

- Only the text message is printed if the document is not cut but kept in the printer, or if you are printing on clear film.

Important

- If the barcode on the roll is not detected, enter the type and length of paper on the Control Panel.

Follow these steps to activate detection of the remaining roll paper.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Media Menu**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Chk Remain.Roll**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the desired setting option, and then press the **OK** button.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

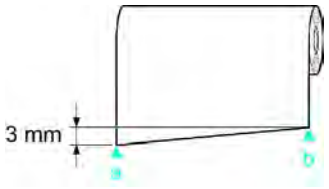
Cutting the Leading Edge of Roll Paper Automatically

If the leading edge of a roll is crooked or warped, it may cause an error message or printing problems. In this case, set **Trim Edge First** to **Automatic** or **On** on the Control Panel to have the printer cut the leading edge to make the edge straight after you load a roll.

Trim Edge First offers the following options.

- **Automatic**

  If the left and right side of the leading edge of the roll ((a) and (b)) are uneven by 40 mm (1.6 in) or more when you load the roll, the edge is cut an amount relative to the slant to ensure a straight edge, and scraps are removed. The edge is not cut if the unevenness is less than 40 mm. However, paper may sometimes be cut, depending on the state of the leading edge.

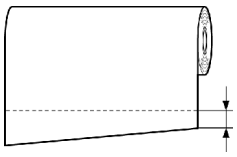


- **Off**

  The edge is not cut and scraps are not removed. This setting is **Off** for most types of paper, by default. For more information, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.169)

- **On**

  The leading edge is cut off when you load a roll, and scraps are removed. The amount of paper cut off from the leading edge varies depending on the paper type. For more information, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.169)



Note

- If you print on paper that has an irregular width, set **Skew Check Lv.** to **Loose** for a higher skew detection threshold or to **Off** to disable skew detection. However, if paper is loaded askew when detection is **Off**, note that paper jams or Platen soiling may occur.

Follow these steps to change the **Trim Edge First** setting.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Trim Edge First**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the desired setting option, and then press the **OK** button.

   This setting takes effect the next time you load a roll.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls

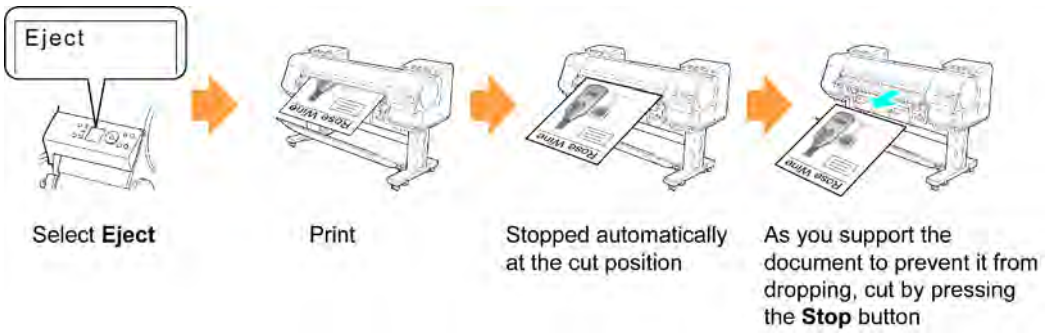
How a roll is cut after ejection varies depending on the printer settings.

Cutting Method		Menu Settings	
Automatic	The roll is automatically cut by the Cutter Unit following printer driver settings.	**Cutting Mode**	**Automatic**
Eject (→P.194)	Choose this setting if you prefer not to have documents dropped immediately after printing, as when waiting for ink to dry. To cut the roll using the Cutter Unit , hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more.		**Eject**
Manual (→P.195)	Choose this setting when using media that cannot be cut using the Cutter Unit . Cut the roll using scissors.		**Manual**
Paper Cutting (→P.196)	Select this option to cut paper at the current position. The roll is cut using the Cutter Unit .	**Paper Cutting**	**Yes**

Cut rolls manually in the following cases:

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Eject (waiting for ink to dry after printing)


Eject
Select **Eject**
Print
Stopped automatically at the cut position
As you support the document to prevent it from dropping, cut by pressing the **Stop** button

Important

- When cutting wide printed documents after ejection, have two people support the documents. If the paper drops, printed documents may be damaged.
- Do not lift the paper when holding printed documents before cutting. If the paper rises, it may affect the printing quality.

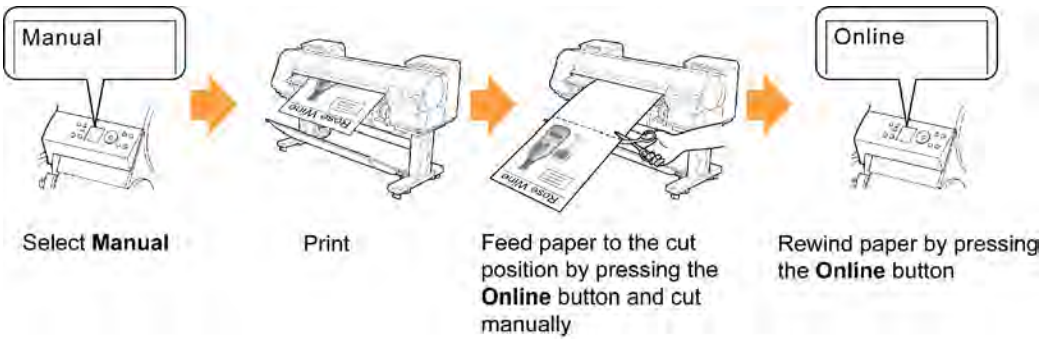
1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Cutting Mode**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Eject**, and then press the **OK** button.
6. Start printing.

   Roll paper is fed to the specified cut position and then automatically stopped.
7. As you support the printed document to prevent it from dropping, hold down the **Stop** button for at least a second to cut the roll.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Manual (when using media that cannot be cut using the Cutter Unit)

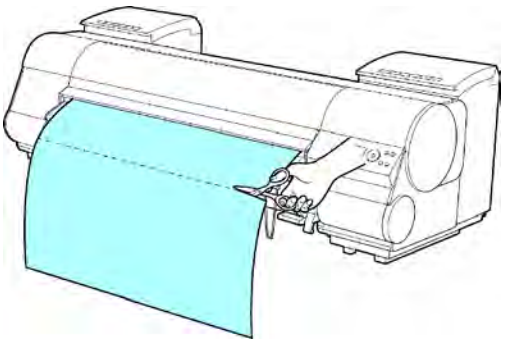

Manual
Online
Select **Manual**
Print
Feed paper to the cut position by pressing the **Online** button and cut manually
Rewind paper by pressing the **Online** button

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Cutting Mode**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Manual**, and then press the **OK** button.
6. Start printing.

   The printer stops advancing the paper after printing.
7. Press the **Online** button.

   Roll paper is fed to the specified cut position and then automatically stopped.
8. Cut the roll paper manually with scissors or the like.

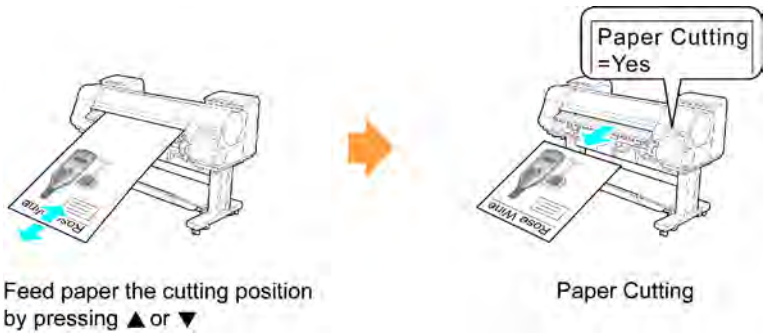


9. Press the **Online** button.

   The roll is rewound, and rewinding stops automatically.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

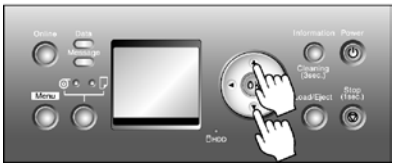
Paper Cutting (to have the roll cut at your specified position)



Feed paper the cutting position by pressing ▲or ▼

Paper Cutting

1. After pressing the **Online** button to bring the printer offline, press ▲ or ▼ to advance the roll paper to the position for cutting.



2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Cutting**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
   After the roll paper is cut, it is rewound automatically.

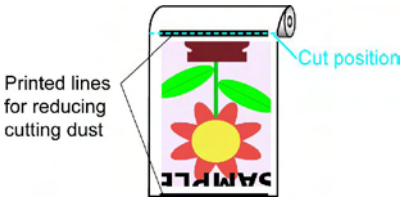
Caution

- If paper would be short when cut at a particular position, the roll may automatically be advanced in some cases before cutting.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Reducing Dust from Cutting Rolls

The printer is equipped with a function to reduce cutting dust for media such as Backlit Film that are more likely to generate debris when cut. This may improve printing quality and help prevent Printhead damage. You can set up this function to be activated for some types of paper.
When this function is activated, black lines are printed at the leading and trailing edges of documents.



Important

- Do not activate this function for paper that wrinkles easily, such as Plain Paper or thin paper. This may impair cutting and cause paper jams.
- Borderless printing is not available when this function is activated. Deactivate this function before borderless printing.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper loaded in the printer, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **CutDustReduct.**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **On**, and then press the **OK** button.
   The function to reduce cutting dust is now activated.

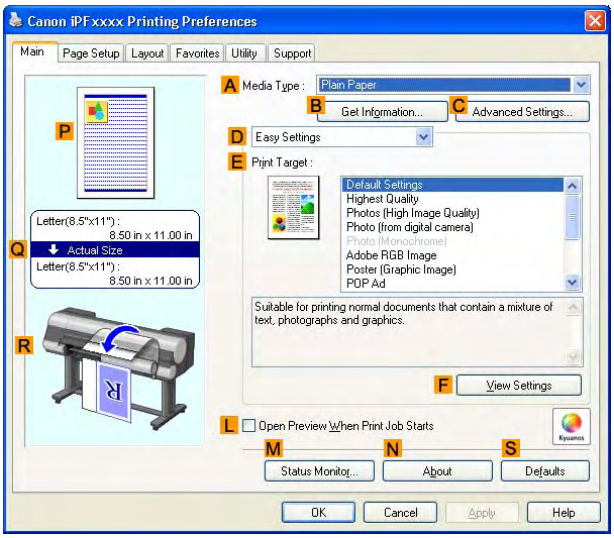
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Specifying the Ink Drying Time for Rolls

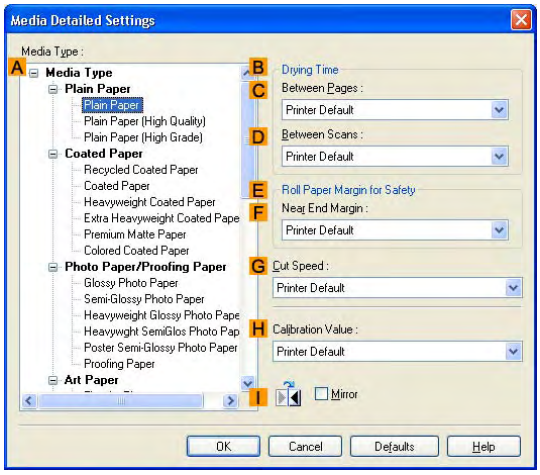
When you are using paper that takes longer for ink to adhere, if the Cutter touches printed surfaces that are still wet, it may damage the paper or cause rough cut edges. Also, ink may be transferred onto the paper surface during ejection, soiling it. You can prevent problems by adjusting the drying time after printing before the paper is cut.

Windows

1. Display the printer driver dialog box.
   (→P.206)
2. Select the **Main** sheet and click **C Advanced Settings** in **A Media Type**.



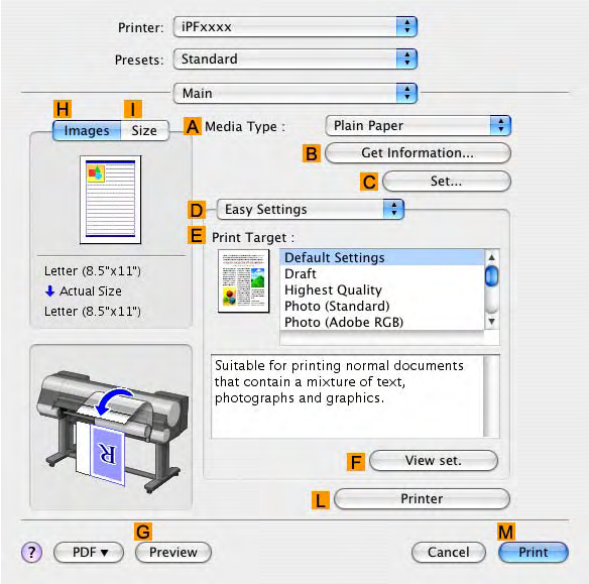
3. In the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box displayed next, select **C Between Pages** and **D Between Scans** in **B Drying Time**, and then click **OK**.
   (→P.208)



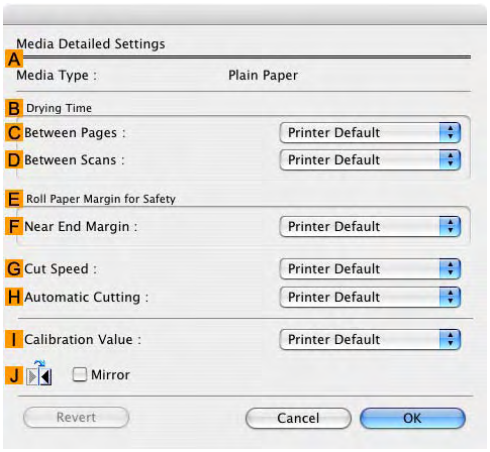
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Mac OS X

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the **Main** pane and click C **Settings** in A **Media Type**.



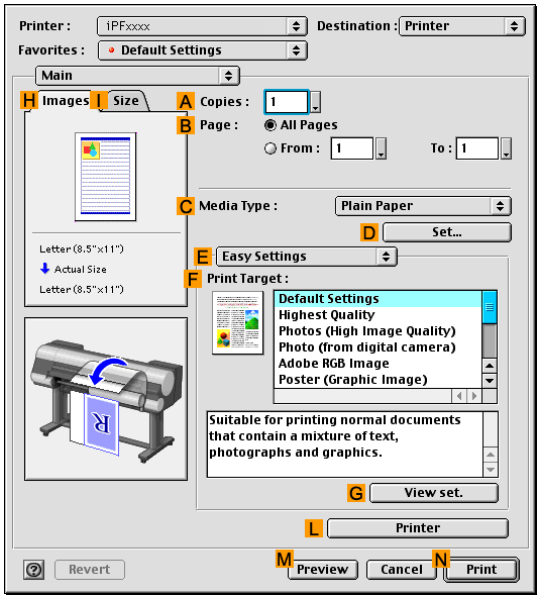
3. In the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box displayed next, select C **Between Pages** and D **Between Scans** in B **Drying Time**, and then click **OK**.
(→P.209)



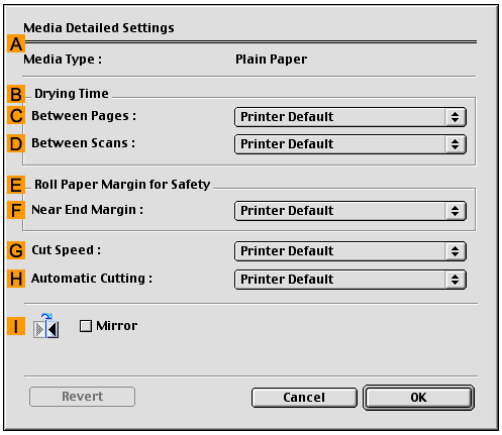
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Mac OS 9

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the **Main** pane and click **D Settings** in **A Media Type**.



3. In the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box displayed next, select **C Between Pages** and **D Between Scans** in **B Drying Time**, and then click **OK**.
(→P.210)



Note

- By factory default, **Drying Time** is deactivated (**Off**) for all paper types.
- To have the printer wait for ink to dry immediately after printing without releasing paper, set **Cutting Mode** to **Eject** in the printer menu.
(→P.193)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

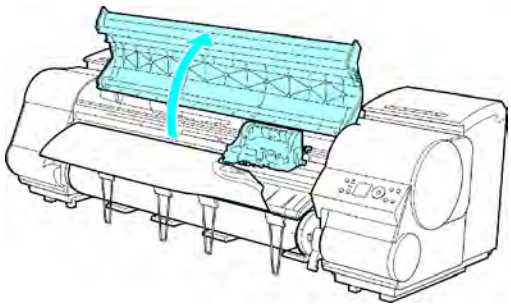
Clearing Jammed Roll Paper

If roll paper jams, follow the steps below to remove jams.

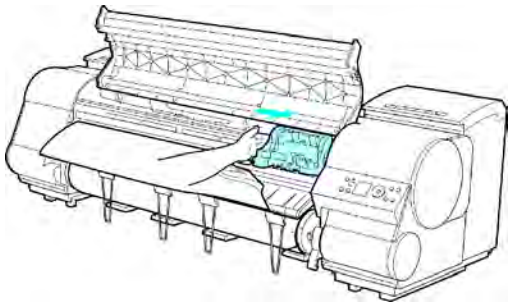
Caution

- Remove any jammed paper promptly.

1. Turn the printer off. (→P.19)
2. Open the Top Cover.



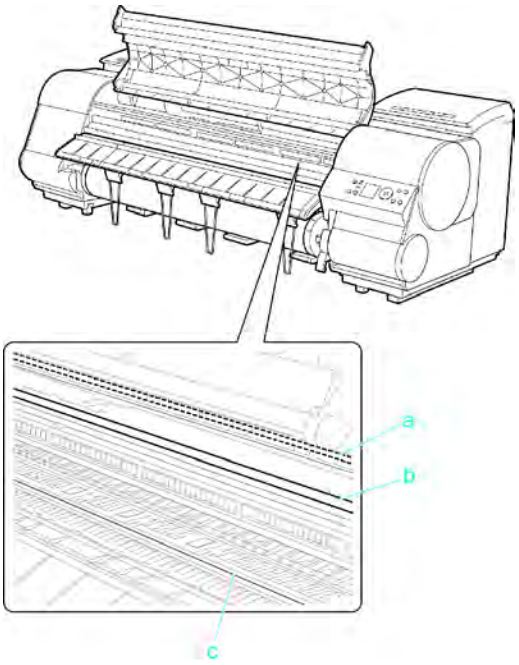
3. If the Carriage is out, move the Carriage to separate it from the paper.



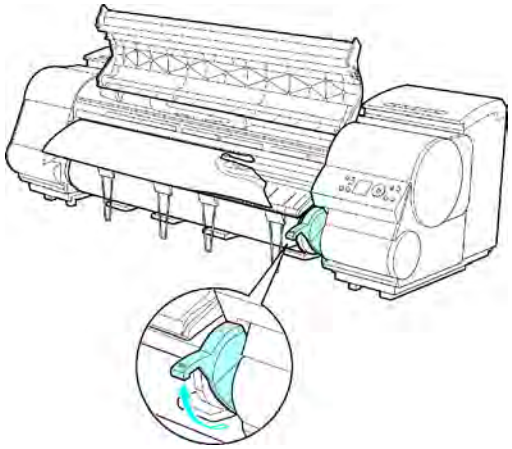
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Important

- If you push the Carriage to the left edge, the blade of the Cutter Unit will be lowered in preparation to cut the paper. Be careful not to pinch your fingers between the Carriage and Platen if you have pushed the Carriage to the left edge or if a paper jam occurs during cutting.
- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a), Carriage Shaft (b), or Fixed Blade (c).

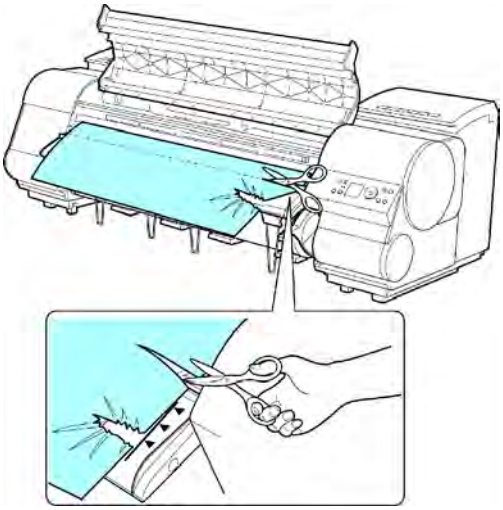


4. Lift the Release Lever.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

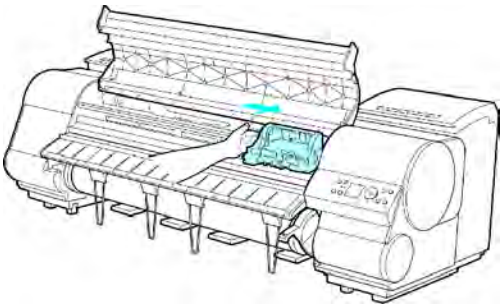
5. Holding the paper on both sides, pull the jammed portion out toward the front. Use a scissors or cutting tool to cut away the printed or wrinkled portion.



Caution

- When cutting paper, be careful to avoid scratching the printer.

6. If the Carriage is on the left, move the Carriage to the right until it stops.

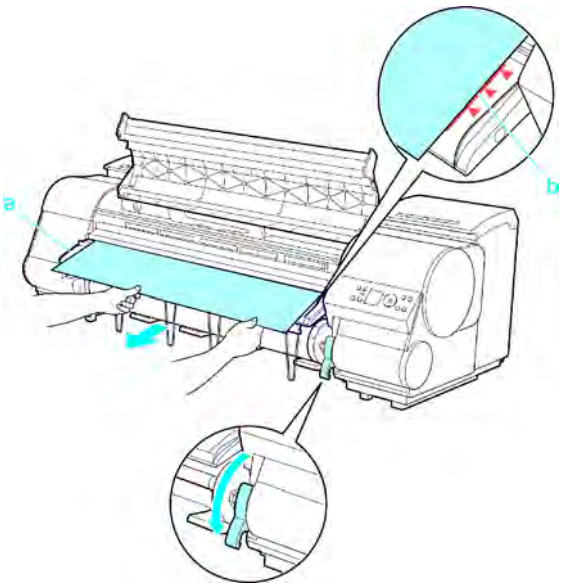


Important

- Always move the Carriage to the right side. If the Carriage is on the left, a Carriage error may occur when you turn on the printer.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

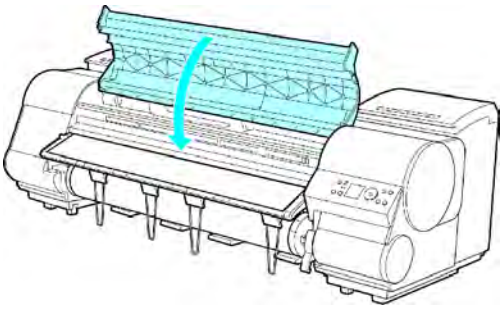
7. Hold the edge of the roll paper in the middle as you gently pull it evenly to the position of the Ejection Guide (a). Align the right side of the roll paper with the Paper Alignment Line (b), keeping this side parallel to the line, and then lower the Release Lever.



Important

- Do not force the roll paper into alignment with the Paper Alignment Line (b). This may prevent the paper from being advanced straight.
- If you pull out too much of the roll, an excessive amount will be cut away.

8. Close the Top Cover.



9. Turn the printer on. (→P.19)

The roll is now advanced. After it is finished being advanced, you can resume printing.

Note

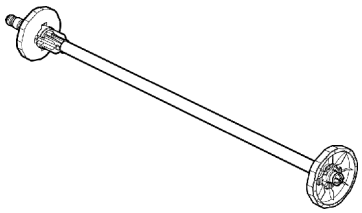
- You can ensure that the edge is cut neatly by following the steps below.
  1. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer offline.
  2. Hold down the ▼ button to advance the paper.
  3. Set **Paper Cutting** to **Yes** in the printer menu to cut the edge. (→P.193)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

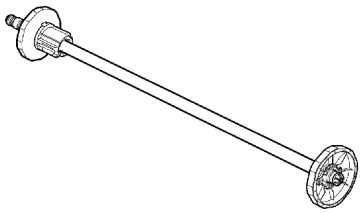
Roll Holder Set

A set of parts comprising the Roll Holder and Holder Stopper. If you want to prepare a few rolls with paper of various types and widths for different purposes, it is convenient to have several sets ready. Sets are available for 2- and 3-inch paper cores. (2-inch versions match the set included with the printer.)

- Roll Holder Set RH2-42 (for 2-inch paper cores)



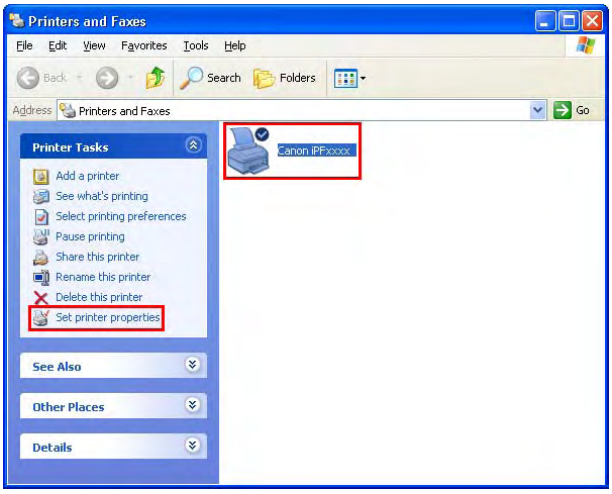
- Roll Holder Set RH3-42 (for 3-inch paper cores)



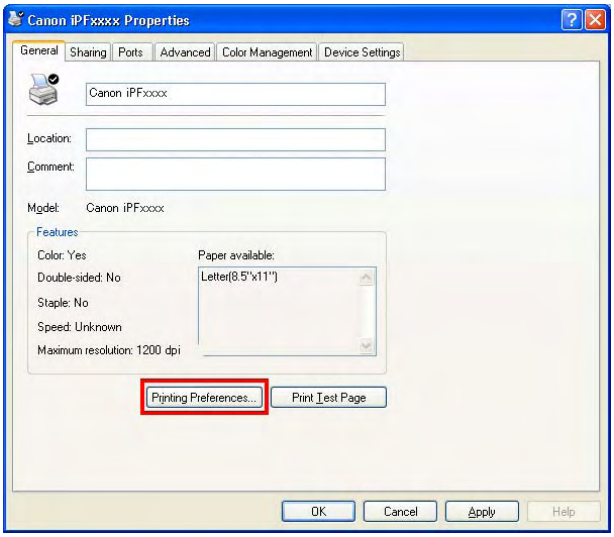
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu (Windows)

1. Click **start** > **Printers and Faxes** (or **Printers**).
2. Select the printer, and then display the printer properties dialog box.

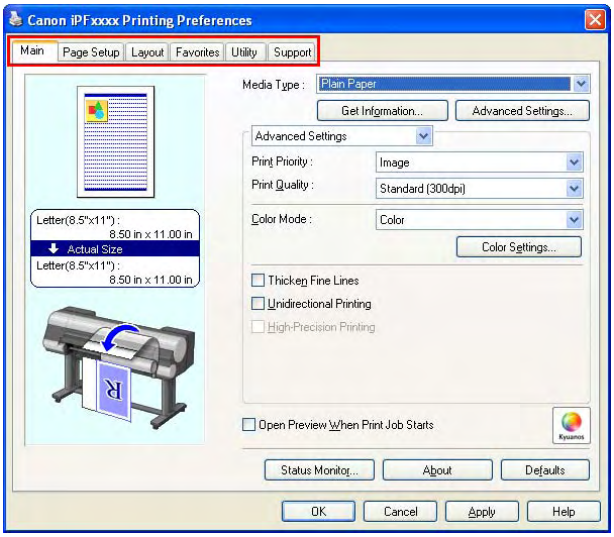


3. Click **Printing Preferences** to display the **Printing Preferences** dialog box, titled with the name of this printer.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Six sheets of print settings are displayed by the printer driver: **Main**, **Page Setup**, **Layout**, **Favorites**, **Utility**, and **Support**.



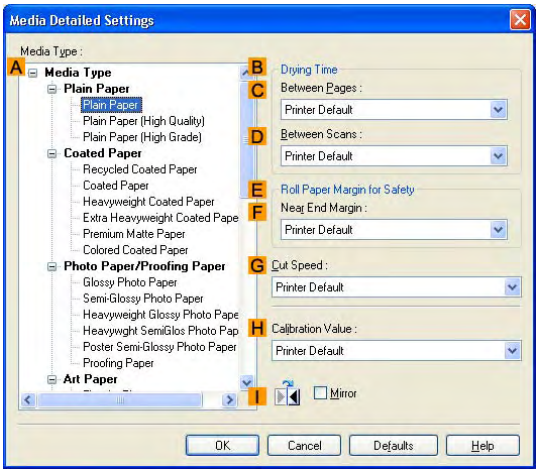
Important

- If you access the printer driver dialog box from the operating system menu, changes you make to the settings will apply to all applications you use for printing.
- You can also access the printer driver dialog box from applications.
  see “Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows)”. (→P.539)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Windows)

The **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box offers the following settings. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



Note

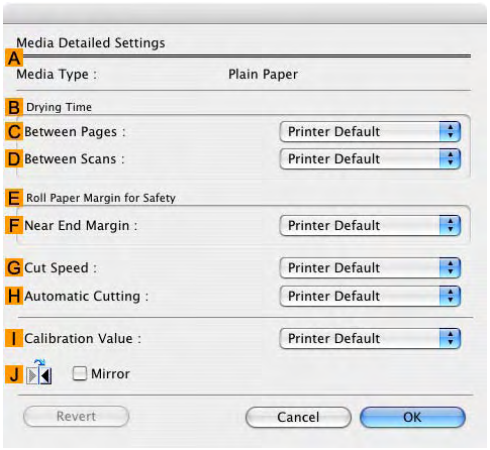
- To display the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box, on the **Main** Sheet (Windows) (→P.516) , click **Settings** by **Media Type**.

Setting Item		Description
A Media Type		Select the paper type. For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide . (→P.169)
B Drying Time		Specify the time that the printer waits for ink to dry, as needed. The **Drying Time** setting is only valid for rolls. (→P.198)
	C Between Pages	Specify the time the printer waits after printing a page until ejecting the paper, as needed.
	D Between Scans	Specify the time the printer waits after printing a line on the page until printing the next line, as needed.
E Roll Paper Margin for Safety		You can specify the length of a margin on the leading edge of paper to ensure that paper susceptible to curling is held firmly against the Platen .
	F Near End Margin	Specify the length of the **Near End Margin** (the leading edge margin) of the roll, as needed.
G Cut Speed		Select the speed of automatic cutting, as needed. You can adjust this setting if paper is not cut well when automatic cutting is used.
H Calibration Value		You can specify whether to apply the results of calibration performed on the printer to image processing.
I Mirror		Specify whether to print a mirror image, as needed. Select this option to print a version of the document or image with the left and right sides inverted.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS X)

The **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box offers the following settings. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



Note

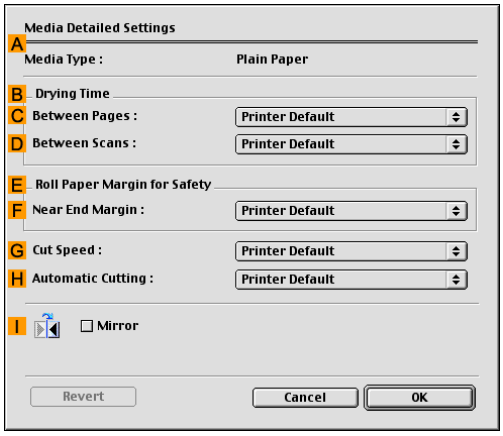
- To display the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box, on the **Main** Pane (Mac OS X) (→P.565) , click **Settings** by **Media Type**.

Setting Item		Description
A Media Type		Select the paper type. For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide . (→P.169)
B Drying Time		Specify the time that the printer waits for ink to dry, as needed. The **Drying Time** setting is only valid for rolls. (→P.198)
	C Between Pages	Specify the time the printer waits after printing a page until ejecting the paper, as needed.
	D Between Scans	Specify the time the printer waits after printing a line on the page until printing the next line, as needed.
E Roll Paper Margin for Safety		You can specify the length of a margin on the leading edge of paper to ensure that paper susceptible to curling is held firmly against the Platen .
	F Near End Margin	Specify the length of the **Near End Margin** (the leading edge margin) of the roll, as needed.
G Cut Speed		Select the speed of automatic cutting, as needed. You can adjust this setting if paper is not cut well when automatic cutting is used.
H Automatic Cutting		You can activate or deactivate **Automatic Cutting** and printing of cut lines, as desired. In this list, specify **Yes** , **No**, or **Print Cut Guideline** .
I Calibration Value		You can specify whether to apply the results of calibration performed on the printer to image processing.
J Mirror		Specify whether to print a mirror image, as needed. Select this option to print a version of the document or image with the left and right sides inverted.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS 9)

The **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box offers the following settings. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



Note

- To display the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box, on the **Main** Pane (Mac OS 9) (→P.588) , click **Settings** by **Media Type**.

Setting Item		Description
A Media Type		Select the paper type. For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide . (→P.169)
B Drying Time		Specify the time that the printer waits for ink to dry, as needed. The **Drying Time** setting is only valid for rolls. (→P.198)
	C Between Pages	Specify the time the printer waits after printing a page until ejecting the paper, as needed.
	D Between Scans	Specify the time the printer waits after printing a line on the page until printing the next line, as needed.
E Roll Paper Margin for Safety		You can specify the length of a margin on the leading edge of paper to ensure that paper susceptible to curling is held firmly against the Platen .
	F Near End Margin	Specify the length of the **Near End Margin** (the leading edge margin) of the roll, as needed.
G Cut Speed		Select the speed of automatic cutting, as needed. Adjust this setting if paper is not cut well when automatic cutting is used.
H Automatic Cutting		You can activate or deactivate **Automatic Cutting** and printing of cut lines, as desired. In this list, you can specify **Yes** or **No** and **Print Cut Guideline** .
I Mirror		Specify whether to print a mirror image, as needed. Select this option to print a version of the document or image with the left and right sides inverted.

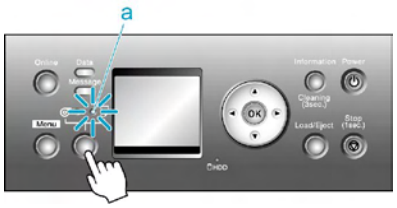
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Handling sheets for paper feed slots

Selecting the Sheet as the Paper Source

You can switch the paper source between the roll and the sheet by pressing the **Feeder Selection** button. Each time you press this button, the paper source switches between the roll (indicated by the **Roll Media lamp**) and the sheet (indicated by the **Cut Sheet lamp**).

1. Press the **Feeder Selection** button to activate the **Cut Sheet lamp** (a).



Caution

- Paper jams may occur if you load paper other than the paper specified in the paper settings for the media source. If you insert the edge of a roll in the Paper Feed Slot after you have selected sheets as the type of paper in the media source on the Control Panel and specified the type and size of paper, the printer will prepare to print on the roll. If you print under these conditions, an error will occur when the roll is ejected. (→P.774)

Note

- You cannot switch the paper source in the following situations:
  - If the **Message lamp** is flashing
    Check the message on the Display Screen and take action as necessary. (→P.764)
  - If the **Data lamp** is flashing
    Select the paper source after printing.
  - If a printer menu operation is in progress
    Select the paper source after the menu operation.

2. Remove any loaded paper that will not be used. (→P.216)

Note

- If a roll is loaded, the roll paper is automatically ejected.

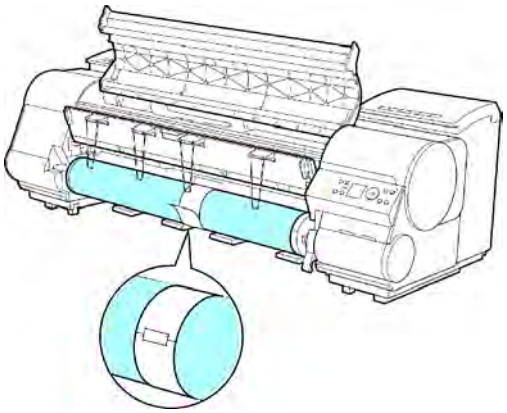
After you select the sheet as the paper source, a message is displayed instructing you to load the sheet. At this point, load the sheet. (→P.212)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Loading the Sheet in the Printer

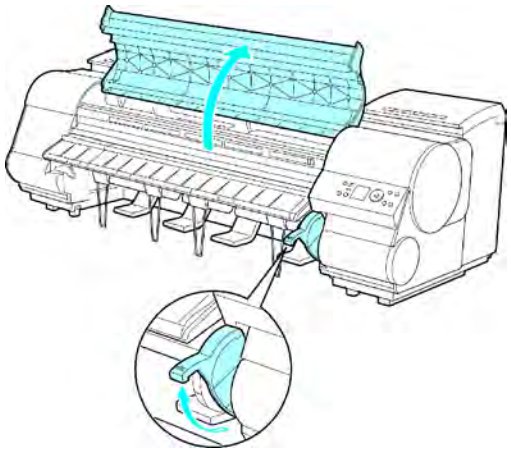
Note

- For details on supported types and sizes of the paper, see Paper Sizes (→P.175) or the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.169)
- Loading a sheet while a roll remains loaded may cause paper jams. We recommend removing the roll if you will load a sheet. (→P.186)
  To prevent the roll from unwinding if you leave it loaded, wrap a sheet of paper around the roll and tape it to fasten it.



- If the Platen is dirty, clean inside the Top Cover. (→P.720)
- After pressing the **Load/Eject** button, you can refer to instructions on the Display Screen as you load the paper.

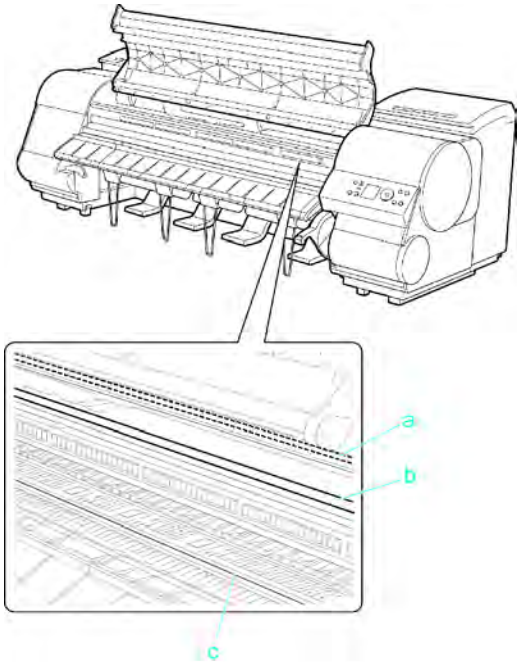
1. If you send a print job from a computer beforehand, the type and size of paper are shown on the Display Screen. Lift the Release Lever and open the Top Cover.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Important

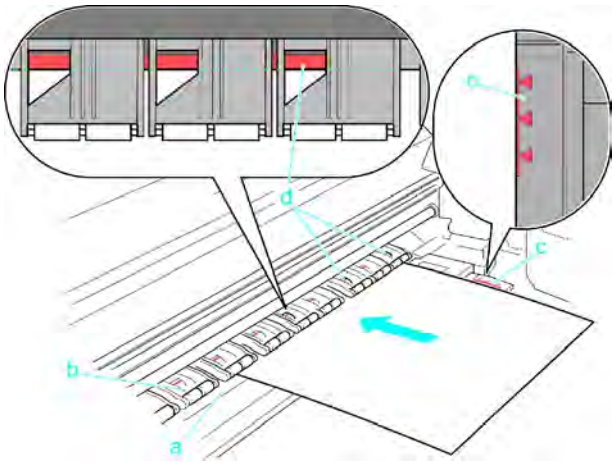
- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a), Carriage Shaft (b), or Fixed Blade (c).



2. With a sheet lengthwise and printing-side up, insert it between the Platen (a) and the Paper Retainer (b). Align the edges of the sheet as follows.

1. Align the sheet with the Paper Alignment Line (c) at right.

2. Align the inserted edge of the sheet with the leading edge of the Paper Alignment Line (d), as shown.



When inserted, sheets are automatically held by suction against the Platen.

Important

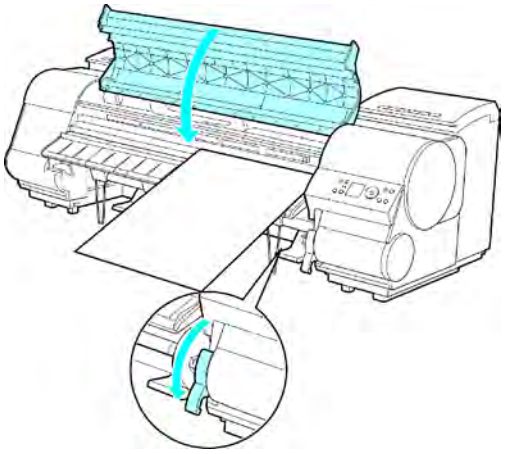
- Load a sheet so that it is parallel to the Paper Alignment Line at right (c). Loading paper askew will cause an error.
- Warped paper may rub against the Printhead. Straighten paper if it is warped before loading it.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Note

- You can adjust the strength of vacuum holding paper against the Platen when the Release Lever is up. If it is difficult to load paper, press the ▲ or ▼ button on the Control Panel to adjust the strength. Increase the vacuum by pressing the ▲ button or decrease it with the ▼ button. Three levels are available.
  However, even if you increase the vacuum, it may not be sufficient to hold some types of paper against the Platen well. In this case, use your hand to load the paper.
- A sheet is held in place by vacuuming through holes on the Platen. Although the vacuuming may produce a noise when paper is loaded in some positions, it does not indicate a problem. If the noise is distracting, try moving the paper over slightly to the left or right (up to 1 mm [0.039 in]) while keeping it parallel to the Paper Alignment Line.
- The vacuum remains on for about 30 seconds during loading. If you cannot finish loading a sheet during this time, pull the sheet away and reinsert it to start the vacuum suction again.

3. Lower the Release Lever and close the Top Cover.



The printer now starts feeding the paper.

After the paper is advanced, the printer automatically goes online and starts printing.

If no print job has been received from the computer beforehand, the printer automatically shows a menu for selection of the paper type on the Display Screen.

In this case, select the type of paper. (→P.215)

Note

- When using the Output Stacker, if you will print on large, stiff sheets, we recommend adjusting the Output Stacker into the lowest position to prevent printed sheets from being bent (→P.221)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Selecting the Paper Type (Sheet)

When changing the type of paper after the paper has been advanced, specify the type of paper as follows.

Note

- After you load the sheet, the printer automatically shows a menu for selection of the paper type on the Display Screen. In this case, select the paper type, and then press the **OK** button. The printer will automatically go online.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Media Menu**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Cut Sheet Type**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper loaded in the printer, and then press the **OK** button.

Note

- For details on paper types, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.169) Plain Paper is selected by factory default.
  If you move the Release Lever, the setting automatically reverts to Plain Paper.
- Be sure to select the correct paper type. If this setting does not match the loaded paper, it may cause feed errors and affect the printing quality.
- If you select a type of paper for which Media Width Detection is deactivated (**Off** is selected), you must advance the paper manually to the position for printing. (→P.150)

5. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

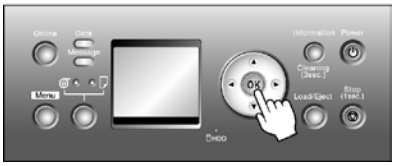
Removing the Sheet

1. Press the **Load/Eject** button.

Note

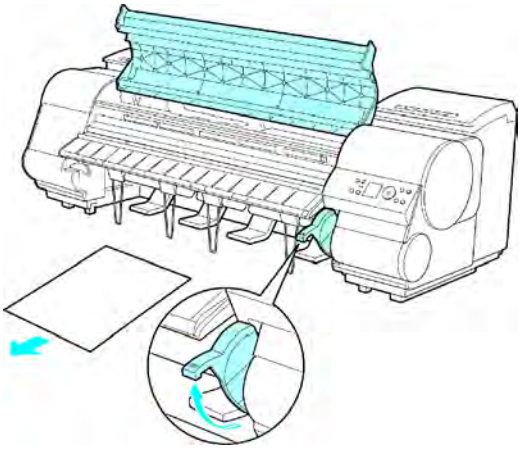
- Paper cannot be ejected by using the **Load/Eject** button when print jobs are in progress or during the ink drying period. Before ejecting paper, press the **Stop** button to cancel printing, print job processing, or ink drying.

2. Press the **OK** button to eject the paper.

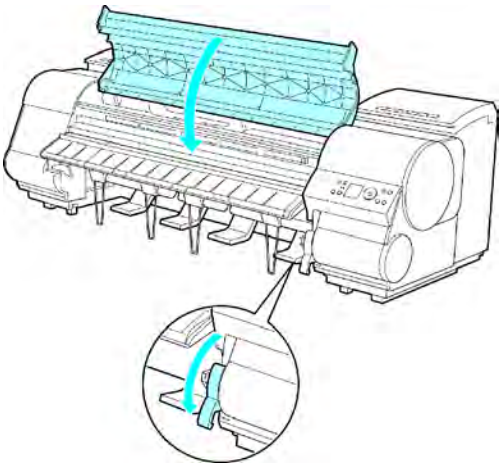


The paper is ejected from the front of the printer.

3. Open the Top Cover, lift the Release Lever, and remove the paper.



4. Lower the Release Lever and close the Top Cover.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

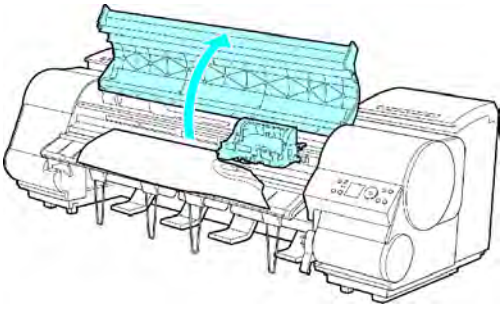
Clearing a Jammed Sheet

If a sheet jams, follow the steps below to remove it.

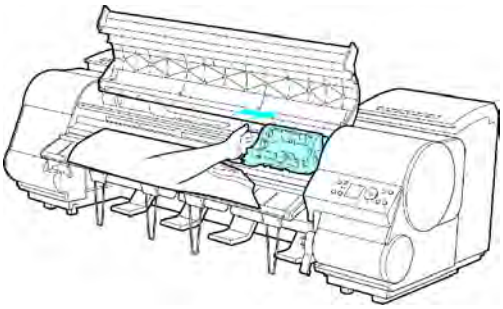
Caution

- Remove any jammed paper promptly.

1. Turn the printer off. (→P.19)
2. Open the Top Cover.

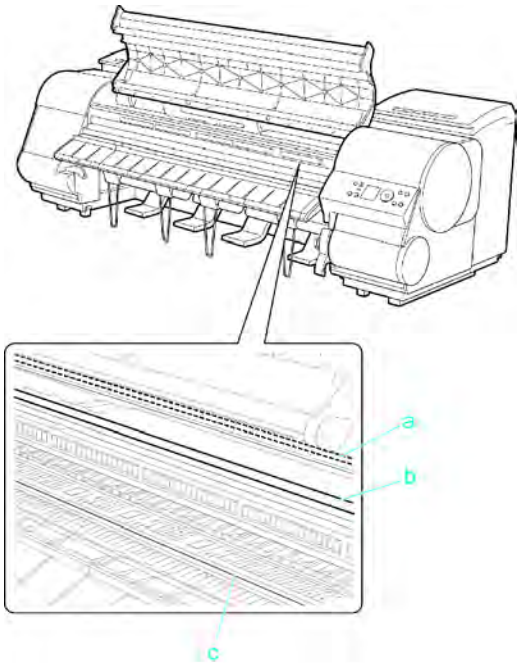


3. If the Carriage is out, move the Carriage to separate it from the paper.



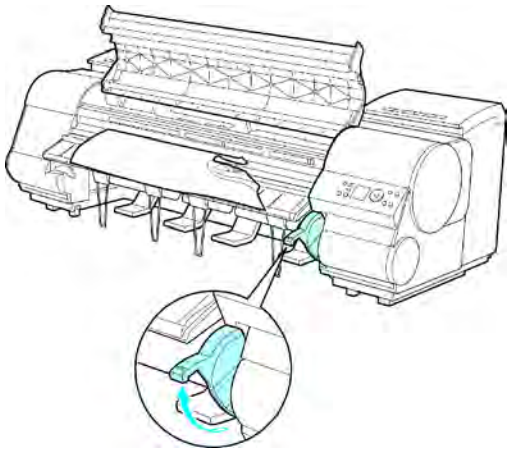
Important

- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a), Carriage Shaft (b), or Fixed Blade (c).

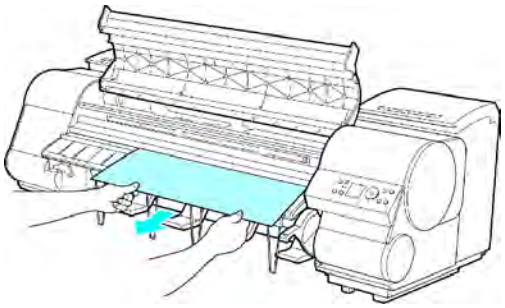


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

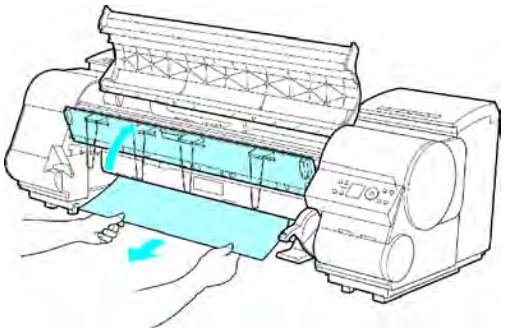
4. Lift the Release Lever.



5. If the paper is visible, grasp the paper and pull it forward.



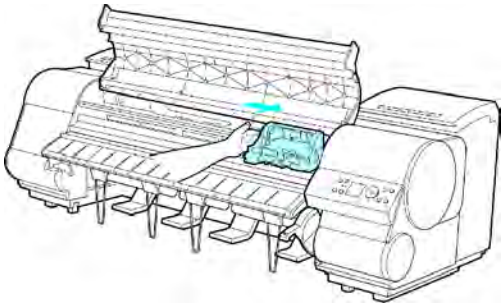
6. If the paper is not visible, lift the Ejection Guide, remove the Roll Holder, and remove the jammed paper from below.



After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer, and lower the Ejection Guide.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

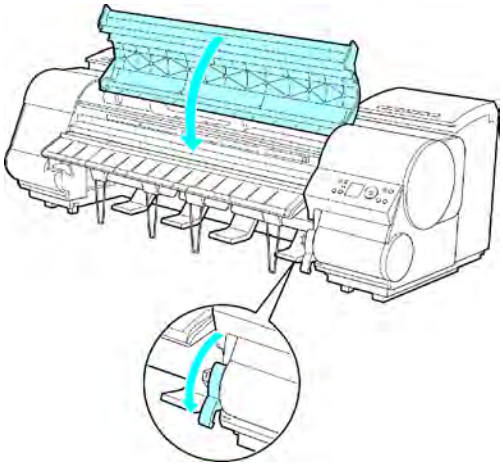
7. If the Carriage is on the left, move the Carriage to the right until it stops.



Important

- Always move the Carriage to the right side. If the Carriage is on the left, a Carriage error may occur when you turn on the printer.

8. Lower the Release Lever and close the Top Cover.



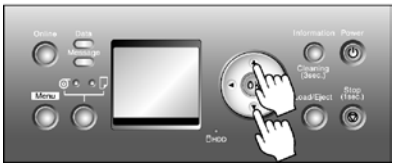
9. Turn the printer on. (→P.19)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

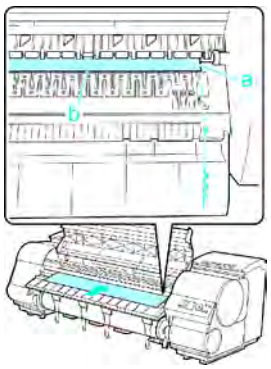
Manually Loading Paper to the Position for Printing

After loading sheets, if you select a type of paper in the printer menu with width detection deactivated, you will need to feed the paper a different way than usual. Specifically, you must manually advance the paper to the position of printing.
In this case, advance the paper as far into the paper feed slot as possible because it will be printed starting at that position.
Manually advance paper as follows.

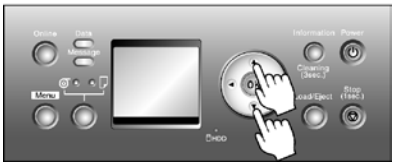
1. When **Width Detection OFF. OK to continue?** is shown on the Display Screen, press ▲ or ▼ to select **Leave OFF** and then press the **OK** button.
   If you select **Width Detection ON**, change the Media Detailed Settings information for that paper and use the regular feeding method.



2. Keeping the right edge of the sheet aligned with the extended line of the paper alignment line (a) on the right side of the printer, load the sheet so that the near edge is aligned with the groove (b) at the far end of the platen.



3. Check the position of the loaded paper and press the **OK** button.
4. After a menu for selection of the paper size is shown on the Display Screen, press ▲ or ▼ to select the paper size, and then press the **OK** button.



Note

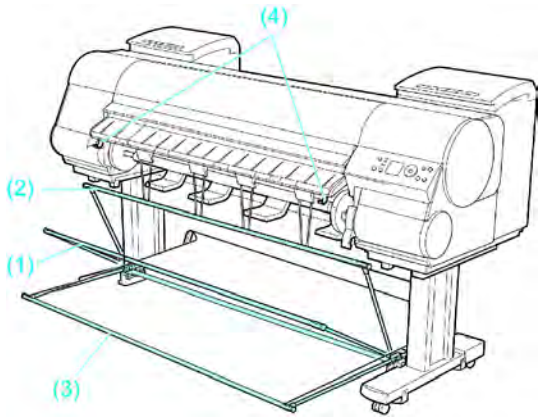
- If a print job received requires paper larger than the selected paper, it may soil the Platen.

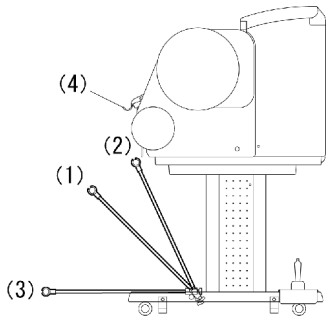
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Output Stacker

Using the Output Stacker

The Output Stacker can be installed at four positions, as shown.





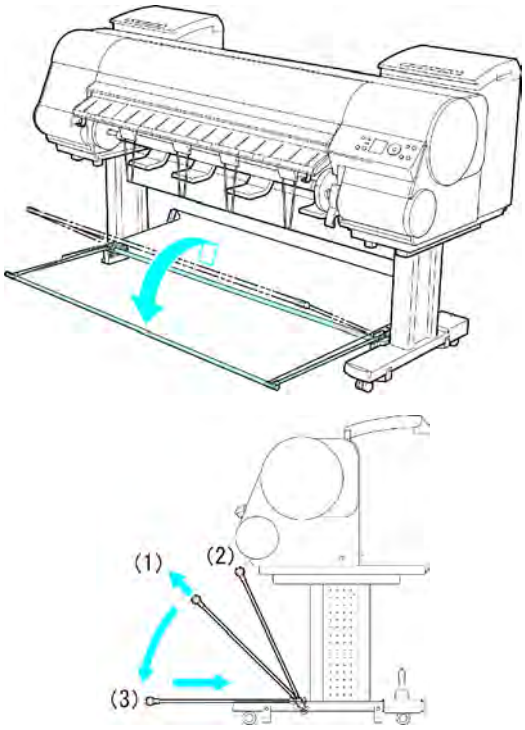
- When storing printed documents on the Output Stacker
  Use position (1).
- When the Output Stacker is not used
  Use position (2).
- When the Media Take-up Unit is used, or when the Output Stacker is stored for long periods
  Lower it to position (3) for storage. (→P.226)
  When using the Output Stacker again after storage, reattach the Basket Rod on the front of the Output Stacker to the tips of the left and right Basket Arms and pull the side rods out completely.
- When printing on large, stiff sheets
  Use position (3).
  Set it to position (4) for large-format printing or when printing on delicate paper. (→P.223)

Important

- When storing printed documents on the Output Stacker, always use it in position (1). If you do not, printed documents may not be dropped into the Output Stacker, and the printed surface may become soiled.
- The Output Stacker can hold one sheet. When printing multiple pages, remove each sheet after it is printed.
- Before using the Output Stacker, remove the Rewind Spool. If you do not, it may prevent printed documents from being held correctly, and it they may be scratched.
- The Output Stacker can hold printed documents from rolls that are 62 inches (1,575 mm) long. When printing longer documents, eject them in front of the printer or use the optional Media Take-up Unit.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

The Output Stacker locks into position if you lift it to position (1) or (2). To lower the Output Stacker, lift the front Basket Rod lightly to release the lock, and then lower the stacker.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

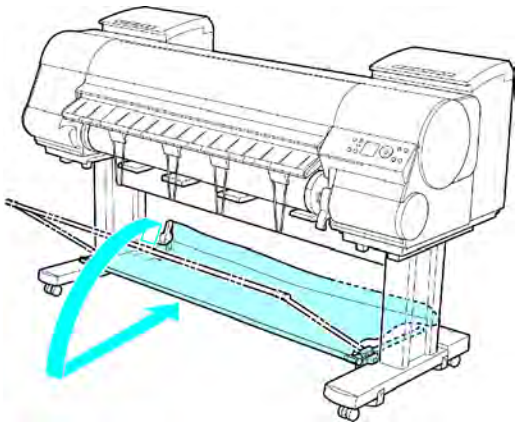
Using the Output Stacker in the position for ejection in the front of the printer

You can also set the Output Stacker to the following position for large-format printing or when printing on delicate paper.

Note

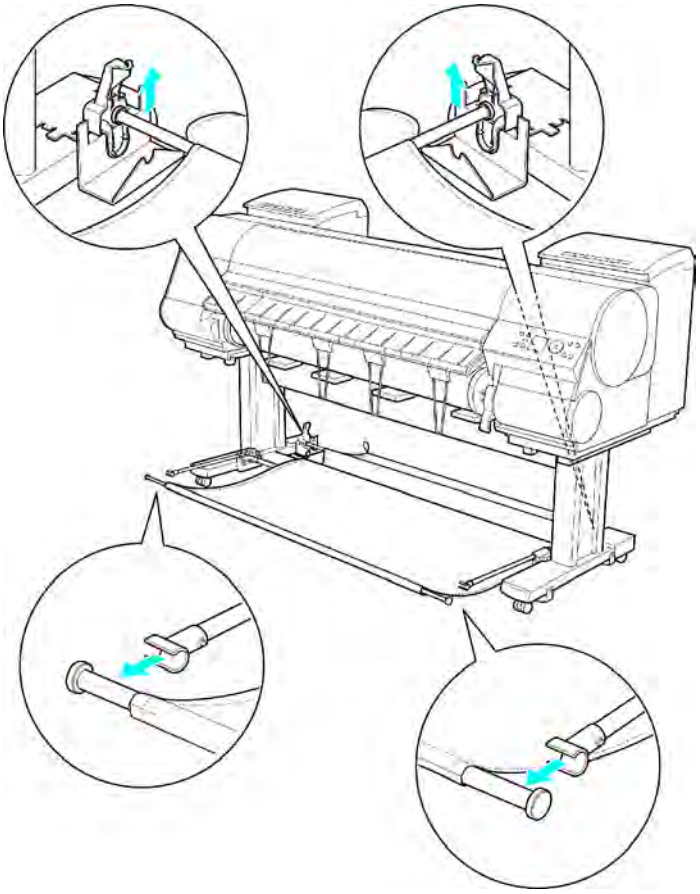
- Always choose **Cutting Mode** > **Eject** when the Output Stacker is in the position for ejection in the front of the printer. If you choose **Automatic**, printed documents may be damaged. (→P.193)
- During ejection in the front of the printer, be especially careful when using delicate paper or paper that curls easily.
- With some types of paper, the leading edge may curl or bend during ejection. In this case, straighten out the paper. Printed documents may be damaged if the paper is curled or bent.
- Some types of paper may get caught between the Ejection Guide and Output Stacker during ejection. In this case, free the paper from where it is caught. Printed documents may be damaged if the paper gets caught.

1. Lift the Basket Rod gently to release the lock, lower the stacker toward the front, and push it all the way back.

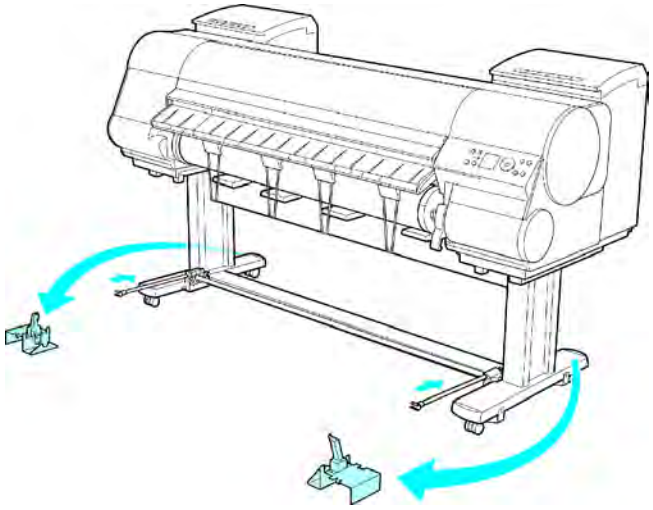


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

2. Remove the Output Stacker from the printer.
Remove the front Basket Rod from the left and right Basket Arms, and remove the back Basket Rod and the black cord from the Rod Holder.

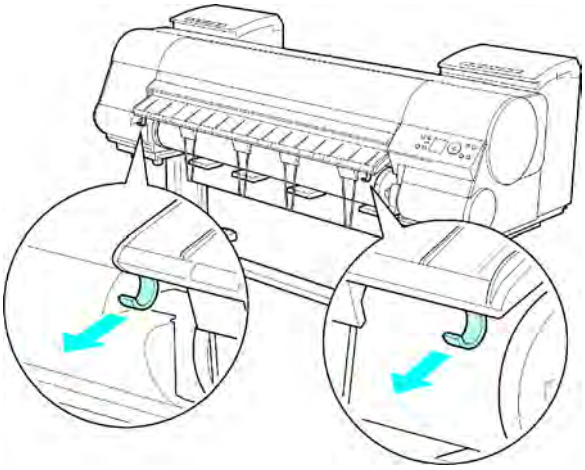


3. Store the left and right Basket Arms. Next, remove the Rod Holder Adapter, leaving the Rod Holder attached, and put it in front of the printer.

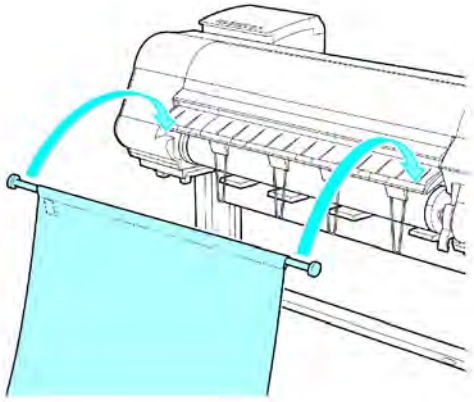


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

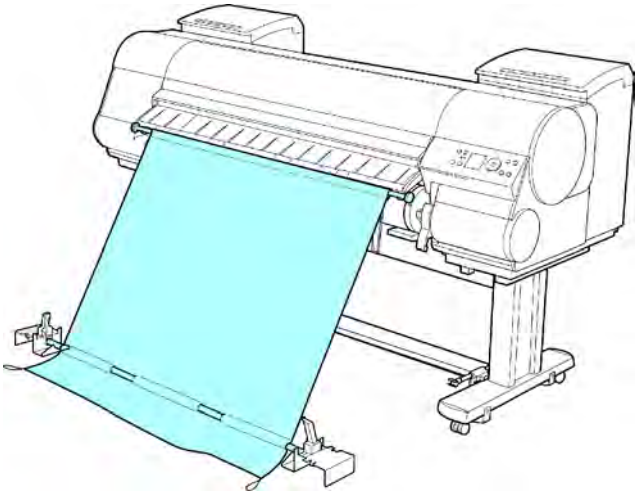
4. Pull out the Basket Hooks from the left and right side of the Ejection Guide.



5. Attach the Basket Rod to the Basket Hooks so that the white tag of the Basket Cloth is on the left side.



6. Form the Basket Cloth into a sloping shape to make it taut, and attach the middle Basket Rod to the Rod Holder.

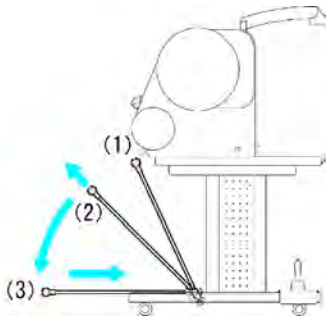


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

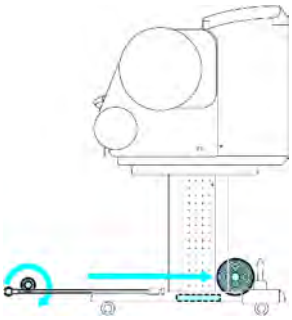
Stowing the Output Stacker

Stow the Output Stacker if you will use the Media Take-up Unit or if you will not use the Output Stacker for an extended period.

1. When the Output Stacker is in the position used when storing printed documents (a), lift the front Basket Rod gently to release the lock, lower the stacker toward the front (b), and push it all the way back.

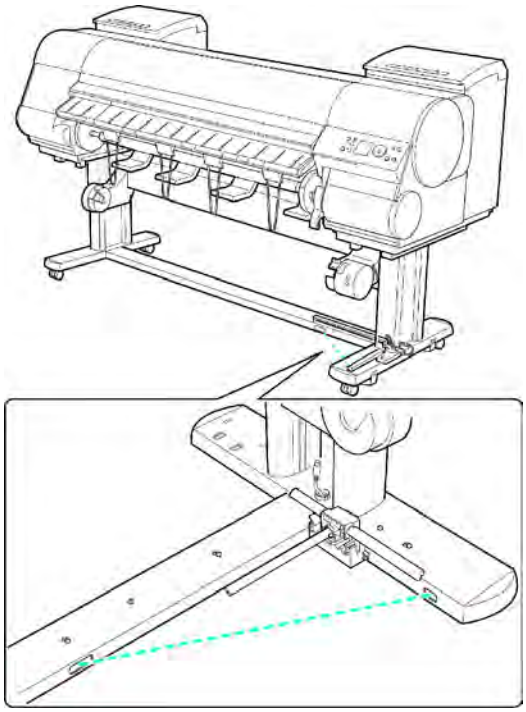


2. Remove the front Basket Rod from the left and right Basket Arms. Roll up the Basket Cloth and put it at the back of the Bottom Stand Stay.



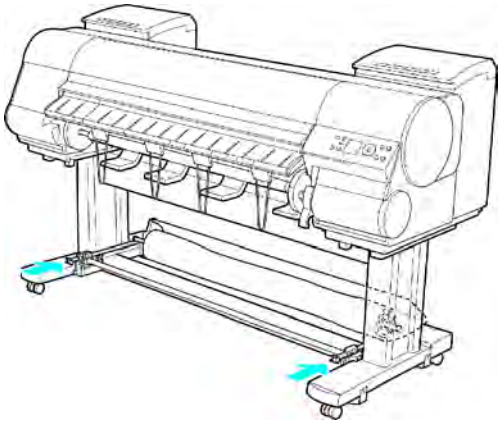
Important

- When using the optional Media Take-up Unit, position the Basket Cloth and Basket Rod so they do not interfere with the Media Take-up Sensor (indicated by the dashed line).



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

3. Push in the left and right Basket Arms toward the back all the way, until they stop.



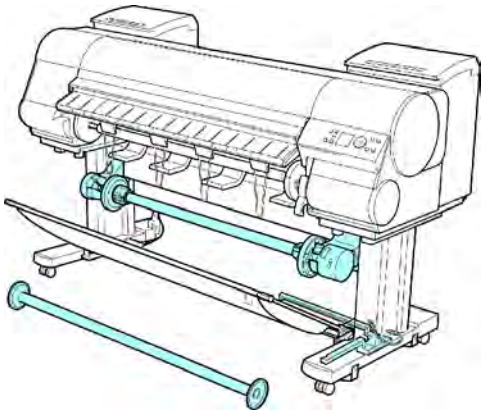
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Media take-up unit

Media Take-up Unit

This unit automatically winds up printed documents.

- Media Take-up Unit TU-06



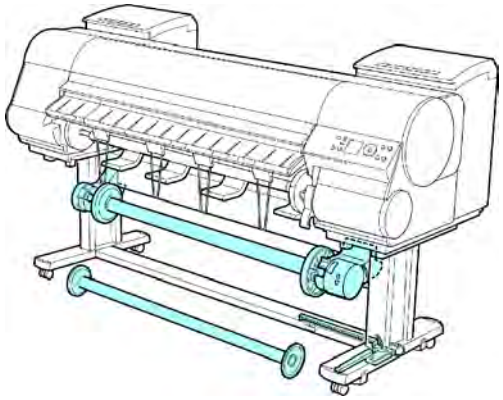
Note

- For instructions on installing the Media Take-up Unit, refer to the Media Take-up Unit Setup Guide.
- For information on the types of paper compatible with the Media Take-up Unit, refer to the Paper Reference Guide.
- For Media Take-up Unit instructions, see “Using the Media Take-up Unit (Optional)”. (→P.230)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Media Take-up Unit (Optional)

Use the optional Media Take-up Unit to have documents that are printed on rolls rewound automatically after printing. This is convenient for large-format printing, or when printing large-volume jobs continuously.



Note

- For instructions on installing the Media Take-up Unit, refer to the Media Take-up Unit Setup Guide.
- For information on the types of paper compatible with the Media Take-up Unit, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.169)
- For Media Take-up Unit instructions, see “Using the Media Take-up Unit (Optional)”. (→P.230)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Using the Media Take-up Unit (Optional)

1. Turn the printer on. (→P.19)
2. Enable the Media Take-up Reel function. (→P.231)
3. Load the Rewind Spool on the Media Take-up Unit. (→P.232)
4. Turn the Media Take-up Unit on.
5. Print on the roll.
6. Turn the Media Take-up Unit off.
7. Remove the printed document from the Media Take-up Unit. (→P.239)
8. Disable the Media Take-up Unit function. (→P.231)

Important

- The Media Take-up Unit cannot be used with sheets.
- If you have attached the Output Stacker, always stow it before using the Media Take-up Unit. (→P.226) Arrange the Basket Cloth and Basket Rod so they do not interfere with the Media Take-up Sensor.
- Do not put anything near the Media Take-up Sensor that might interfere with it. This may impair operation.
- Rolls are not cut automatically when the Media Take-up Unit is used, regardless of the **Cutting Mode** setting in the printer menu or the **Automatic Cutting** setting in the printer driver.
- Color tones after printing may change during the ink drying period for some types of paper. Allow ample drying time before the final check of color tones, and do not remove printed documents from the Media Take-up Unit too soon.
- In humid environments, documents with heavy ink coverage printed on thin Coated Paper may not be retracted evenly by the Media Take-up Unit. In this case, take steps to control humidity in the operating environment or adjust the **Roll DryingTime** setting so that printed documents are handled after the ink has fully dried.
- In humid environments, documents printed on Fabric Banner and Synthetic Paper may not be retracted evenly by the Media Take-up Unit. In this case, take steps to control humidity in the operating environment or adjust the **Roll DryingTime** setting so that printed documents are handled after the ink has fully dried.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Enabling the Take-Up Reel Function

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Select **Take-up Reel** → **Enable** and press the **OK** button.

Disabling the Take-Up Reel Function

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Select **Take-up Reel** → **Disable** and press the **OK** button.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

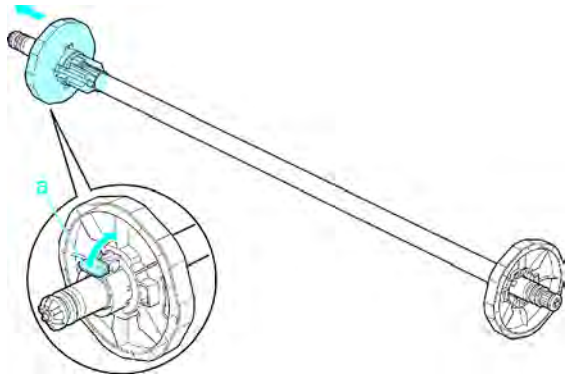
Loading the Rewind Spool on the Media Take-up Unit

1. When using the Output Stacker, stow the Output Stacker before this procedure. (→P.226)

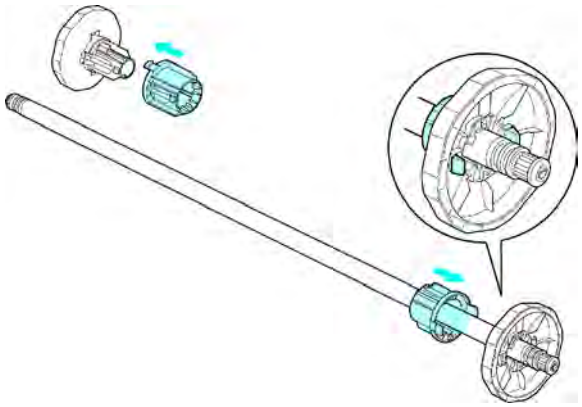
Important

- Arrange the Basket Cloth and Basket Rod so they do not interfere with the Media Take-up Sensor.
- Do not put anything in front of the Media Take-up Sensor that might interfere with it. This may impair operation.

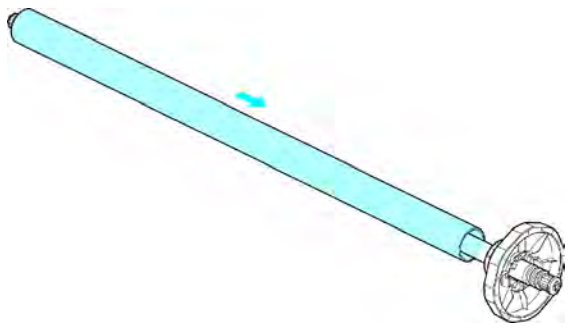
2. Unlock the flange on the left side of the Rewind Spool by lifting the lever (a) from the shaft side. Remove the flange.



3. When rewinding rolls with 3-inch paper cores, insert the 3-inch Adapter on the flanges at both ends.



4. Insert the paper core, which serves as the spindle for rewinding a roll, on the Rewind Spool.

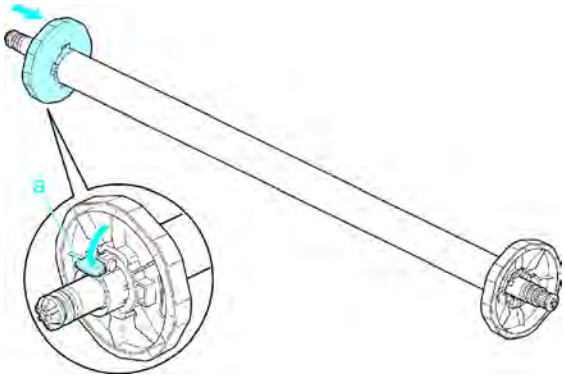


Important

- On the Rewind Spool, always use a paper core that is the same size as the roll to be rewound.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

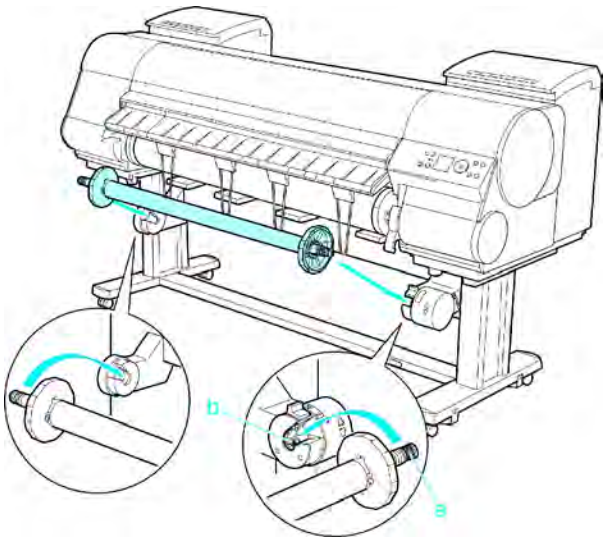
5. Push the flanges in firmly until the paper core is secured in place and push down the lever (a) toward the shaft.



Important

- After pushing in the flanges firmly, make sure the paper core is secure and does not move around. Move the paper core left and right. If there is a gap between the flanges and paper core, repeat steps 2-4.

6. Load the Rewind Spool on the Media Take-up Unit so that the gear of the Rewind Spool (a) meshes with the gear of the Right Media Take-up Unit (b).



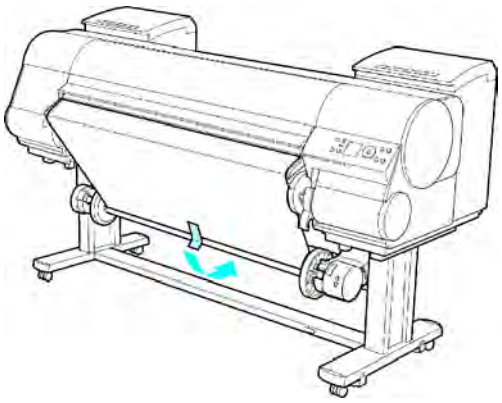
Important

- If you attempt to load the Rewind Spool with the left and right ends inverted by mistake, the Media Take-up Unit cannot be turned on.
- If the gear of the Rewind Spool (a) does not mesh with the gear of the Right Media Take-up Unit (b), the Media Take-up Unit cannot be turned on.

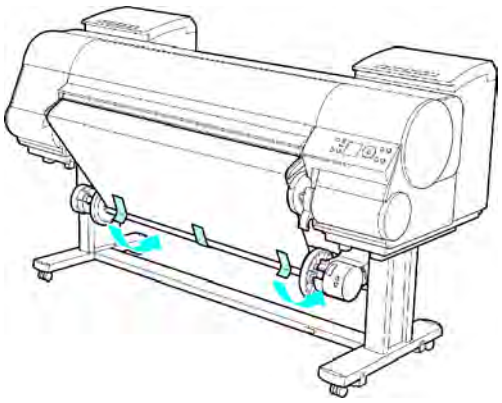
7. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

8. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Media Menu**, and then press the ► button.
9. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
   The roll is now advanced to the Media Take-up Unit.
10. Hold the roll paper by the middle of the leading edge and align the right edge with the right edge of the paper core of the Rewind Spool. With the left and right edges of the roll paper evenly taut, tape the middle to the paper core to fasten it.



11. Making sure the roll paper is not slack, tape the left and right side of the leading edge to the paper core.

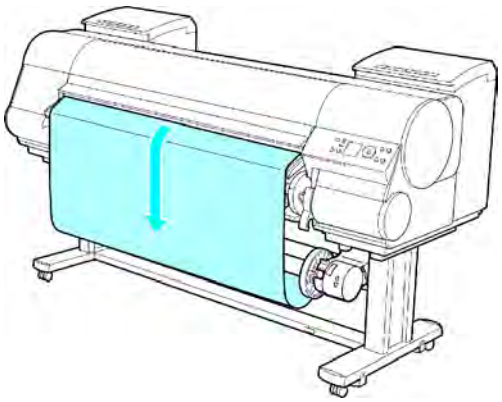


Note

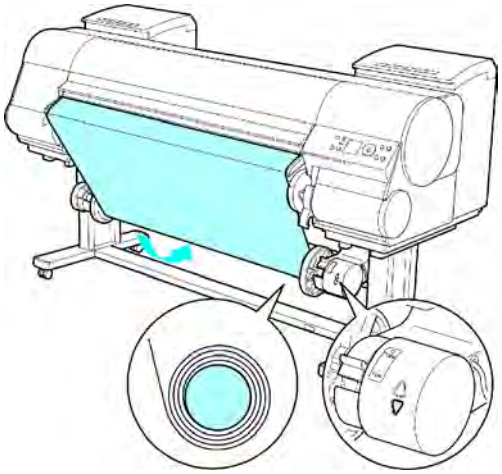
- When rewinding heavyweight paper, use strong adhesive tape to fasten it.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

12. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer offline, and then press ▼ to loosen the tension of the roll.



13. On the Right Media Take-up Unit, pull the Rewind Mode Switch forward to turn it on. Press ▼ to rewind the roll so that it is nearly taut.

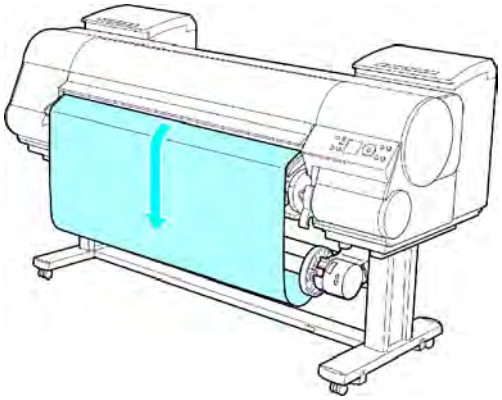


Important

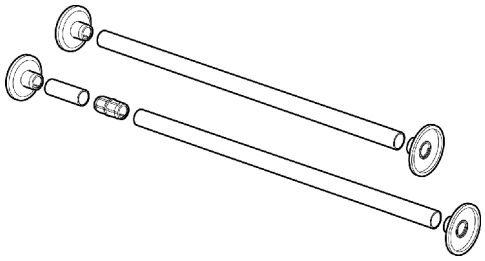
- Rewind the paper so that the paper core makes at least two revolutions. If the paper is not rewound two full revolutions, repeat steps 11 and 12.
- Do not manually force the Rewind Spool or paper core to rotate them. This may damage them. To rewind or unwind rolls, press ▲ or ▼ on the Media Take-up Unit.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

14. You can unwind rolls by holding down ▼ on the Control Panel.



15. Use a combination of Weight Roll, Weight Joint, and Weight Flange that matches the roll type and width.



The following list identifies Weight Roll and Weight Flange you can use. Color Label is applied to each Weight Roll.

Weight Roll

Roll Width	Weight Roll to Use
B2 Width: 515.0 mm (20.3 in)	“D”
B1 Width: 728.0 mm (28.7 in)	“A”+“E”
B0 Width: 1,030.0 mm (40.6 in)	“A”+“G”
A1 Width: 594.0 mm (23.4 in)	“E”
A0 Width: 841.0 mm (33.1 in)	“B”+“E”
431.8 mm (17 in)	“C”
609.6 mm (24 in)	“E”
762.0 mm (30 in)	“B”+“D”
914.4 mm (36 in)	“G”
1,066.8 mm (42 in)	“C”+“E”
1,117.6 mm (44 in)	“D”+“E”

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Weight Flange

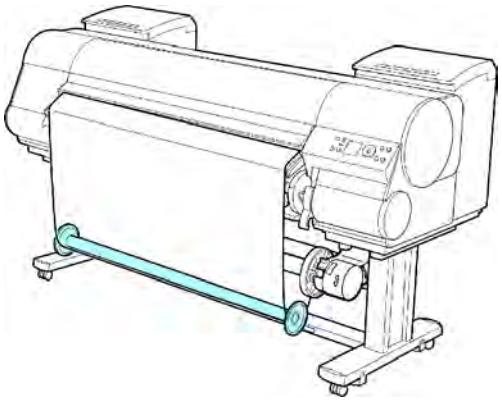
Roll Type	Weight Flange to Use
Glossy Photo Paper , Semi-Glossy Photo Paper , Heavyweight Glossy Photo Paper , Heavyweight SemiGlossy Photo Paper , Fine Art Photo Paper , Fine Art Heavyweight Photo Paper , Fine Art Textured Paper , Canvas Matte , Fine Art Block Print , Fine Art Watercolor , Proofing paper , Coated Paper , Heavyweight Coated Paper , Extra Heavyweight Coated Paper , Colored Coated Paper , Synthetic Paper , Adhesive Synthetic Paper , Backprint Film , Backlit Film , Flame-Resistant Cloth , Fabric Banner , Thin Fabric Banner	Weight Flange 1 (*1)
Premium Matte Paper	Weight Flange 2

*1: If you cannot retract stiff paper well using Weight Flange 1 or if the diameter of the retracted paper is wider than the Rewind Spool, use Weight Flange 2. When using Weight Flange 2, adjust the paper feed amount by executing **Auto Band Adj.** (→P.655)

Note

- Do not use combinations other than those identified here.
- Insert the Weight Flange and Weight Joint firmly on the Weight Roll.
- Use identical Weight Flanges on the left and right ends. Insert matching Weight Flanges (1 or 2) on both ends of the Weight Roll.
- Keep unused Weight Roll, Weight Joint, and Weight Flange handy by putting them in the box and putting the box under the Stand.

16. Set the Weight Roll gently on top of the slack in the roll paper.



Important

- Always set the Weight Roll on the paper. Failure to do this may cause rewinding problems.
- When setting the Weight Roll on the paper, avoid touching the paper core and causing the wound roll to become out of alignment on the left and right end.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

17. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.

The Media Take-up Unit is now ready for use. Printed rolls can now be rewound automatically.

Note

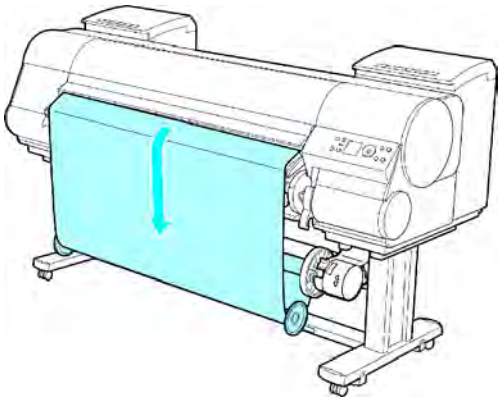
- When the Media Take-up Unit is in use, an icon indicating the take-up mode is shown on the Display Screen.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

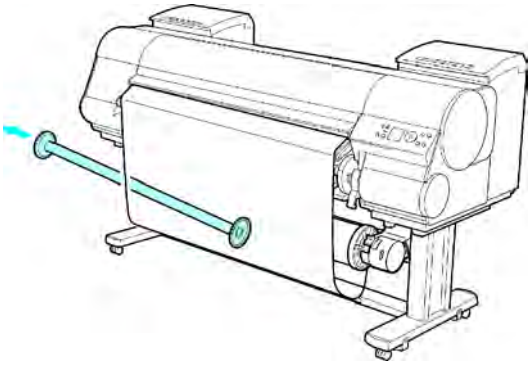
Removing Printed Documents from the Media Take-up Unit (Optional)

1. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer offline.

2. Hold down the ▼ button to advance the roll a little.
   To protect the paper that has been rewound, advance it an amount longer than the outer circumference.



3. Remove the Weight Roll from the roll paper.



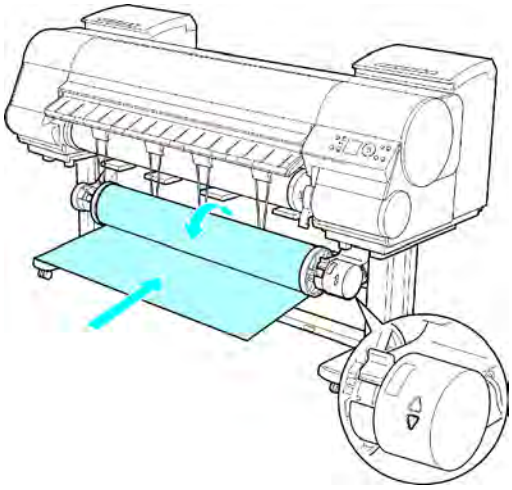
4. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Cutting**, and then press the ► button.
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**. As you hold the trailing edge of the printed document, press the **OK** button.
   The roll is now cut.

   Important
   - Always hold the trailing edge of printed documents when cutting rolls. If you do not hold the documents, they may fall on the floor and the printed surface may become soiled.

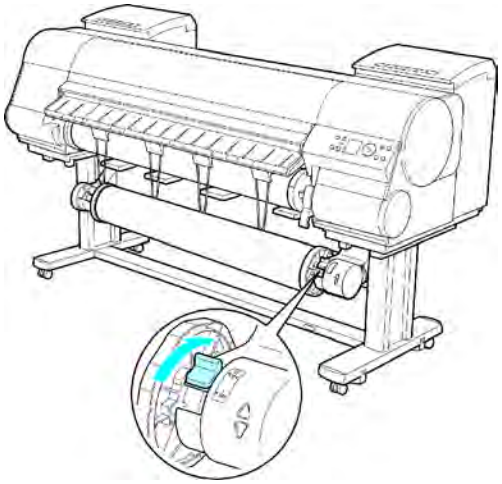
7. Hold the trailing edge of the printed document and press the ▼ button on the Media Take-up Unit to rewind the printed documents.



   Apply adhesive tape to the rewound paper to hold it in place, if necessary.

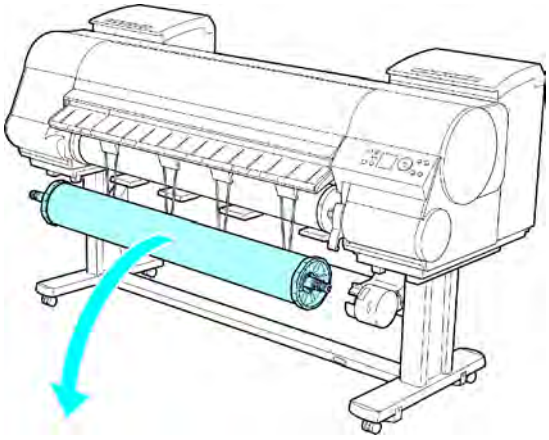
   Important
   - Be careful not to scratch the printed surface.

8. Turn off the Media Take-up Unit by pushing in the Rewind Mode Switch.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

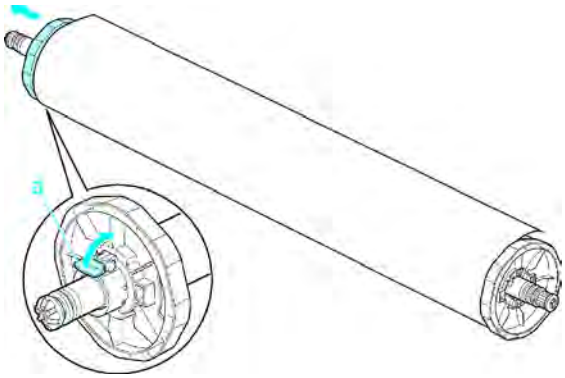
9. Remove the Rewind Spool from the Media Take-up Unit.



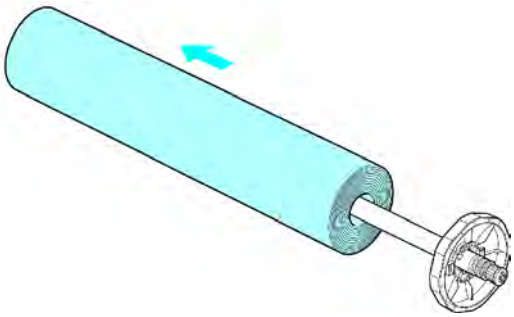
Important

- Always turn off the Media Take-up Unit before removing the Rewind Spool. The Media Take-up Unit may be damaged if you do not turn it off first.
- Remove the Rewind Spool, pulling off both ends from the Media Take-up Unit at once.

10. Unlock the flange on the left side of the Rewind Spool by lifting the lever (a) from the shaft side. Remove the flange.



11. Remove the entire paper core with the rewound printed documents from the Rewind Spool.



Note

- You can leave the Rewind Spool on the Media Take-up Unit even when it is not used for rewinding rolls.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Enhanced Printing Options

Print quality and color settings

Choosing a Paper for Printing

Choosing the right paper for your particular printing application will give you the best printing results.

Media type

The printer and printer driver offer print settings optimized for various paper characteristics.

Note

- For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.169)
- The paper type setting in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) is updated when you install the Media Configuration Tool from the User Software CD-ROM or if you change paper information by using the Media Configuration Tool. For information about the Media Configuration Tool, see the Media Configuration Tool Guide (Windows) or Media Configuration Tool Guide (Macintosh).
- An error message is displayed on the printer Control Panel if the paper type as specified in the printer driver does not match the type specified on the printer. Although you can print under these conditions, the printing results may not be suitable.

If the paper type is not listed for selection

If the type of paper loaded cannot be selected, try specifying glossy paper or proofing paper as a special paper (Special 1 to Special 5, in this order). BK (Black Ink) is used as the black ink. Try specifying other types of paper as Special 6 to Special 10. MBK (Matte Black Ink) is used as the black ink. Note that higher numbers in this setting enable more vivid colors but may also cause colors to run together.
For instructions on specifying the paper type before printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Selecting the Paper Type (Roll) (→P.188)
- Selecting the Paper Type (Sheet) (→P.215)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing

You can specify detailed print settings as desired for the quality level, colors, and other criteria.

Advanced Settings

For printing results that appear just as expected for your original, you can specify which graphic elements and colors to prioritize for printing.

Note

- **Easy Settings** are also available, providing convenient presets. To use the presets, simply choose the printing application.
  For details on **Easy Settings**, refer to the following topics.
  - Printing Photos and Images (Windows, Mac OS X) (→P.247)
  - Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS 9) (→P.249)
  - Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows, Mac OS X) (→P.251)
  - Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS 9) (→P.252)
  - Printing Office Documents (→P.253)

Print Priority

Choose the graphic elements that you want to emphasize for printing.

Print Priority (*1)	Description
Image	A setting for posters or other documents made up mainly of photos or images, or for emphasizing photos or images in printed documents.
Line Drawing/Text	Choose this setting for CAD drawings made up mainly of intricate lines, or wall newspapers and other notices with a large amount of text. Suitable for emphasizing detailed text in printed documents. However, the quality may not be sufficient when printing photos or images that require a lot of color coverage. In this case, choose “Image” instead.
Office Document	Choose this setting for better legibility of documents combining text and graphics, such as documents and presentation material created with typical office applications.

*1: Options suitable for the selected paper type are listed under Print Priority.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Print Quality

Choose the print quality.
The printing mode is determined by a combination of the print quality and resolution.

Print Quality (*1)	Description	Print Priority
Highest	A setting for printing at the highest resolution when quality is most important. Printing takes longer and consumes more ink than in other modes, but this mode offers superior printing quality.	**Image**
High	Choose this setting to print at high resolution when quality is most important. Printing takes longer and consumes more ink than in “Standard” or “Draft” modes, but this mode offers exceptional printing quality.	**Image** **Line Drawing/Text**
Standard	Choose this setting to print at standard resolution when quality and speed are both important. Printing takes less time than in “Highest” or “High” mode.	**Image** **Line Drawing/Text** **Office Document**
Draft	Choose this setting to print faster. Printing in draft mode can help you work more efficiently when checking layouts.	**Image** **Line Drawing/Text**

*1: Options suitable for the selected Print Priority are listed under Print Quality.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Color Settings

Setting Item	Options	Description
Color Mode (*1)	**Color** **Monochrome (Photo)** **Monochrome**	Choose whether to print in color or monochrome. (→P.254)
Color Adjustment (Images) **Color Adjustment** (Graphics) **Color Adjustment** (Text)	**Cyan** **Magenta** **Yellow** **Brightness** **Contrast** **Saturation** **Gray Tone Adjustment**	You can adjust the levels of cyan, magenta, and yellow as well as the brightness, contrast, saturation, and gray tone separately for images, graphics, and text documents. If you choose **Monochrome** in **Color Mode** only **Brightness** and **Contrast** can be adjusted.
Gray Adjustment	**Color Balance** **Brightness** **Contrast** **Highlight** **Shadow**	Choose the gray tone color balance (**Cool Black** or **Warm Black**) and adjust levels of brightness, contrast, highlight, and shadow as desired. These levels can be adjusted when **Monochrome (Photo)** is selected in **Color Mode** .
Color-Matching Modes	**Driver Matching Mode** **ICC Matching Mode** **Off**	Choose the color-matching mode. Other color-matching modes may be provided by the computer operating system, such as ICM and ColorSync.
Color-Matching Method (*2)	**Auto** **Perceptual** **Perceptual (People, Dark Areas)** **Saturation** **Colorimetric** Others	Choose the color-matching method. The available options vary depending on your selection in “Color-Matching Mode.”
Color Space (*3)	**sRGB** **Adobe RGB**	Choose a standard color space (**sRGB**) or an expanded color space (**Adobe RGB**).

*1: Options suitable for the selected Print Priority are listed under Color Mode.
*2: The order of options displayed varies depending on the operating system.
*3: **Adobe RGB** is not available if an incompatible combination of the paper type and print quality is selected.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Enhancing Printing Quality

Setting Item	Description
Thicken Fine Lines (*1)	Choose this option to make fine lines clearer in CAD drawings or similar documents.
Unidirectional Printing	Choosing unidirectional printing can improve printing results if lines are printed crooked or images are uneven. However, it takes more time than regular printing.
High-Precision Printing	Enables printing at the highest level of quality. However, this requires more time than usual for printing.

*1: Displayed in Windows and Mac OS 9.

Note

- To print at a higher level of quality, in the printer driver, choose **High** or **Highest** in **Print Quality**, and choose **Unidirectional Printing** as the direction of printing.
- For instructions on specifying the print quality and color settings before printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.
  - Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Windows) (→P.259)
  - Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Mac OS X) (→P.261)
  - Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Mac OS 9) (→P.264)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Photos and Images (Windows, Mac OS X)

Printing is easy when you simply choose the print target.

Easy Settings

Simply choose the printing application in the list for optimal printing results.

Print Target

Choose presets that match the type of document to be printed.

Print targets for photos and images

	Print Target	Description
	Highest Quality	Setting optimized for printing at the highest level of quality.
	Draft	Setting optimized for high-speed draft printing.
	Photo (Photo Studio)	For printing with an effect similar to that produced by photo studios. In subdued, dark photos, images of people and dark scenes are printed attractively.
	Photo (Standard)	Setting optimized for printing photographic images from digital cameras.
	Photo (Adobe RGB)	Setting optimized for printing in colors matching those of images created using the Adobe RGB color space.
	Photo (Monochrome)	Setting optimized for printing monochrome photos in the neutral black image tone of conventional film photographs.
	Poster (Photos)	Suitable for printing posters composed mainly of photographs.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

	Print Target	Description
	Poster (Text, Illustrations)	Setting optimized for printing vivid, eye-catching store posters combining images and text.
	Scanned Image	Setting optimized for printing scanned images with accurate color reproduction to match the original images.

Caution

- Depending on the **Media Type** setting, some **Print Target** options may not be available.

Note

- You can check the settings values for each print target by clicking **View Settings**.
- You can also fine-tune these values as needed. (Advanced Settings)
  For details on Advanced Settings, see “Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing”. (→P.243)
- For instructions on printing photos and images, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.
  - Printing Photos and Images (Windows) (→P.297)
  - Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS X) (→P.299)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS 9)

Printing is easy when you simply choose the print target.

Easy Settings

Simply choose the printing application in the list for optimal printing results.

Print Target

Choose presets that match the type of document to be printed.

Print targets for photos and images

	Print Target	Description
	Highest Quality	Settings optimized for printing at the highest level of quality.
	Photos (High Image Quality)	Setting optimized for printing photographic images at a higher level of quality.
	Photo (from digital camera)	Settings optimized for printing photographic images from digital cameras.
	Photo (Monochrome)	Setting optimized for printing monochrome photos in the neutral black image tone of conventional film photographs.
	Adobe RGB Images	Settings optimized for printing in colors matching those of images created using the Adobe RGB color space.
	Poster (Graphic Image)	Settings optimized for printing posters mainly composed of photos and images.
	POP Ad	Settings optimized for printing vivid, eye-catching store posters combining images and text.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

	Print Target	Description
	Scanned Image	Settings optimized for printing scanned images with accurate color reproduction to match the original images.
	Draft	Settings optimized for high-speed draft printing.

Caution

- Depending on the **Media Type** setting, some **Print Target** options may not be available.

Note

- You can check the settings values for each print target by clicking **View Settings**.
- You can also fine-tune these values as needed. (Advanced Settings)
  For details on Advanced Settings, see “Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing”. (→P.243)
- For instructions on printing photos and images, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.
  - Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS 9) (→P.249)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows, Mac OS X)

Printing is easy when you simply choose the type of original to print.

Easy Settings

Simply choose the printing application in the list for optimal printing results.

Print Target

Choose presets that match the type of document to be printed.

Print targets for line drawings and text

	Print Target	Description
	Poster (Notice Announcement)	Settings optimized for printing announcements such as wall newspapers and other notices with a large amount of text.
	3D CAD, GIS	Settings optimized for printing 3D CAD drawings, perspective drawings, and maps, including GIS maps.
	CAD (Line Drawing)	Settings optimized to print intricate lines in CAD drawings clearly.

Note

- You can check the settings values for each print target by clicking **View Settings**.
- You can also fine-tune these values as needed. (Advanced Settings)
  For details on Advanced Settings, see “Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing”. (→P.243)

For instructions on printing line drawings and text, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows) (→P.284)
- Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS X) (→P.286)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS 9)

Printing is easy when you simply choose the type of original to print.

Easy Settings

Simply choose the printing application in the list for optimal printing results.

Print Target

Choose presets that match the type of document to be printed.

Print targets for line drawings and text

	Print Target	Description
	Poster (Notice Announcement)	Settings optimized for printing announcements such as wall newspapers and other notices with a large amount of text.
	3D-CAD/GIS	Settings optimized for printing 3D CAD drawings, perspective drawings, and maps, including GIS maps.
	CAD (Line Drawing)	Settings optimized to print intricate lines in CAD drawings clearly.

Note

- You can check the settings values for each print target by clicking **View Settings**.
- You can also fine-tune these values as needed. (Advanced Settings)
  For details on Advanced Settings, see “Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing”. (→P.243)

For instructions on printing line drawings and text, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS 9) (→P.252)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Office Documents

Printing is easy when you simply choose the type of original to print.

Easy Settings

Simply choose the printing application in the list for optimal printing results.

Print Target

Choose presets that match the type of document to be printed.

Print targets for office documents

	Print Target	Description
	Office Document	Settings optimized for clear printing of office documents such as handouts.

Note

- You can check the settings values for each print target by clicking **View Settings**.
- You can also fine-tune these values as needed. (Advanced Settings)
  For details on Advanced Settings, see “Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing”. (→P.243)

For instructions on printing office documents, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Office Documents (Windows) (→P.291)
- Printing Office Documents (Mac OS X) (→P.293)
- Printing Office Documents (Mac OS 9) (→P.295)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver

Color settings specified in the application for your documents are essentially given priority over other settings for each print job, but further color adjustment is possible in the printer driver.

Color Mode

Choose how the printer driver processes color, as desired.
The available options vary depending on the color mode.

Color Mode	Description	Color Adjustment
Color	Print in color.	You can adjust the color balance and color-matching method.
Monochrome (Photo)	Grayscale printing optimized for monochrome photos.	You can adjust the color balance in ways tailored to monochrome photos.
Monochrome	Print in grayscale.	You can adjust the color balance.

Color Adjustment

You can adjust colors separately for images, graphics, and text documents.

Adjustment Item	Description
Cyan	Correct color tones by adjusting the levels of Cyan , Magenta , and Yellow .
Magenta	
Yellow	
Brightness	Adjust the brightness of printed images while keeping the darkest and lightest portions intact.
Contrast	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other. For soft gradation, decrease the contrast. For hard gradation, increase the contrast.
Saturation	Adjust the level of color saturation, in a range from subdued to vivid.
Gray Tone Adjustment (Gray Tone)	Adjust the grayscale, in a range from cool, blue tones to warm, red tones.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Matching

You can choose the color-matching mode and method.
By adjusting the color-matching mode and method, you can make printed colors match the colors of on-screen images more closely.

Matching Mode	Description	Notes
Driver Matching Mode	Color adjustment based on the original color profile of the printer driver	This is the default color-matching method. Normally, use **Driver Matching Mode** .
ICC Matching Mode	Color adjustment based on ICC color profiles (an international standard) using the printer driver	You can select the printer profile in the **Printer Profile Settings** list.
Driver ICM Mode	Color adjustment based on the standard Windows ICM function. The printer driver adjusts the colors.	Available when using Windows 2000, Windows XP, or Windows Server 2003/Windows Vista
Host ICM Mode	Color adjustment based on the standard Windows ICM function. Windows adjusts the colors.	
ColorSync	Color adjustment based on the standard Mac OS ColorSync function. Mac OS adjusts the colors.	Available when using the Mac OS
Off (No Correction)	No color-matching	Choose this option for color-matching by the software application or with your own color profile, when you want to disable color-matching by the printer driver.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Matching Method	Description	Notes
Auto	Color-matching optimized for images, graphics, or text	The available options and their display order varies depending on your selection in Color-Matching Mode, as well as the operating system.
Perceptual	Color-matching optimized for photos. Print images with smooth gradations and colors closer to those as displayed on the screen.	
Perceptual (People, Dark Areas)	Color matching optimized for printing skin tone and dark areas attractively in subdued, dark photos. For printing indoor shots of people or evening scenes attractively.	
Colorimetric	Color-matching with adjustment to remove color from white area. Without white adjustment, colors are added to white area.	
Colorimetric (No Wht-pnt Corr)	Color-matching without white adjustment to reflect the profile of original data. Without white adjustment, colors are added to white area.	
Saturation	Color-matching optimized for graphics. This option emphasizes color saturation.	

Gray Adjustment

The following settings can be adjusted if “Monochrome (Photo)” is selected in Color Mode.

Gray Adjustment Items	Description
Color Balance	Enables you to adjust the gray tone to suit the images of monochrome photos. Choose cool black (tinged with blue), pure black (neutral), warm black (tinged with red), and so on. Select the color tone in the color region or from the list.
Brightness	Adjust the brightness of printed images while keeping the darkest and lightest portions intact.
Contrast	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other. For soft gradation, decrease the contrast. For hard gradation, increase the contrast.
Highlight	Adjust levels of image highlight areas.
Shadow	Adjust levels of image shadow areas.

Note

- Be sure to calibrate your monitor colors correctly if you adjust the colors for printing. If monitor colors are not calibrated correctly, you may not obtain the desired printing results. For instructions on monitor calibration, refer to the documentation for your monitor and operating system.

For instructions on color adjustment, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Windows) (→P.267)
- Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Mac OS X) (→P.270)
- Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Mac OS 9) (→P.273)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing in Ideal Colors for Light in the Viewing Environment

You can print in the colors that look best when viewed under the light where the printed image will be displayed. There are two ways to adjust the color tone for the ambient light, as follows.

By selecting color tones on Charts before printing

On the printed **Chart**, note the number of the set of colors with the desired color tone and enter this number in the printer driver before printing.

Important

- This function requires that the **Light Source Check Tool** be installed.
- You can install the **Light Source Check Tool** from the User Software CD-ROM.
- This function is only supported in Windows.

For instructions on selecting color tones on **Charts** before printing, refer to the following topic:

- By selecting color tones on Charts before printing (Windows) (→P.669)

Printing in Colors Matching the Measured Ambient Light

Measure the light level in the viewing environment and enter the results in the printer driver before printing.

Important

- This function requires the Eye-One spectrophotometer. The Light Source Measure Tool must also be installed.
- You can install the Light Source Measure Tool from the User Software CD-ROM.
- For a list of supported Eye-One devices, refer to the manual provided with the Light Source Measure Tool.
- This function is only supported in Windows.

For instructions on measuring light levels before printing, refer to the following topic:

- Printing in Colors Matching the Measured Ambient Light (→P.673)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Photos in Monochrome

The following settings are available for monochrome printing.

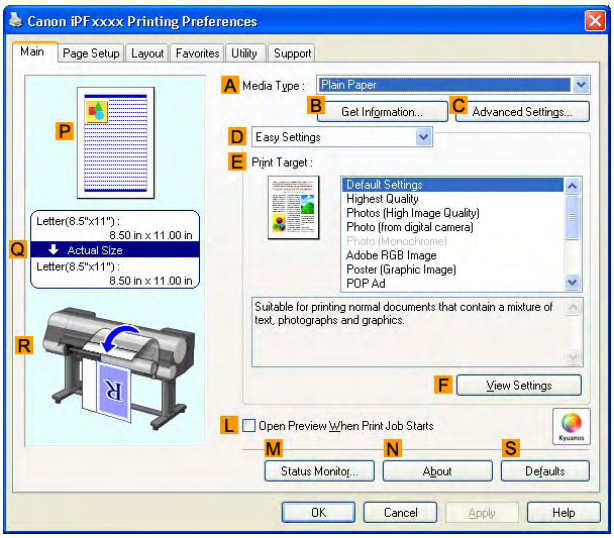
Main	**Easy Settings**	**Print Target**	**Photo (Monochrome)**	A mode optimized for printing monochrome images with maximum expressiveness through simple operations. Choosing **Photo (Monochrome)** in **Easy Settings** applies image processing to keep color ink use to an absolute minimum, suppressing color shift and achieving consistent gray balance. • **Photo (Monochrome)** is not available for all types of paper. • Printing that matches the pure neutral black of conventional photos (silver-halide prints) is possible. Printing Photos in Monochrome (Windows) (→P.305) Printing Photos in Monochrome (Mac OS X) (→P.307) Printing Photos in Monochrome (Mac OS 9) (→P.310)
	Advanced Settings	**Color Mode**	**Monochrome (Photo)**	A mode for printing monochrome images with maximum expressiveness by specifying detailed settings. In these settings, you can specify to apply image processing to keep color ink use to an absolute minimum, suppress color shift, and achieve consistent gray balance. You can also fine-tune the color balance by selecting “Warm Black,” “Cool Black”, and so on. • Even more detailed adjustment is possible on the **Color Adjustment** sheet. • **Monochrome (Photo)** is not available for all types of paper. Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Photos (Windows) (→P.276) Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Photos (Mac OS X) (→P.278) Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Photos (Mac OS 9) (→P.281)
			Monochrome	Deactivates color printing so that images are printed in monochrome, with continuous-tone color data printed using gray midtones. Use this mode to print office documents or graphics in monochrome, or if the paper is not compatible with the **Monochrome (Photo)** setting. • Even more detailed adjustment is possible on the **Color Adjustment** sheet. • If the paper is not compatible with the **Monochrome (Photo)** setting, choose **Monochrome** . • Because color ink is used to produce gray continuous-tone images, the gray may appear to have a tinge of color. Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Photos (Windows) (→P.276) Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Photos (Mac OS X) (→P.278) Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Photos (Mac OS 9) (→P.281)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

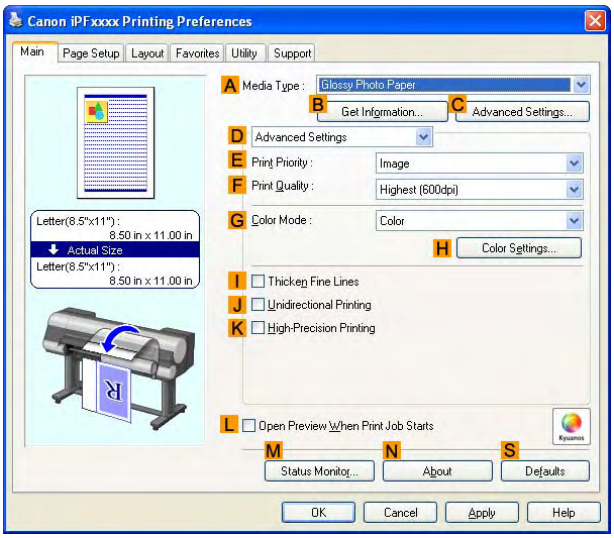
Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Windows)

You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. This topic describes how to print CAD drawings in monochrome.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.539)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.
5. Click D **Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

6. Click **Line Drawing/Text** in the **E Print Priority** list.
7. Click **Standard (600dpi)** in the **F Print Quality** list.

Note

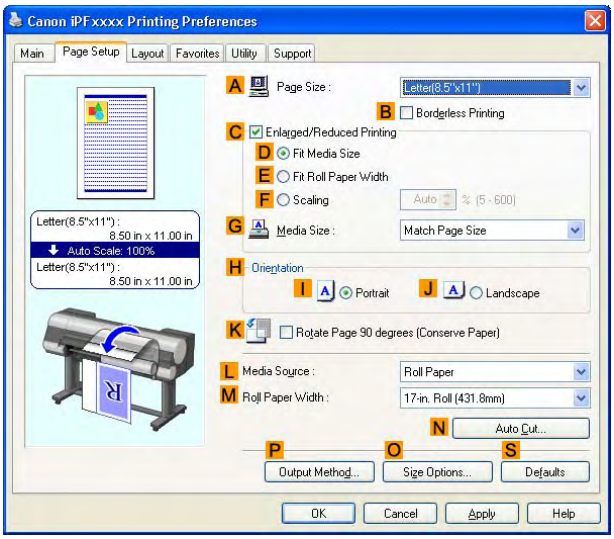
- Options displayed in the **F Print Quality** list vary depending on the paper type.

8. Click **Monochrome** in the **G Color Mode** list.
9. To adjust the brightness and contrast, click **H Color Settings**.

Note

- For instructions on adjusting brightness and contrast, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.254)

10. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



11. Confirm the settings of **A Page Size**, **L Media Source**, and so on.
12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

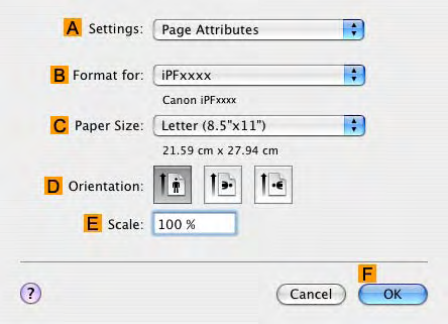
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.509)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

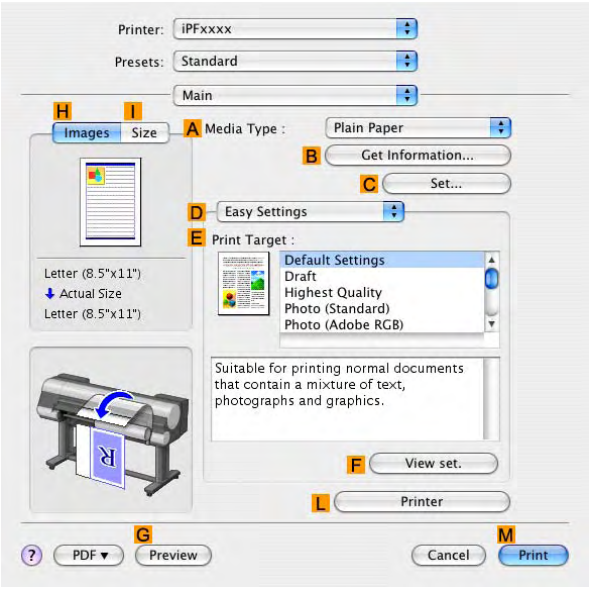
Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Mac OS X)

You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. This topic describes how to print CAD drawings in monochrome.

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

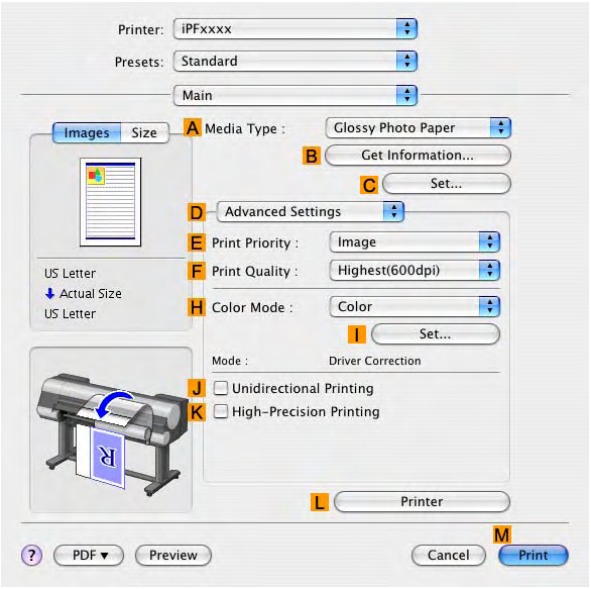


2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. Choose the original size in the C **Paper Size** list.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. In the application menu, choose **Print**.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.
8. Click D **Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



9. Click **Line Drawing** in the E **Print Priority** list.
10. Click **Standard(600dpi)** in the F **Print Quality** list.

Note

- Options displayed in the F **Print Quality** list vary depending on the paper type.

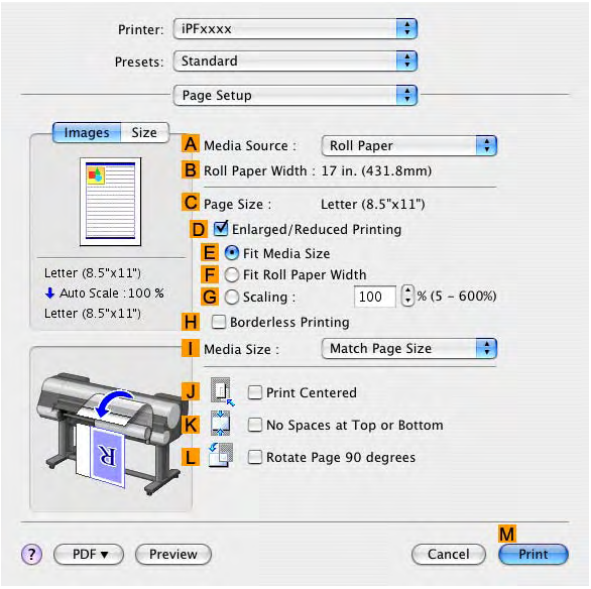
11. Click **Monochrome** in the H **Color Mode** list.
12. To adjust the brightness and contrast, click I **Set**.

Note

- For instructions on adjusting brightness and contrast, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.254)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

13. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



14. Confirm the settings of **A** **Media Source** and **C** **Page Size**.

15. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M** **Print** to start printing.

Note

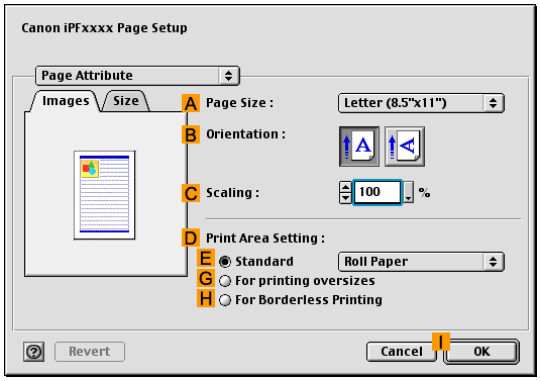
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.559)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

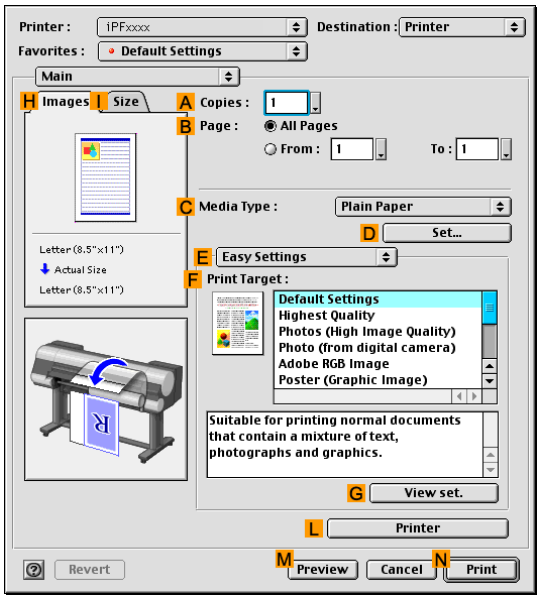
Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Mac OS 9)

You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. This topic describes how to print CAD drawings in monochrome.

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

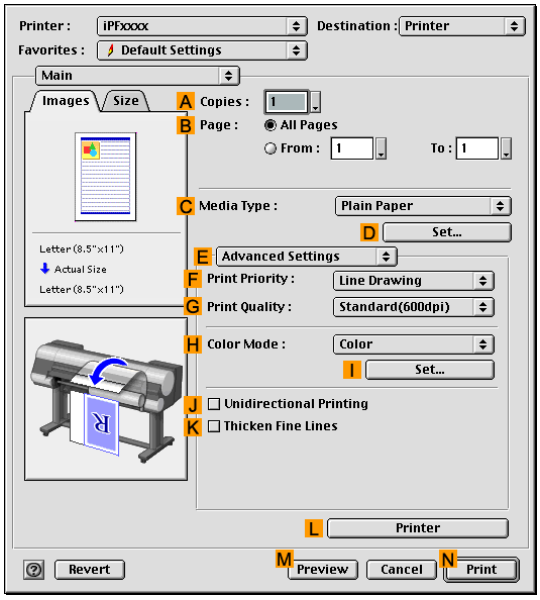


3. Choose the original size in the A **Page Size** list.
4. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. In the application menu, choose **Print**.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

7. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.
8. Click E **Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



9. Click **Line Drawing** in the F **Print Priority** list.
10. Click **Standard(600dpi)** in the G **Print Quality** list.

Note

- Options displayed in the G **Print Quality** list vary depending on the paper type.

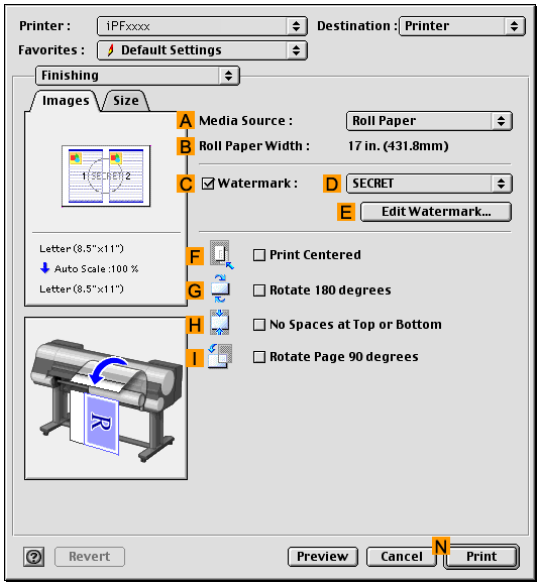
11. Click **Monochrome** in the H **Color Mode** list.
12. To adjust brightness and contrast, click I **Set**.

Note

- For instructions on adjusting brightness and contrast, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.254)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

13. Access the **Finishing** pane.



14. Confirm the selection in A **Media Source**.

15. Confirm the print settings, and then click N **Print** to start printing.

Note

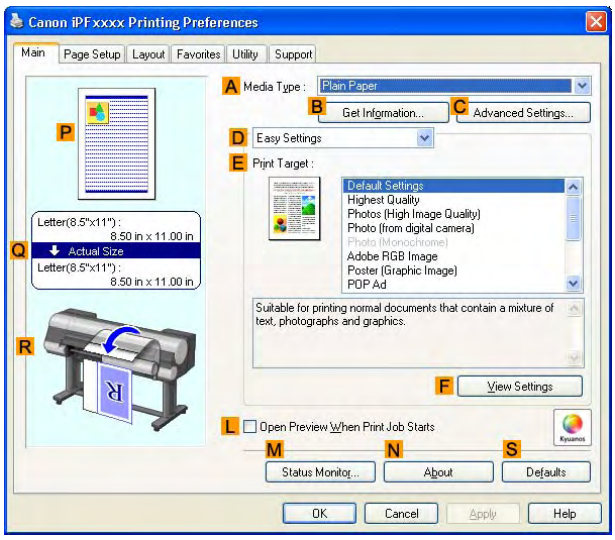
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.585)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

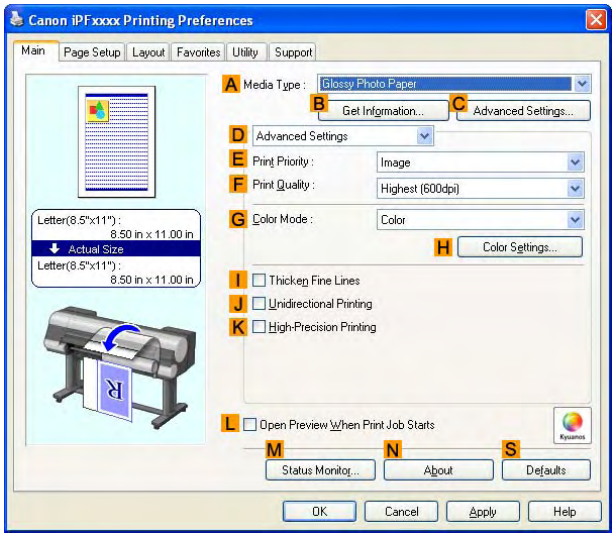
Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Windows)

You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. This topic describes how to fine-tune the color tone of photos before printing.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.539)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



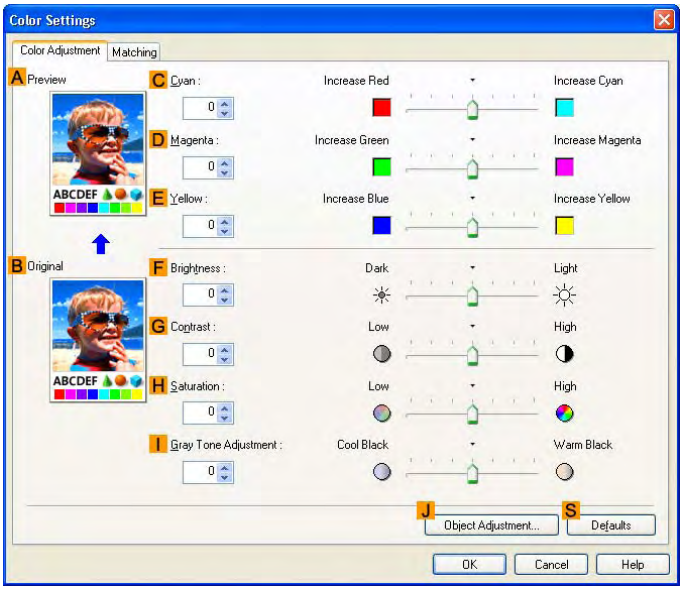
4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.
5. Click D **Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



6. Click **Color** in the G **Color Mode** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

7. Click **H Color Settings** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.



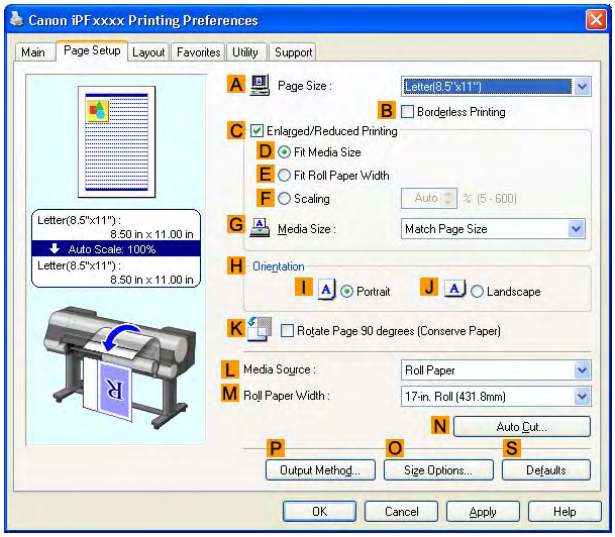
8. On the **Color Adjustment** sheet, adjust the color tones, brightness, and so on as desired.

Adjustment Item	Description
C Cyan	Correct color tones by adjusting the levels of Cyan , Magenta , and Yellow .
D Magenta	
E Yellow	
F Brightness	Adjust the brightness of printed images while keeping the darkest and lightest portions intact.
G Contrast	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other. For soft gradation, decrease the contrast. For hard gradation, increase the contrast.
H Saturation	Adjust the level of color saturation, in a range from subdued to vivid.
I Gray Tone Adjustment	Adjust the gray tone to suit the images of monochrome photos. Choose cool black (tinged with blue), pure black (neutral), warm black (tinged with red), and so on. Select the color tone in the color region or from the list.

9. Close the **Color Settings** dialog box.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

10. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



11. Confirm the settings of **A Page Size**, **L Media Source**, and so on.

12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

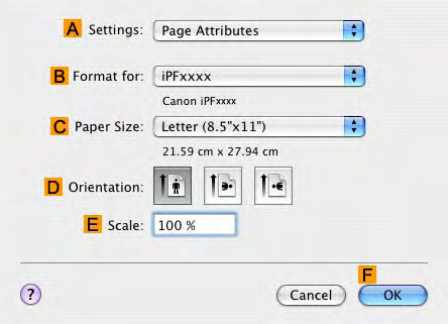
- For instructions on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.509)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

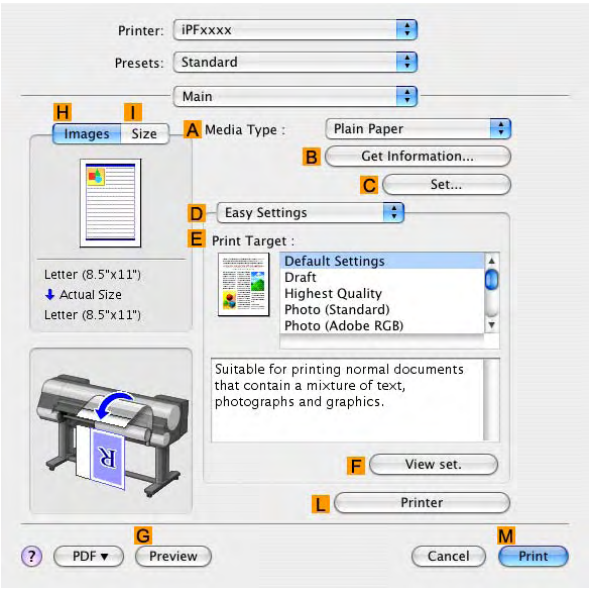
Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Mac OS X)

You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. This topic describes how to fine-tune the color tone of photos before printing.

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



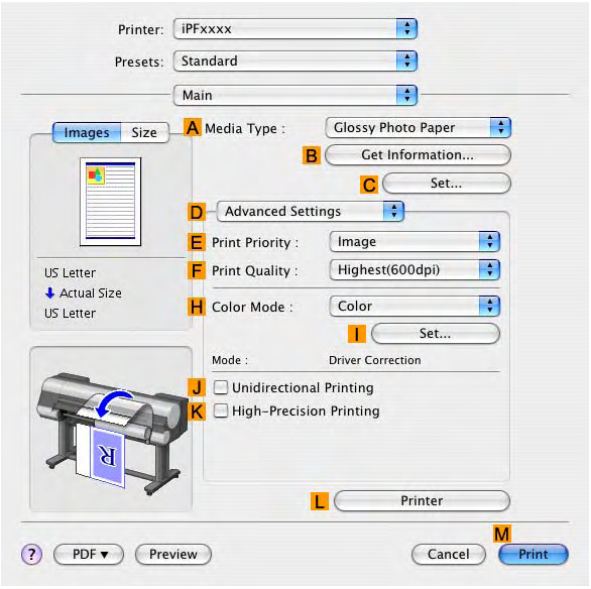
2. Select the printer in the **B Format for** list.
3. Choose the original size in the **C Paper Size** list.
4. Click **F OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



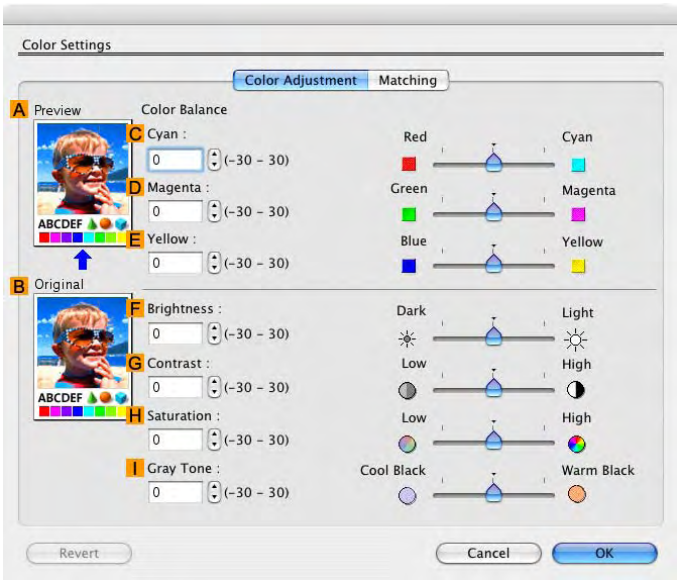
7. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

8. Click D **Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



9. Click **Color** in the H **Color Mode** list.
10. Click I **Set** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.



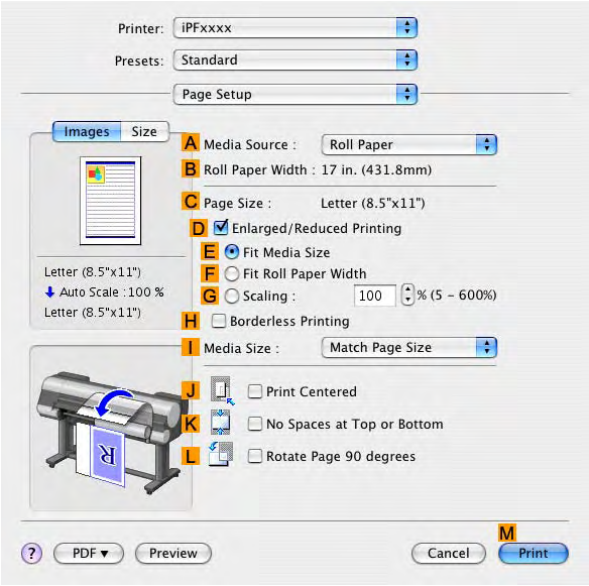
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

11. On the **Color Adjustment** pane, adjust the color tones, brightness, and so on as desired.

Adjustment Item	Description
C **Cyan**	Correct color tones by adjusting the levels of Cyan , Magenta , and Yellow .
D **Magenta**	
E **Yellow**	
F **Brightness**	Adjust the brightness of printed images while keeping the darkest and lightest portions intact.
G **Contrast**	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other. For soft gradation, decrease the contrast. For hard gradation, increase the contrast.
H **Saturation**	Adjust the level of color saturation, in a range from subdued to vivid.
I **Gray Tone**	Adjust the gray tone to suit the images of monochrome photos. Choose cool black (tinged with blue), pure black (neutral), warm black (tinged with red), and so on. Select the color tone in the color region or from the list.

12. Click **OK** to close the **Color Settings** dialog box.

13. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



14. Confirm the settings of A **Media Source** and C **Page Size**.

15. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

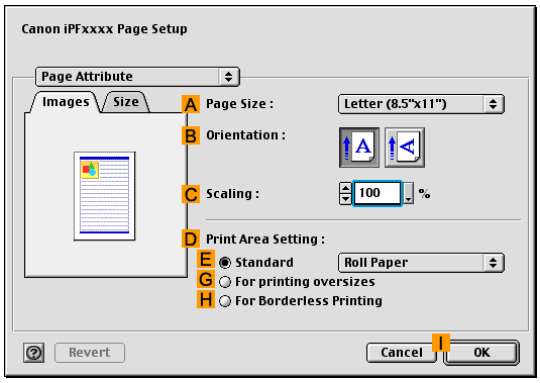
- For instructions on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.559)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

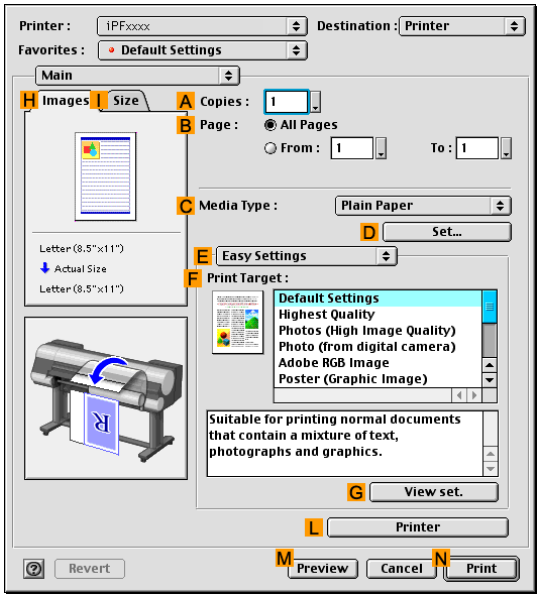
Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Mac OS 9)

You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. This topic describes how to fine-tune the color tone of photos before printing.

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



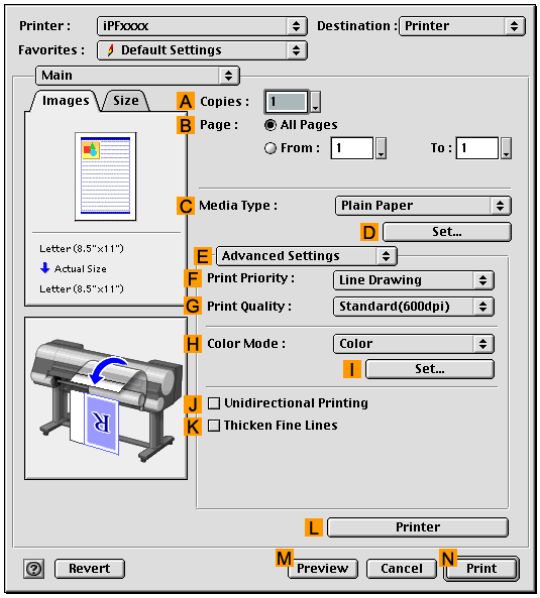
3. Choose the original size in the A **Page Size** list.
4. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



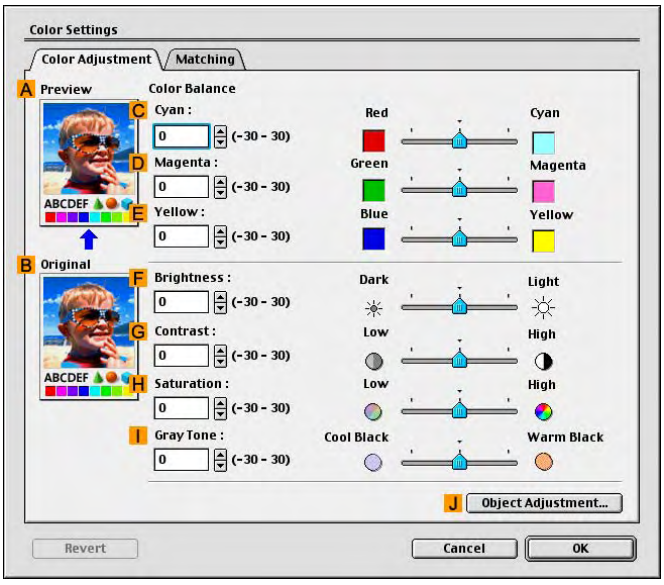
7. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

8. Click **E** **Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



9. Click **Color** in the **H** **Color Mode** list.
10. Click **I** **Set** to display the **Color Settings**dialog box.



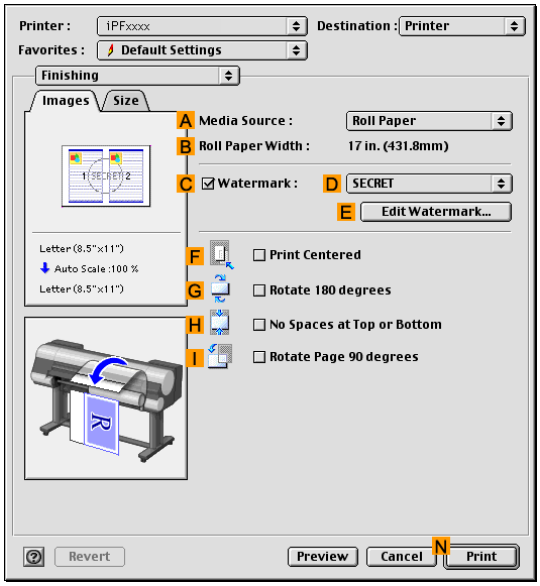
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

11. On the **Color Adjustment** pane, adjust the color tones, brightness, and so on as desired.

Adjustment Item	Description
C **Cyan**	Correct color tones by adjusting the levels of Cyan , Magenta , and Yellow .
D **Magenta**	
E **Yellow**	
F **Brightness**	Adjust the brightness of printed images while keeping the darkest and lightest portions intact.
G **Contrast**	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other. For soft gradation, decrease the contrast. For hard gradation, increase the contrast.
H **Saturation**	Adjust the level of color saturation, in a range from subdued to vivid.
I **Gray Tone**	Adjust the gray tone to suit the images of monochrome photos. Choose cool black (tinged with blue), pure black (neutral), warm black (tinged with red), and so on. Select the color tone in the color region or from the list.

12. Click **OK** to close the **Color Settings** dialog box.

13. Access the **Finishing** pane.



14. Confirm the selection in A **Media Source**.

15. Confirm the print settings, and then click N **Print** to start printing.

Note

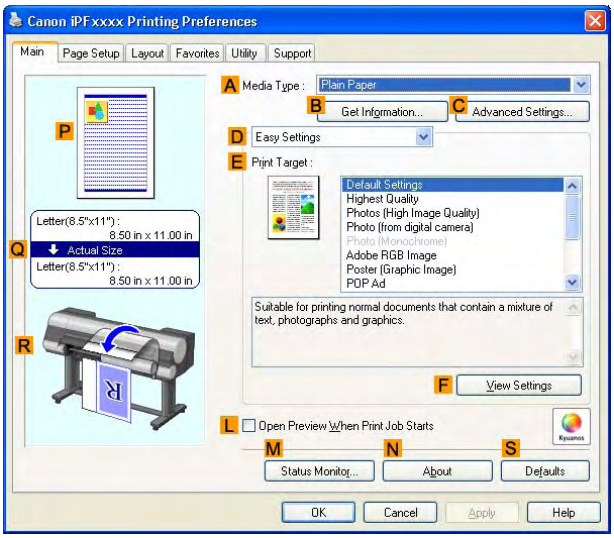
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.585)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

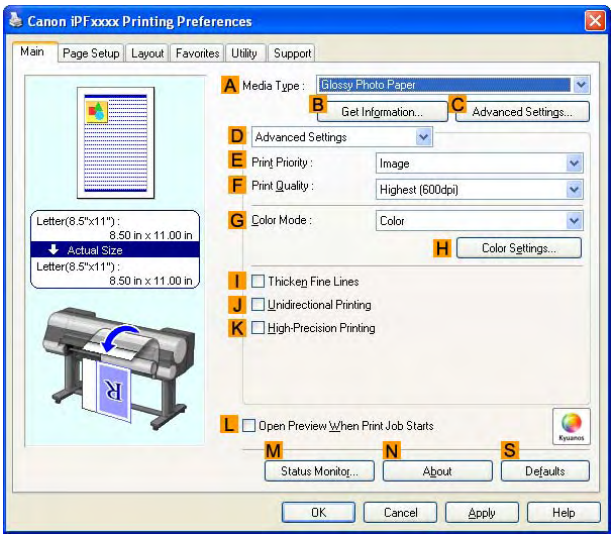
Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Photos (Windows)

You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. This topic describes how to fine-tune monochrome settings before printing.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.539)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.
5. Click D **Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



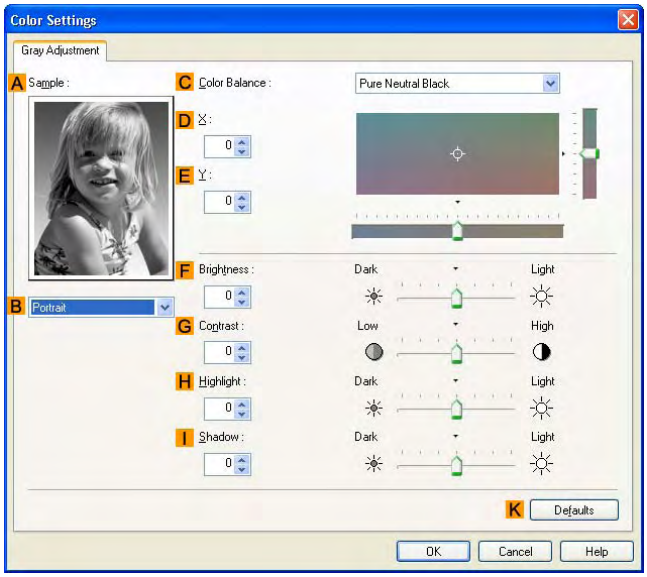
6. Click **Monochrome (Photo)** in the G **Color Mode** list.

Note

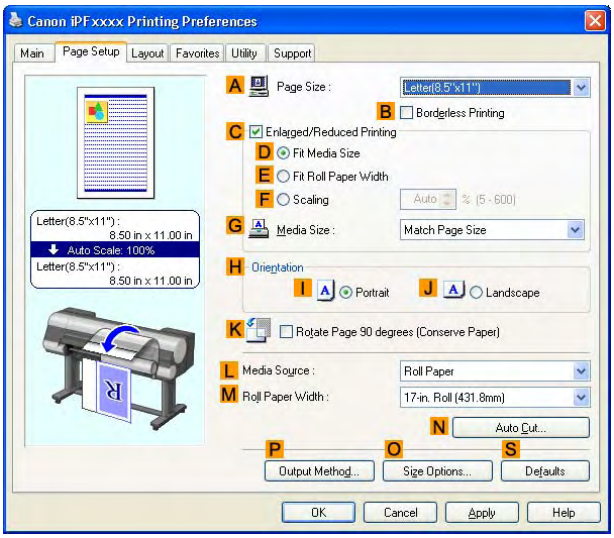
- **Monochrome (Photo)** may not be available for all types of paper.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

7. Click H **Color Settings** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.



8. On the **Gray Adjustment** sheet, adjust the color tones, brightness, and so on as desired.
9. Close the **Color Settings** dialog box.
10. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



11. Confirm the settings of A **Page Size**, L **Media Source**, and so on.
12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

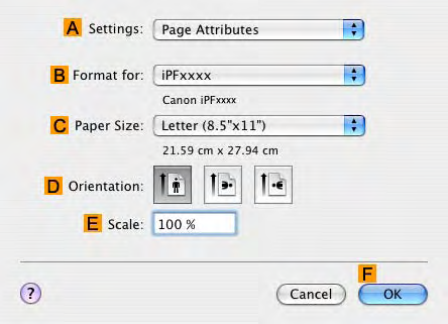
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.509)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

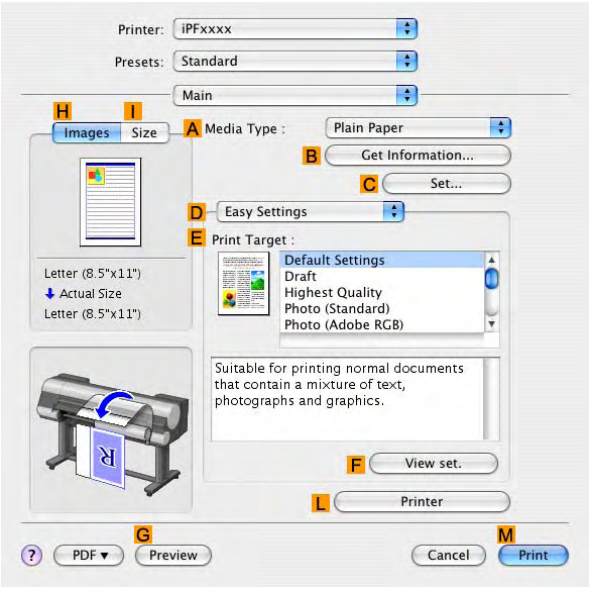
Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Photos (Mac OS X)

You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. This topic describes how to fine-tune monochrome settings before printing.

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



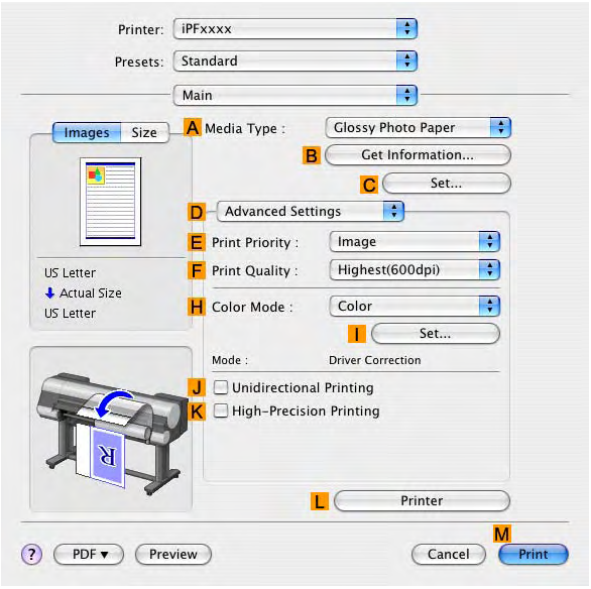
2. Select the print target in the B **Format for** list.
3. Choose the original size in the C **Paper Size** list.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. In the source application menu, choose **Print**.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

8. Click D **Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.

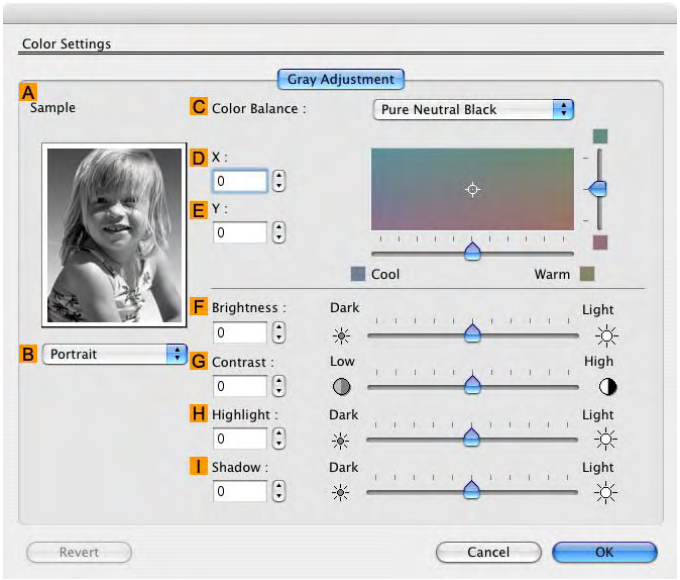


9. Click **Monochrome (Photo)** in the H **Color Mode** list.

Note

- **Monochrome (Photo)** may not be available for all types of paper.

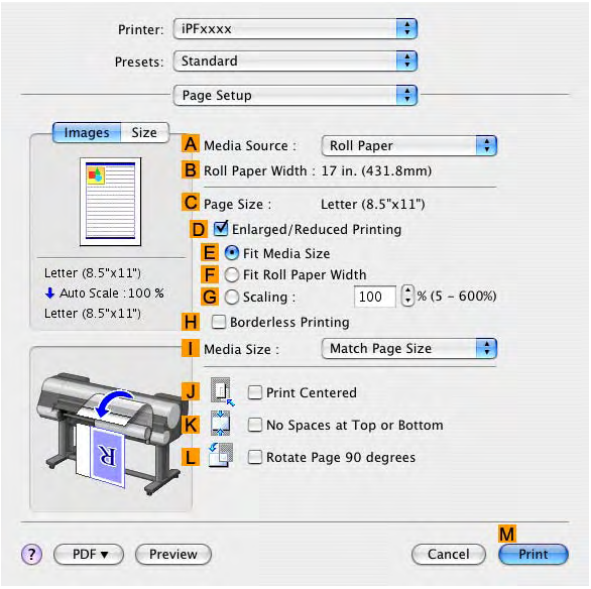
10. Click I **Set** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.



11. On the **Gray Adjustment** pane, adjust the color tones, brightness, and so on as desired.
12. Click **OK** to close the **Color Settings** dialog box.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

13. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



14. Confirm the settings of **A** **Media Source** and **C** **Page Size**.

15. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M** **Print** to start printing.

Note

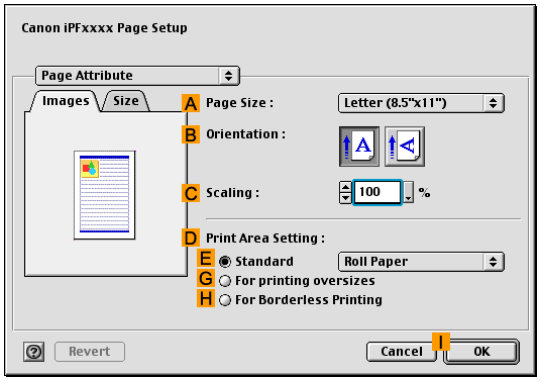
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.559)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

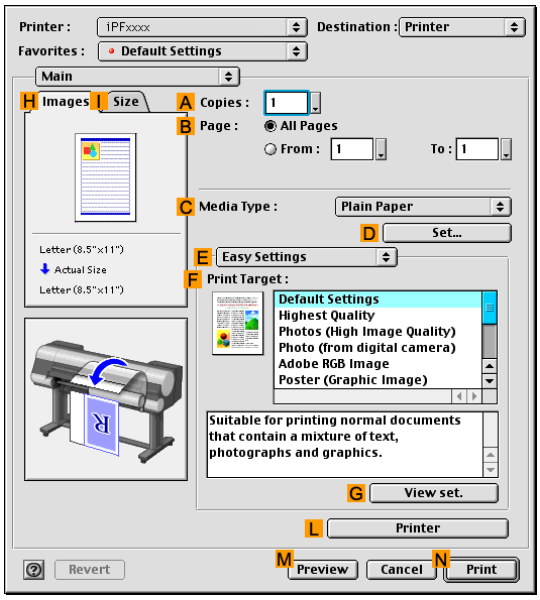
Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Photos (Mac OS 9)

You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. This topic describes how to fine-tune monochrome settings before printing.

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



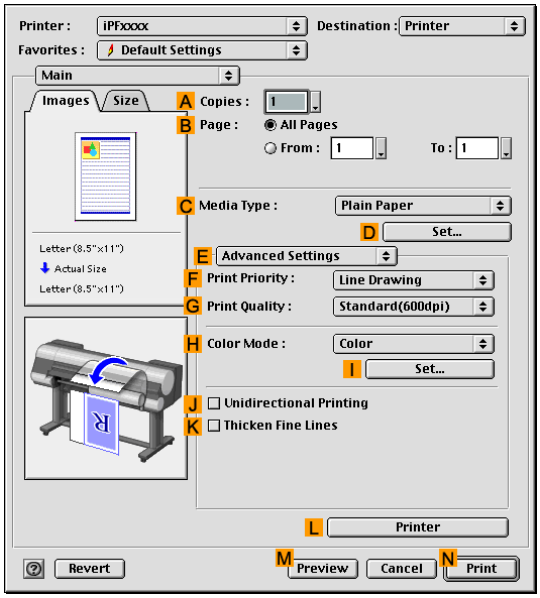
3. Choose the original size in the A **Page Size** list.
4. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. In the source application menu, choose **Print**.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



7. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

8. Click **E** **Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.

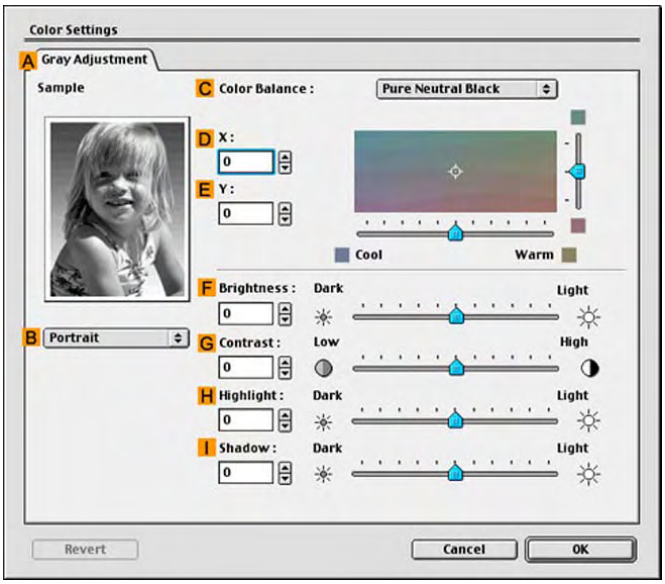


9. Click **Monochrome (Photo)** in the **H** **Color Mode** list.

Note

- **Monochrome (Photo)** may not be available for all types of paper.

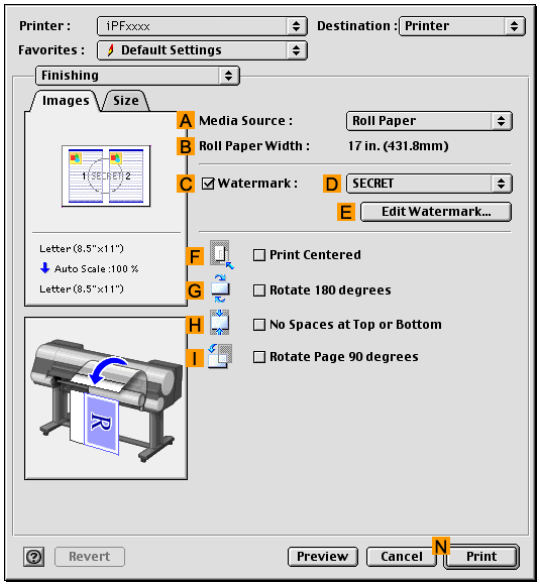
10. Click **I** **Set** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.



11. On the **Gray Adjustment** pane, adjust the color tones, brightness, and so on as desired.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

12. Access the **Finishing** pane.



13. Confirm the selection in A **Media Source**.

14. Confirm the print settings, and then click N **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.585)

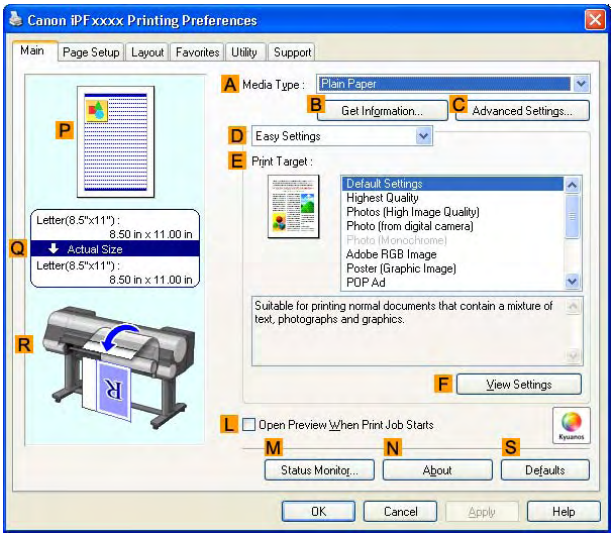
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows)

This topic describes how to print line drawings based on the following example.

- Document: CAD drawing
- Page size: A3 (297.0 × 420.0 mm [11.7 × 16.5 in])
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (→P.539)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



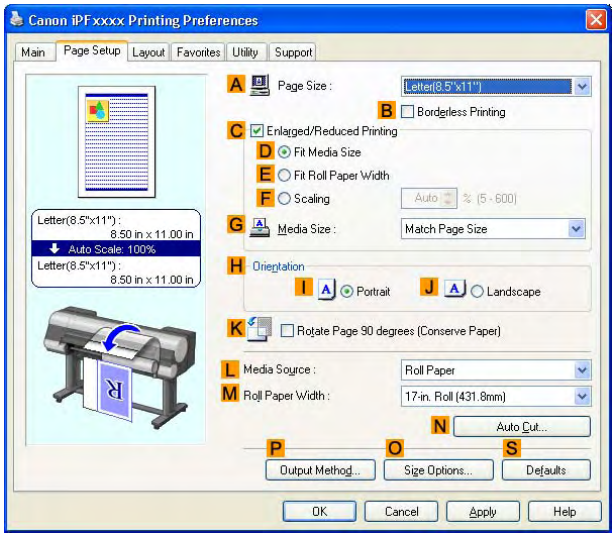
4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **CAD (Line Drawing)** in the E **Print Target** list.

Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the E **Print Target** list by clicking F **View Settings**.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In A **Page Size**, click the size of the original as specified in the application software. In this case, click **ISO A3**.
8. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Media Source** list.
9. Select the width of the loaded roll in the M **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**.
10. Specify additional printing conditions.
    For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Windows)”. (→P.507)
11. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.509)

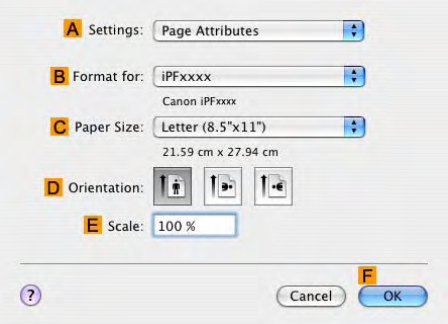
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS X)

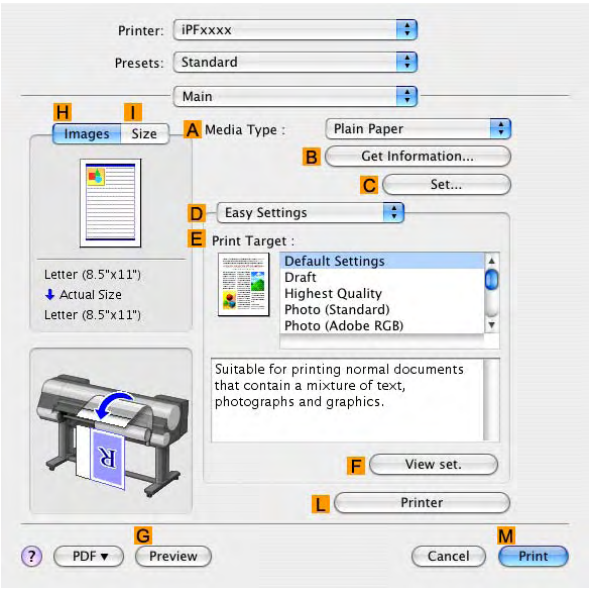
This topic describes how to print line drawings based on the following example.

- Document: CAD drawing
- Page size: A3 (297.0 × 420.0 mm [11.7 × 16.5 in])
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In the C **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A3**.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



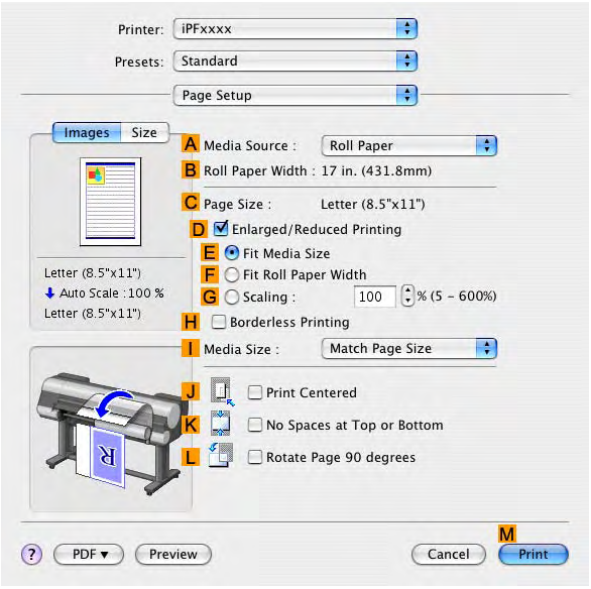
7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **CAD (Line Drawing)** in the E **Print Target** list.

Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the E **Print Target** list by clicking F **View set.**.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.

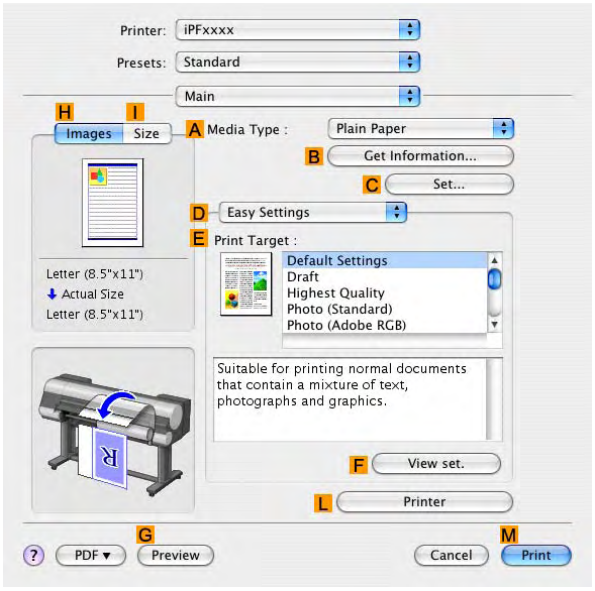


10. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A Media Source** list.

11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm)**.

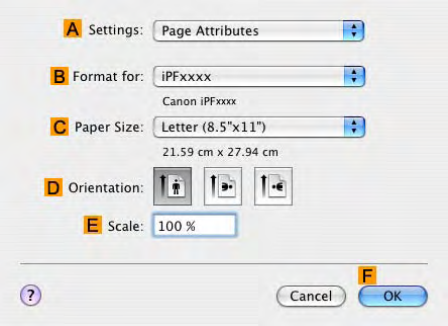
Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in **B Roll Paper Width**, click **L Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

12. Make sure C **Page Size** on the **Page Setup** pane shows the original size as specified in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A3**.



13. Specify additional printing conditions.
For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.558)

14. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.559)

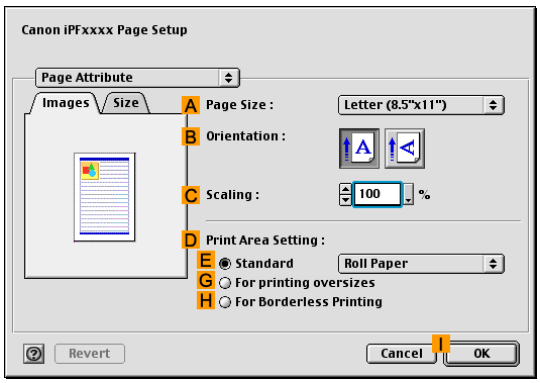
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS 9)

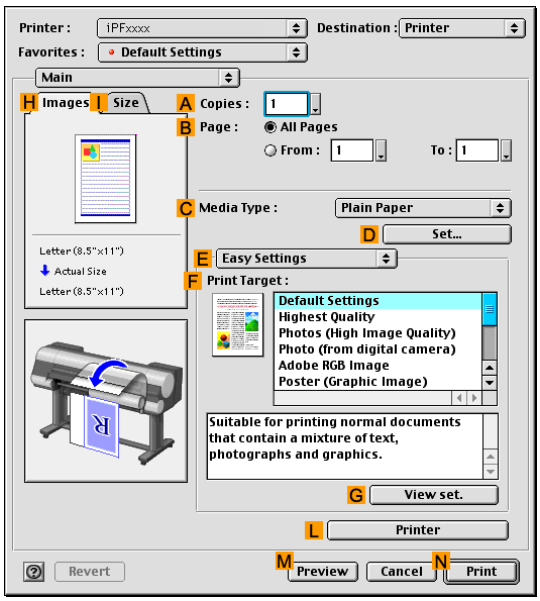
This topic describes how to print line drawings based on the following example.

- Document: CAD drawing
- Page size: A3 (297.0 × 420.0 mm [11.7 × 16.5 in])
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



3. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A3**.
4. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



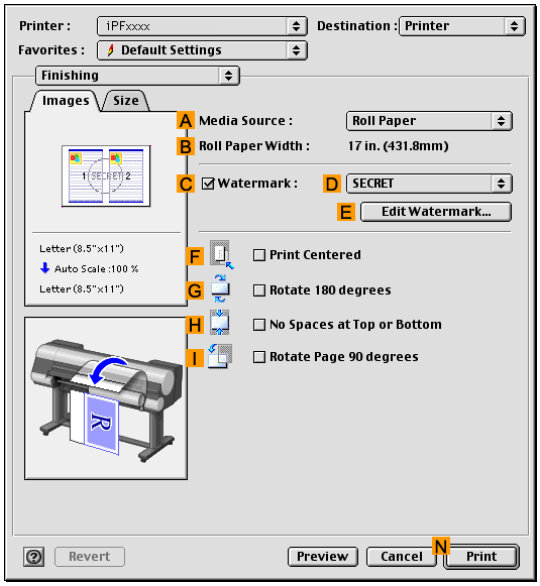
7. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. After confirming that E **Easy Settings** is selected, click **CAD (Line Drawing)** in the F **Print Target** list.

Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the F **Print Target** list by clicking G **View set.**

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

9. Access the **Finishing** pane.

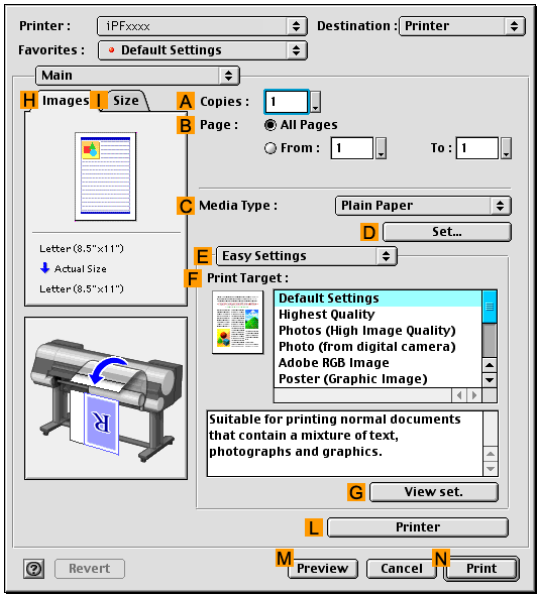


10. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.

11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the B **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



12. Specify additional printing conditions.

For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.584)

13. Confirm the print settings, and then click N **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.585)

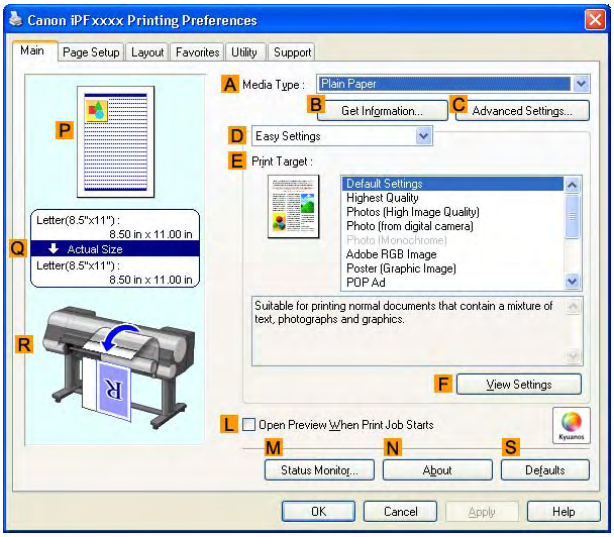
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Office Documents (Windows)

This topic describes how to print office documents based on the following example.

- Document: Office document created using word-processing software or spreadsheet programs
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Sheets
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.539)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



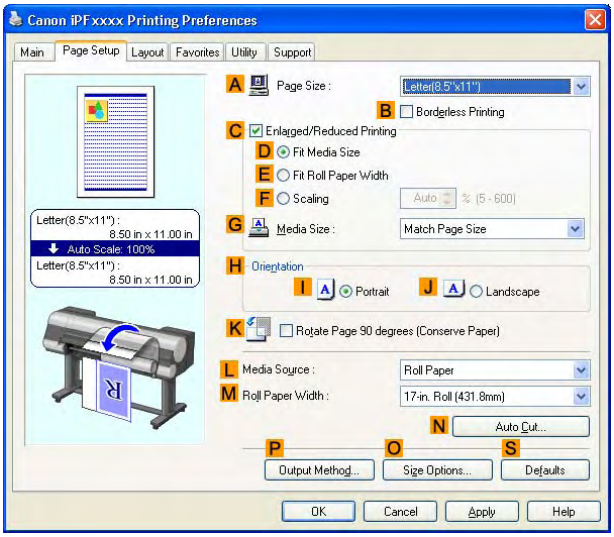
4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **Office Document** in the E **Print Target** list.

Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the E **Print Target** list by clicking F **View Settings**.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup**sheet.



7. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.
8. Select sheets in the L **Media Source** list.
9. Specify additional printing conditions.
   For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Windows)”. (→P.507)
10. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Caution

- Depending on the **Media Type** setting, some **Print Target** options may not be available.

Note

- For instructions on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.509)

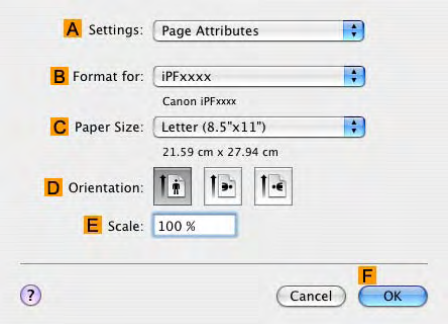
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Office Documents (Mac OS X)

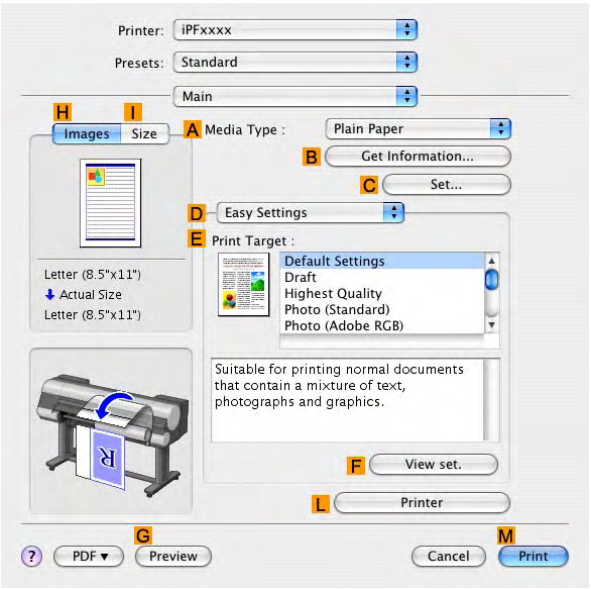
This topic describes how to print office documents based on the following example.

- Document: Office document created using word-processing or spreadsheet programs
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Sheets
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In the C **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



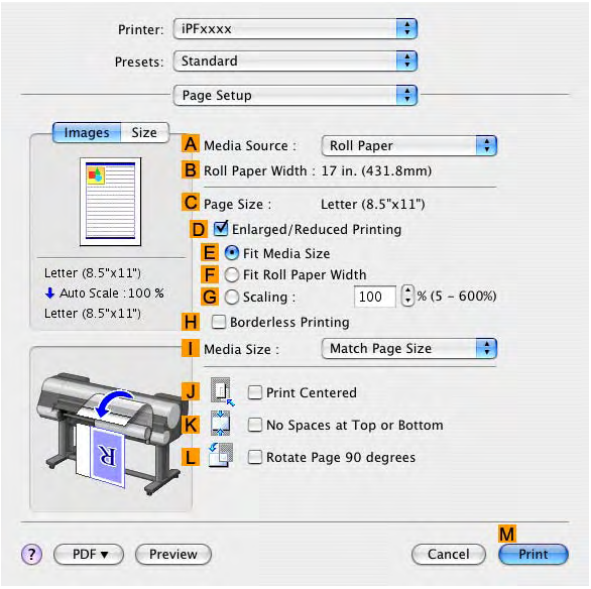
7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **Office Document** in the E **Print Target** list.

Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the E **Print Target** list by clicking F **View set.**

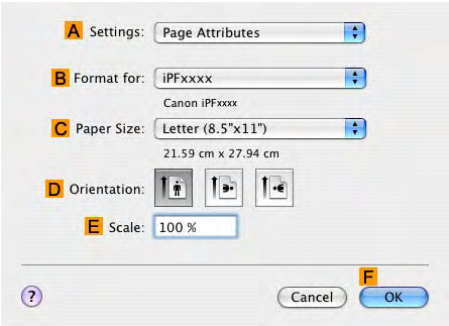
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



10. Click Sheets in the **A** **Media Source** list.

11. Make sure **C** **Page Size** shows the original size as specified in **C** **Paper Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



12. Specify additional printing conditions.
For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.558)

13. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M** **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.559)

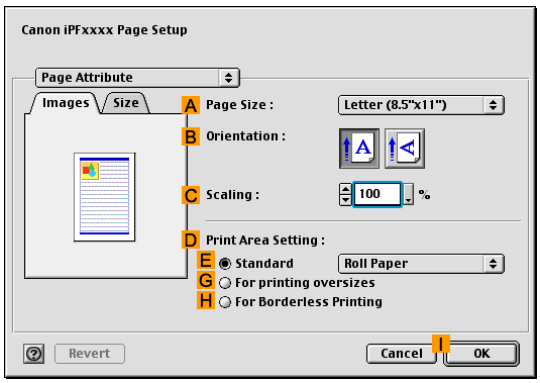
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Office Documents (Mac OS 9)

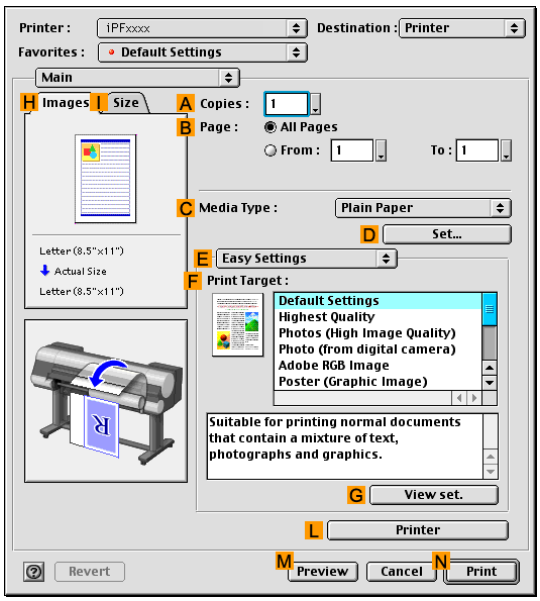
This topic describes how to print office documents based on the following example.

- Document: Office document created using word-processing or spreadsheet programs
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Sheets
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



3. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



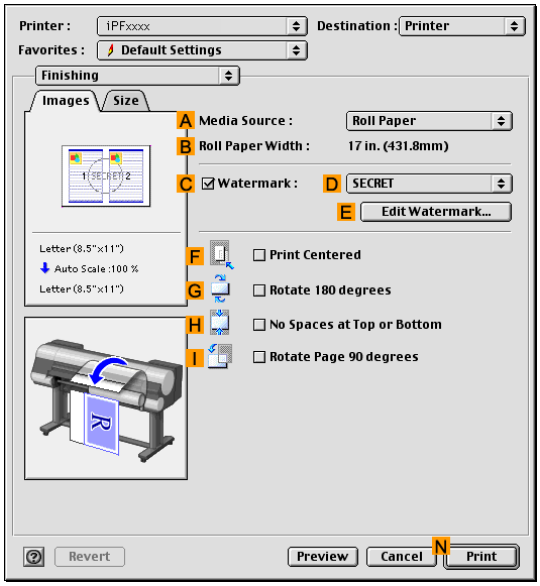
7. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. After confirming that E **Easy Settings** is selected, click **Office Document** in the F **Print Target** list.

Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the F **Print Target** list by clicking G **View set.**

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

9. Access the **Finishing** pane.



10. Click **Cut Sheet** in the A **Media Source** list.

11. Specify additional printing conditions.

For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.584)

12. Confirm the print settings, and then click N **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.585)

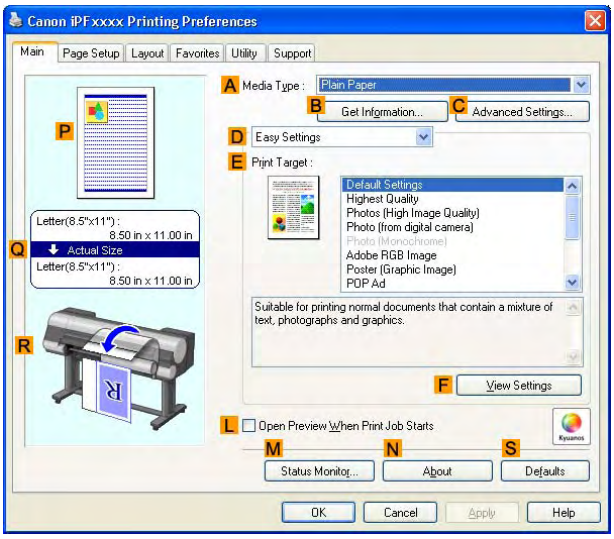
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Photos and Images (Windows)

This topic describes how to print photos based on the following example.

- Document: Photo image from a digital camera
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Glossy Photo Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.539)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Glossy Photo Paper.
   In the **A Media Type**, choose the type of paper used for printing, such as Glossy Paper, Coated Paper, and so on. Make sure the paper you select is loaded in the printer.

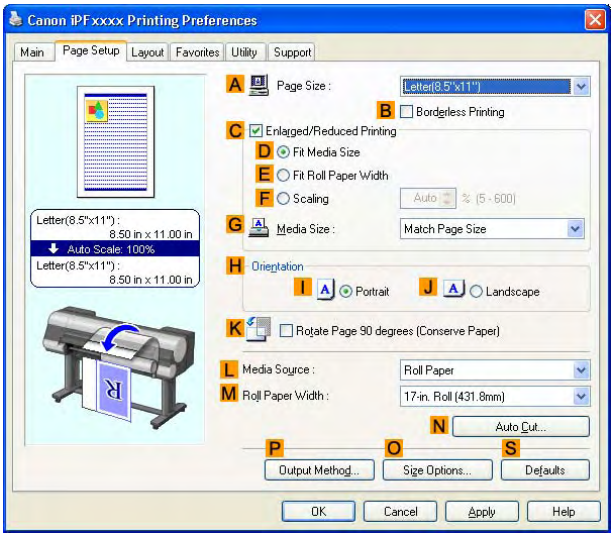
   Note
   - The paper type setting in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) is updated when you install the Media Configuration Tool from the User Software CD-ROM or if you change paper information by using the Media Configuration Tool. (See the Media Configuration Tool Guide (Windows) or Media Configuration Tool Guide (Macintosh).)

5. After confirming that **D Easy Settings** is selected, click **Photo (Standard)** or **Photo (Photo Studio)** in the **E Print Target** list.

   Note
   - For information on settings optimized for printing photos and images, see “Printing Photos and Images (Windows, Mac OS X)”. (→P.247)
   - You can check the settings values selected in the **E Print Target** list by clicking **F View Settings**.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **10"x12"**.
8. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Media Source** list.
9. Select the width of the loaded roll in the M **Roll Paper Width** list. In this case, click **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**, and then click **OK**.
10. Specify additional printing conditions.
    For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Windows)”. (→P.507)
11. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For instructions on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.509)

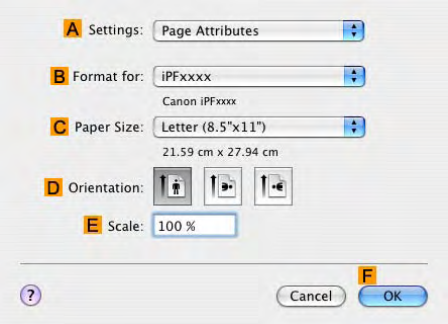
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS X)

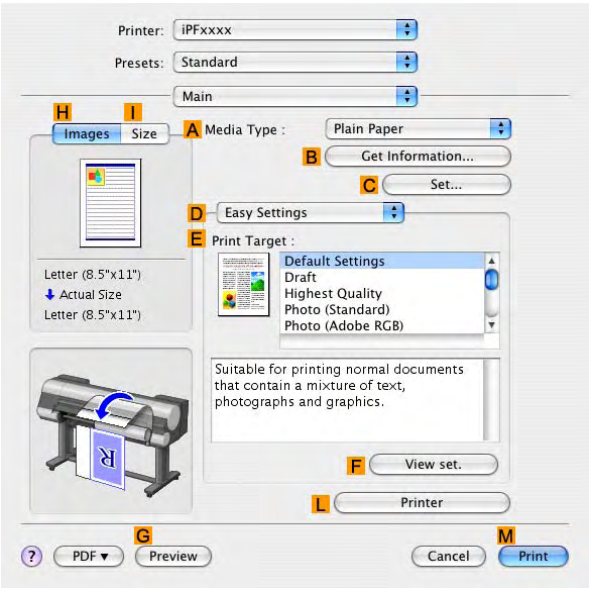
This topic describes how to print photos based on the following example.

- Document: Photo image from a digital camera
- Page Size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper Type: Glossy Photo Paper
- Roll paper Width: 10 inches (254 mm)

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In the C **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **10"x12"**.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Glossy Photo Paper.

Make sure the paper you select is loaded in the printer.

Note

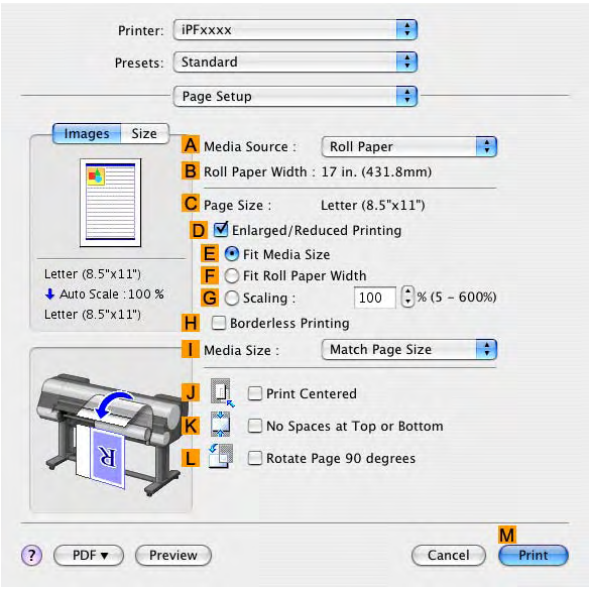
- The paper type setting in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) is updated when you install the Media Configuration Tool from the User Software CD-ROM or if you change paper information by using the Media Configuration Tool. See the Media Configuration Tool Guide (Windows) or Media Configuration Tool Guide (Macintosh).

8. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **Photo (Standard)** or **Photo (Photo Studio)** in the E **Print Target** list.

Note

- For information on settings optimized for printing photos and images, see “Printing Photos and Images (Windows, Mac OS X)”. (→P.247)
- You can check the settings values selected in the E **Print Target** list by clicking F **View set.**

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



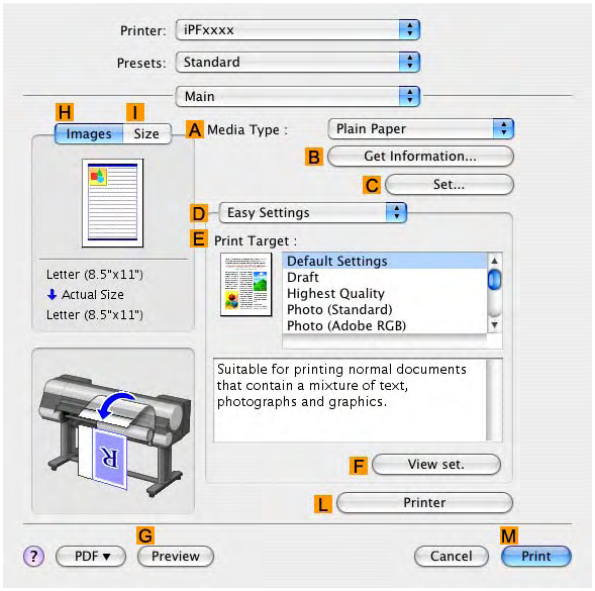
10. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

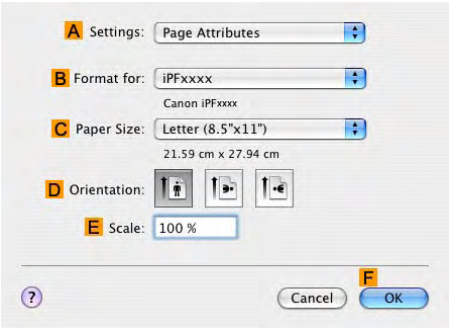
11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B** **Roll Paper Width** list in this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in **B** **Roll Paper Width**, click **L** **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



12. Make sure **C** **Page Size** on the **Page Setup** pane shows the original size as specified in **C** **Paper Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **10"x12"**.



13. Specify additional printing conditions.

For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.558)

14. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M** **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.559)

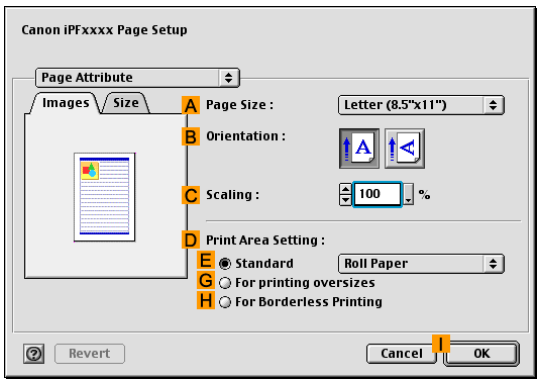
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS 9)

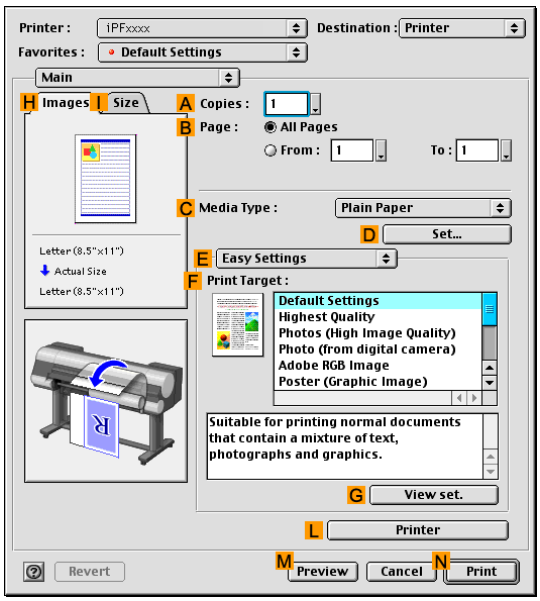
This topic describes how to print photos based on the following example.

- Document: Photo image from a digital camera
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Glossy Photo Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0mm)

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



3. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **10"x12"**.
4. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

7. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Glossy Photo Paper.

In the C **Media Type** setting, choose the type of paper for printing, such as Glossy Paper, Coated Paper, and so on. Make sure the paper you select is loaded in the printer.

Note

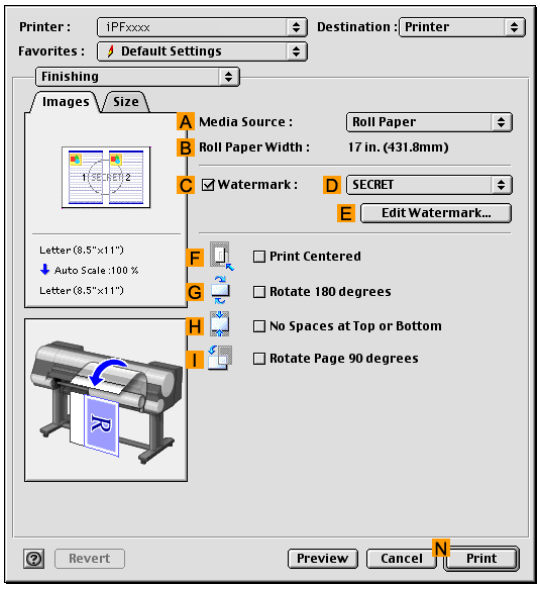
- The paper type setting in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) is updated when you install the Media Configuration Tool from the User Software CD-ROM or if you change paper information by using the Media Configuration Tool. See the Media Configuration Tool Guide (Windows) or Media Configuration Tool Guide (Macintosh).

8. After confirming that E **Easy Settings** is selected, click **Photo (from digital camera)** in the F **Print Target** list.

Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the F **Print Target** list by clicking G **View set.**

9. Access the **Finishing** pane.



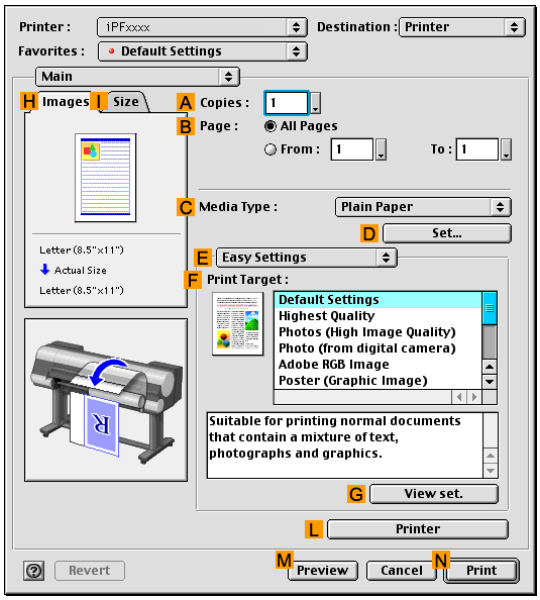
10. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in **B Roll Paper Width**, click **L Printer** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



12. Specify additional printing conditions.
For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.584)

13. Confirm the print settings, and then click **N Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.585)

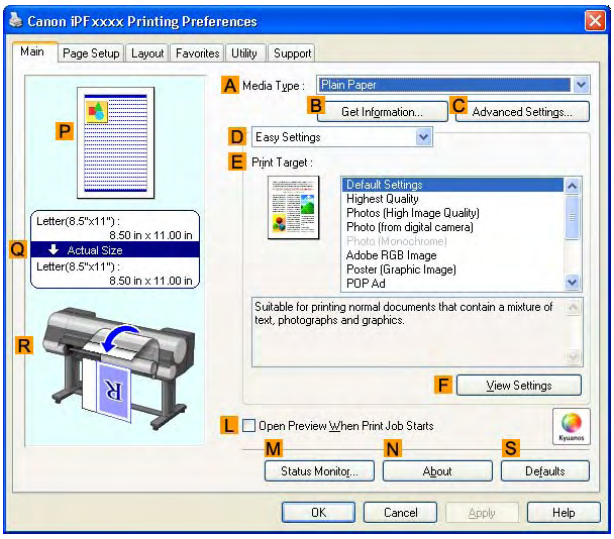
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Photos in Monochrome (Windows)

This topic describes how to print photos in monochrome based on the following example.

- Original: Photo image from a digital camera
- Page size: 10×12 inches
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Glossy Photo Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.539)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Glossy Photo Paper.
   In the A **Media Type** setting, choose the type of paper for printing, such as Glossy Paper, Coated Paper, and so on. Make sure the paper you select is loaded in the printer.

Note

- The paper type setting in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) is updated when you install the Media Configuration Tool from the User Software CD-ROM or if you change paper information by using the Media Configuration Tool. (See the Media Configuration Tool Guide (Windows) or Media Configuration Tool Guide (Macintosh).)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

5. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **Photo (Monochrome)** in the E **Print Target** list.

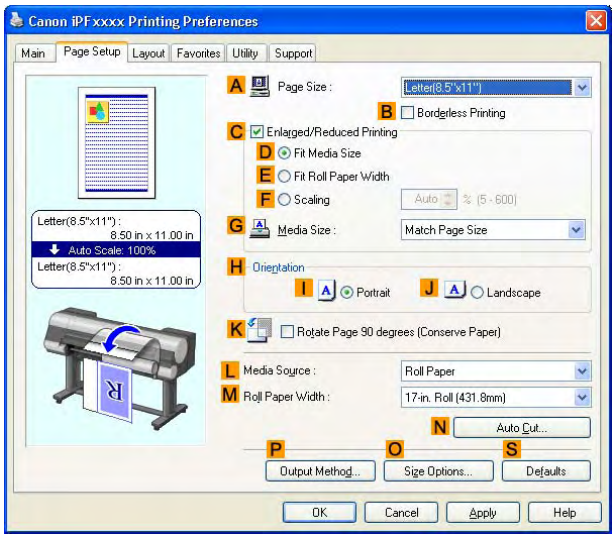
Caution

- **Photo (Monochrome)** may not be available for all types of paper.

Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the E **Print Target** list by clicking F **View Settings**.

6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **10"x12"**.
8. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Media Source** list.
9. Select the width of the loaded roll in the M **Roll Paper Width** list. In this case, click **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**, and then click **OK**.
10. Specify additional printing conditions.
    For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Windows)”. (→P.507)
11. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.509)

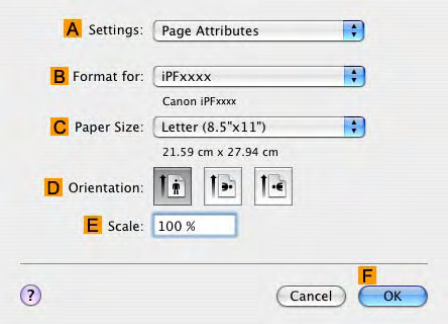
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Photos in Monochrome (Mac OS X)

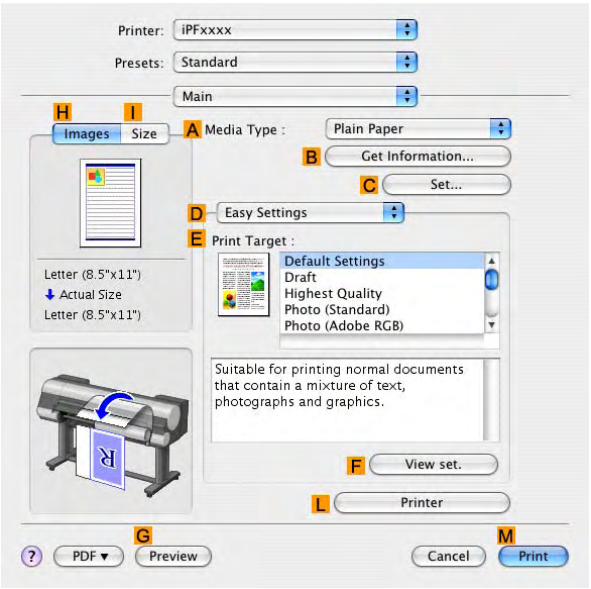
This topic describes how to print photos in monochrome based on the following example.

- Original: Photo image from a digital camera
- Page size: 10×12 inches
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Glossy Photo Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



2. Select the print target in the B **Format for** list.
3. In the C **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **10"x12"**.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. In the source application menu, choose **Print**.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Glossy Photo Paper.

In the A **Media Type** setting, choose the type of paper for printing, such as Glossy Paper, Coated Paper, and so on. Make sure the paper you select is loaded in the printer.

Note

- The paper type setting in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) is updated when you install the Media Configuration Tool from the User Software CD-ROM or if you change paper information by using the Media Configuration Tool. (See the Media Configuration Tool Guide (Windows) or Media Configuration Tool Guide (Macintosh).)

8. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **Photo (Monochrome)** in the E **Print Target** list.

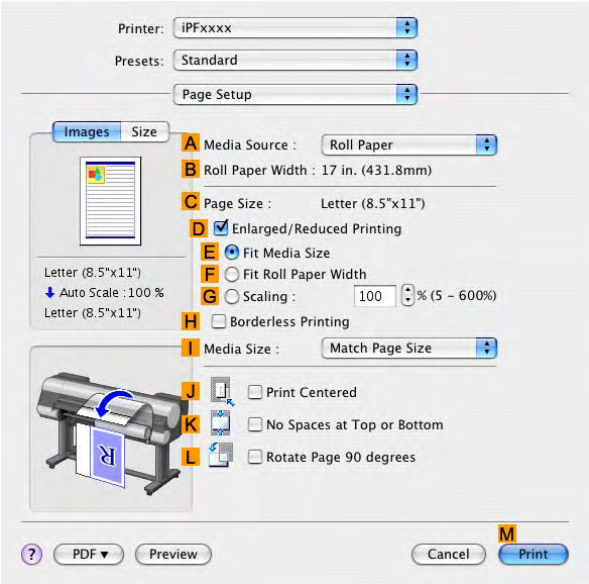
Caution

- **Photo (Monochrome)** may not be available for all types of paper.

Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the E **Print Target** list by clicking F **View set.**

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



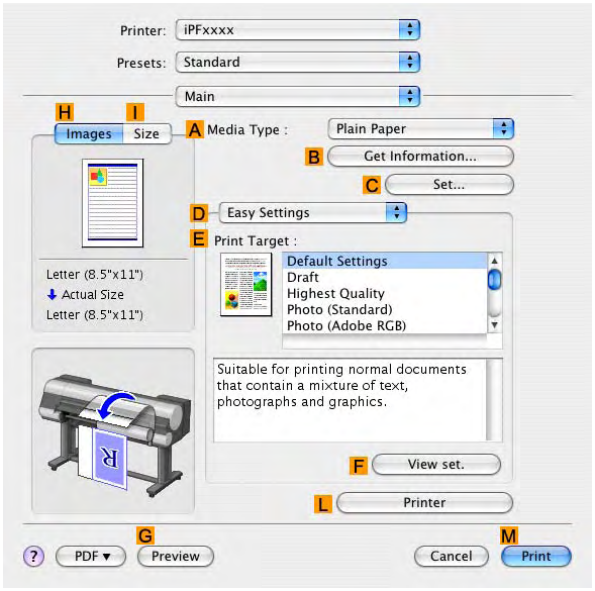
10. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

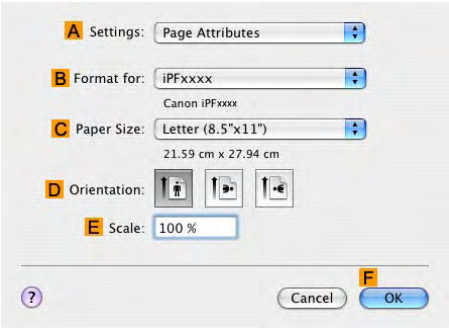
11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in **B Roll Paper Width**, click **L Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



12. Make sure **C Page Size** on the **Page Setup** pane shows the original size as specified in **C Paper Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **10"x12"**.



13. Specify additional printing conditions.

For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.558)

14. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.559)

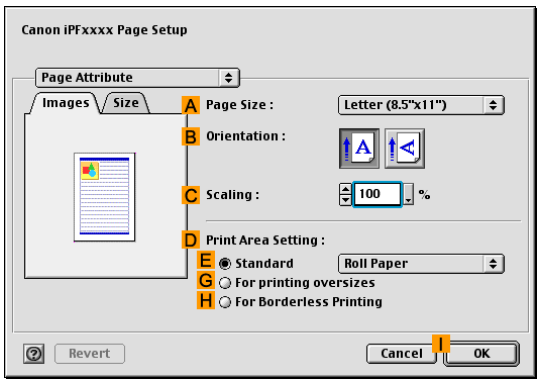
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Photos in Monochrome (Mac OS 9)

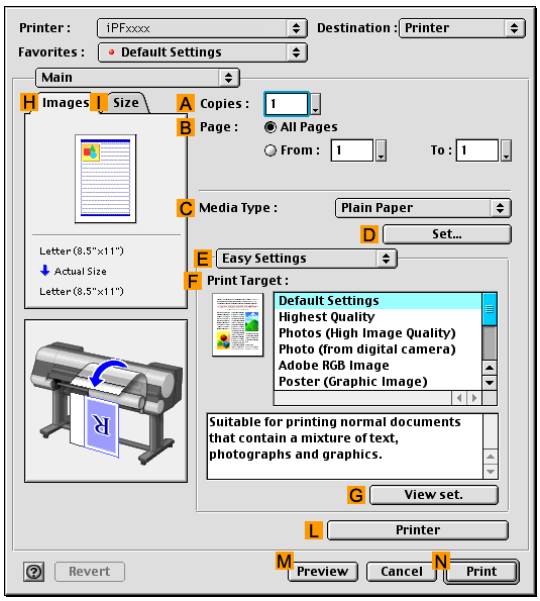
This topic describes how to print photos in monochrome based on the following example.

- Original: Photo image from a digital camera
- Page size: 10×12 inches
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Glossy Photo Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



3. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **10"x12"**.
4. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. In the source application menu, choose **Print**.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

7. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Glossy Photo Paper.
In the C **Media Type** setting, choose the type of paper for printing, such as Glossy Paper, Coated Paper, and so on. Make sure the paper you select is loaded in the printer.

Note

- The paper type setting in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) is updated when you install the Media Configuration Tool from the User Software CD-ROM or if you change paper information by using the Media Configuration Tool. (See the Media Configuration Tool Guide (Windows) or Media Configuration Tool Guide (Macintosh).)

8. After confirming that E **Easy Settings** is selected, click **Photo (Monochrome)** in the F **Print Target** list.

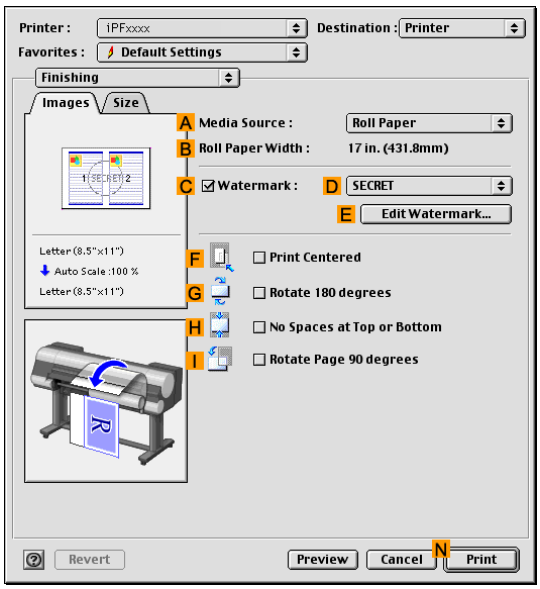
Caution

- **Photo (Monochrome)** may not be available for all types of paper.

Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the F **Print Target** list by clicking G **View set.**

9. Access the **Finishing** pane.



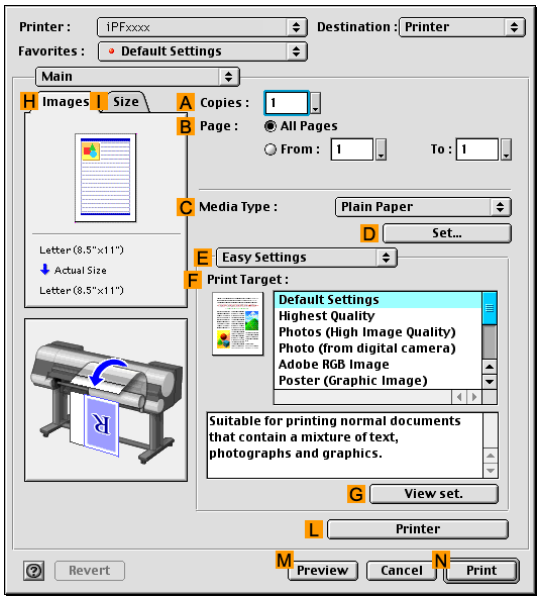
10. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the B **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



12. Specify additional printing conditions.

For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.584)

13. Confirm the print settings, and then click N **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.585)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing enlargements or reductions

Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size

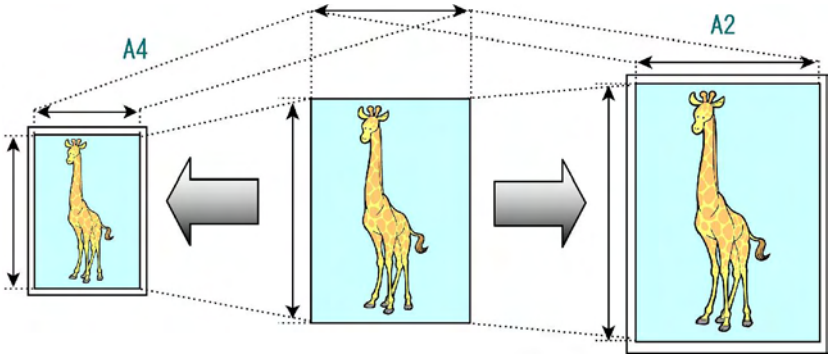
You can freely adjust the size of originals by enlarging or reducing them as desired.

Enlarged/Reduced Printing

Enlarge or reduce the original in the printer driver, as desired.

Fit Media Size

Enlarge or reduce the original to match the size of the paper you are using.



For instructions on resizing originals to match the paper size, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows) (→P.338)
- Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS X) (→P.340)
- Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS 9) (→P.343)

Note

- For better printing results when enlarging photos from a digital camera in TIFF or JPEG format, use an image-editing application software such as Adobe Photoshop to specify an image resolution of 150 dpi or more at actual size.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width

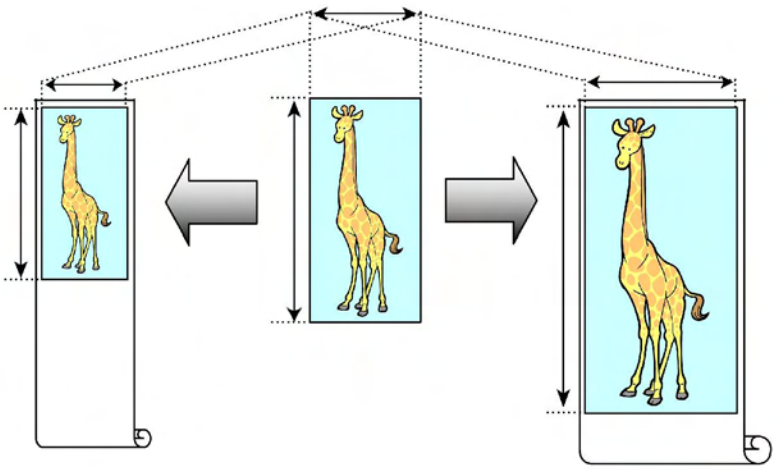
You can freely adjust the size of originals by enlarging or reducing them as desired.

Enlarged/Reduced Printing

Enlarge or reduce the original in the printer driver, as desired.

Fit Roll Paper Width

Enlarge or reduce the original as a whole to match the roll paper width, as desired.



For instructions on resizing originals to match the roll paper width, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows) (→P.330)
- Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS X) (→P.332)
- Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS 9) (→P.335)

Note

- For better printing results when enlarging photos from a digital camera in TIFF or JPEG format, use an image-editing application software such as Adobe Photoshop to specify an image resolution of 150 dpi or more at actual size.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value

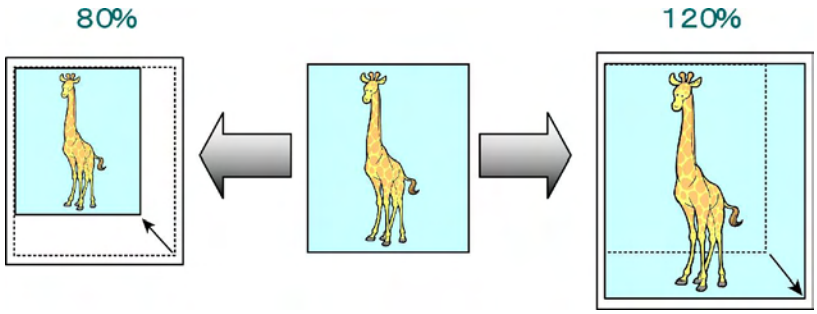
You can freely adjust the size of originals by enlarging or reducing them as desired.

Enlarged/Reduced Printing

Enlarge or reduce the original in the printer driver, as desired.

Scaling

Enlarge or reduce originals by a particular amount, as desired.



For instructions on entering a scaling value to resize originals, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Windows) (→P.321)
- Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Mac OS X) (→P.323)
- Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Mac OS 9) (→P.326)

Note

- For better printing results when enlarging photos from a digital camera in TIFF or JPEG format, use an image-editing application software such as Adobe Photoshop to specify an image resolution of 150 dpi or more at actual size.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER

Scanned originals from a Color imageRUNNER can be enlarged and printed automatically.
For instructions on printing enlargements of scanned originals from a Color imageRUNNER, refer to the following topic.

- Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Windows) (→P.317)
- Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Mac OS X) (→P.319)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Windows)

Scanned originals from a Color imageRUNNER can be enlarged and printed automatically.
Originals you create by scanning with a Color imageRUNNER are transferred to a "hot folder" and printed automatically after enlargement according to printing conditions you specify for that folder.
This processing sequence is called the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy function.
To use Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy, first complete these settings in the following order.

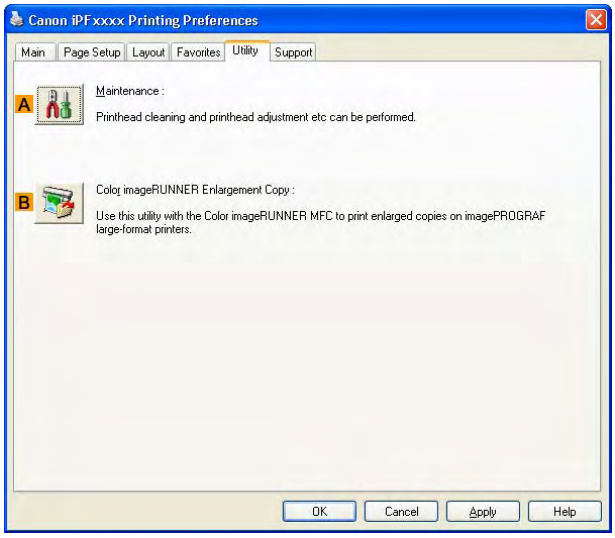
1. Register a hot folder on your computer
   Register a hot folder on your computer for storing scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER and complete the settings for enlargement copy.
2. Complete the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER.
   Configure the Color imageRUNNER to send scanned originals to the hot folder.

After these settings are complete, you can print enlarged copies of scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER.

Registering a hot folder on your computer

Folders used for **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** (iR enlargement copy) are called hot folders. Register a hot folder on your computer for storing scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER. You can specify printing conditions (such as the image quality and paper size), based on which originals transferred to the hot folder will be printed. Follow these steps to register and modify hot folders.

1. Display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.206)
2. Click the **Utility** tab to display the **Utility** sheet.



3. Click **B Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** to start the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility.
4. Use the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility to register or modify hot folders.
   For instructions on registering and modifying hot folders, refer to the help file for the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Completing the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER.

Configure the Color imageRUNNER to send scanned originals to the hot folder. It is easy to send scanned originals to the hot folder if you assign the scanning settings and destination to a **Favorites** button on the Color imageRUNNER.
For instructions on assigning scanning settings and destinations to a **Favorites** button, refer to the setting manual, displayed by clicking **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Setup Manual** button of Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility, or refer to the Color imageRUNNER manual.

Scanning the original and print an enlargement

Follow the steps below to scan an original on the Color imageRUNNER for enlarged printing on the printer. For detailed instructions, refer to the Color imageRUNNER manual.

1. Load the original on the platen glass or document feeder of the Color imageRUNNER.
2. Press **Send** to display the screen for transmission.
3. Press **Favorites**, and then press the **Favorites** button assigned to the hot folder.
4. Press **Start** on the control panel. If you scan originals on the platen glass, after scanning all originals, press **Done** on the touch-panel display.
   Scanned originals are sent to the hot folder and automatically enlarged and printed following the conditions you specified for the folder.

Note

- For details on Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy, refer to Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Guide .

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Mac OS X)

Scanned originals from a Color imageRUNNER can be enlarged and printed automatically.
Originals you create by scanning with a Color imageRUNNER are transferred to a "hot folder" and printed automatically enlarged according to printing conditions you specify for that folder.
This processing sequence is called the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy function.
To use Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy, first complete these settings in the following order.

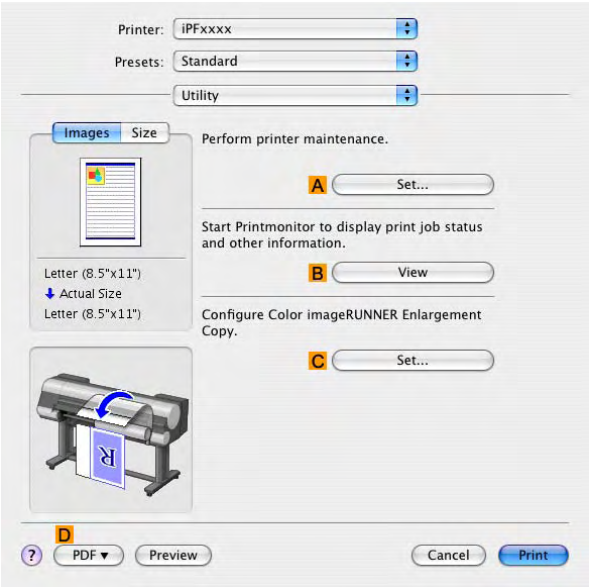
1. Register a hot folder on your computer.
   Register a hot folder on your computer for storing scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER and complete the settings for enlargement copy.
2. Complete the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER.
   Configure the Color imageRUNNER to send scanned originals to the hot folder.

After these settings are complete, you can print enlarged copies of scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER.

Registering a hot folder on your computer

Folders used for **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** (iR enlargement copy) are called hot folders. Register a hot folder on your computer for storing scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER. You can specify printing conditions (such as the image quality and paper size), based on which originals transferred to the hot folder will be printed. Follow these steps to register and modify hot folders.

1. To display the **GARO ExtraKit** dialog box, either double-click the **GARO ExtraKit** icon after navigating to **Applications** - **Canon Utilities** - **imagePROGRAF**, or click C **Set** on the **Utility** pane.



2. In **Enlarged Copy Settings**, click **Add** or **Edit** and either create or modify the hot folder.
   For instructions on registering and modifying hot folders, refer to the help file for the **GARO ExtraKit** utility.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Completing the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER.

Configure the Color imageRUNNER to send scanned originals to the hot folder. It is easy to send scanned originals to the hot folder if you assign the scanning settings and destination to a **Favorites** button on the Color imageRUNNER.
For instructions on assigning scanning and sending settings to the **Favorites** button, refer to the Color imageRUNNER manual.

Scanning the original and print an enlargement

Follow the steps below to scan an original on the Color imageRUNNER for enlarged printing on the printer.
For detailed instructions, refer to the Color imageRUNNER manual.

1. Load the original on the platen glass or document feeder of the Color imageRUNNER.
2. Press **Send** to display the screen for transmission.
3. Press **Favorites**, and then press the **Favorites** button assigned to the hot folder.
4. Press **Start** on the control panel. If you scan originals on the platen glass, after scanning all originals, press **Done** on the touch-panel display.
   Scanned originals are sent to the hot folder and automatically enlarged and printed following the conditions you specified for the folder.

Note

- For details on Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy, refer to Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Guide .

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Windows)

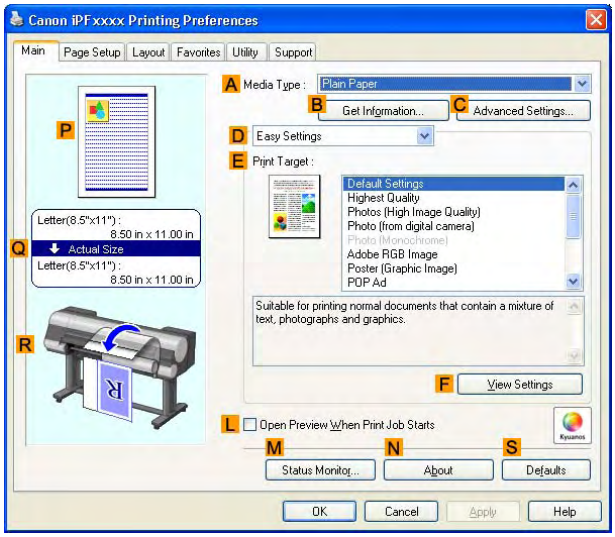
This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing by entering a scaling value, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paperr width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

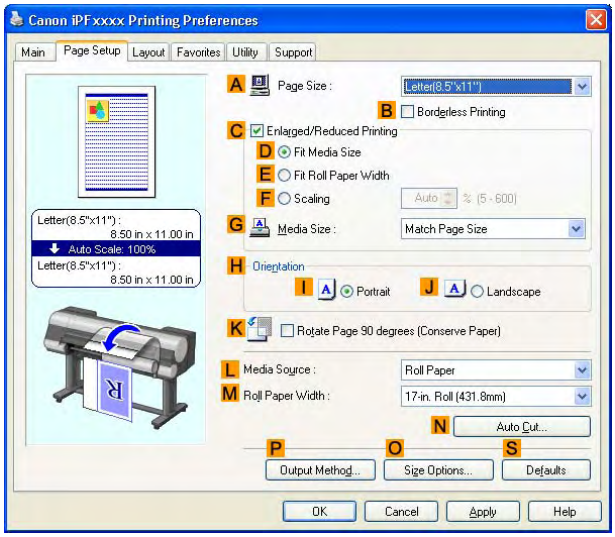
Important

- In borderless printing, you cannot resize originals by entering a scaling value.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.539)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Select the print target in the E **Print Target** list.
6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



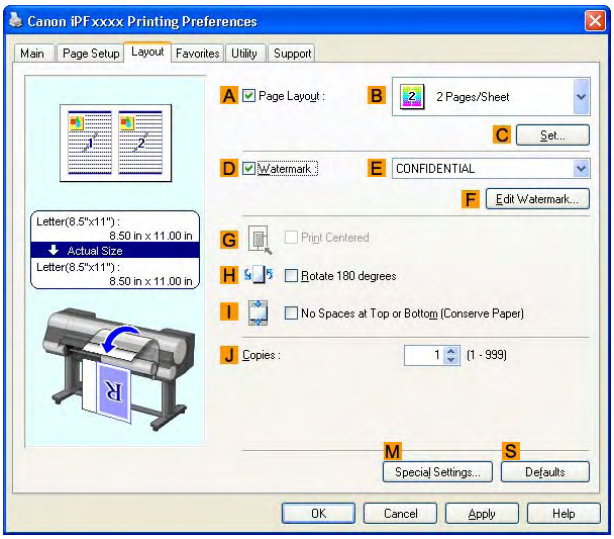
7. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Media Source** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

8. Select the width of the loaded roll in the M **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**.
9. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.
10. Select the C **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.
11. Click **ISO A4** in the G **Media Size** list.
12. Click F **Scaling** and enter “120.”

Note

- You can specify enlargement that exceeds the paper size, but in this case, the portion off the edge of the paper will not be printed.
- If the original size after enlargement or reduction is smaller than the paper size, the original is printed in the upper-left corner. In this case, you can center originals by selecting G **Print Centered** on the **Layout** sheet.



13. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.509)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Mac OS X)

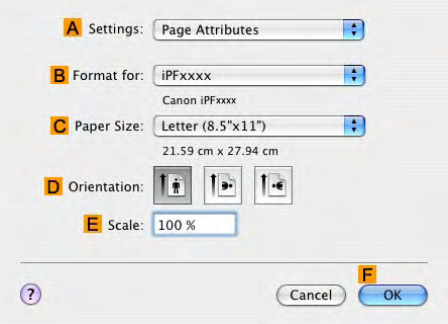
This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing by entering a scaling value, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

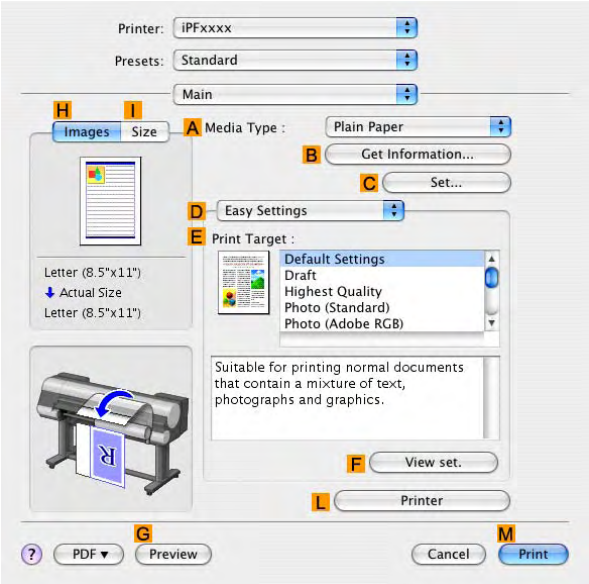
Important

- In borderless printing, you cannot resize originals by entering a scaling value.

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

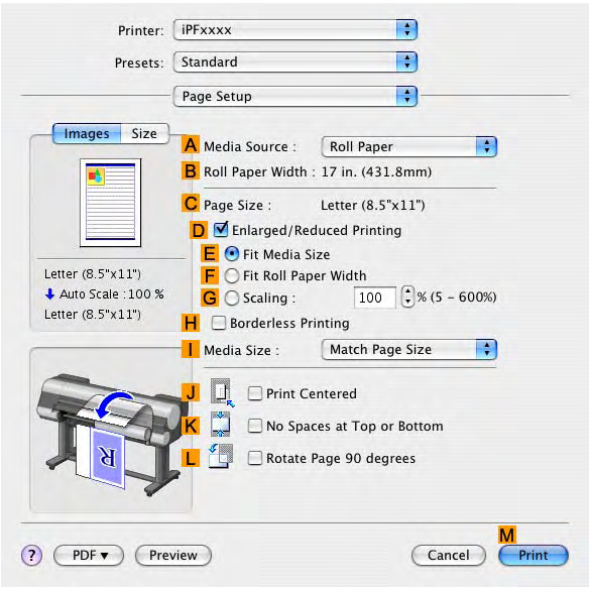


2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In C **Paper Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

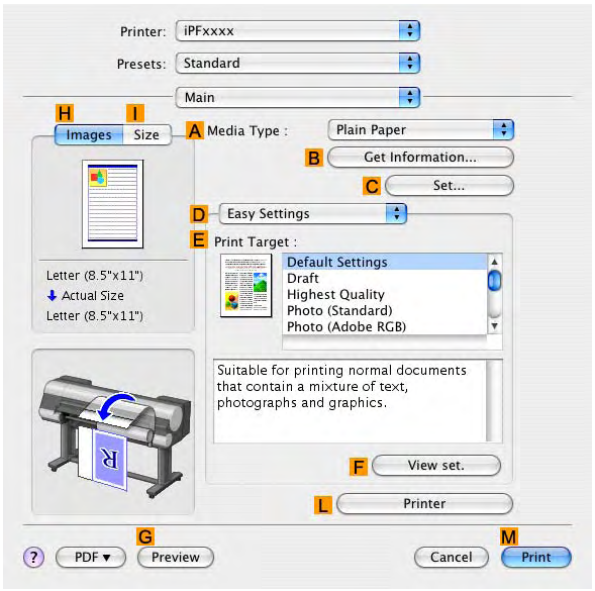
7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. Select the print target in the E **Print Target** list.
9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



10. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.
11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the B **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm)**.

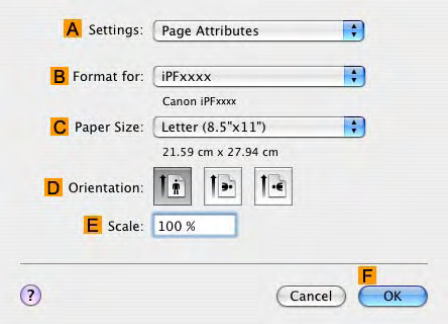
Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

12. Make sure the C **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



13. Select the D **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.

14. Click G **Scaling** and enter “120.”

Note

- You can specify enlargement that exceeds the paper size, but in this case, the portion off the edge of the paper will not be printed.
- If the original size after enlargement or reduction is smaller than the paper size, the original is printed in the upper-left corner. In this case, you can center originals by selecting the J **Print Centered** check box.

15. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.559)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Mac OS 9)

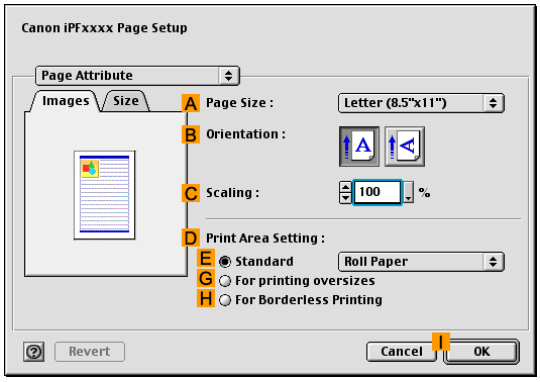
This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing by entering a scaling value, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

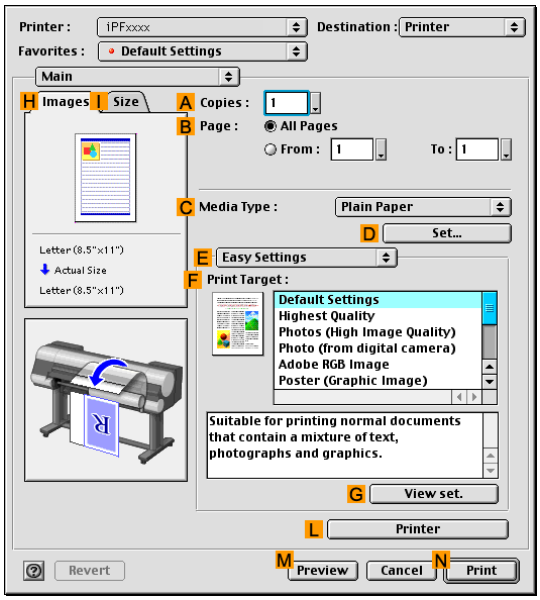
Important

- In borderless printing, you cannot resize originals by entering a scaling value.

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

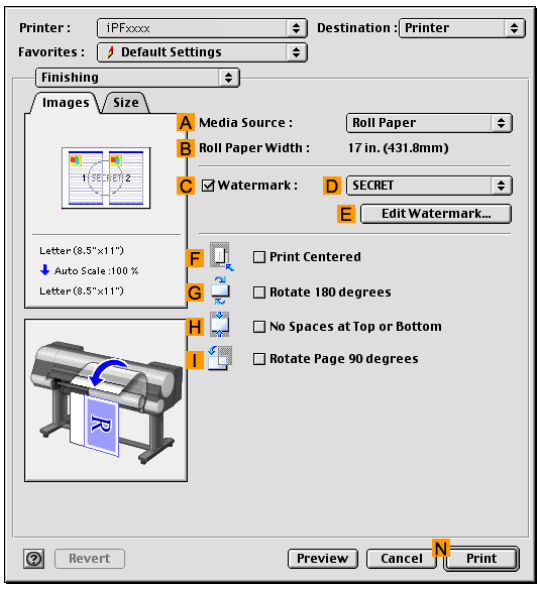


3. In A **Page Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

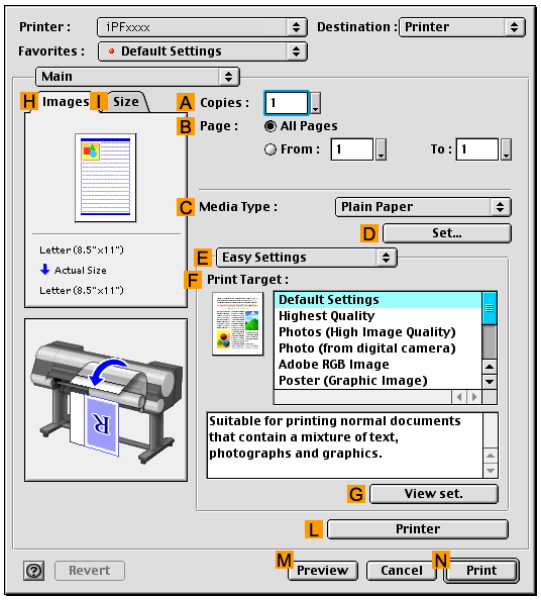
7. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. Select the print target in the F **Print Target** list.
9. Access the **Finishing** pane.



10. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.
11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the B **Roll Paper Width** list-here, **ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm)**.

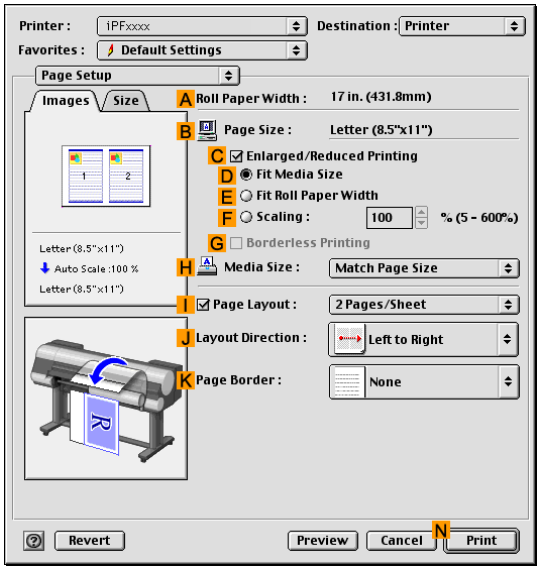
Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.

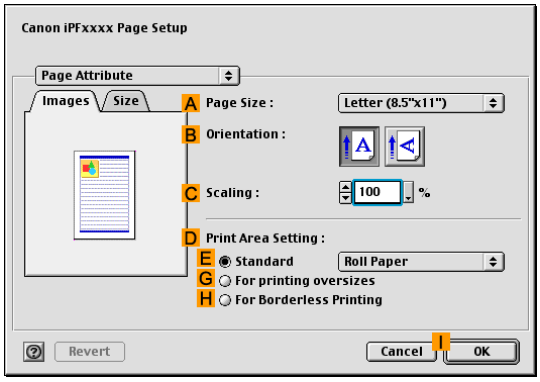


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

12. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



13. Make sure the **B** **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **A** **Page Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



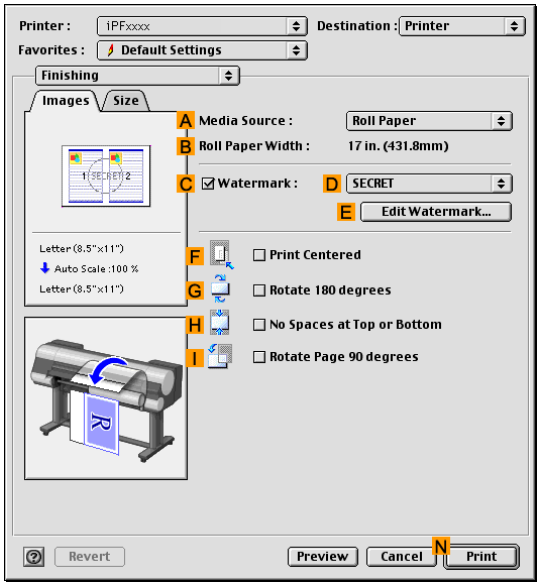
14. Select the **C** **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

15. Click F **Scaling** and enter “120.”

Note

- You can specify enlargement that exceeds the paper size, but in this case, the portion off the edge of the paper will not be printed.
- If the original size after enlargement or reduction is smaller than the paper size, the original is printed in the upper-left corner. In this case, you can center originals by selecting F **Print Centered** on the **Finishing** pane.



16. Confirm the print settings, and click N **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.585)

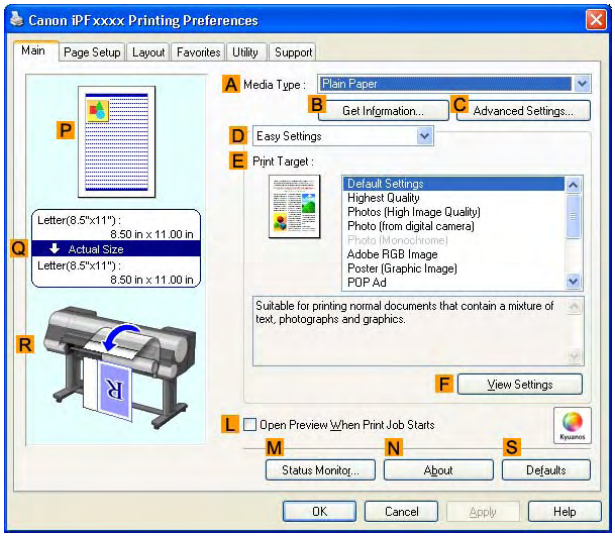
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows)

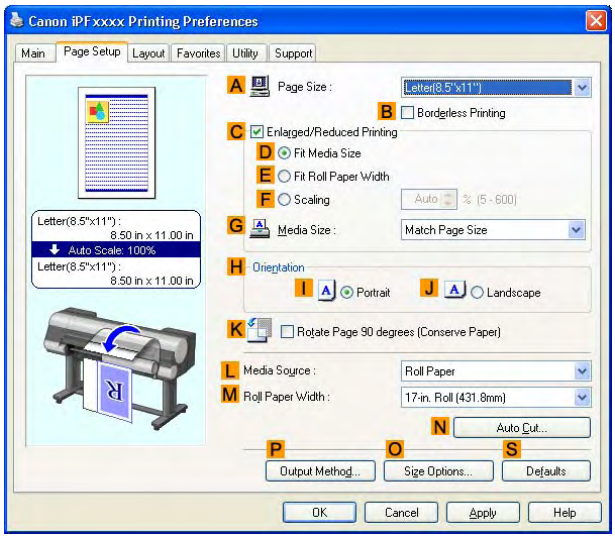
This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing to match the roll width, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: 16 inches (406.4 mm)

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.539)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Select the printing application in the E **Print Target** list.
6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.

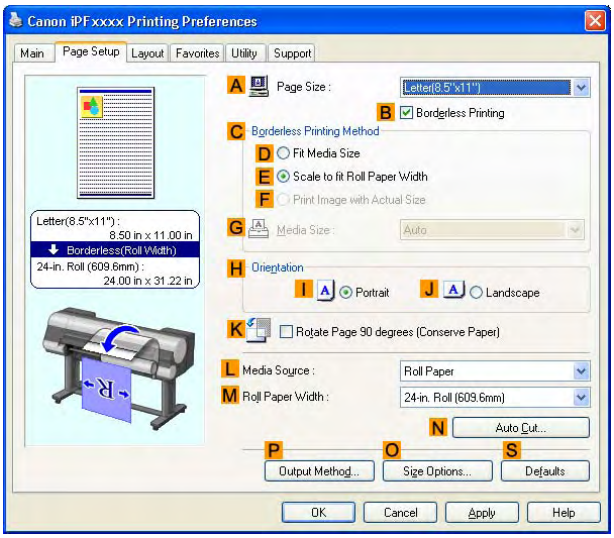


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

7. Click **Roll Paper** in the **L Media Source** list.
8. In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.
9. Select the **C Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.

Note

- If the **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box is not displayed on the **Page Setup** sheet, clear the **B Borderless Printing** check box.



10. Click **E Fit Roll Paper Width**.

Note

- After you click **E Fit Roll Paper Width**, the **Information** dialog box is displayed. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **Roll Paper Width** list and click **OK**.
- Make sure the roll paper width you specify matches the width of the loaded roll.

11. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.509)

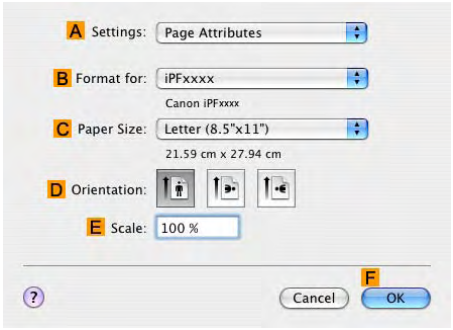
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS X)

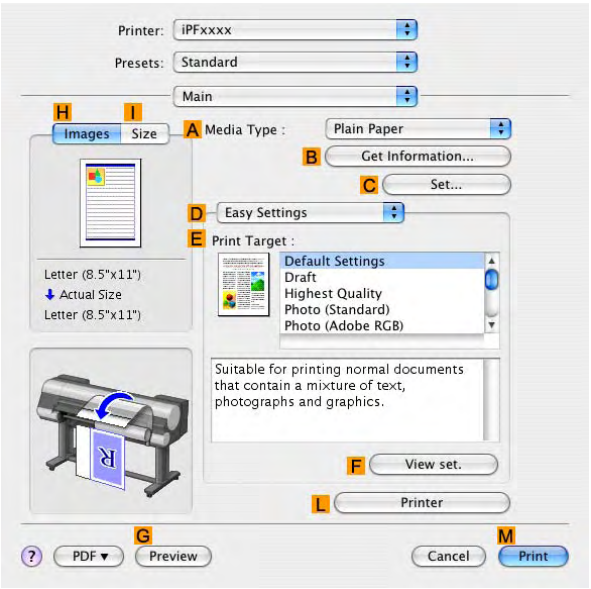
This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing to match the roll width, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: 16 inches (406.4 mm)

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



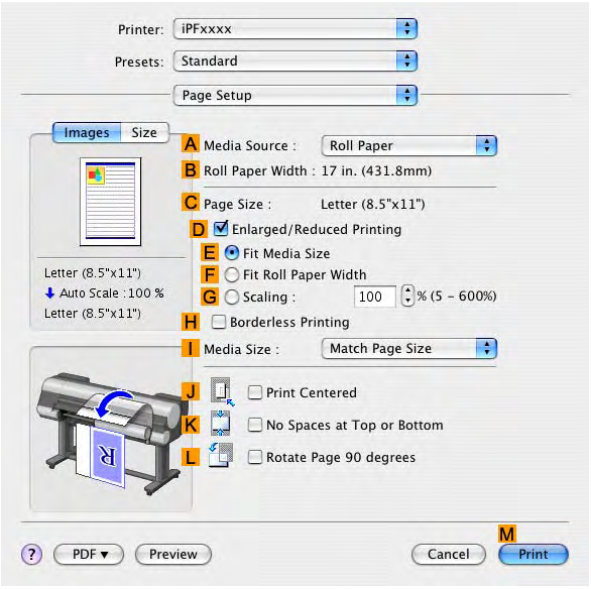
2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In C **Paper Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. Select the print target in the E **Print Target** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.

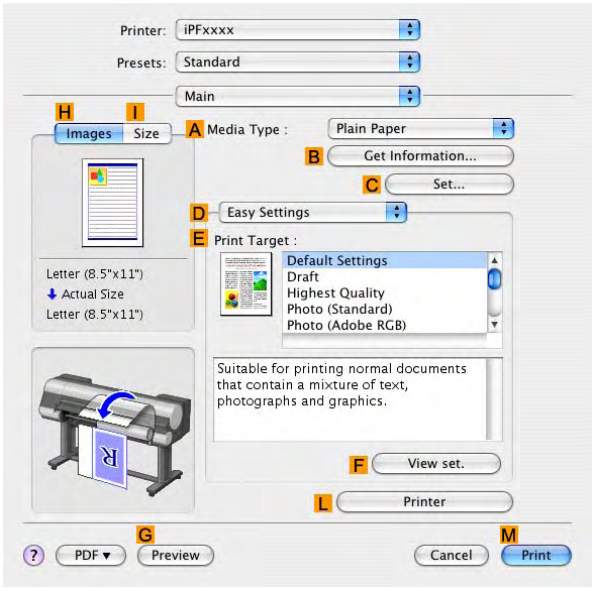


10. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.

11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the B **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **16 in. (406.4mm)**.

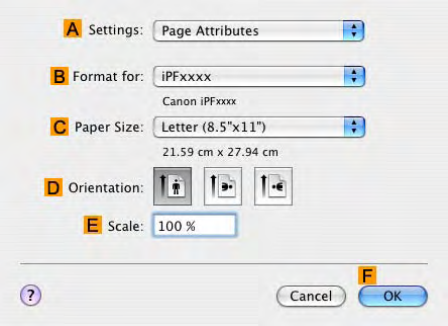
Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

12. Make sure the C **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



13. Select the D **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.
14. Click F **Fit Roll Paper Width**.
15. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.559)

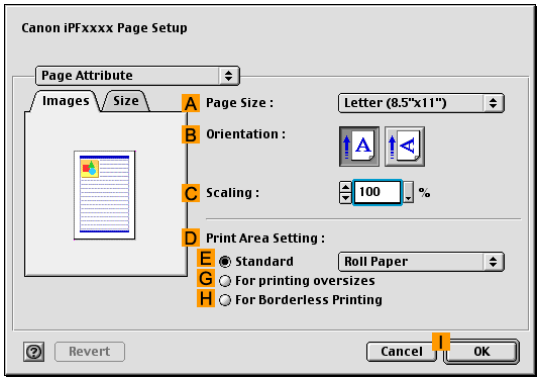
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS 9)

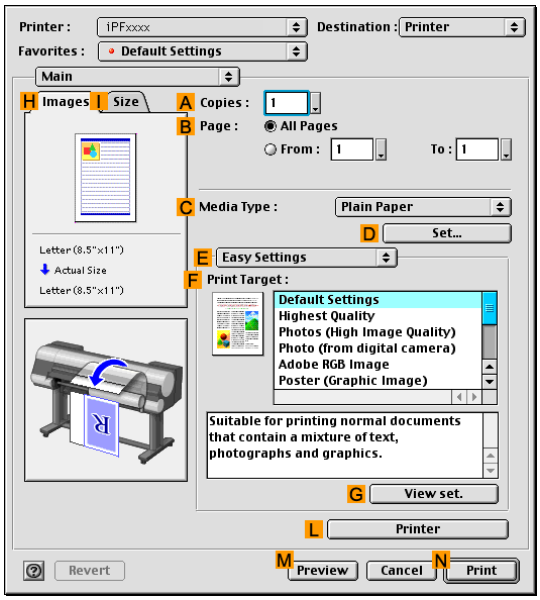
This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing to match the roll paper width, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: 16 inches (406.4 mm)

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



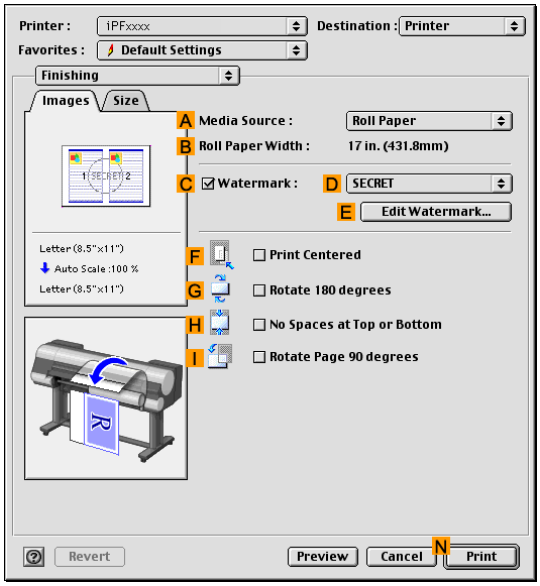
3. In A **Page Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



7. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. Select the print target in the F **Print Target** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

9. Access the **Finishing** pane.

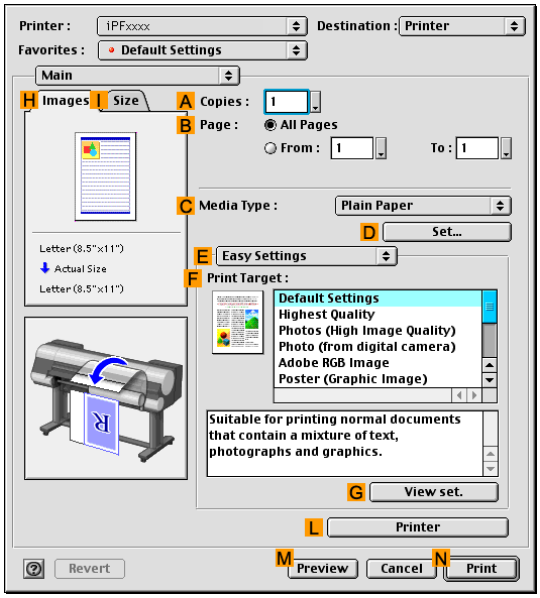


10. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.

11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the B **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **16 in. (406.4mm)**.

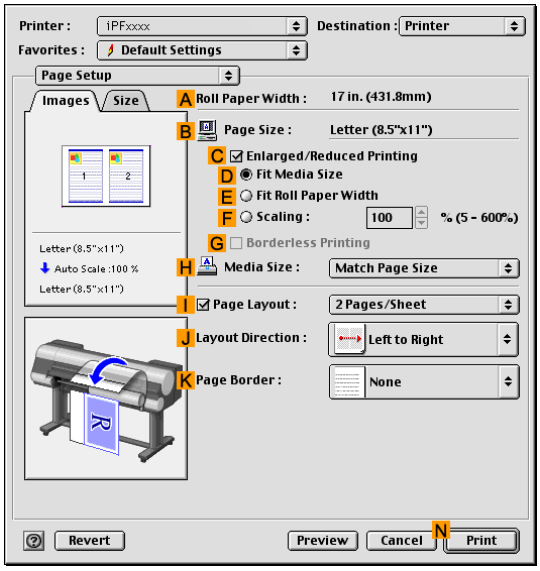
Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.

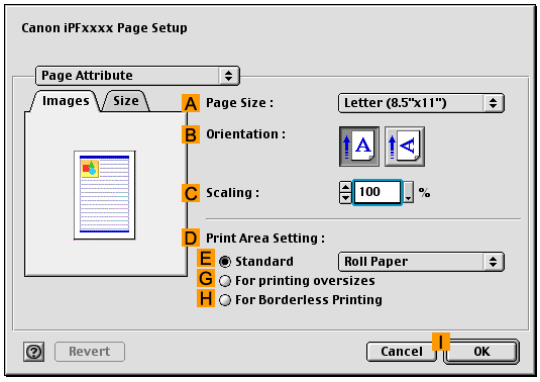


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

12. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



13. Make sure the **B** **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **A** **Page Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



14. Select the **C** **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.

15. Click **E** **Fit Roll Paper Width**.

16. Confirm the print settings, and click **N** **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.585)

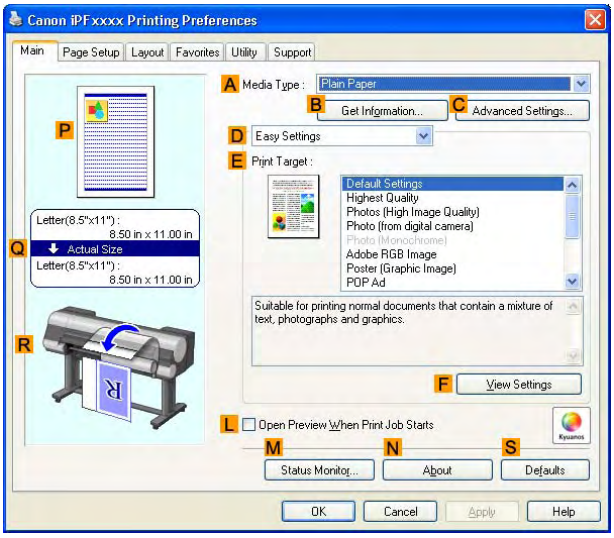
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows)

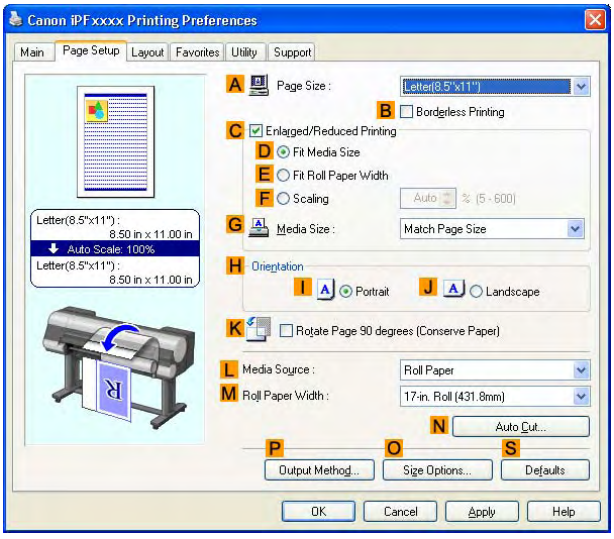
This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing to match the paper size, based on the following example.

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (→P.539)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Select the printing application in the E **Print Target** list.
6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

7. Click **Roll Paper** in the **L** **Media Source** list.
8. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **M** **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**.
9. In the **A** **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
10. Select the **C** **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.
11. Select the **D** **Fit Media Size** check box.
12. Click **ISO A3** in the **G** **Media Size** list.
13. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.509)

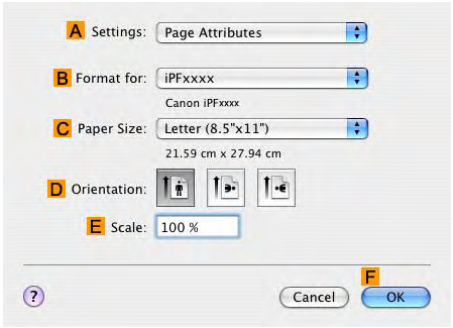
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS X)

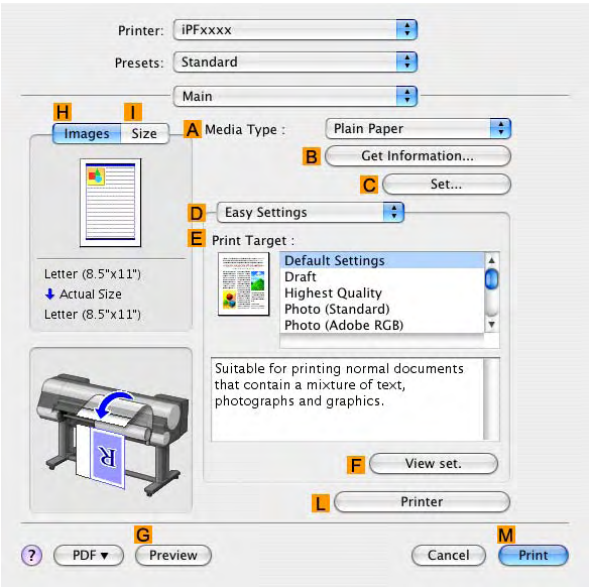
This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing to match the paper size, based on the following example.

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



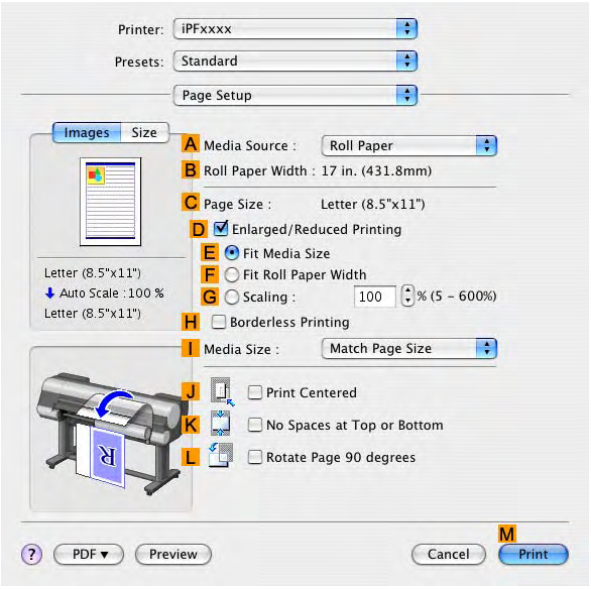
2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In C **Paper Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. Select the printing application in the E **Print Target** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.

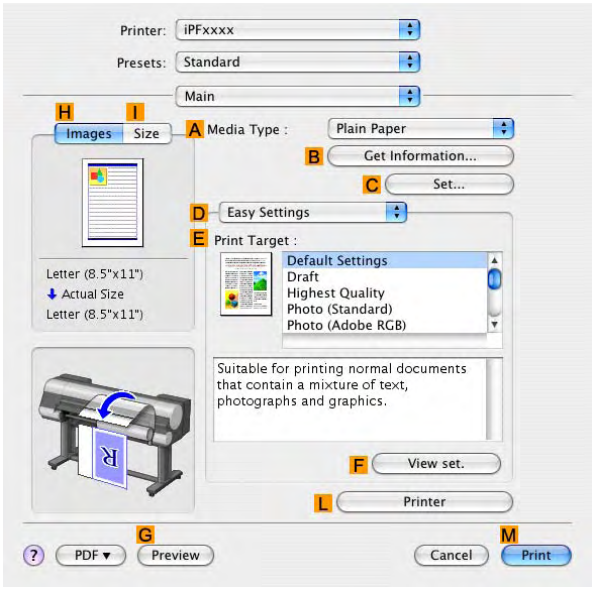


10. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A Media Source** list.

11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm)**.

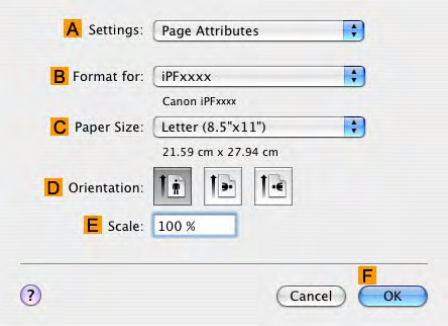
Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in **B Roll Paper Width**, click **L Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

12. Make sure the C **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



13. Select the D **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.
14. Make sure E **Fit Media Size** is selected.
15. Click **ISO A3** in the I **Media Size** list.
16. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.559)

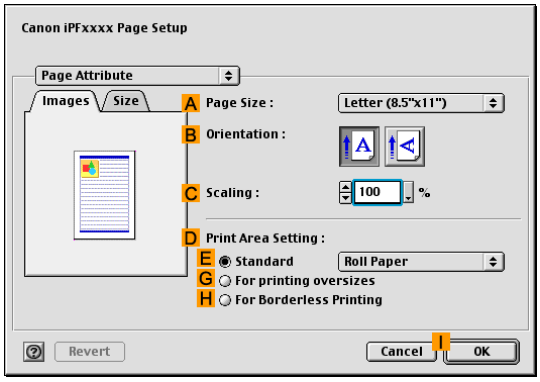
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS 9)

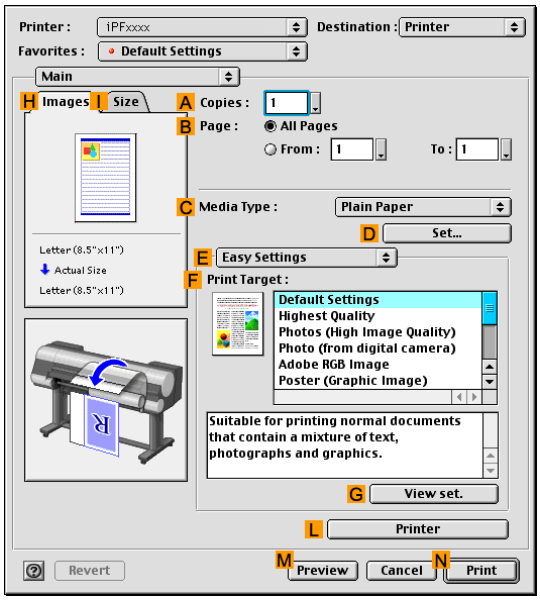
This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing to match the paper size, based on the following example.

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



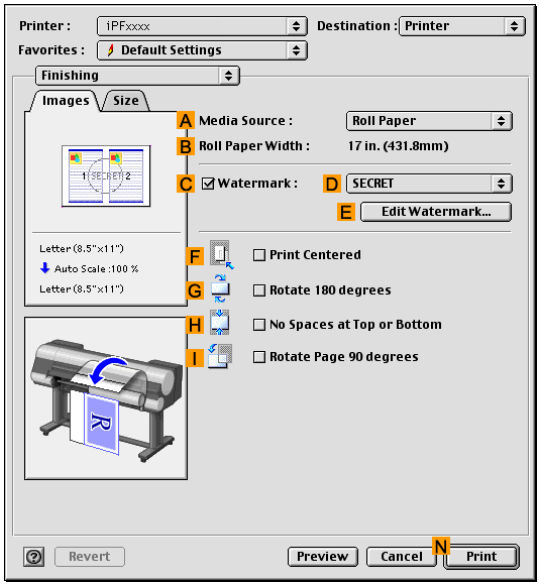
3. In A **Page Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



7. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. Select the printing application in the F **Print Target** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

9. Access the **Finishing** pane.

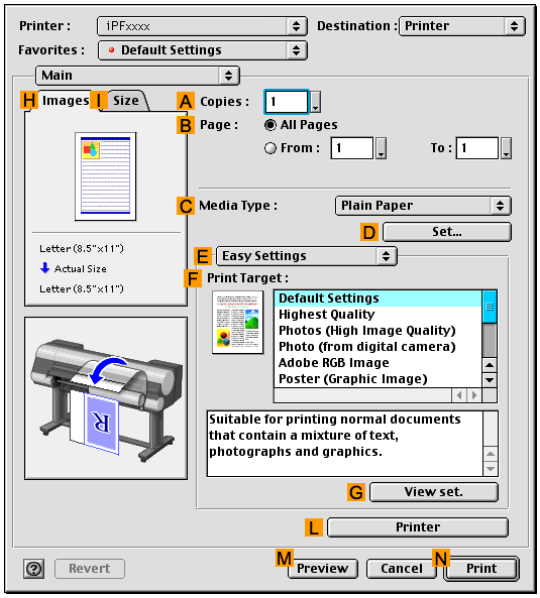


10. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.

11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the B **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm)**.

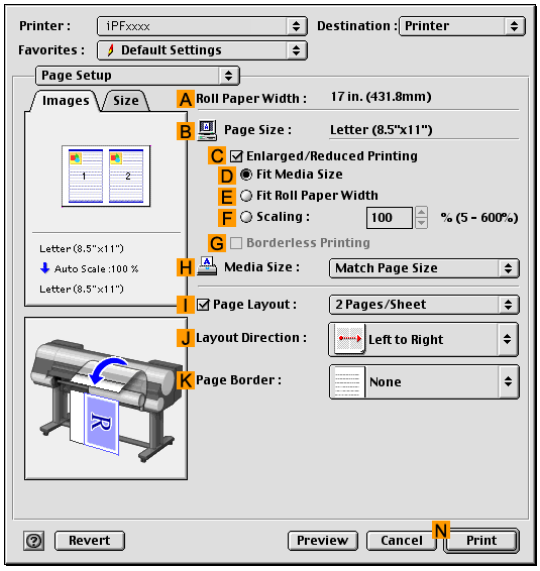
Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.

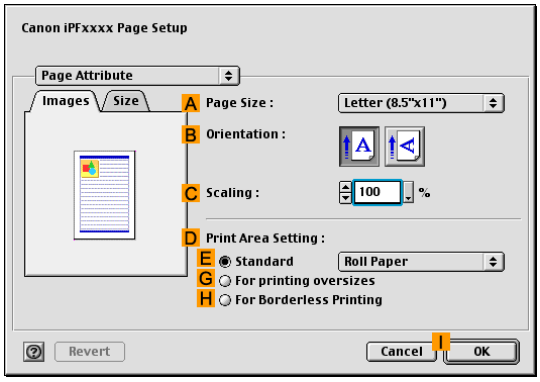


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

12. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



13. Make sure the **B** **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **A** **Page Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



14. Select the **C** **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.

15. Make sure **D** **Fit Media Size** is selected.

16. Click **ISO A3** in the **H** **Media Size** list.

17. Confirm the print settings, and then click **N** **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.585)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing at full size

Printing on Oversized Paper

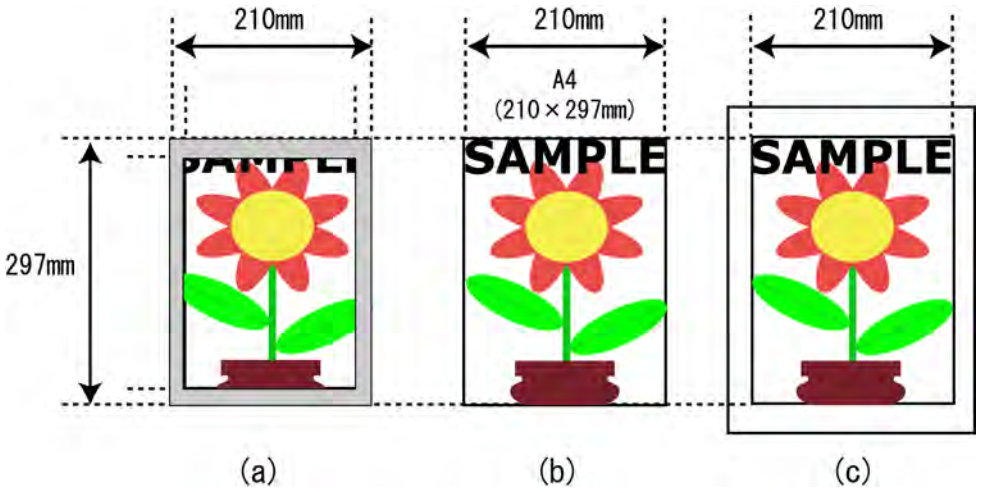
Except in borderless printing, the actual printing area corresponds to your selected paper size minus the space for a margin. (→P.141) To print documents or images you prepare without a margin at actual size, use an oversized paper size.
For example, to print a A4-sized original without a margin at A4 size, print it on paper larger than A4 size and cut away the excess margin.

Note

- If you prepare an original for printing without a margin and print it on paper of regular size, the image near the edge will not be printed.

Oversize

The margin required by the printer is added around the “outside” of a regular paper size. For example, when printing a A4-sized original (210×297 mm), you have the following options.



a. Regular paper size: Gray area not printed
b. Page Size
c. Oversized paper size: Print area matches the page size (b)

Important

- When printing on oversize paper, load paper larger than the page size-a size that includes the margin required by the printer.
  - Sheets: Load paper that is at least 10 mm (0.39 in) wider and 28 mm (1.10 in) higher than the page size
  - Rolls: Load paper that is at least 10 mm (0.39 in) wider and 10 mm (0.39 in) higher than the page size
- Paper larger than the maximum size supported by the printer cannot be used as paper for oversized printing. (→P.175)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Note

- Oversized printing (selecting **Oversize** in **Page Size**) is only available in Windows. For oversized printing on sheets, choose **Cut Sheet** as the media source.
- To perform oversized printing on a Macintosh computer, you must specify a non-standard page size and print on it.
- To specify a non-standard paper size in oversized printing, register the paper size as a **Custom Media Size**. Oversized printing is not available with “Custom Size.” (→P.396)

For instructions on oversized printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing at Full Size (Windows) (→P.358)
- Printing at Full Size (Mac OS X) (→P.360)
- Printing at Full Size (Mac OS 9) (→P.363)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Borderless Printing at Actual Size

Take advantage of borderless printing to print documents such as posters (made up mainly of photos or images) without a surrounding margin, or border.

Borderless Printing

In regular printing, a margin required by the printer is added around the original. With borderless printing, you can print documents without the margin, so that the printed image covers the entire surface of the paper.

Important

- Borderless printing is only available with rolls.
- Paper you can use for borderless printing is restricted to particular types of paper and rolls of particular widths. For information on types of paper compatible with borderless printing, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.169)
- Paper incompatible with the printer's auto cut function can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only.
- These features cannot be used in combination with borderless printing: special page layouts, centering originals, and printing cut lines on rolls.
- You cannot have pages rotated 90 degrees to conserve paper if you have set up borderless printing at actual size or in combination with resizing originals to match the paper size.
- When borderless printing is used, the edge of the paper is cut during printing. Thus, ink density may be uneven at the edges. If you require higher image quality, specify **No** in **Auto Cut** in the printer driver. In this case, the paper can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only. After ejecting and cutting the printed document, use scissors to cut away the top and bottom edges.
- By factory default, the ink drying time is disabled for all paper. When you are using paper that takes longer for ink to adhere for borderless printing and the Cutter Unit touches printing surfaces that are not dry yet, it may damage the paper or the edge of the document that is cut, depending on frequency of use. In this case, follow these steps to change the ink drying time.
  1. On the **Main** sheet of the printer driver, click **Settings** in **Media Type**.
  2. Select the ink drying time in the **Between Pages** list of **Drying Time**.

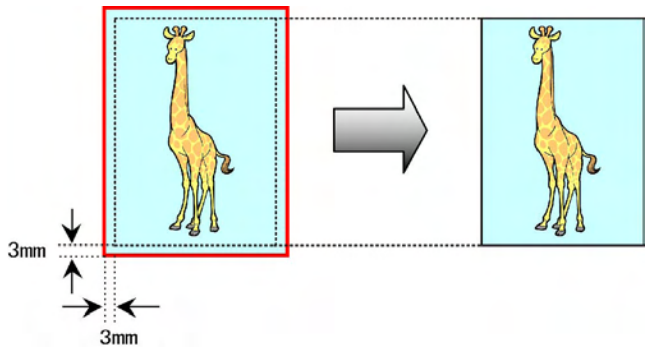
Borderless Printing Method

Choose the method of borderless printing that suits the original, as desired.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Print Image with Actual Size

Prints originals at actual size, without enlarging or reducing them. Originals must be prepared in a size that exceeds the dimensions of the paper by 3 mm (0.12 in) on each side.



Note

- Not all page sizes are available.
- Even if you prepare originals of the same size as the paper size, the originals are automatically enlarged when you print borderlessly in combination with resizing originals to match the paper size. This may affect image quality. When image quality is most important, make the original 3 mm longer on each side than the paper size so that the image can be printed at actual size in borderless printing.

For instructions on borderless printing of photos and images at actual size, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Windows) (→P.350)
- Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS X) (→P.352)
- Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS 9) (→P.355)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Windows)

This topic describes how to print borderlessly at actual size based on the following example.

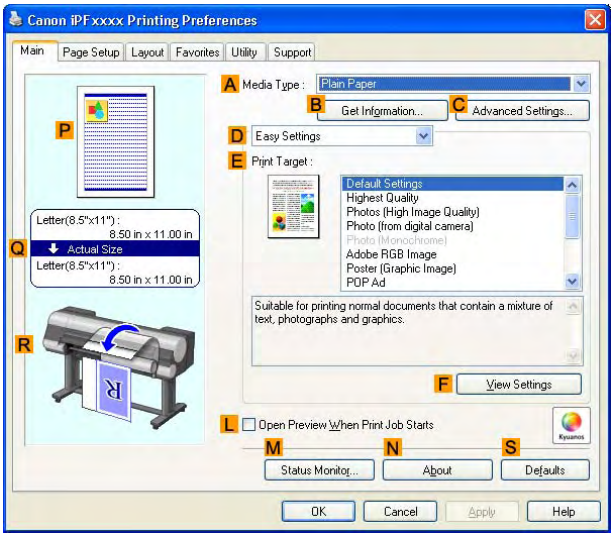
- Document: Any type
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Create the original in the source application 3 mm (0.12 in) larger on each side than 254.0×304.8 mm (10 × 12 in) -that is, 260.0×310.8 mm (10.2 × 12.2 in)

   Note

   - If you can specify the margin, as in Microsoft Word, set the margin at 0 mm. For instructions on specifying the margin, refer to the software documentation.
   - The extra 3 mm (0.12 in) on each side will not be printed. Create the original so that it fits inside the paper area to be printed on.

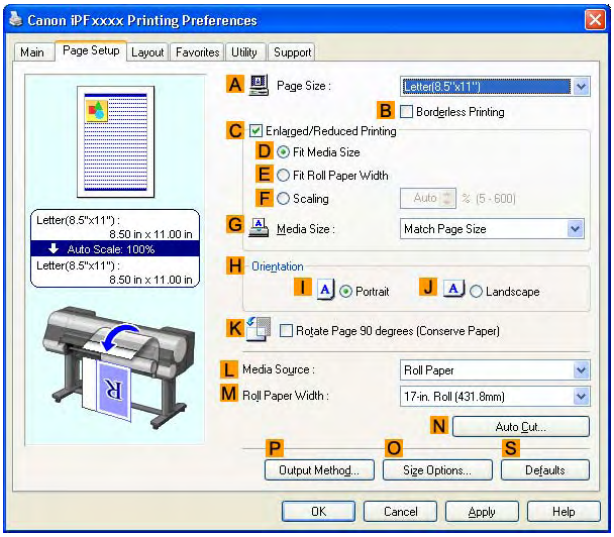
2. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
3. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.539)
4. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



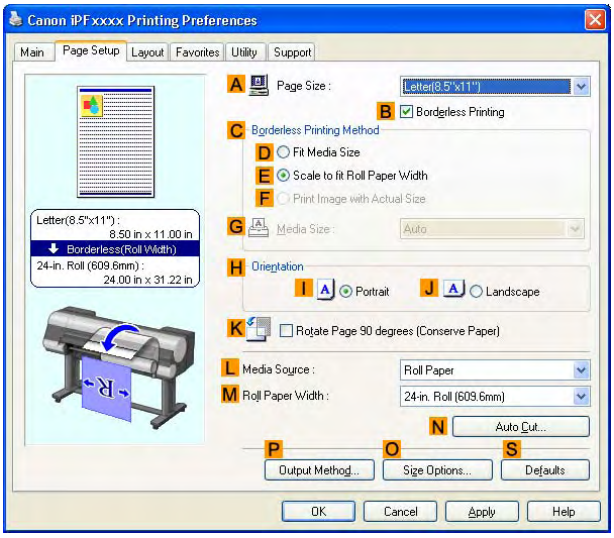
5. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.
6. Select the print target in the E **Print Target** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

7. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



8. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the source application. In this case, click **10"x12"**.
9. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Media Source** list.
10. Select the B **Borderless Printing** check box to display the **Information** dialog box.



11. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, click **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**.
12. Click **OK** to close the **Information** dialog box.
13. In C **Borderless Printing Method**, click F **Print Image with Actual Size**.
14. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.509)

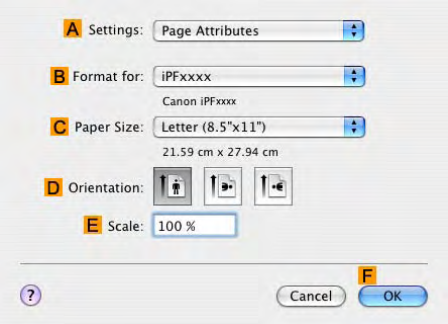
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to print borderlessly at actual size based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: 10 × 12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)-Borderless
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

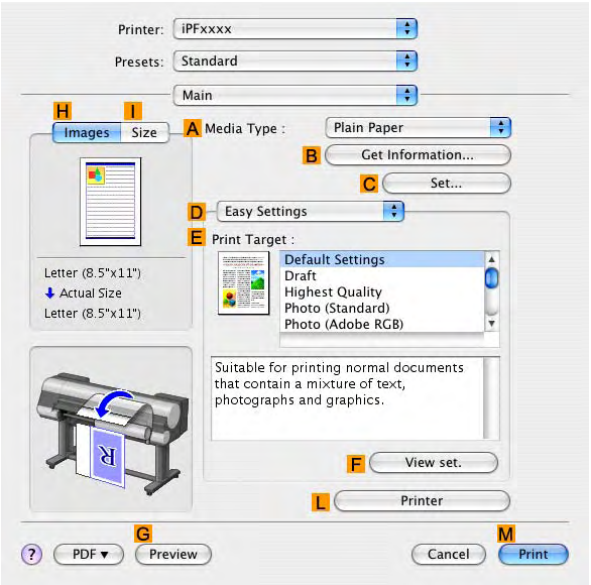


2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In the C **Paper Size** list, choose a paper size supported for borderless printing. Here, click **10"x12" - Borderless**.

Note

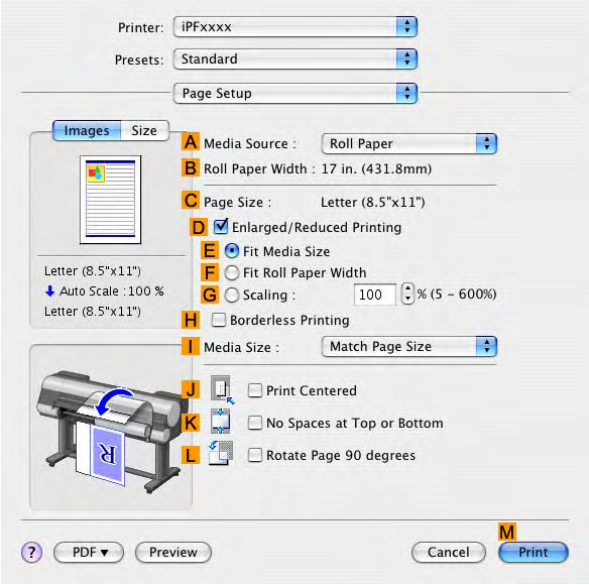
- Paper sizes supported for borderless printing are indicated by “-Borderless.”

4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. In the application, create an original that takes up the entire space of the paper size.
6. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
7. Access the **Main** pane.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

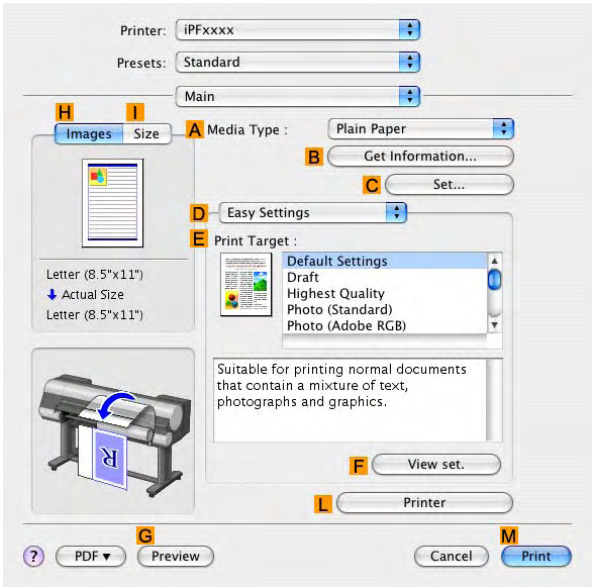
8. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.
9. Select the print target in the E **Print Target** list.
10. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



11. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.
12. Confirm that the roll paper width matches the paper size.
    Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the B **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

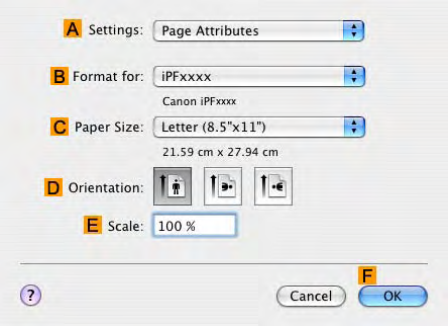
Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

13. Make sure the C **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **10"x12" - Borderless**.



14. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.559)

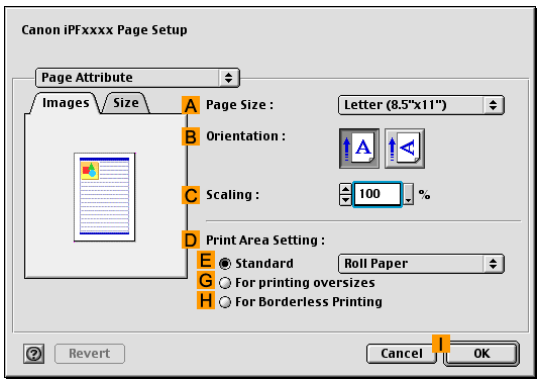
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS 9)

This topic describes how to print borderlessly at actual size based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: 10 × 12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)-Borderless
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

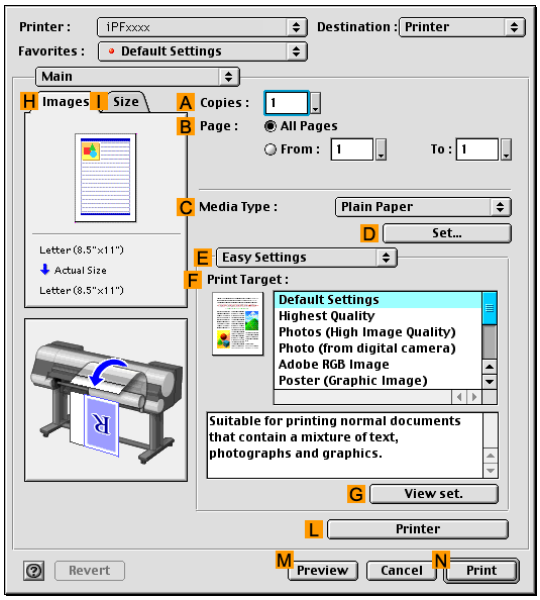


3. In D **Print Area Setting**, click H **For Broderless Printing**.
4. In the A **Page Size** list, choose a paper size supported for borderless printing. Here, click **10"x12" - Borderless**.

Note

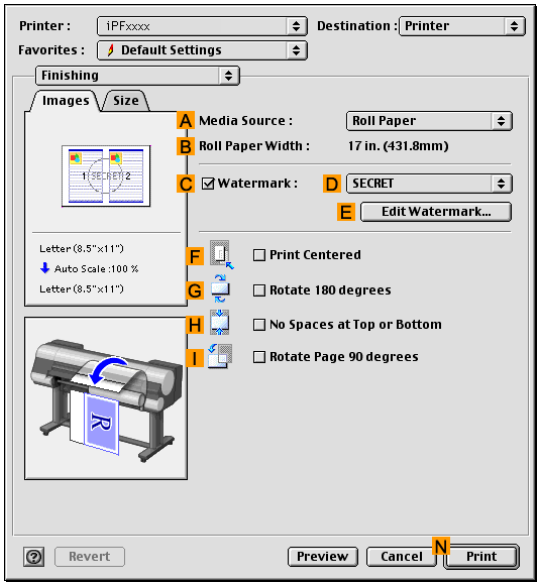
- Paper sizes supported for borderless printing are indicated by “-Borderless.”

5. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
6. In the application, create an original that takes up the entire space of the paper size.
7. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
8. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

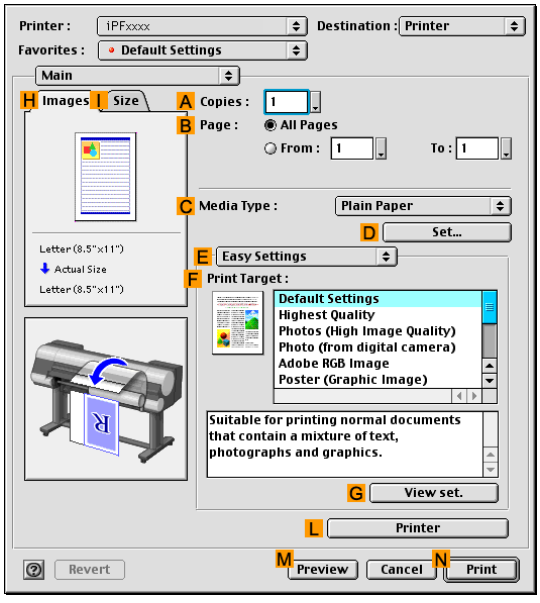
9. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.
10. Select the print target in the F **Print Target** list.
11. Access the **Finishing** pane.



12. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.
13. Confirm that the roll paper width matches the paper size.
    Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the B **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

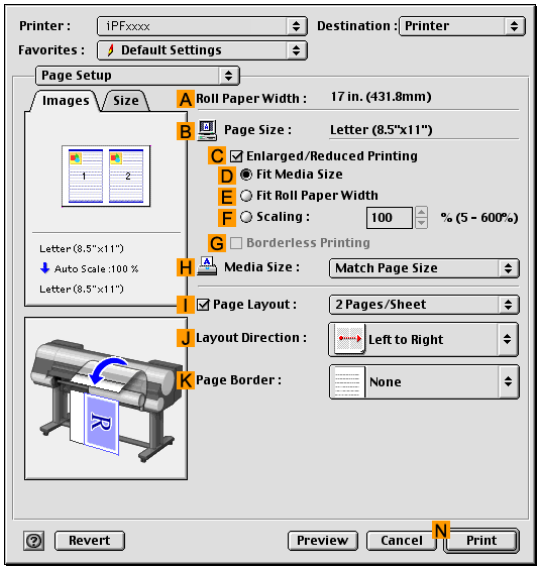
Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.

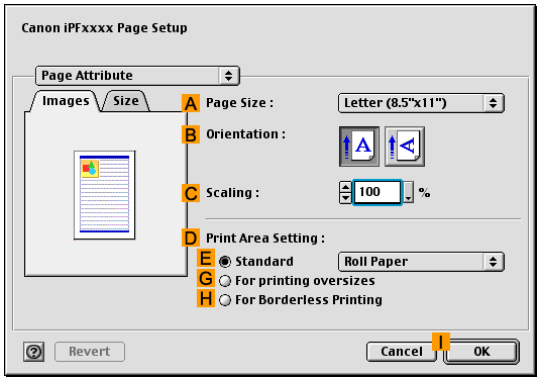


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

14. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



15. Make sure the **B** **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **A** **Page Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **10"x12"**.



16. Confirm the print settings, and click **N** **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.585)

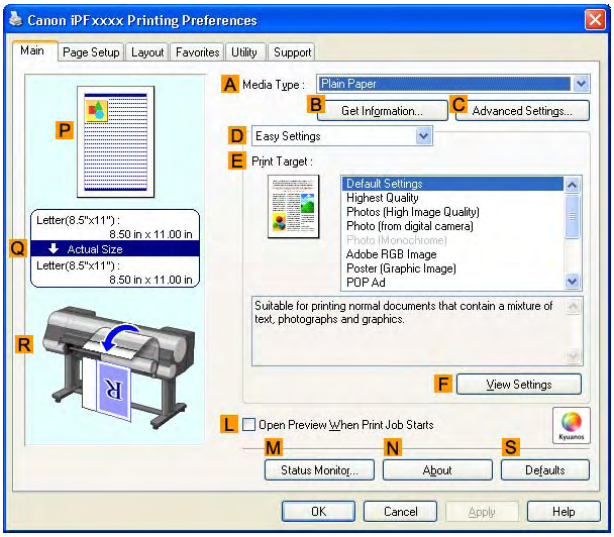
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing at Full Size (Windows)

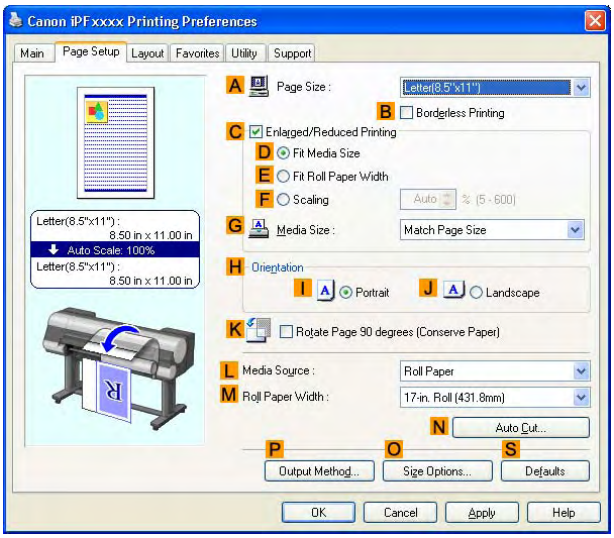
This topic describes how to print at full size based on the following example. (Oversized Printing)

- Document: Any Type
- Page Size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.539)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



6. Click O **Size Options** to display the **Media Size Options** dialog box.
7. In the **Media Size Options** dialog box, select the **Oversize** check box in **Display Series**.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

8. Click **OK** to close the **Media Size Options** dialog box.
9. Click **Oversize - ISO A4** in the A **Page Size** list.
10. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Media Source** list.
11. Select the width of the loaded roll in the M **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**.
12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.509)

Note

- You can select **Oversize** in **Display Series** to make all oversized versions of paper in the selected **Display Series** available for printing. These sizes are displayed in the **Page Size** list in the format **Oversize - xxxxxx**.

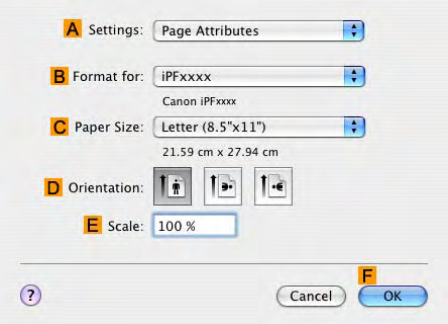
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing at Full Size (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to print at full size based on the following example. (Oversized Printing)

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

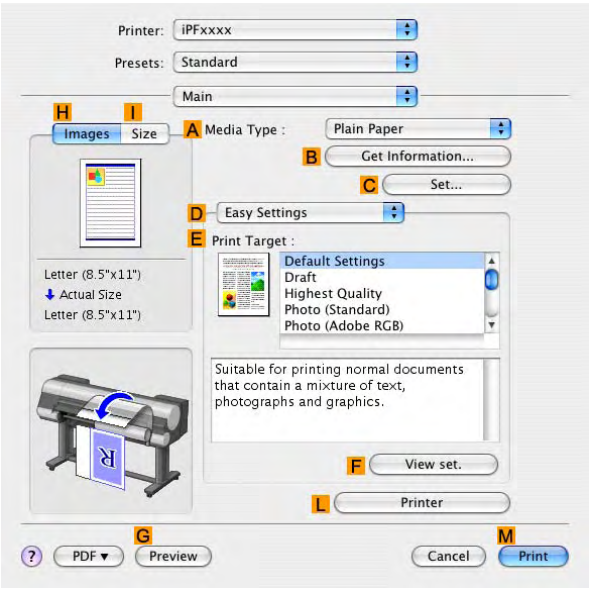


2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In C **Paper Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4 - Oversize**.

Note

- For oversized printing, choose paper identified by the regular paper name followed by "- Oversize."

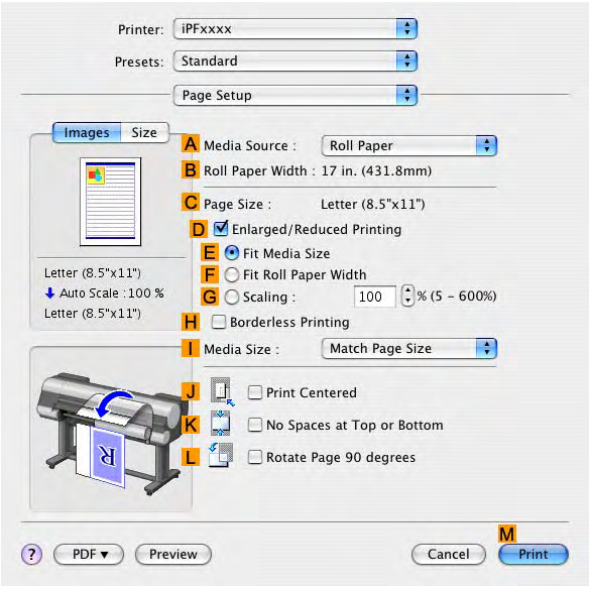
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. Select the printing application in the E **Print Target** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.

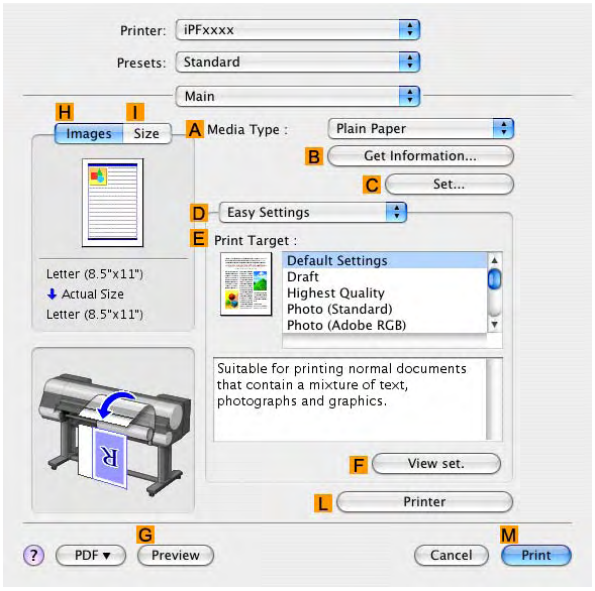


10. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A Media Source** list.

11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm)**.

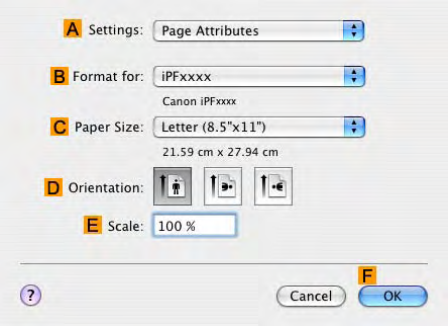
Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in **B Roll Paper Width**, click **L Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

12. Make sure C **Page Size** shows the original size as specified in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4 - Oversize**.



13. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.559)

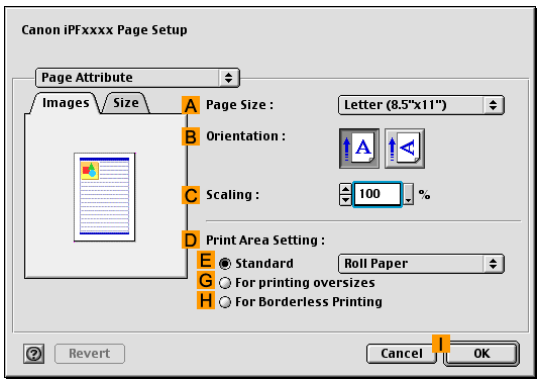
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing at Full Size (Mac OS 9)

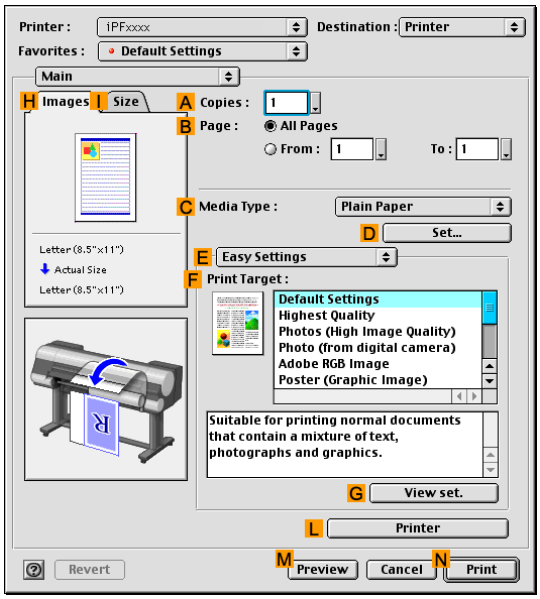
This topic describes how to print at full size based on the following example. (Oversized Printing)

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



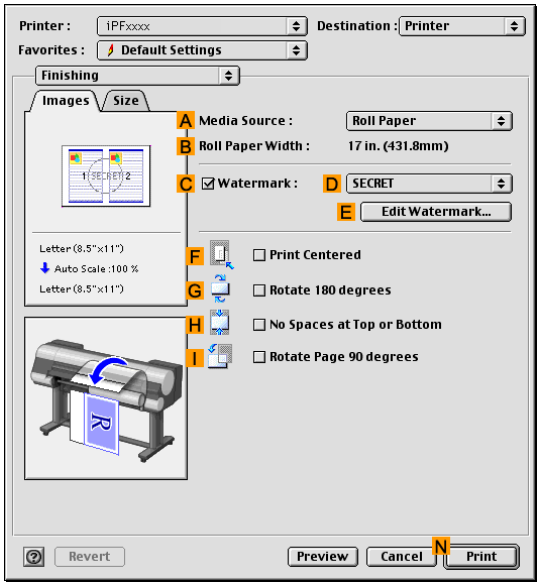
3. In D **Print Area Setting**, click G **For printing oversizes**.
4. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
5. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
6. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
7. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



8. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
9. Select the printing application in the F **Print Target** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

10. Access the **Finishing** pane.

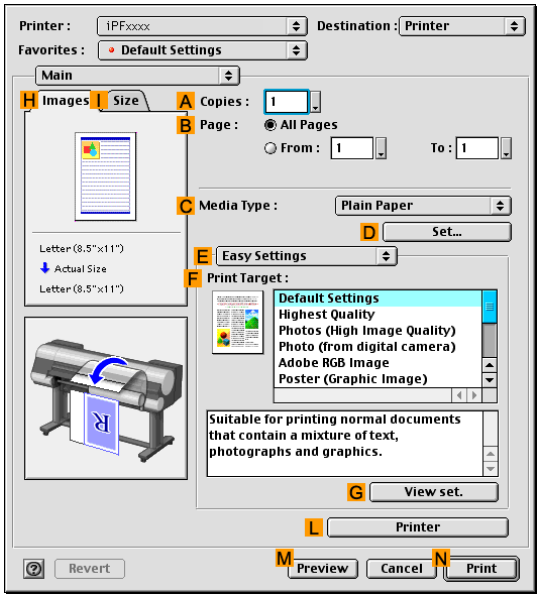


11. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.

12. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the B **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



13. Confirm the print settings, and then click N **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.585)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Borderless Printing

Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size

Take advantage of borderless printing to print documents such as posters (made up mainly of photos or images) without a surrounding margin, or border.

Borderless Printing

In regular printing, a margin required by the printer is added around the original. With borderless printing, you can print documents without the margin, so that the printed image covers the entire surface of the paper.

Important

- Borderless printing is only available with rolls.
- Paper you can use for borderless printing is restricted to particular types of paper and rolls of particular widths. For information on types of paper compatible with borderless printing, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.169)
- Paper incompatible with the printer's auto cut function can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only.
- These features cannot be used in combination with borderless printing: special page layouts, centering originals, and printing cut lines on rolls.
- You cannot have pages rotated 90 degrees to conserve paper if you have set up borderless printing at actual size or in combination with resizing originals to match the paper size.
- When borderless printing is used, the edge of the paper is cut during printing. Thus, ink density may be uneven at the edges. If you require higher image quality, specify **No** in **Auto Cut** in the printer driver. In this case, the paper can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only. After ejecting and cutting the printed document, use scissors to cut away the top and bottom edges.
- By factory default, the ink drying time is disabled for all paper. When you are using paper that takes longer for ink to adhere for borderless printing and the Cutter Unit touches printing surfaces that are not dry yet, it may damage the paper or the edge of the document that is cut, depending on frequency of use. In this case, follow these steps to change the ink drying time.
  1. On the **Main** sheet of the printer driver, click **Settings** in **Media Type**.
  2. Select the ink drying time in the **Between Pages** list of **Drying Time**.

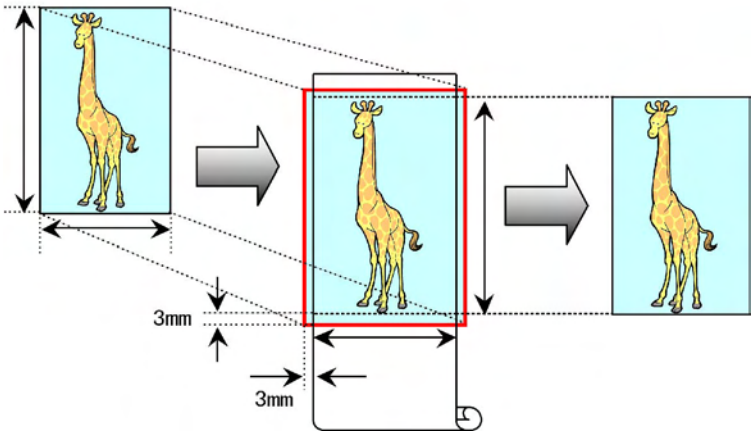
Borderless Printing Method

Choose the method of borderless printing that suits the original, as desired.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Fit Media Size

Enlarge or reduce the original to match the size of the paper you are using.



Note

- The printer driver automatically enlarges originals 3 mm (0.12 in) past the dimensions of the paper on each side. The 3 mm portion beyond the edge on each side is not printed.

For instructions on borderless printing of photos, images, and other documents to match the paper size, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows) (→P.387)
- Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS X) (→P.389)
- Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS 9) (→P.392)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width

Take advantage of borderless printing to print documents such as posters (made up mainly of photos or images) without a surrounding margin, or border.

Borderless Printing

In regular printing, a margin required by the printer is added around the original. With borderless printing, you can print documents without the margin, so that the printed image covers the entire surface of the paper.

Important

- Borderless printing is only available with rolls.
- Paper you can use for borderless printing is restricted to particular types of paper and rolls of particular widths. For information on types of paper compatible with borderless printing, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.169)
- Paper incompatible with the printer's auto cut function can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only.
- These features cannot be used in combination with borderless printing: special page layouts, centering originals, and printing cut lines on rolls.
- You cannot have pages rotated 90 degrees to conserve paper if you have set up borderless printing at actual size or in combination with resizing originals to match the paper size.
- When borderless printing is used, the edge of the paper is cut during printing. Thus, ink density may be uneven at the edges. If you require higher image quality, specify **No** in **Auto Cut** in the printer driver. In this case, the paper can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only. After ejecting and cutting the printed document, use scissors to cut away the top and bottom edges.
- By factory default, the ink drying time is disabled for all paper. When you are using paper that takes longer for ink to adhere for borderless printing and the Cutter Unit touches printing surfaces that are not dry yet, it may damage the paper or the edge of the document that is cut, depending on frequency of use. In this case, follow these steps to change the ink drying time.
  1. On the **Main** sheet of the printer driver, click **Settings** in **Media Type**.
  2. Select the ink drying time in the **Between Pages** list of **Drying Time**.

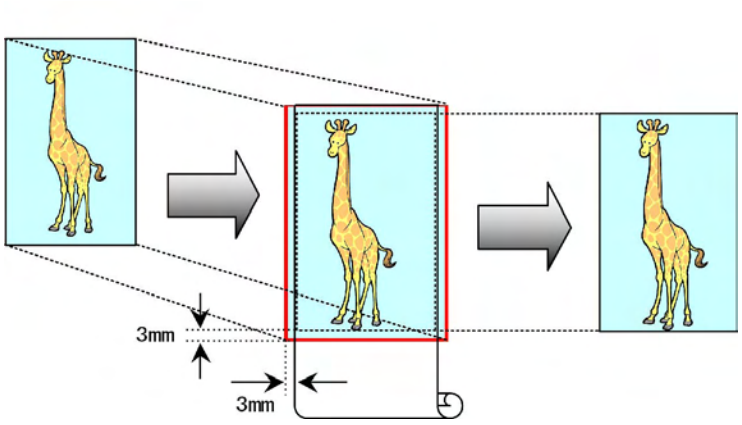
Borderless Printing Method

Choose the method of borderless printing that suits the original, as desired.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Scale to fit Roll Paper Width

Enlarge or reduce the original as a whole to match the roll paper width.



Note

- You can combine this function with rotating pages 90 degrees before printing so that the original width (relative to portrait orientation) matches the roll paper width in borderless printing.

For instructions on borderless printing of photos, images, and other documents to match the roll paper width, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows)
- Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS X)
- Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS 9)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Borderless Printing at Actual Size

Take advantage of borderless printing to print documents such as posters (made up mainly of photos or images) without a surrounding margin, or border.

Borderless Printing

In regular printing, a margin required by the printer is added around the original. With borderless printing, you can print documents without the margin, so that the printed image covers the entire surface of the paper.

Important

- Borderless printing is only available with rolls.
- Paper you can use for borderless printing is restricted to particular types of paper and rolls of particular widths. For information on types of paper compatible with borderless printing, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.169)
- Paper incompatible with the printer's auto cut function can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only.
- These features cannot be used in combination with borderless printing: special page layouts, centering originals, and printing cut lines on rolls.
- You cannot have pages rotated 90 degrees to conserve paper if you have set up borderless printing at actual size or in combination with resizing originals to match the paper size.
- When borderless printing is used, the edge of the paper is cut during printing. Thus, ink density may be uneven at the edges. If you require higher image quality, specify **No** in **Auto Cut** in the printer driver. In this case, the paper can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only. After ejecting and cutting the printed document, use scissors to cut away the top and bottom edges.
- By factory default, the ink drying time is disabled for all paper. When you are using paper that takes longer for ink to adhere for borderless printing and the Cutter Unit touches printing surfaces that are not dry yet, it may damage the paper or the edge of the document that is cut, depending on frequency of use. In this case, follow these steps to change the ink drying time.
  1. On the **Main** sheet of the printer driver, click **Settings** in **Media Type**.
  2. Select the ink drying time in the **Between Pages** list of **Drying Time**.

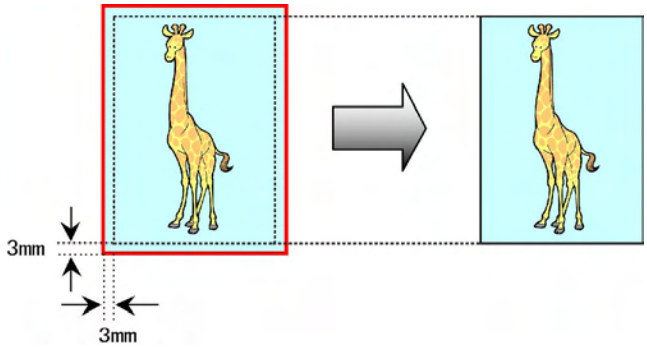
Borderless Printing Method

Choose the method of borderless printing that suits the original, as desired.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Print Image with Actual Size

Prints originals at actual size, without enlarging or reducing them. Originals must be prepared in a size that exceeds the dimensions of the paper by 3 mm (0.12 in) on each side.



Note

- Not all page sizes are available.
- Even if you prepare originals of the same size as the paper size, the originals are automatically enlarged when you print borderlessly in combination with resizing originals to match the paper size. This may affect image quality. When image quality is most important, make the original 3 mm longer on each side than the paper size so that the image can be printed at actual size in borderless printing.

For instructions on borderless printing of photos and images at actual size, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Windows) (→P.350)
- Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS X) (→P.352)
- Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS 9) (→P.355)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Windows)

This topic describes how to print borderlessly at actual size based on the following example.

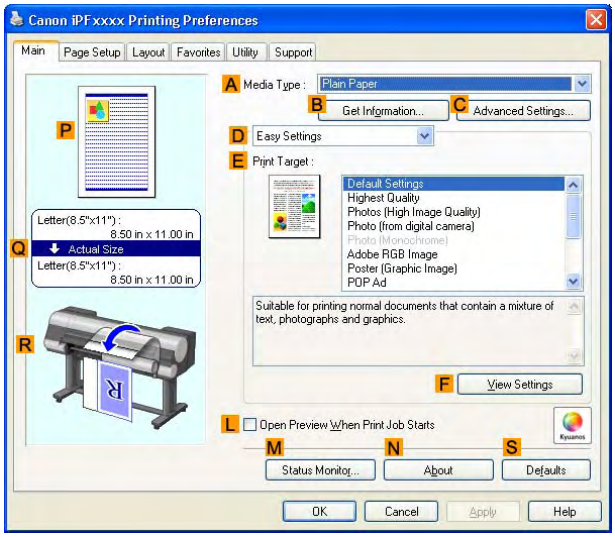
- Document: Any type
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Create the original in the source application 3 mm (0.12 in) larger on each side than 254.0×304.8 mm (10 × 12 in) -that is, 260.0×310.8 mm (10.2 × 12.2 in)

   Note

   - If you can specify the margin, as in Microsoft Word, set the margin at 0 mm. For instructions on specifying the margin, refer to the software documentation.
   - The extra 3 mm (0.12 in) on each side will not be printed. Create the original so that it fits inside the paper area to be printed on.

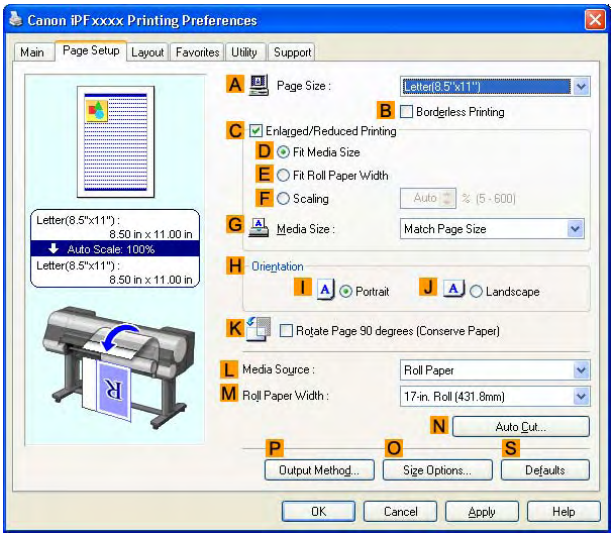
2. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
3. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.539)
4. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



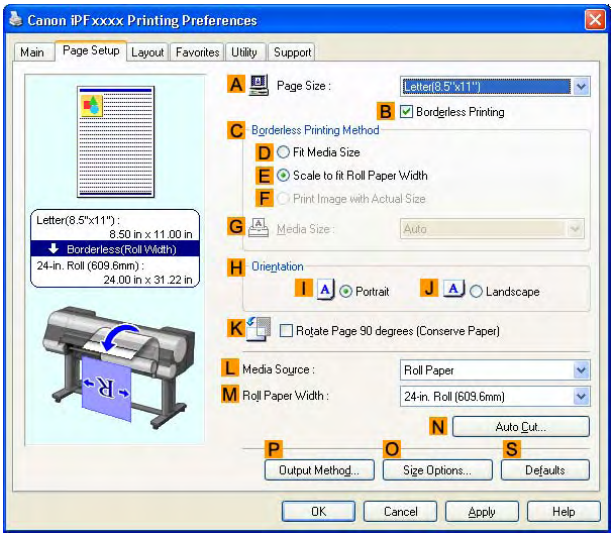
5. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.
6. Select the print target in the E **Print Target** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

7. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



8. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the source application. In this case, click **10"x12"**.
9. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Media Source** list.
10. Select the B **Borderless Printing** check box to display the **Information** dialog box.



11. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, click **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**.
12. Click **OK** to close the **Information** dialog box.
13. In C **Borderless Printing Method**, click F **Print Image with Actual Size**.
14. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.509)

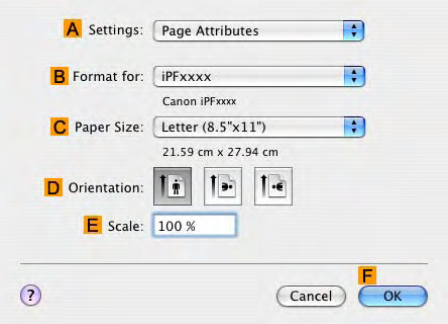
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to print borderlessly at actual size based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: 10 × 12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)-Borderless
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

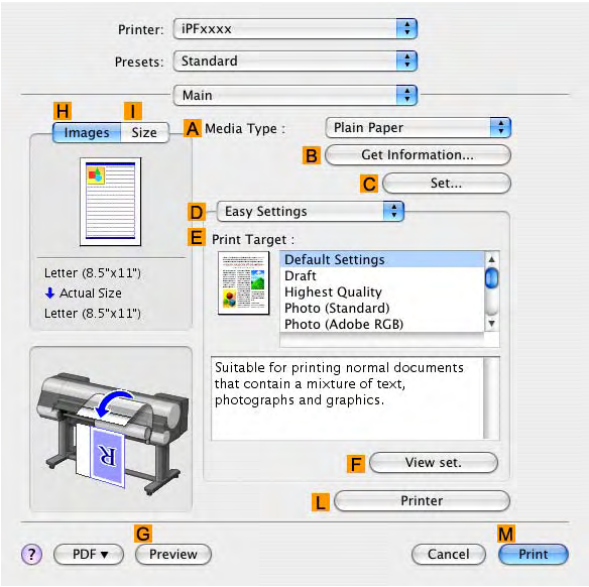


2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In the C **Paper Size** list, choose a paper size supported for borderless printing. Here, click **10"x12" - Borderless**.

Note

- Paper sizes supported for borderless printing are indicated by “-Borderless.”

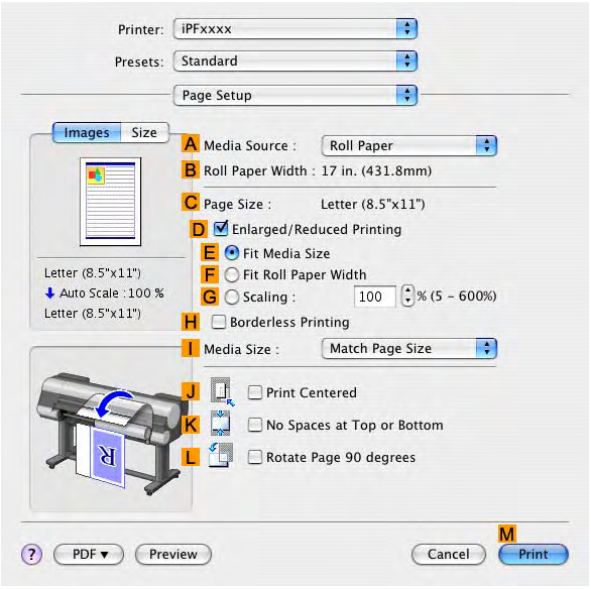
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. In the application, create an original that takes up the entire space of the paper size.
6. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
7. Access the **Main** pane.



8. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.
9. Select the print target in the E **Print Target** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

10. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



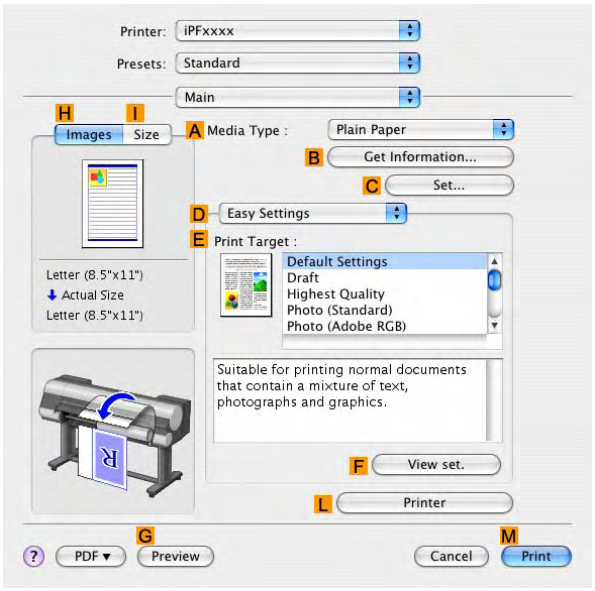
11. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A** **Media Source** list.

12. Confirm that the roll paper width matches the paper size.

Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B** **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

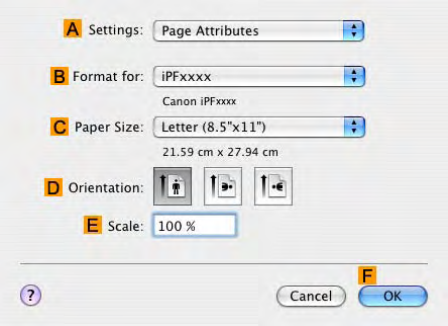
Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in **B** **Roll Paper Width**, click **L** **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

13. Make sure the C **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **10"x12" - Borderless**.



14. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.559)

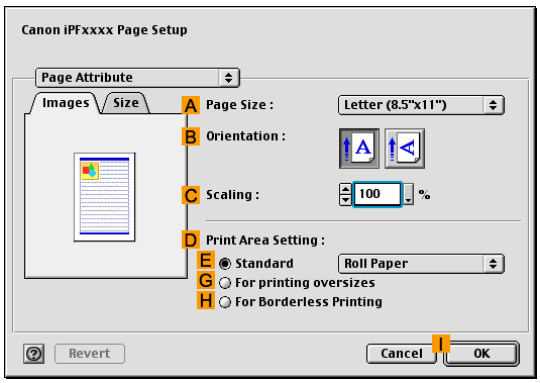
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS 9)

This topic describes how to print borderlessly at actual size based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: 10 × 12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)-Borderless
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

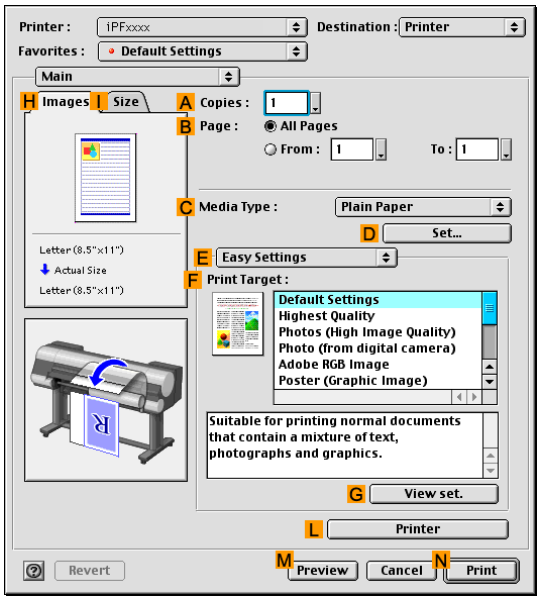


3. In D **Print Area Setting**, click H **For Broderless Printing**.
4. In the A **Page Size** list, choose a paper size supported for borderless printing. Here, click **10"x12" - Borderless**.

Note

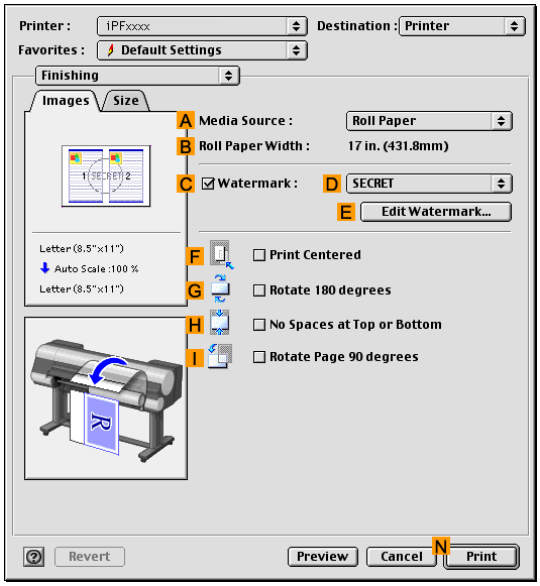
- Paper sizes supported for borderless printing are indicated by “-Borderless.”

5. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
6. In the application, create an original that takes up the entire space of the paper size.
7. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
8. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

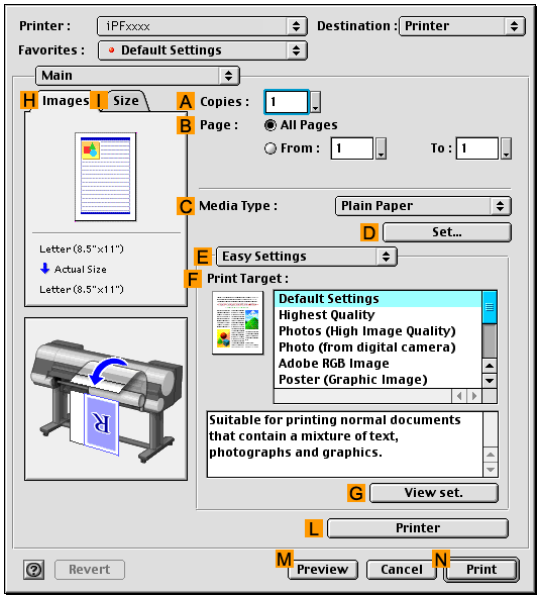
9. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.
10. Select the print target in the F **Print Target** list.
11. Access the **Finishing** pane.



12. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.
13. Confirm that the roll paper width matches the paper size.
    Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the B **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

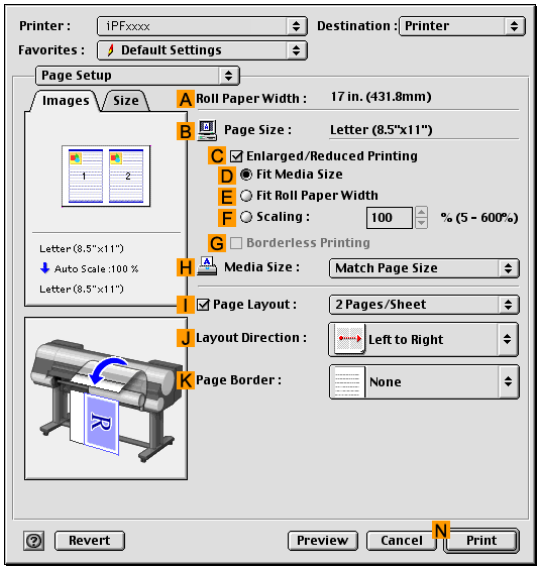
Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.

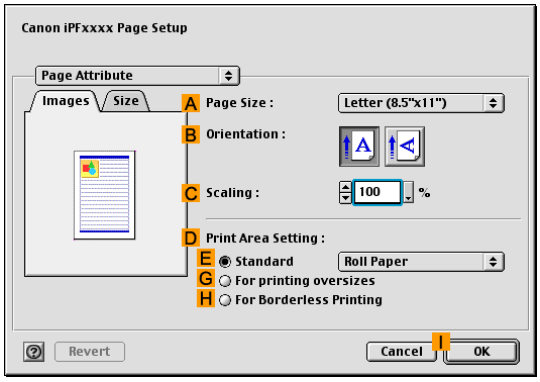


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

14. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



15. Make sure the **B** **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **A** **Page Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **10"x12"**.



16. Confirm the print settings, and click **N** **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.585)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before borderless printing to match the roll width, based on the following example.

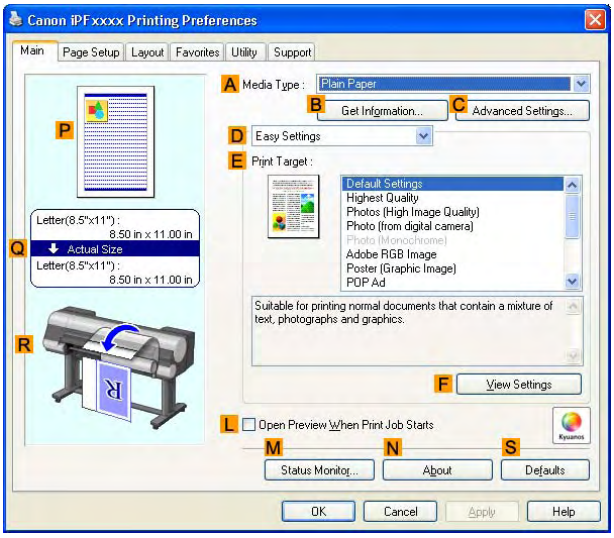
- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. In the application, create an original that takes up the entire space of the paper size.

Note

- If you can specify the margin, as in Microsoft Word, set the margin at 0 mm. For instructions on specifying the margin, refer to the software documentation.

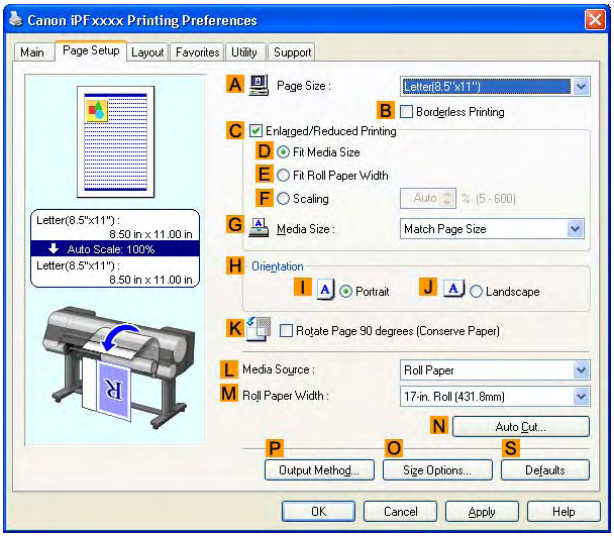
2. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
3. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.539)
4. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



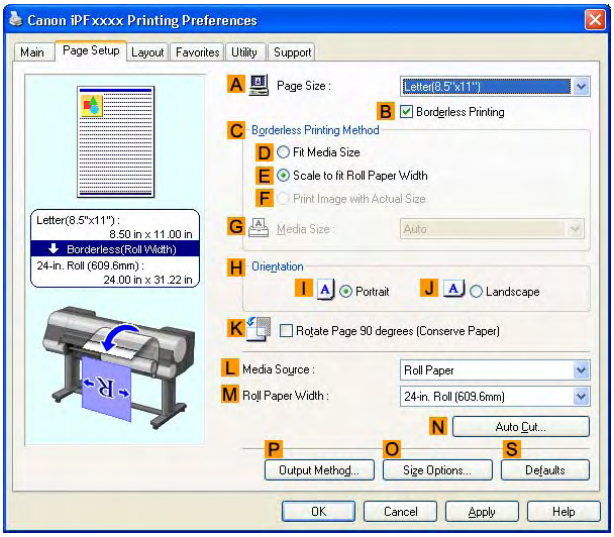
5. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.
6. Select the print target in the E **Print Target** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

7. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



8. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.
9. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Media Source** list.
10. Select the B **Borderless Printing** check box to display the **Information** dialog box.



11. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, click **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**.
12. Click **OK** to close the **Information** dialog box.
13. In C **Borderless Printing Method**, make sure E **Scale to fit Roll Paper Width** is selected.
14. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.509)

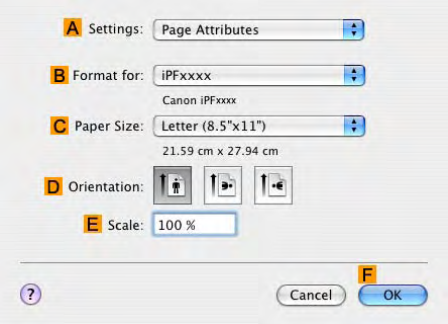
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing to match the roll width, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

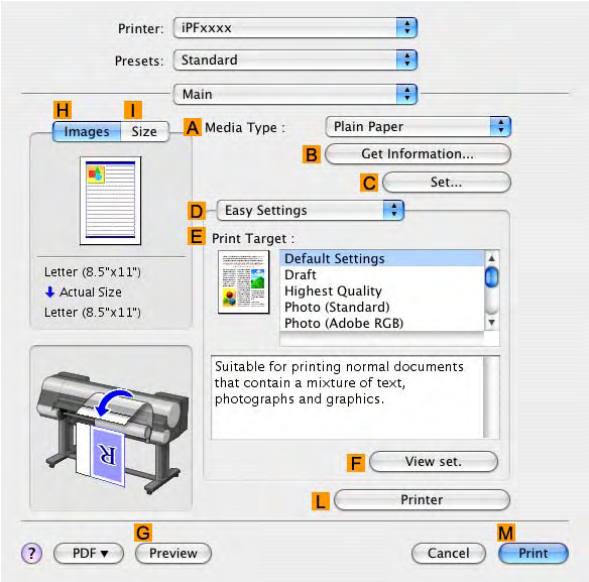


2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In C **Paper Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.

Note

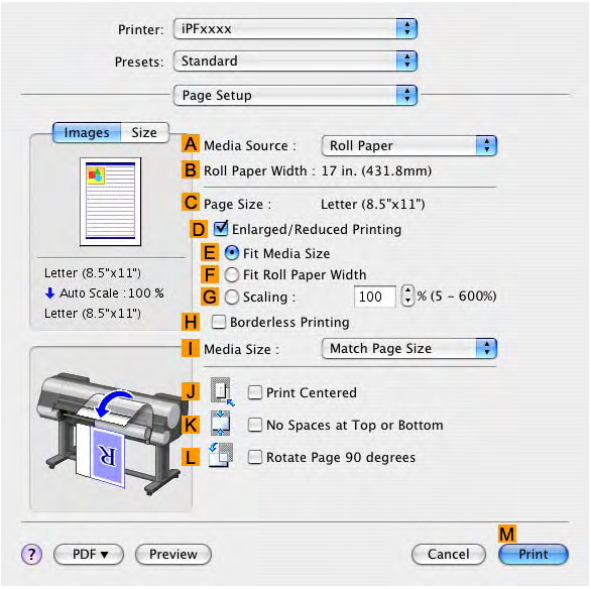
- All sizes are available in borderless printing if you resize originals to fit the roll width.

4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. In the application, create an original that takes up the entire space of the paper size.
6. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
7. Access the **Main** pane.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

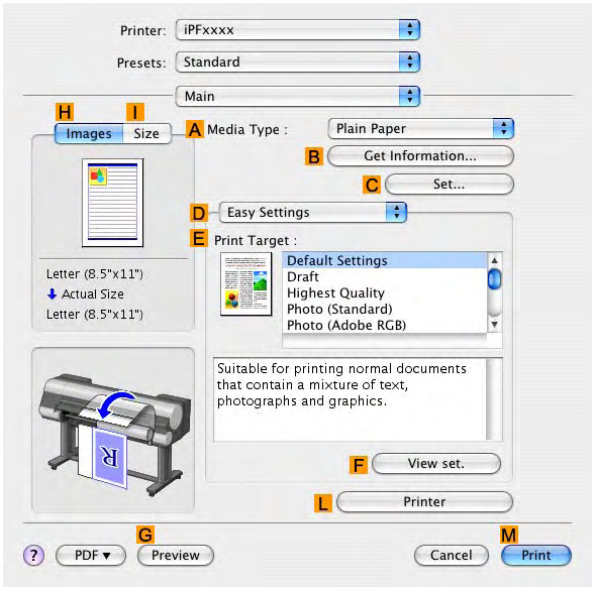
8. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.
9. Select the print target in the E **Print Target** list.
10. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



11. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.
12. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the B **Roll Paper Width** list-here, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

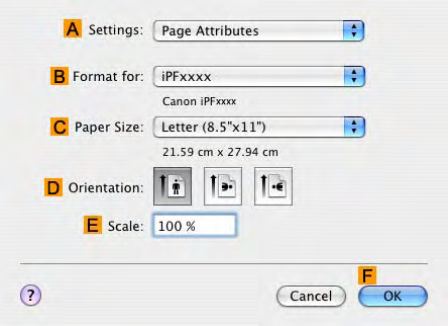
Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

13. Make sure the C **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



14. Select the D **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.
15. Select the H **Borderless Printing** check box.
    This ensures that F **Fit Roll Paper Width** is automatically selected in D **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**.
16. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.559)

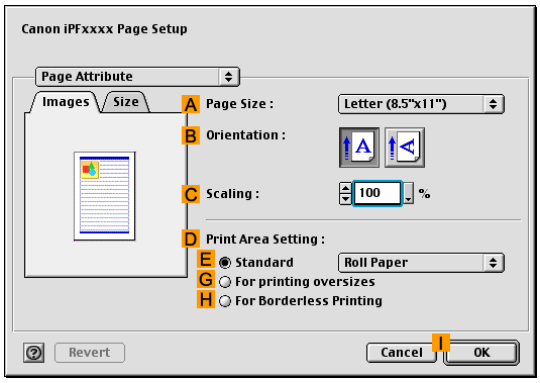
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS 9)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing to match the roll width, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

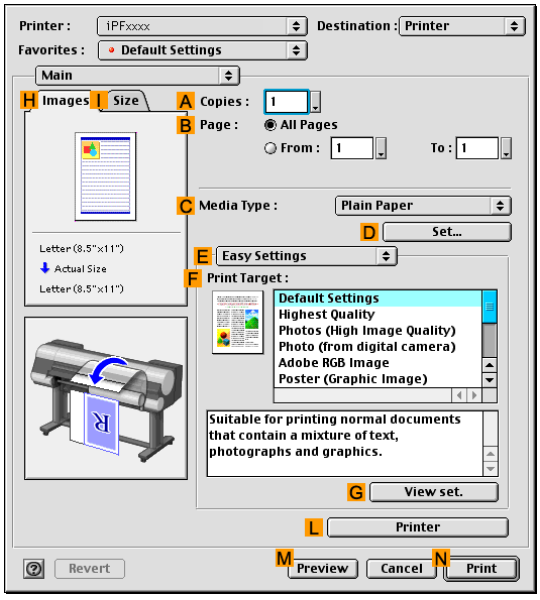


3. In A **Page Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.

Note

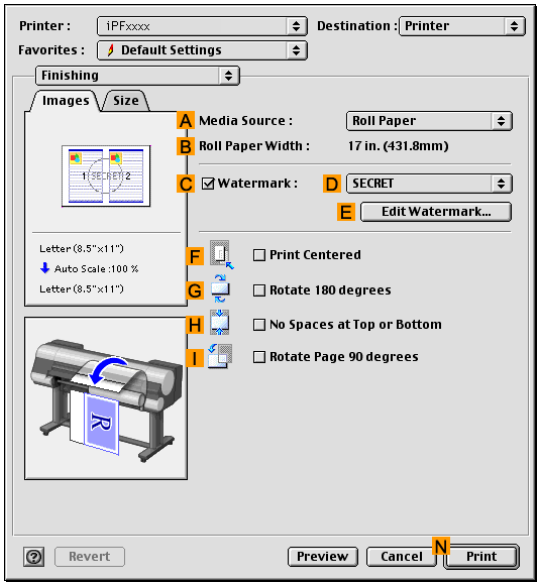
- All sizes are available in borderless printing if you resize originals to fit the roll width.

4. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. In the application, create an original that takes up the entire space of the paper size.
6. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
7. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

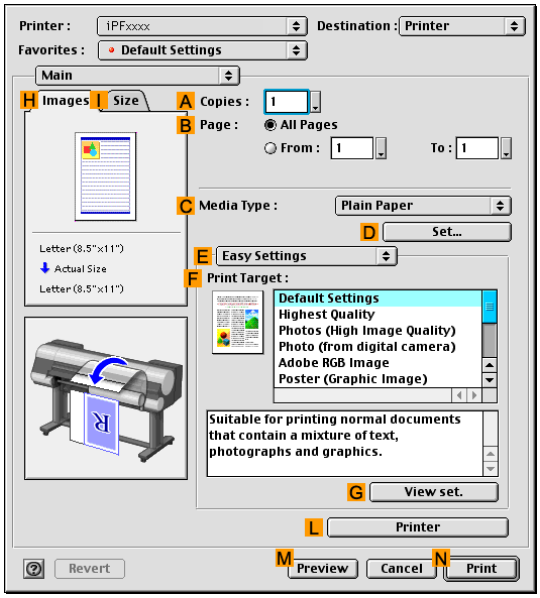
8. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.
9. Select the print target in the F **Print Target** list.
10. Access the **Finishing** pane.



11. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.
12. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the B **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

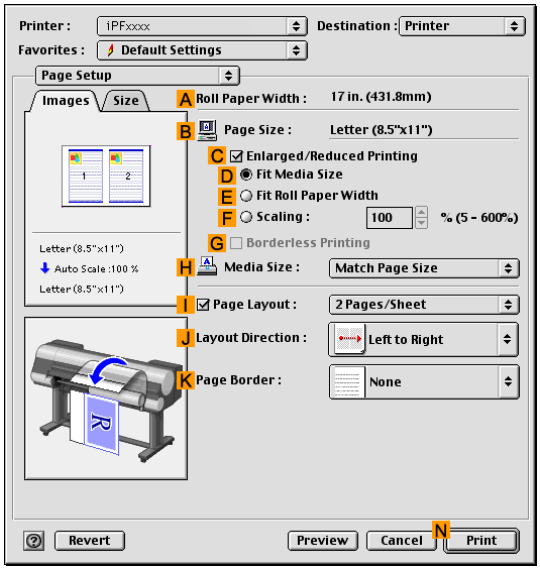
Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.

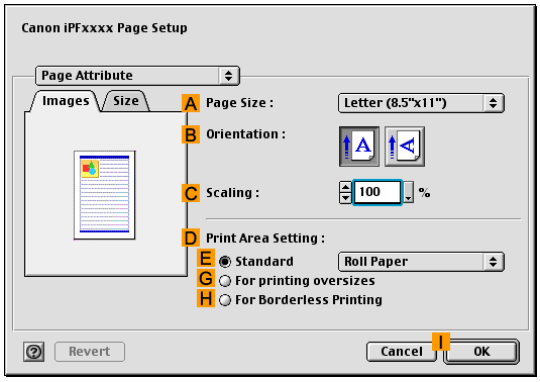


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

13. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



14. Make sure the **B** **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **A** **Page Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



15. Select the **C** **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.

16. Select the **G** **Borderless Printing** check box.

This ensures that **E** **Fit Roll Paper Width** is automatically selected in **C** **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**.

17. Confirm the print settings, and click **N** **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.585)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before borderless printing to match the paper size, based on the following example.

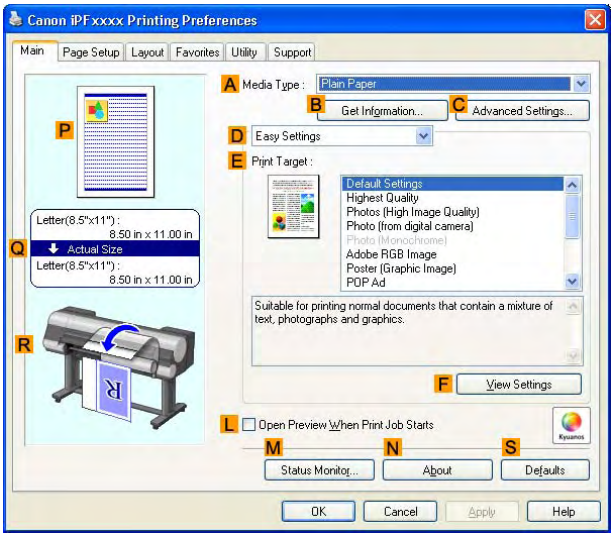
- Document: Any type
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. In the application, create an original that takes up the entire space of the paper size.

Note

- If you can specify the margin, as in Microsoft Word, set the margin at 0 mm. For instructions on specifying the margin, refer to the software documentation.

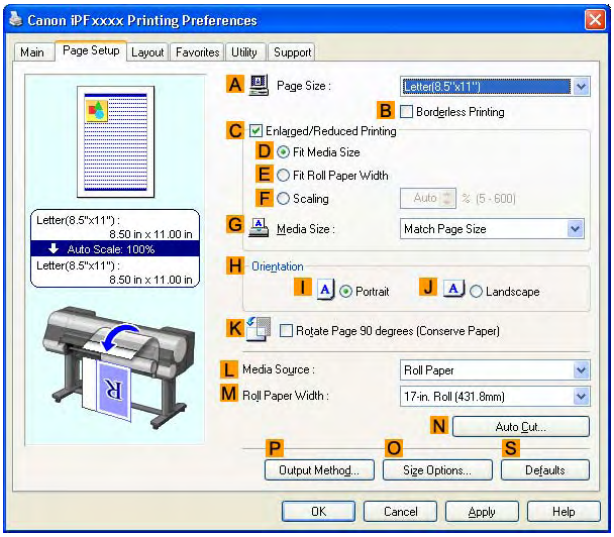
2. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
3. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.539)
4. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



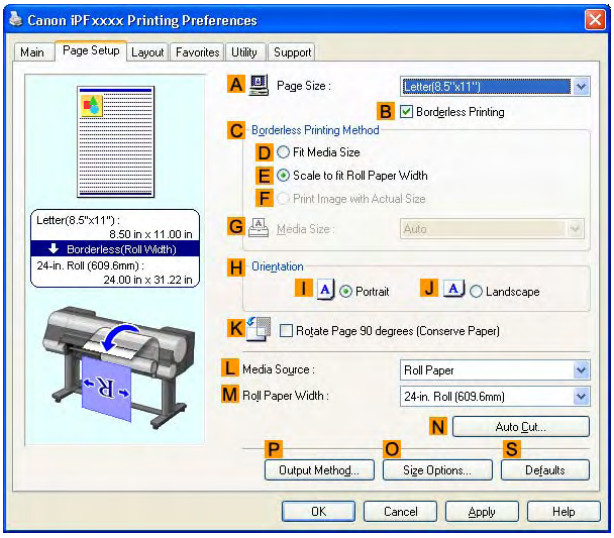
5. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.
6. Select the print target in the E **Print Target** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

7. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



8. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **10"x12"**.
9. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Media Source** list.
10. Select the B **Borderless Printing** check box to display the **Information** dialog box.



11. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, click **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**.
12. Click **OK** to close the **Information** dialog box.
13. In C **Borderless Printing Method**, click D **Fit Media Size**.
14. Click **Match Page Size** in the G **Media Size** list.
15. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.509)

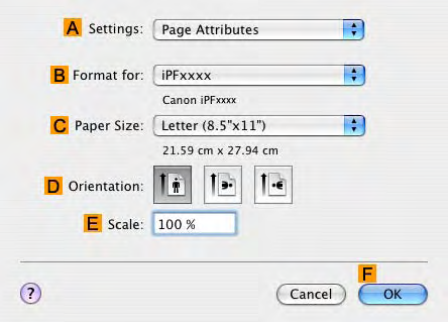
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before borderless printing to match the paper size, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

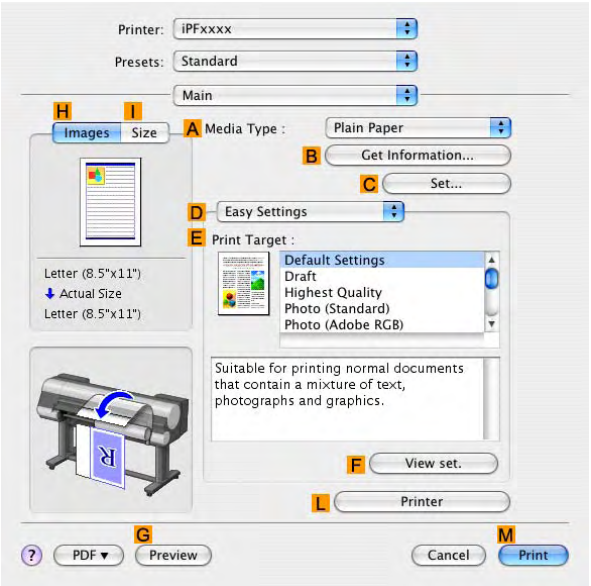


2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In the C **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **10"x12"**.

Note

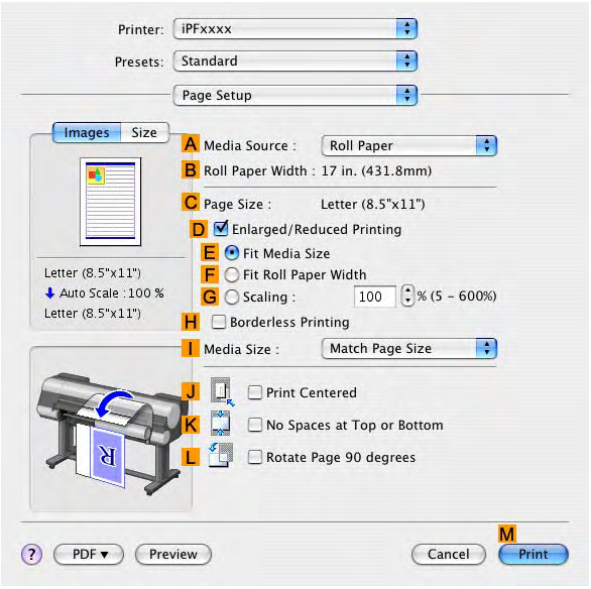
- All sizes are available in borderless printing if you resize originals to match the paper size.

4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. In the application, create an original that takes up the entire space of the paper size.
6. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
7. Access the **Main** pane.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

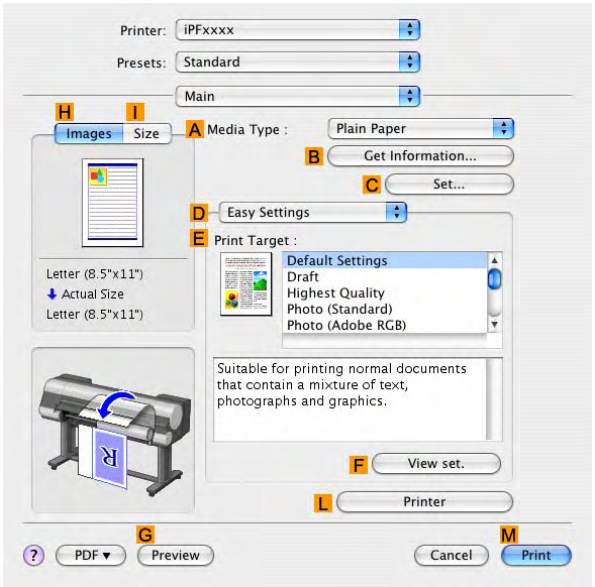
8. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.
9. Select the print target in the E **Print Target** list.
10. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



11. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.
12. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the B **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

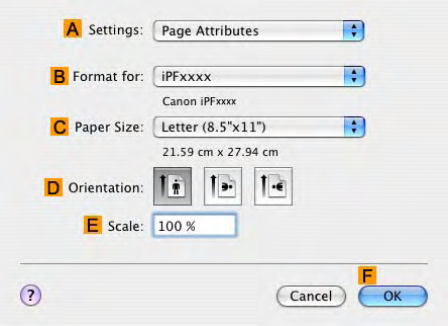
Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

13. Make sure the C **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **10"x12"**.



14. On the **Page Setup** pane, select the D **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.
15. Select the H **Borderless Printing** check box.
16. Click E **Fit Media Size** under D **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**.
17. In I **Media Size**, click the paper size. In this case, click **10"x12" - Borderless**.
18. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.559)

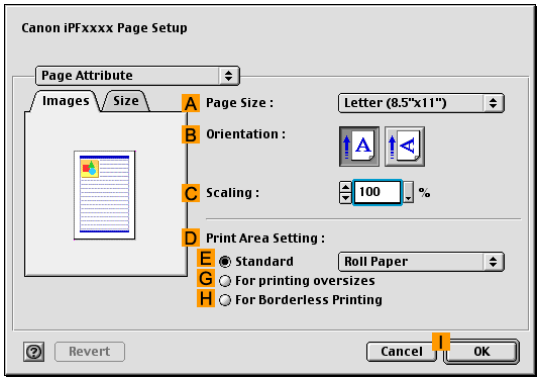
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS 9)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before borderless printing to match the paper size, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

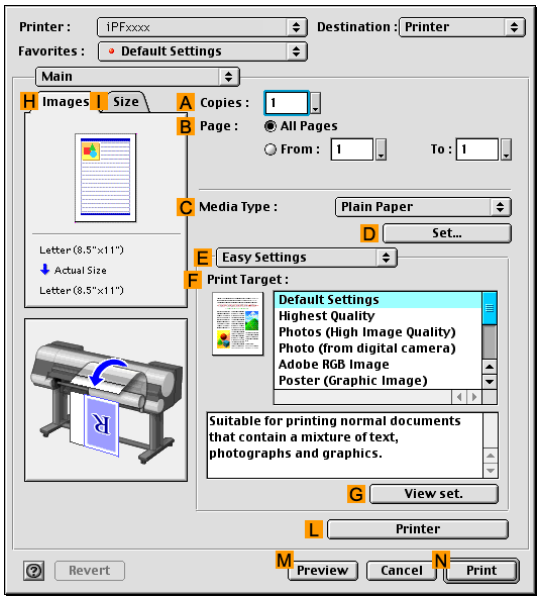


3. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **10"x12"**.

Note

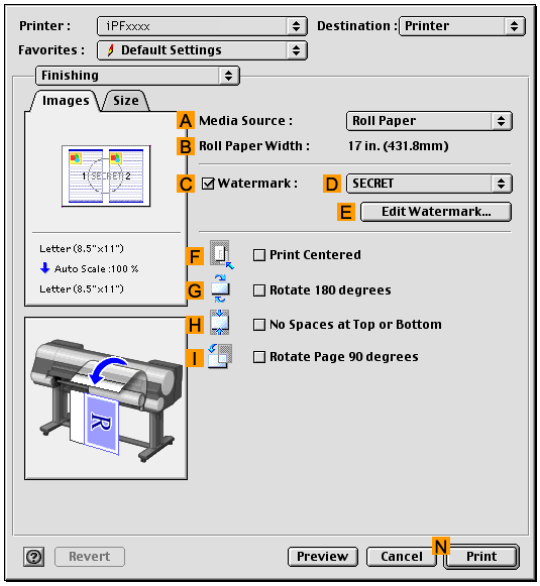
- All sizes are available in borderless printing if you resize originals to match the paper size.

4. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. In the application, create an original that takes up the entire space of the paper size.
6. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
7. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

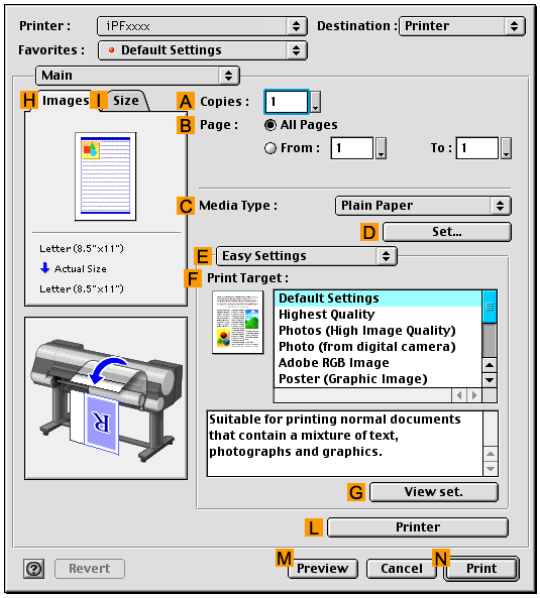
8. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.
9. Select the print target in the F **Print Target** list.
10. Access the **Finishing** pane.



11. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.
12. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the B **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

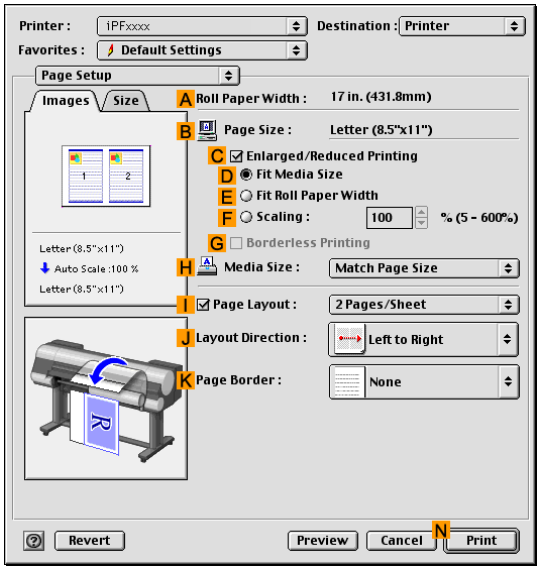
Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.

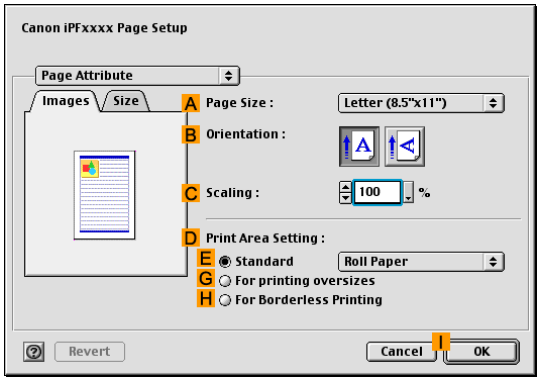


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

13. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



14. Make sure the **B** **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **A** **Page Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **10"x12"**.



15. Select the **C** **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.

16. Select the **G** **Borderless Printing** check box.

17. Click **D** **Fit Media Size** under **C** **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**.

18. In **H** **Media Size**, click the paper size. In this case, click **10"x12" - Borderless**.

19. Confirm the print settings, and click **N** **Print** to start printing.

Note

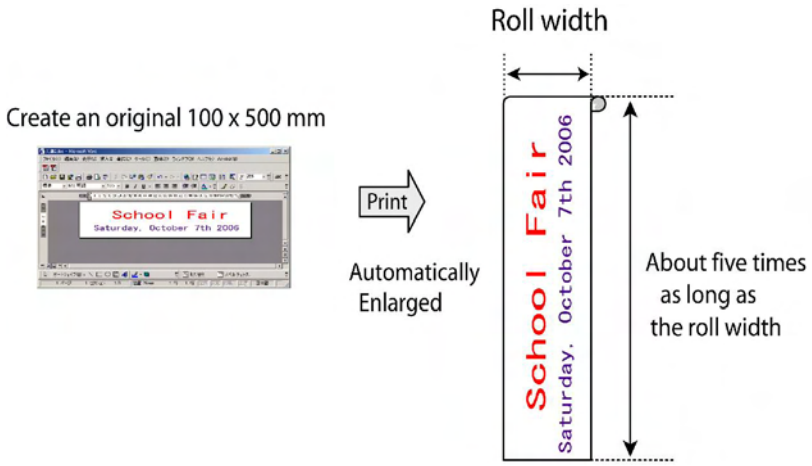
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.585)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing banners or at other non-standard sizes

Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing)

You can create vertical or horizontal banners by printing originals that are in banner format on rolls. Originals created in Microsoft Word or other applications in your preferred size can be enlarged to fill the width of roll paper by completing simple printer driver settings.



Fit Roll Paper Width

You can easily create vertical or horizontal banners by automatically enlarging or reducing originals to fit the full width of rolls.

Note

- The maximum supported roll length is 18.0 m or 19.7 yd (when printing in Mac OS X).

For instructions on printing vertical or horizontal banners, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Windows) (→P.406)
- Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Mac OS X) (→P.410)
- Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Mac OS 9) (→P.413)

Important

- Before printing, check how much of the roll paper is left. If you have activated automatic detection of the remaining roll paper, a warning message is displayed when there is not enough roll paper left.
- If not much ink is left, prepare replacement ink tanks.
- To print at a higher level of quality, in the printer driver, choose **High** or **Highest** in Print Quality, and choose **Unidirectional Printing** as the direction of printing.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes

By specifying the paper size, you can print on non-standard sizes of paper.
There are two ways to print on non-standard paper sizes, as follows.

Registering non-standard paper size in the printer driver

After you register non-standard paper sizes, they are listed with standard sizes so that you can choose them anytime as needed.

Note

- These non-standard paper sizes you register in the printer driver are called **Custom Media Size** in Windows and Mac OS 9. In Mac OS X, they are called “Custom Sizes.”

Specifying custom media sizes for temporary use

Because these are sizes you specify temporarily in the printer driver, the sizes will not be available after you exit the application. If you want to set up a non-standard paper size so that it will always be available, we recommend registering the paper size in the printer driver.

Note

- These temporary paper sizes you register on the printer are called “Custom Sizes” in Windows.

For instructions on specifying non-standard paper sizes for printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Windows) (→P.397)
- Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Mac OS X) (→P.401)
- Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Mac OS 9) (→P.403)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Windows)

This topic describes two ways to print on non-standard paper sizes.

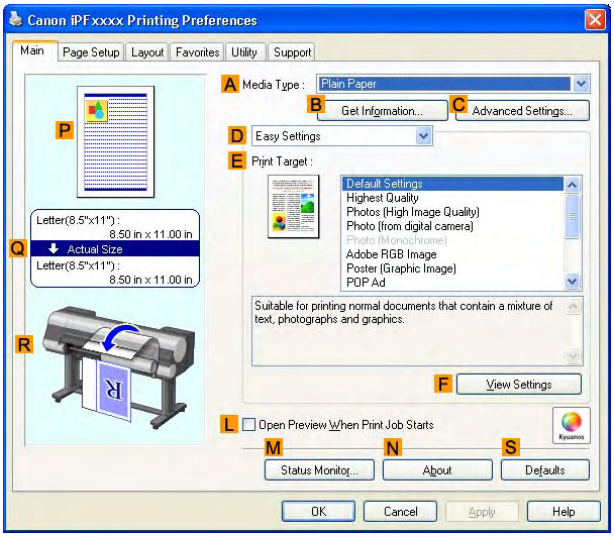
- Printing by using **Custom Size** (→P.397)
- Printing by using **Custom Media Size** (→P.399)

Printing by using Custom Size

This section describes how to print using **Custom Size** based on the following example.

- Document: Scanned image
- Page size: Square of non-standard dimensions (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in])
- Paper: Sheets
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A square sheet (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in])

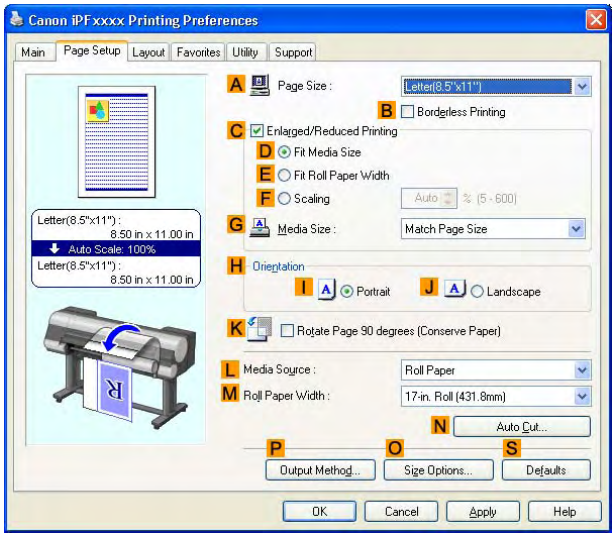
1. Load the square paper (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in]) in the printer.
2. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
3. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (→P.539)
4. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



5. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
6. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **Scanned Image** in the E **Print Target** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

7. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



8. Click **Cut Sheet** in the L **Media Source** list.
9. Click **Custom Size** in the A **Page Size** list to display the **Custom Size Settings** dialog box.
10. Complete the following settings in the **Custom Size Settings** dialog box.
    1. Select **mm** or inch in **Units**.
    2. Enter “430” (16.9 in) in both **Width** and **Height**.
11. Click **OK** to close the **Custom Size Settings** dialog box.
12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.509)

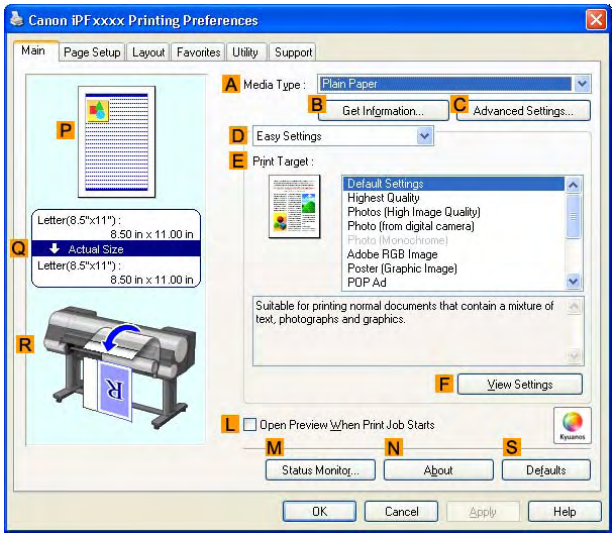
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing by using Custom Media Size

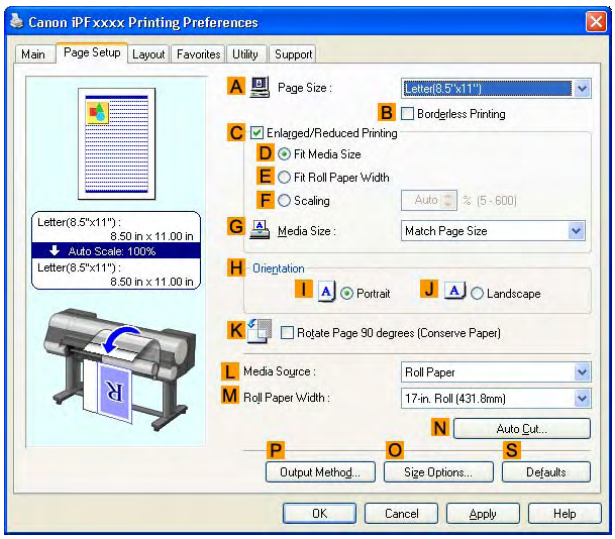
This section describes how to print using **Custom Media Size** based on the following example. First, register a non-standard paper size called “430 mm Square” as a **Custom Media Size**.

- Document: Scanned image
- Page size: A square sheet (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in])
- Paper: Sheets
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A square sheet (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in])

1. Load the square paper (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in]) in the printer.
2. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
3. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (→P.539)
4. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



5. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
6. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **Scanned Image** in the E **Print Target** list.
7. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

8. Click O **Size Options** to display the **Media Size Options** dialog box.
9. Complete the following settings in the **Media Size Options** dialog box.
    1. Enter a desired paper name in **Custom Media Size Name**. “430 mm Square” is used in this example.
    2. Select **mm** or inch in **Units**.
    3. Enter “430” (16.9 in) in both **Width** and **Height**.

    Note
    - If you select the **Fix the Ratio of the Width to Height** check box, after you enter a value in either **Width** or **Height**, the other value will be automatically applied based on the original aspect ratio.
10. Click **Add** to register “430 mm Square.”
11. Click **OK** to close the **Media Size Options** dialog box.
12. Click **Cut Sheet** in the L **Media Source** list.
13. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size you added, "430 mm Square."
14. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

    Note
    - For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.509)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Mac OS X)

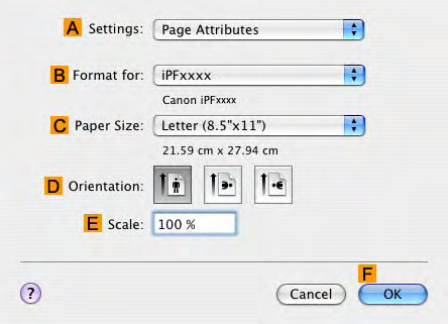
This topic describes how to print after registering “Custom Media Size” based on the following example. Here, you will register a non-standard paper size named “430*430” in “Custom Media Size”.

- Document: Scanned image
- Page size: A square sheet (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in])
- Paper: Sheets
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A square sheet (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in])

Note

- The following procedures are based on Mac OS X 10.4. The method of setting up non-standard paper sizes varies depending on the version of Mac OS X.

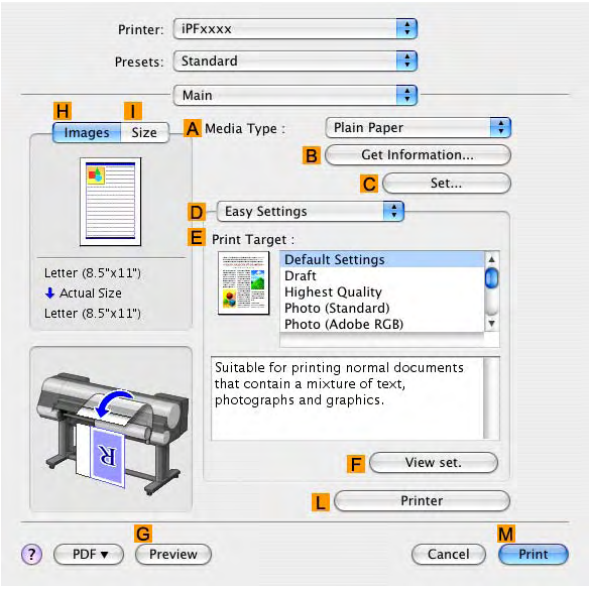
1. Create the document in the application.
2. Load the square paper (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in]) in the printer.
3. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



4. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
5. Click **Manage Custom Sizes** in the C **Paper Size** list to display the **Custom Page Sizes** dialog box.
6. In **Page Size**, enter the height and width of the original. Here, enter “43.00 cm” in **Height** and **Width**.
7. In **Printer Margins**, enter “0.5” for the top and side margins and “2.3” for the bottom margin. Here, measurements are entered in centimeters.
8. Double-click **Untitled** in the list at left in the **Custom Page Sizes** dialog box and enter the paper name-in this case, “430*430”.
9. Click **OK** to close the **Custom Page Sizes** dialog box.
10. In the C **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click “430*430”, the size you registered.
11. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
12. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

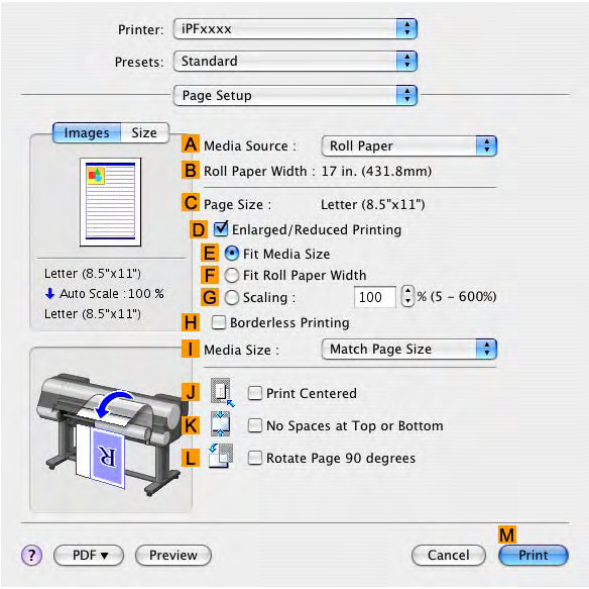
13. Access the **Main** pane.



14. In the **A** **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

15. After confirming that **D** **Easy Settings** is selected, click **Scanned Image** in the **E** **Print Target** list.

16. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



17. Click **Cut Sheet** in the **A** **Media Source** list.

18. In **D** **Easy Settings**, make sure “430*430” is displayed, as registered in **Page Setup**.

19. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M** **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.559)

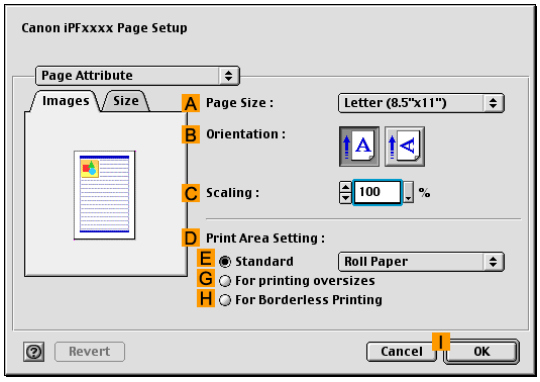
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Mac OS 9)

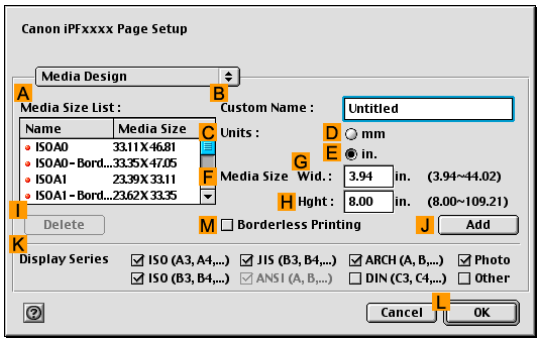
This section describes how to print using **Custom Media Size** based on the following example. Here, you will register a non-standard paper size named “430*430” in **Custom Media Size**. Document:

- Document: Scanned image
- Page size: A square sheet (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in])
- Paper: Sheets
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A square sheet (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in])

1. Create the document in the application.
2. Load the square paper (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in]) in the printer.
3. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
4. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



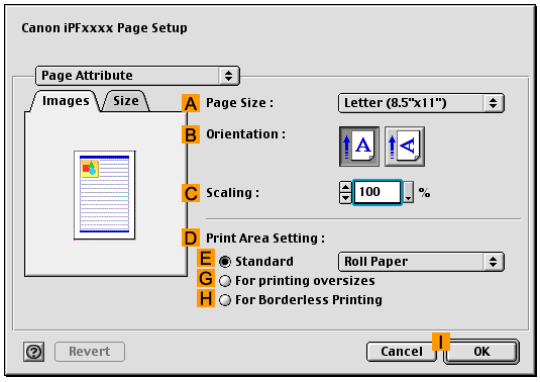
5. Click **Media Design** in the **Page Attribute** list to display the **Media Design** pane.



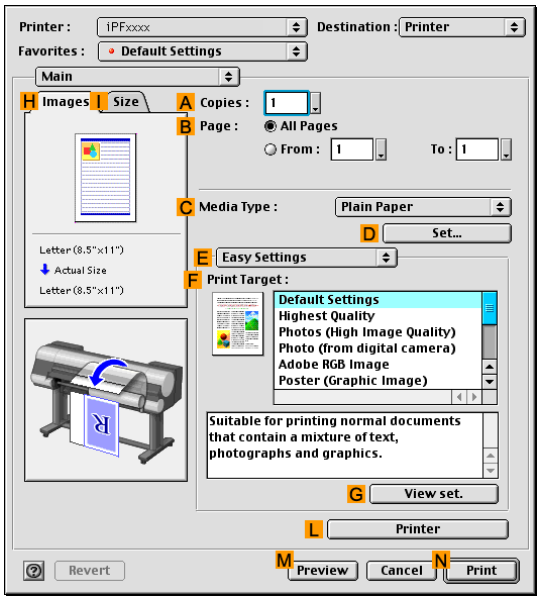
6. Enter a paper name of your choice in **B Custom Name**. “430*430” is used in this example.
7. In **F Media Size**, enter the height and width of the original. Here, enter “430” in **H Hght** and **G Wid.**.
8. Click **J Add** to add the paper size named “430*430”.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

9. Access the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



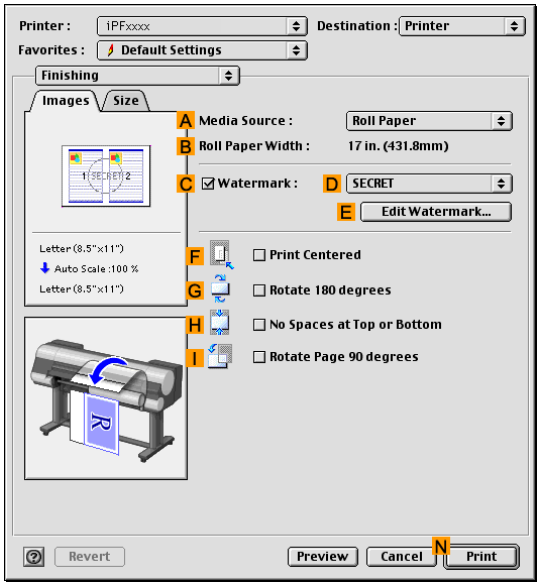
10. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click “430*430”, the size you registered.
11. In D **Print Area Setting**, click E **Standard**.
12. Click **Cut Sheet** in the E **Standard** list.
13. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
14. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
15. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



16. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
17. After confirming that E **Easy Settings** is selected, click **Scanned Image** in the F **Print Target** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

18. Access the **Finishing** pane.



19. Click **Cut Sheet** in the A **Media Source** list.

20. Confirm the print settings, and then click N **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.585)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Windows)

This topic describes how to print a banner about five times as long as the roll width based on the following example.

- Document: A horizontal banner created in Microsoft Word
- Page size: Non-standard (100 × 500 mm [3.4 × 19.7in])
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: 16 in (406.4 mm)

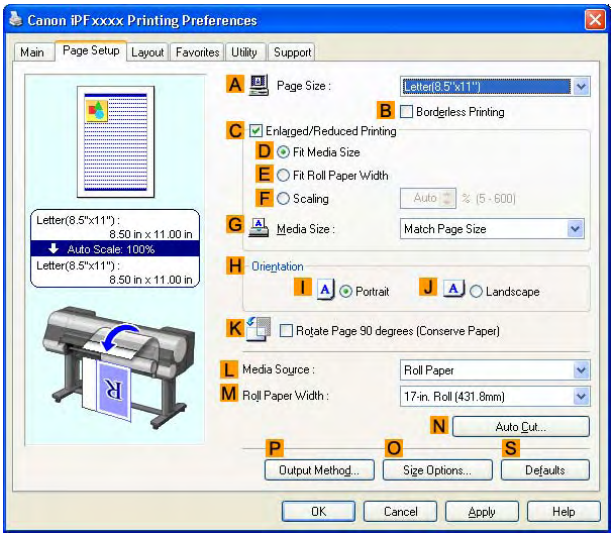
Follow the steps below to print a banner in either horizontal or vertical format.

1. Register a **Custom Media Size**.
   Banners tend to be in non-standard sizes, so register a **Custom Media Size**. In this example, 100 × 500 mm (3.4 × 19.7 in) is registered.
2. In the application, create an original in the size you registered.
3. Print the banner, using the settings that correspond to banners.

Registering a Custom Media Size

This example describes how to register a paper size that is horizontally elongated and suitable for banners in either horizontal or vertical format.

1. Display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.206)
2. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



3. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Media Source** list.
4. Click O **Size Options** to display the **Media Size Options** dialog box.
5. Enter a desired paper name in **Custom Media Size Name**. “My Horizontal Banner” is used in this example.
6. In **Units**, click **mm**.
7. Under **Media Size**, enter “100” in **Width** and “500” in **Height**.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

8. Click **Add** to add the paper size of “My Horizontal Banner.”
9. Click **OK** to close the **Media Size Options** dialog box.
10. Close the printer driver dialog box.

Note

- You can also specify a **Custom Size** as the paper size. Note that **Custom Size** settings are not available after you exit the application.
  For more information, see “Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Windows)”. (→P.397)

Creating the banner in the application

Follow the steps below to create the banner in Microsoft Word using the **Custom Media Size** you registered.

1. Start Microsoft Word.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the **File** menu to display the **Page Setup** dialog box.
3. Under **Paper Size**, click the **Custom Media Size** you registered-"My Horizontal Banner" in this example.

Important

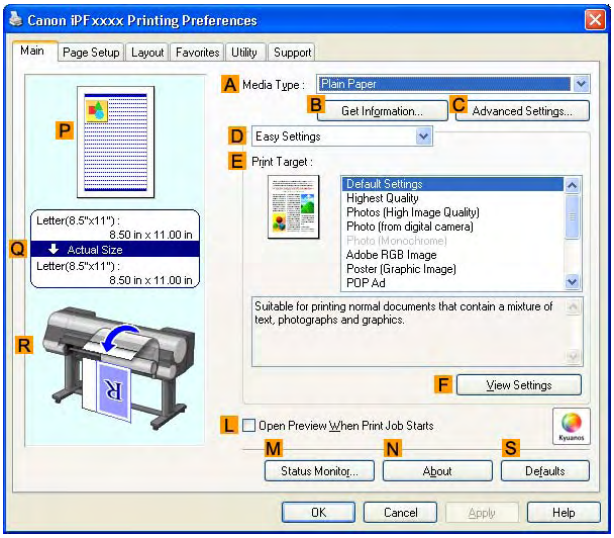
- If "My Horizontal Banner" is not listed, make sure this printer is selected as the printer to use.
- In applications such as Microsoft PowerPoint that do not enable you to choose registered paper sizes, use the custom paper size setting in “Custom” and specify 100 × 500 mm (3.4 × 19.7 in)

4. Set the printing orientation to horizontal
5. Create the banner.

Printing the banner

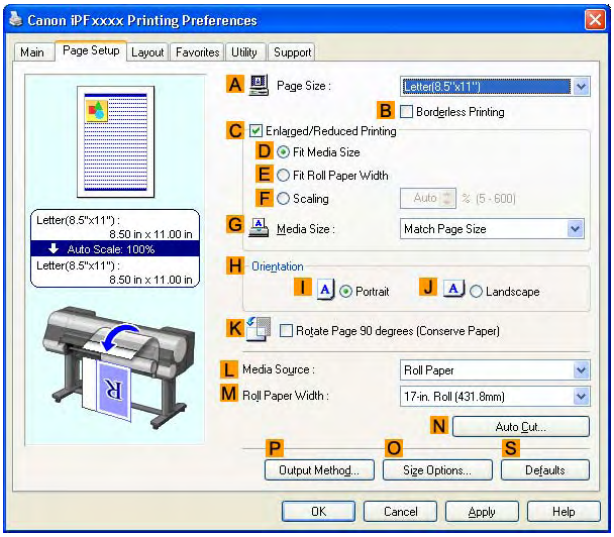
Follow the steps below to print the banner using the corresponding banner settings.

1. Choose **Print** in the Microsoft Word menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (→P.539)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

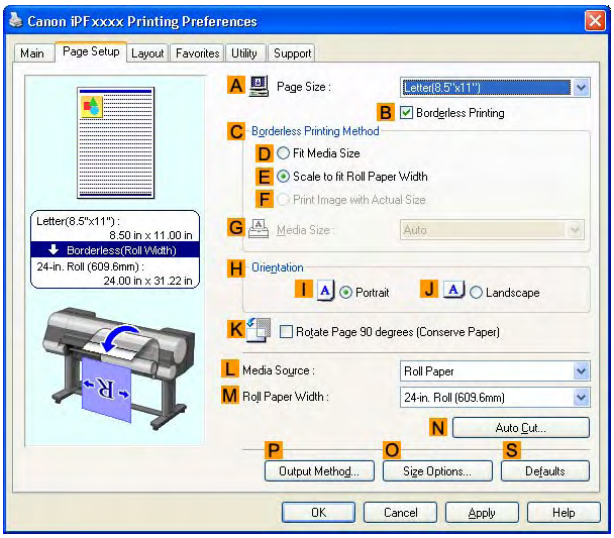
4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **Poster (Text, Illustrations)** in the E **Print Target** list.
6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size you registered, "My Horizontal Banner."
8. Select the C **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.

Note

- If the **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box is not displayed on the **Page Setup** sheet, clear the B **Borderless Printing** check box.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

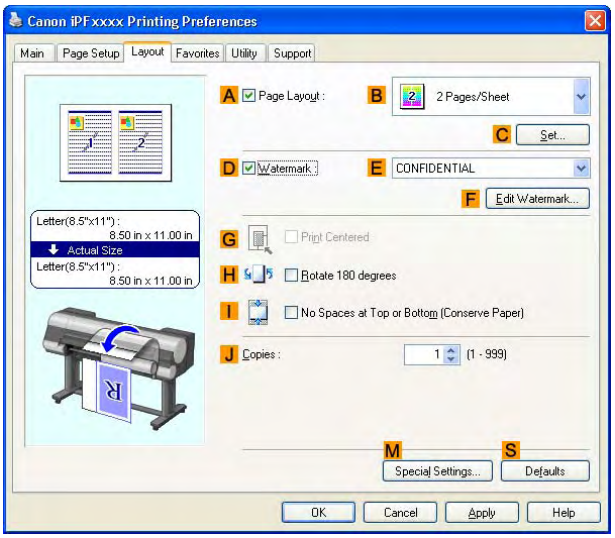
9. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Media Source** list.
10. After you click E **Fit Roll Paper Width**, the **Information** dialog box is displayed.
11. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **Roll Paper Width** list. In this case, click **16-in. Roll (406.4mm)**, and then click **OK**.
12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For instructions on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.509)

Note

- If printing is unsuccessful, you may be able to print after completing the following setting.
  1. On the **Layout** sheet, click M **Special Settings** to display the **Special Settings** dialog box.



  2. In the **FineZoom Settings** list, click **Yes**.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to print a banner about five times as long as the roll width based on the following example.

- Document: An original designed for a horizontal banner
- Page size: Non-standard (100 × 500 mm [3.4 × 19.7 in])
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: 16 inches (406.4 mm)

Follow the steps below to print a banner in either horizontal or vertical format.

1. In the application, create an original in the format of a horizontal or vertical banner.
2. Register a “Custom Page Size.”
   Banners tend to be in non-standard sizes, so register a “Custom Page Size” in **Page Setup**. In this example, 100 × 500 mm (3.4 × 19.7 in) is registered.
3. Print the banner, using the settings that correspond to banners.

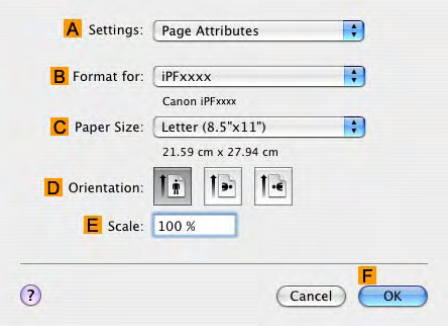
Note

- The following procedures are based on Mac OS X 10.4. The method of setting up non-standard paper sizes varies depending on the version of Mac OS X.

Register a Custom Page Size

This example describes how to register and print using a page size that is horizontally elongated and suitable for banners in either horizontal or vertical format.

1. Create the document in the application.
2. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



3. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
4. Click **Manage Custom Sizes** in the C **Paper Size** list to display the **Custom Page Sizes** dialog box.
5. Double-click **Untitled** in the list at left, and then enter a name for the page size you want to register. Here, enter “100*500.”
   If the **Untitled** size is not visible in the list at left, click **+** below the list.
6. Under **Page Size**, enter “10” in **Width** and “50” in **Height**. Here, measurements are entered in centimeters.

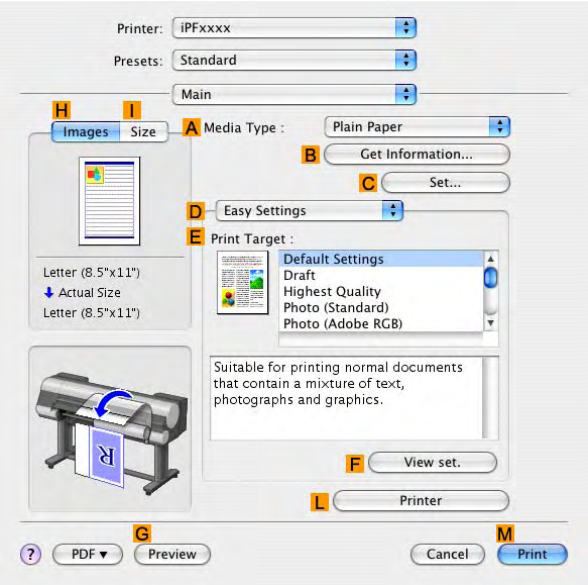
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

7. Specify the margins by entering “0.3” in **Printer Margins**. Here, measurements are entered in centimeters.
8. Click **OK** to close the **Custom Page Sizes** dialog box.
9. In the C **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click "100*500", the size you registered.
10. In D **Orientation**, click the icon of the document in landscape orientation.
11. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.

Printing the banner

Follow the steps below to print the banner using the corresponding banner settings.

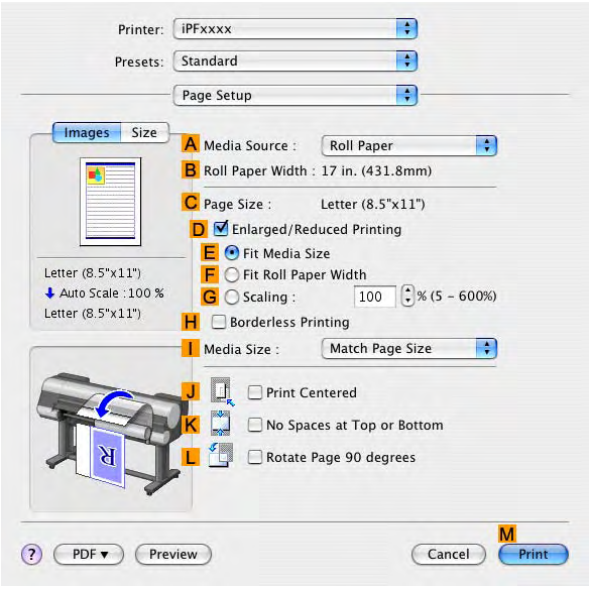
1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Access the **Main** pane.



3. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
4. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **Poster (Text, Illustrations)** in the E **Print Target** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

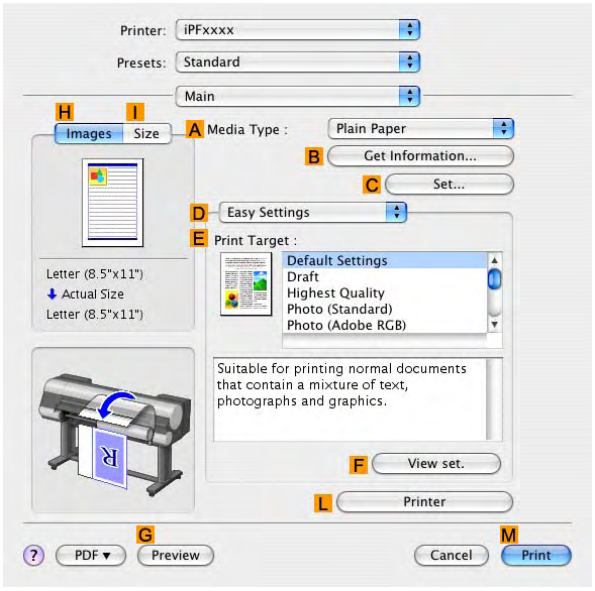
5. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



6. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.
7. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the B **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **16 in. (406.4mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



8. In C **Page Size**, make sure "100*500" is displayed, as registered in **Page Setup**.
9. Select the D **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.
10. Click F **Fit Roll Paper Width**.
11. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.559)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Mac OS 9)

This topic describes how to print a banner about five times as long as the roll width based on the following example.

- Document: An original designed for a horizontal banner
- Page size: Non-standard (100×500 mm, [3.9×19.7 in])
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

The steps to print a vertical or horizontal banner are as follows.

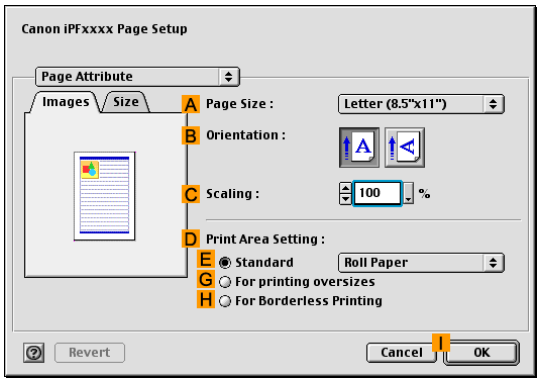
1. In the application, create an original in the format of a horizontal or vertical banner.
2. Register a **Custom Media Size** in **Media Design**.

   Banners tend to be in non-standard sizes, so register a **Custom Media Size**. In this example, 100×500 mm (3.9×19.7 in) is registered.
3. Print the banner, using the settings that correspond to banners.

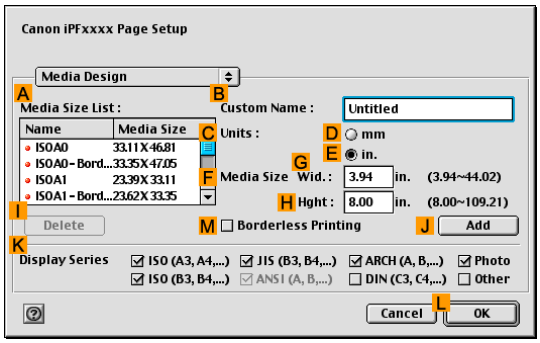
Register a Custom Media Size

This example describes how to register and print using a page size that is horizontally elongated and suitable for banners in either horizontal or vertical format.

1. Create the document in the application.
2. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
3. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



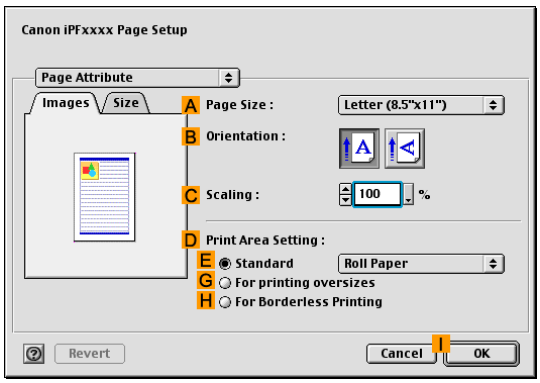
4. Click **Media Design** in the **Page Attribute** list to display the **Media Design** pane.



5. Enter a desired paper name in **B Custom Name**. “My Horizontal Banner” is used in this example.
6. In **C Units**, click **D mm**.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

7. Under F **Media Size**, enter “100” in G **Wid.** and “500” in H **Hght**.
8. Click J **Add** to add the paper size of “My Horizontal Banner.”
9. Access the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



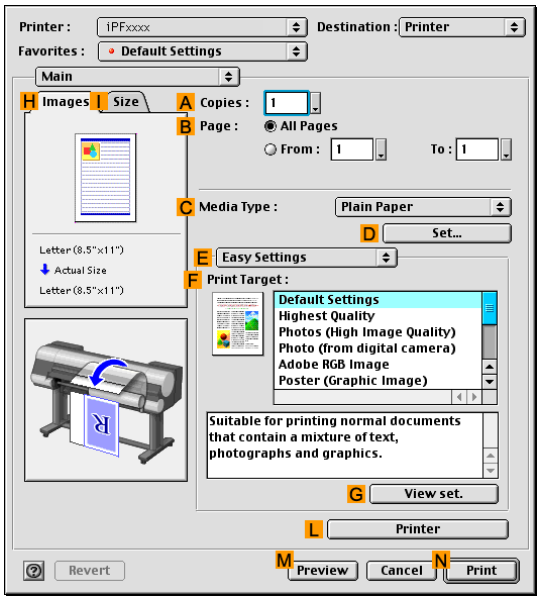
10. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size you added, “My Horizontal Banner.”
11. In B **Orientation**, click the icon of the document in landscape orientation.
12. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

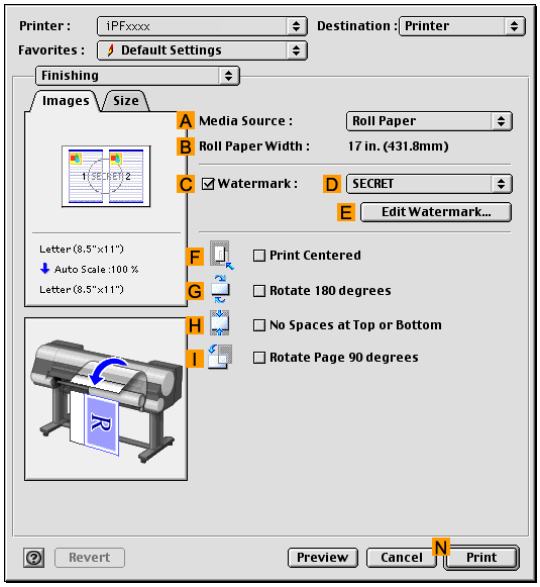
Print the banner

Follow these steps to print the banner using the corresponding banner settings.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



3. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
4. After confirming that E **Easy Settings** is selected, click **POP** in the F **Print Target** list.
5. Access the **Finishing** pane.



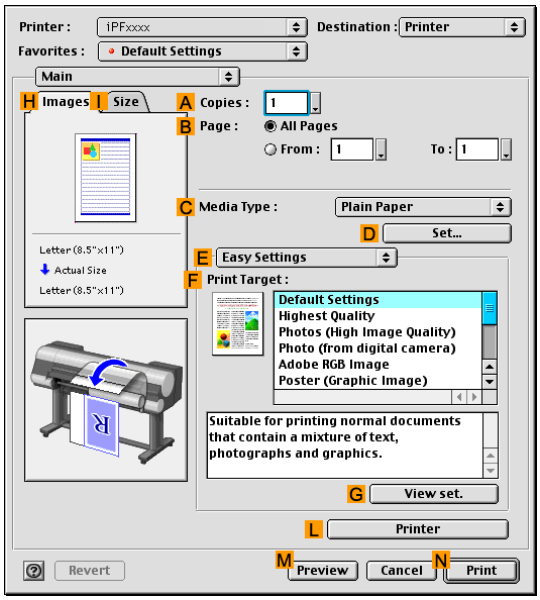
6. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

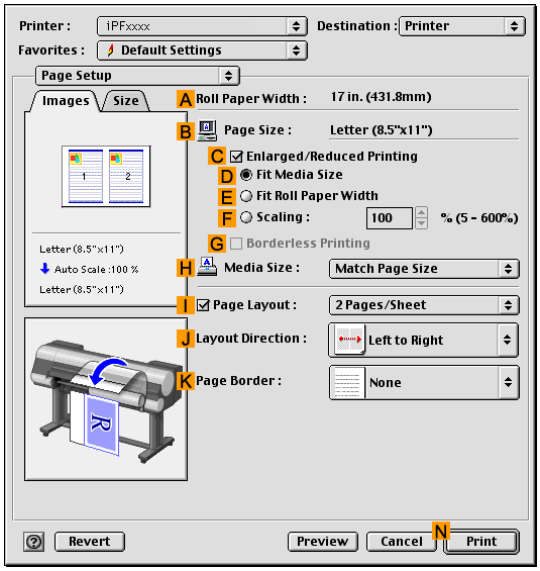
7. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the B **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



8. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



9. In B **Page Size**, make sure “My Horizontal Banner” is displayed, as registered in **Media Design**.
10. Select the C **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.
11. Click E **Fit Roll Paper Width**.
12. Confirm the print settings, and then click N **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.585)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

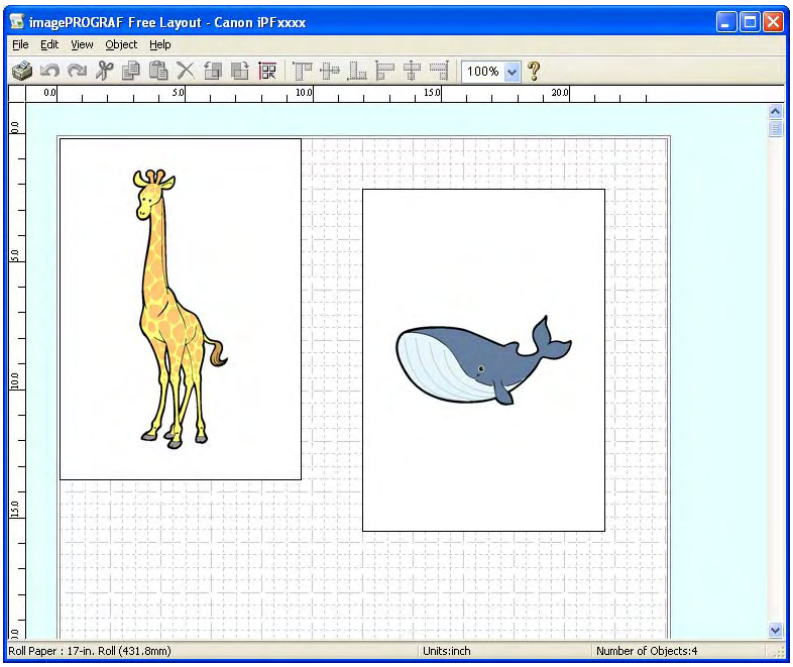
Tiling and multiple pages per sheet

Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other

By arranging originals from word-processing or spreadsheet programs or web browser screen shots next to each other on single sheets, you can create highly expressive presentation materials, easy-to-understand meeting materials, and a variety of other printed documents.

Free Layout (Windows)

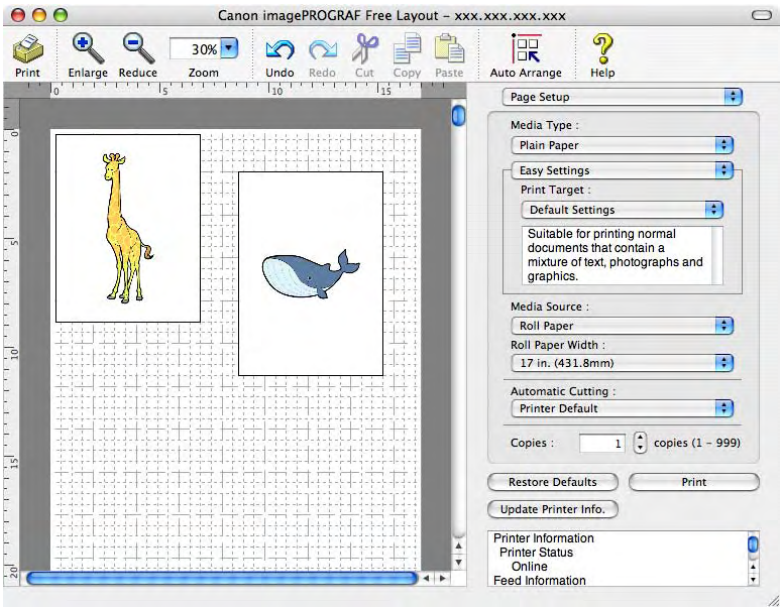
Besides combining multiple pages in a single-page layout, you can combine originals from multiple files-even multiple source applications-in a single-page layout.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

imagePROGRAF Free Layout (Macintosh)

Besides combining multiple pages in a single-page layout, you can combine originals from multiple files-even multiple source applications-in a single-page layout.



Important

- The driver must be installed from the User Software CD-ROM to use this function.

For instructions on arranging originals from multiple applications, refer to the following topics.

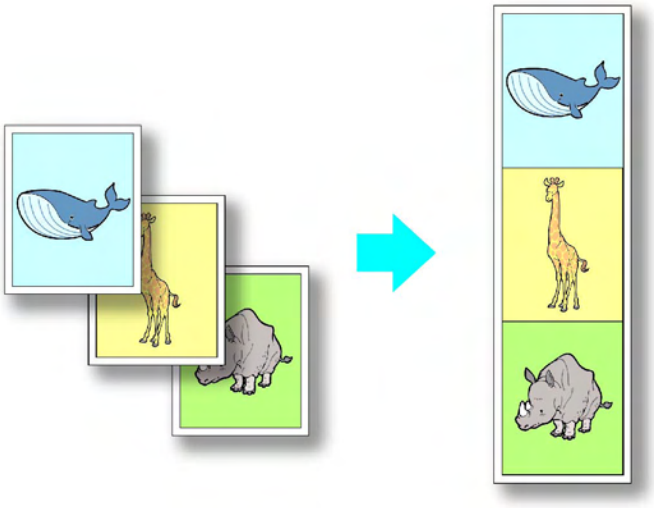
- Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Windows) (→P.426)
- Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Mac OS X) (→P.428)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Multiple Pages Continuously

You can print multiple pages as a single continuous image, without margins between pages.

Roll paper (banner)



Important

- This feature is only available with rolls. It cannot be used when printing on sheets.
- During banner printing, settings for conserving paper, number of copies, borderless printing, enlargement or reduction, and other layout-related settings are disregarded.

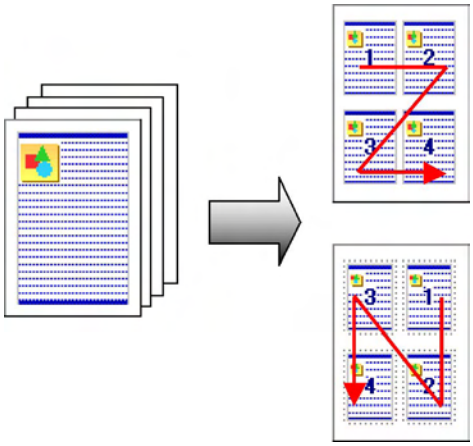
For instructions on borderless printing of photos and images at actual size, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Windows) (→P.430)
- Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Mac OS X) (→P.431)
- Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Mac OS 9) (→P.433)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet

To conserve paper, you can print several pages of the original on a single sheet by reducing the original and dividing the sheet into areas for each page.



Page Layout

Specify a number of pages of the original to print on a single sheet, in a layout of multiple pages per sheet.

Note

- You can print up to 16 pages of the original on a single sheet.
- You can also change the page layout order and print page boundary lines, as desired.

Important

- This function cannot be combined with the following options.
  - Borderless Printing
  - Scaling Originals (Windows)
  - Banner Printing (Windows)

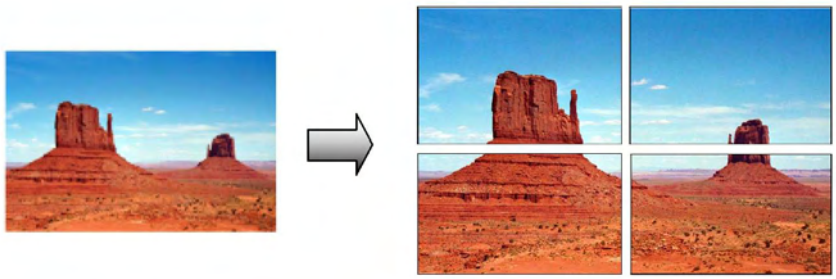
For instructions on printing multiple pages per sheet, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Windows) (→P.435)
- Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Mac OS X) (→P.437)
- Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Mac OS 9) (→P.440)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Posters in Sections

You can enlarge an original to print it in sections on several sheets. By assembling the printed sheets, you can create a poster larger than the maximum supported paper size of the printer.



Page Layout

Choose poster printing.
For instructions on printing large posters, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Large Posters (Windows) (→P.422)
- Printing Large Posters (Mac OS 9) (→P.424)

Note

- This method of poster printing is supported in Windows and Mac OS 9.

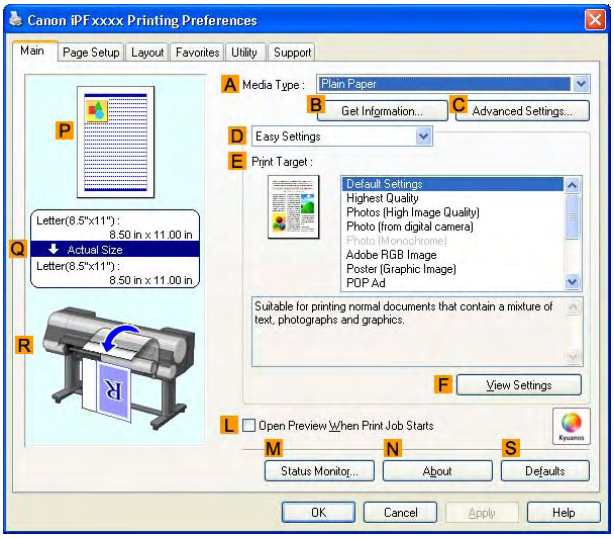
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Large Posters (Windows)

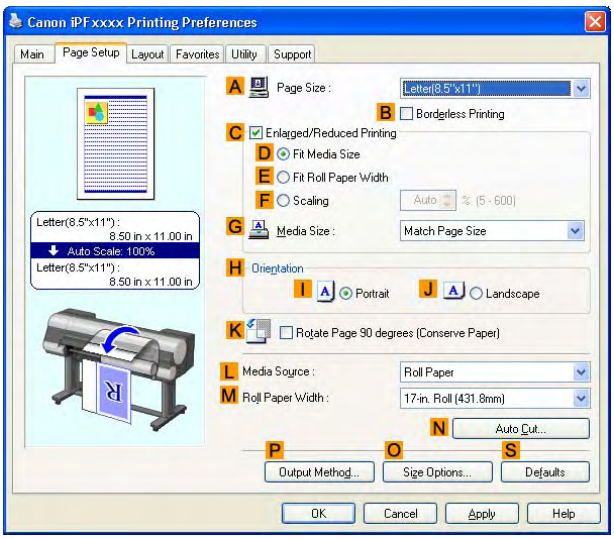
You can enlarge an original to print it in sections on several sheets. By assembling the printed sheets, you can create a poster larger than the maximum supported paper size of the printer. This topic describes how to enlarge an A2 original for printing it in sections on four sheets, based on the following example.

- Document: Poster
- Page size: A2 (420.0×594.0 mm [16.5 × 23.4 in])
- Paper: Sheets (**Manual**)
- Paper Type: Glossy Paper
- Paper size: A2 (420.0×594.0 mm [16.5 × 23.4 in])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.539)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

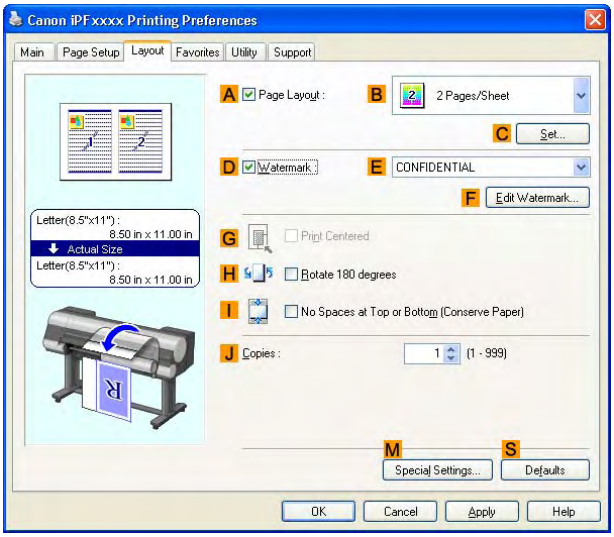


4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Glossy Paper.
5. Click **Poster (Photos)** or **Poster (Text, Illustrations)** in the E **Print Target** list.
6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

7. In A **Page Size**, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A2**.
8. Click **Manual** in the L **Media Source** list.
9. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



10. Select the A **Page Layout** check box.
11. Click **Poster (2 x 2)** in the B **Page Layout** list.

Note

- Follow the steps below to print only a portion of the poster as divided for printing.
  1. Click C **Set** under B **Page Layout** to display the **Pages to Print** dialog box.
  2. On the **Pages to Print** dialog box, clear the check boxes of the portion you do not want to print.
  3. Click **OK** to close the **Pages to Print** dialog box.

12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For instructions on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.509)

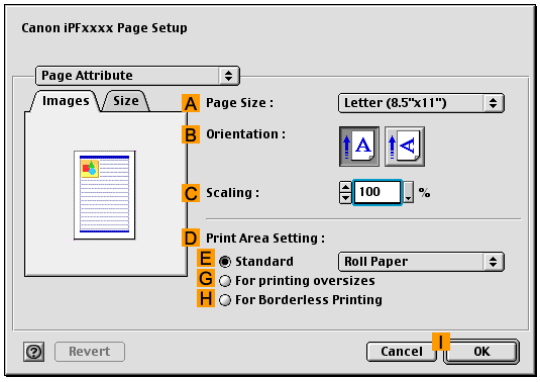
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Large Posters (Mac OS 9)

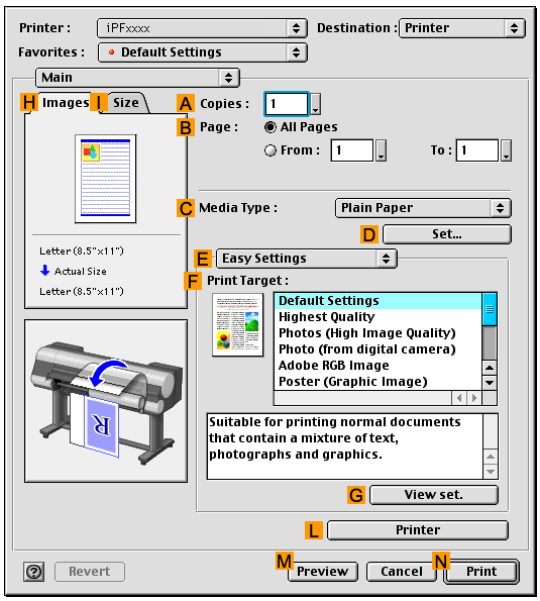
You can enlarge an original to print it in sections on several sheets. By assembling the printed sheets, you can create a poster larger than the maximum supported paper size of the printer. This topic describes how to enlarge an A2 original for printing it in sections on four sheets, based on the following example.

- Document: Poster
- Page size: A2 (420.0 × 594.0 mm [16.5 × 23.4 in])
- Paper: Sheets
- Paper type: Glossy Photo Paper
- Paper size: A2 (420.0 × 594.0 mm [16.5 × 23.4 in])

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



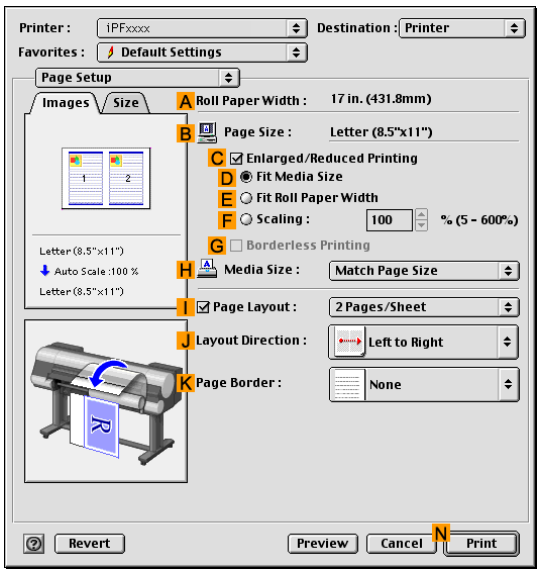
3. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A2**.
4. In D **Print Area Setting**, click E **Standard**.
5. Click **Cut Sheet** in the E **Standard** list.
6. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
7. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
8. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



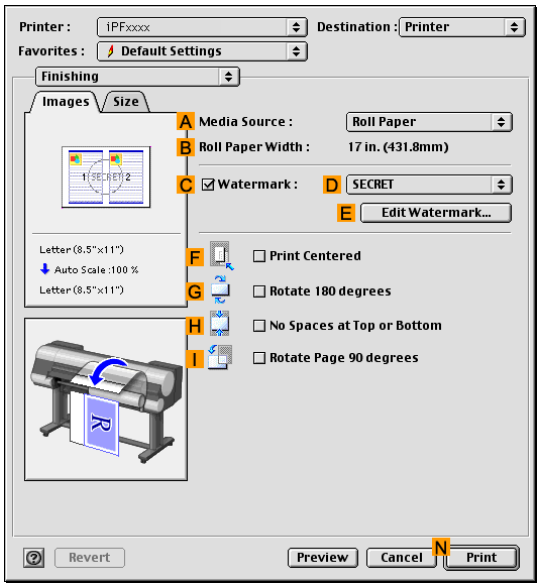
9. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Glossy Photo Paper.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

10. After confirming that E **Easy Settings** is selected, click **Poster (Graphic Image)** in the F **Print Target** list.
11. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



12. Select the I **Page Layout** check box.
13. Click **Poster (2 x 2)** in the I **Page Layout** list.
14. In the **Pages to Print** dialog box, clear the check boxes of any portion you do not want to print.
15. Access the **Finishing** pane.



16. Click **Cut Sheet** in the A **Media Source** list.
17. Confirm the print settings, and then click N **Print** to start printing.

Note

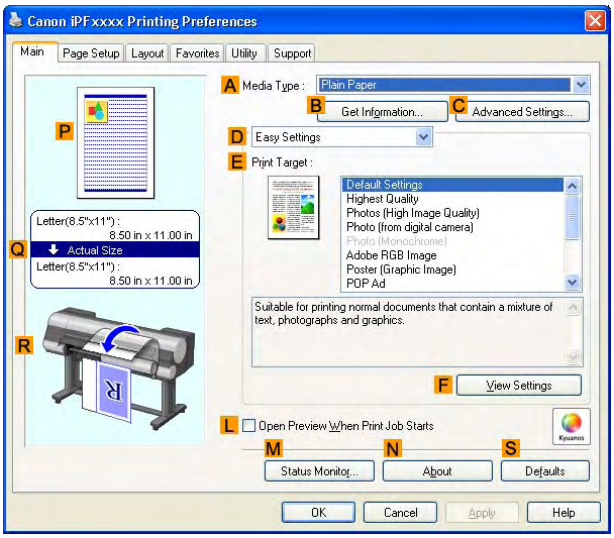
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.585)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

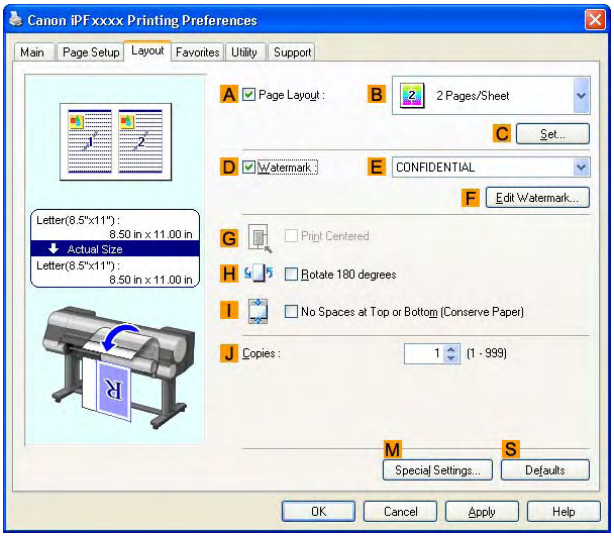
Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Windows)

This topic describes how to arrange multiple originals using the Free Layout function.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (→P.539)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



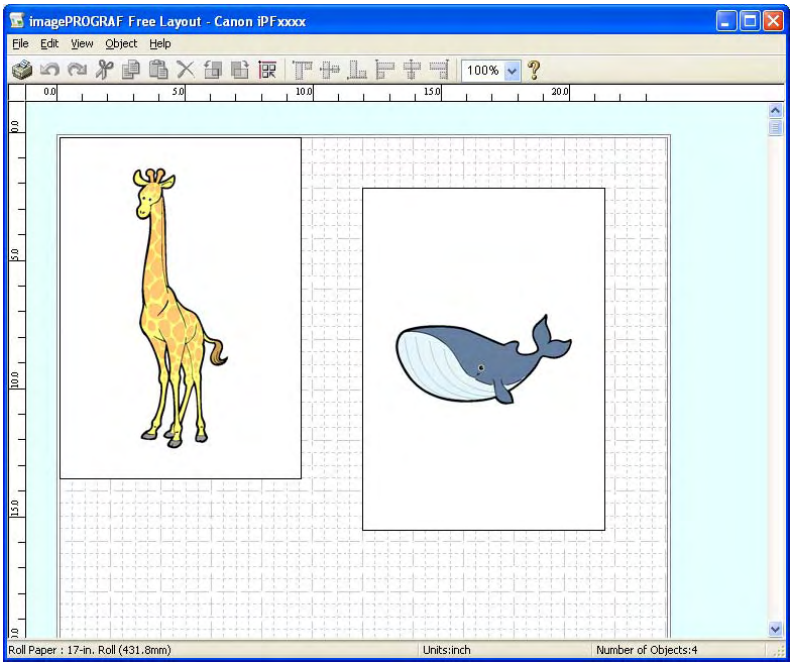
4. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



5. Select the A **Page Layout** check box.
6. Click **Free Layout** in the B **Page Layout** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

7. When you attempt to print, the imagePROGRAF Free Layout window is displayed. (At this point, the document will not be printed yet.)



8. Edit and rearrange the image in the imagePROGRAF Free Layout window as desired.

Important

- Without closing the imagePROGRAF Free Layout window, repeat steps 1-7 to arrange originals from multiple applications on the same page.

Note

- For instructions on editing and rearranging images, refer to the imagePROGRAF Free Layout help topic.

9. Print from the imagePROGRAF Free Layout menu.

Note

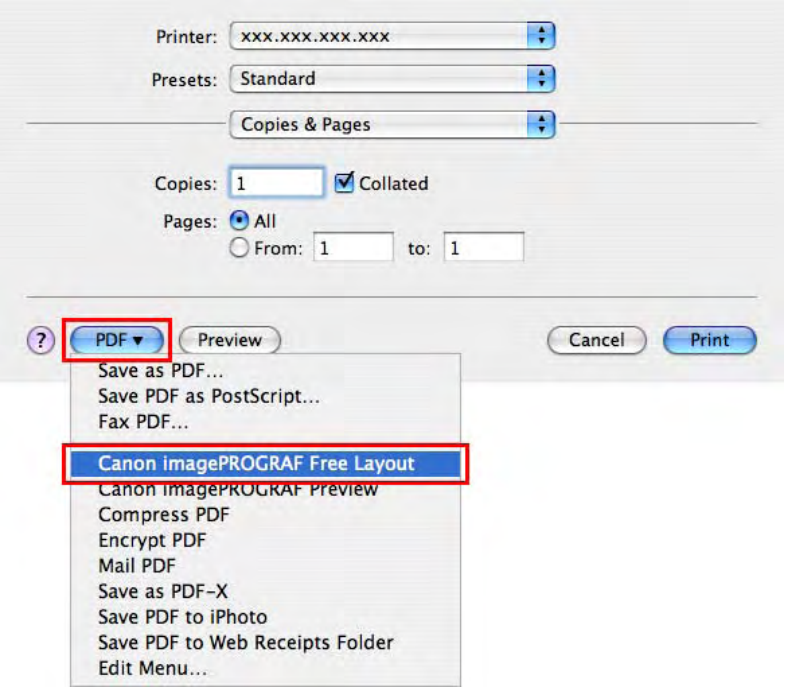
- For details on imagePROGRAF Free Layout functions, refer to Free Layout Guide .

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

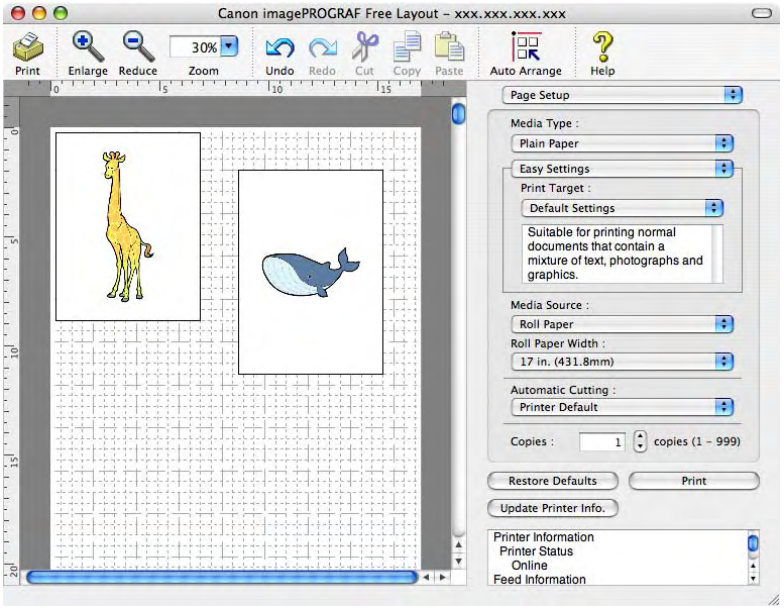
Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to use the **Free Layout** function to arrange multiple originals next to each other before printing.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Click **PDF** and select **Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout**.



3. The **Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout** window is displayed.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

4. Edit and rearrange the image in the **Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout** window as desired.

Important

- Without closing the **Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout** window, repeat steps 1-7 to arrange originals from multiple applications on the same page.

Note

- For instructions on editing and rearranging images, refer to the **Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout** help topic.

5. Print from the **Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout** menu.

Note

- For details on **Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout** functions, refer to Free Layout Guide .

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

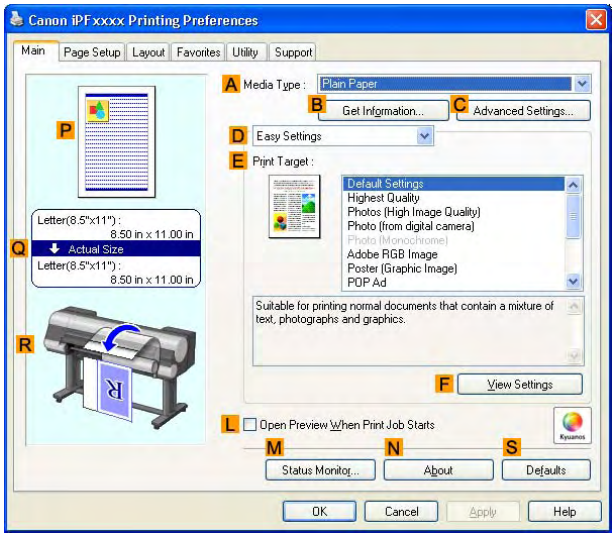
Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Windows)

This topic describes how to print multiple pages as a single continuous image, without margins between pages.

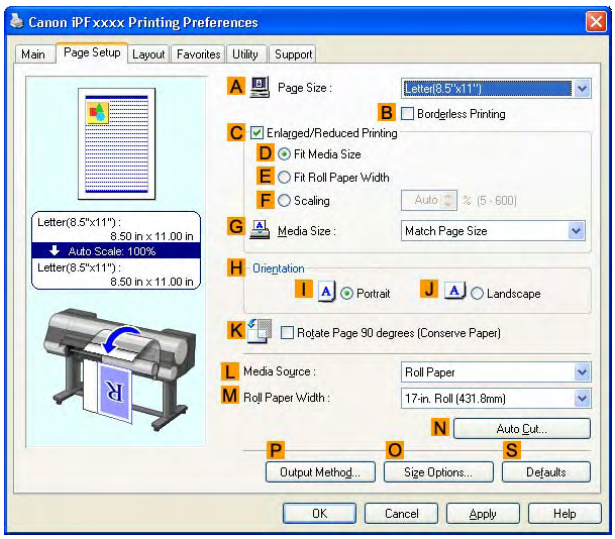
Important

- This feature is only available with rolls. It cannot be used when printing on sheets.
- During banner printing, settings for conserving paper, number of copies, borderless printing, enlargement or reduction, and other layout-related settings are disregarded.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.539)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the A **Media Type** list, click the type of paper that is loaded.
5. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



6. Click **Roll Paper (Banner)** in the L **Media Source** list.
7. Confirm the print settings and start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.509)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

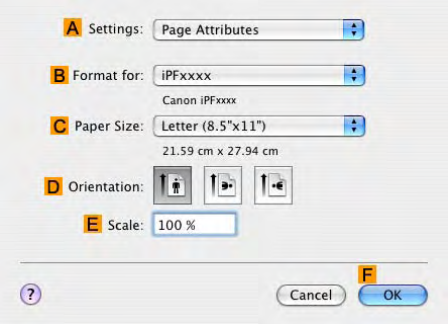
Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to print multiple pages as a single continuous image, without margins between pages.

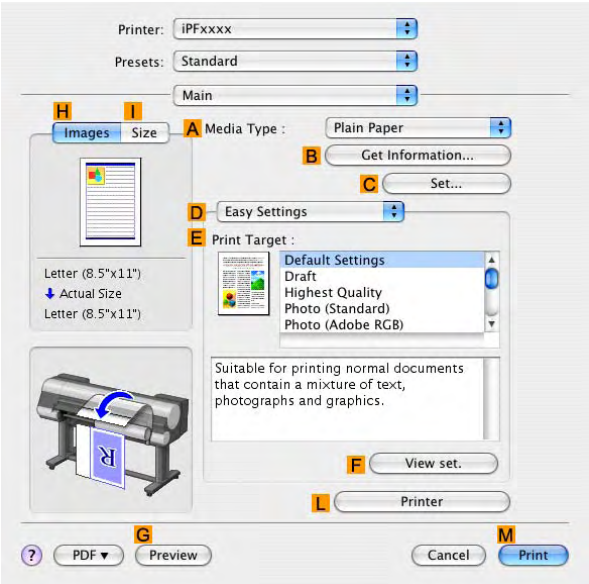
Important

- This feature is only available with rolls. It cannot be used when printing on sheets.
- During banner printing, settings for conserving paper, number of copies, borderless printing, enlargement or reduction, and other layout-related settings are disregarded.

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



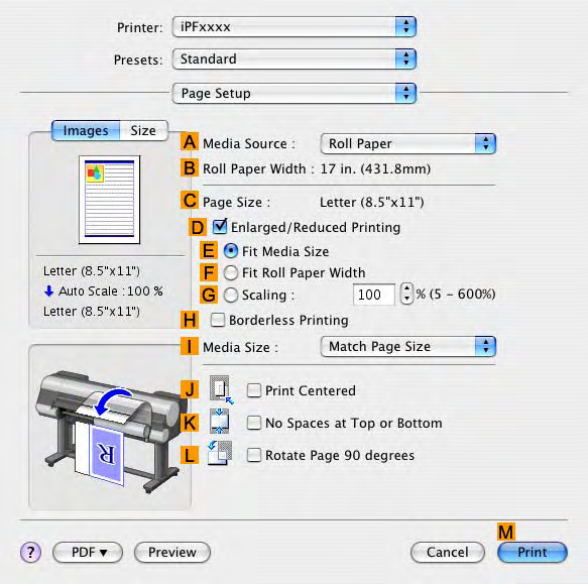
2. Select the printer in the **B Format for** list.
3. Click the original size in the **C Paper Size** list.
4. Click **F OK** to close the dialog box.
5. In the source application menu, choose **Print**.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the **A Media Type** list, click the type of paper that is loaded.
8. Make your selection in the **E Print Target** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



10. Click **Roll Paper (Banner)** in the **A Media Source** list.

11. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.559)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

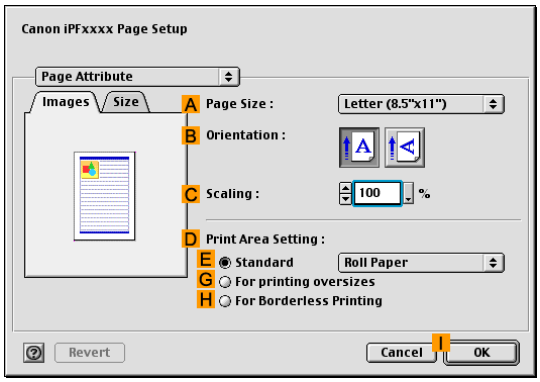
Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Mac OS 9)

This topic describes how to print multiple pages as a single continuous image, without margins between pages.

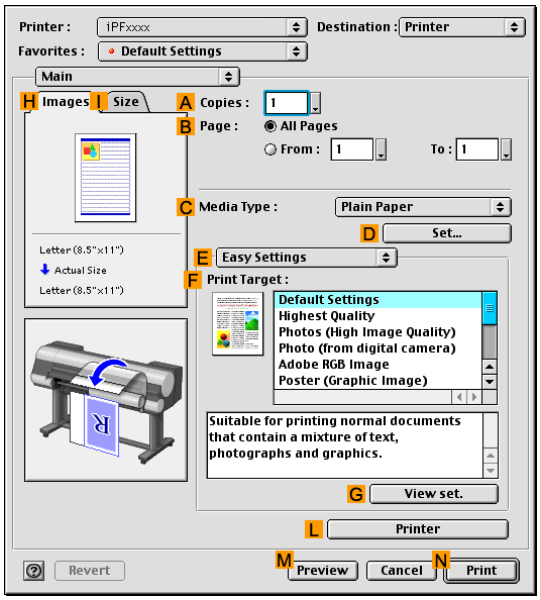
Important

- This feature is only available with rolls. It cannot be used when printing on sheets.
- During banner printing, settings for conserving paper, number of copies, borderless printing, enlargement or reduction, and other layout-related settings are disregarded.

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



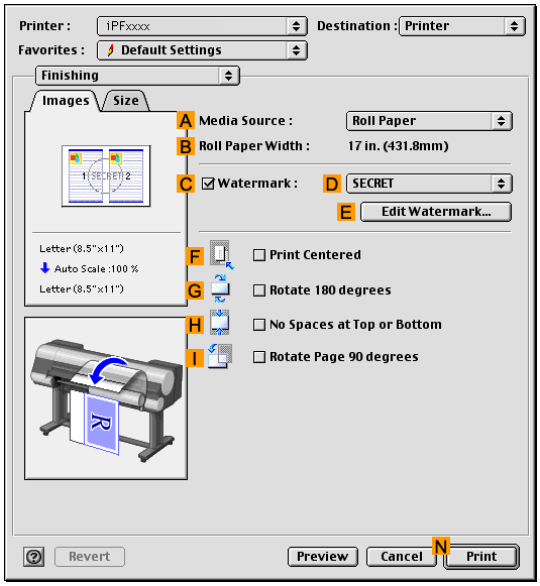
3. Click the original size in the A **Page Size** list.
4. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. In the source application menu, choose **Print**.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



7. In the C **Media Type** list, click the type of paper that is loaded.
8. Make your selection in the F **Print Target** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

9. Access the **Finishing** pane.



10. Click **Roll Paper (Banner)** in the A **Media Source** list.

11. Confirm the print settings, and then click N **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.585)

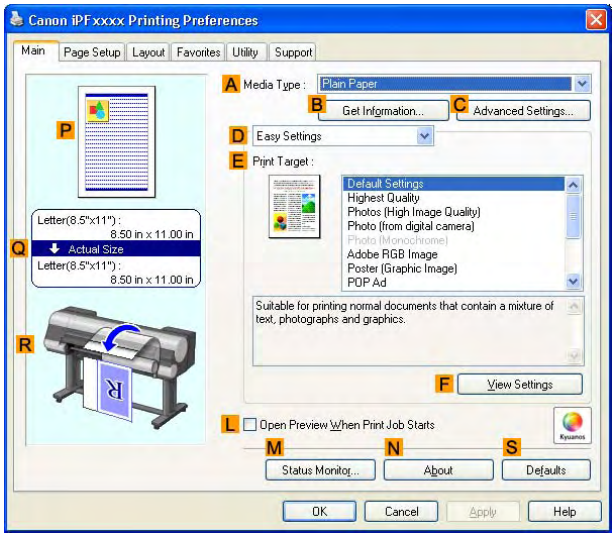
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Windows)

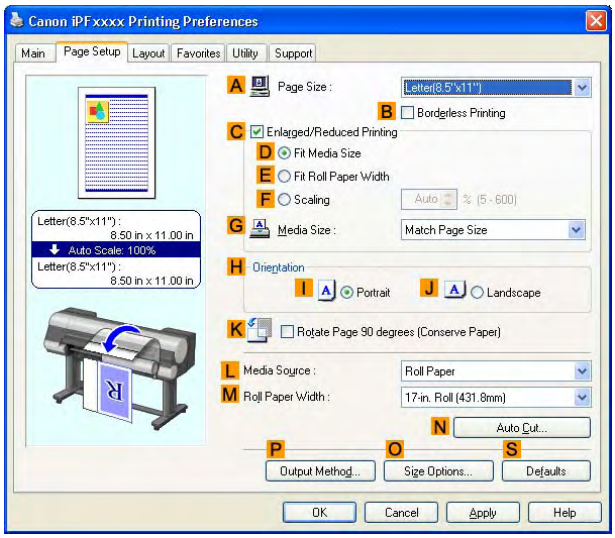
This topic describes how to print four pages of originals together on a single sheet based on the following example.

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A3 (297.0×420.0 mm [11.7×16.5 in])
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (→P.539)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



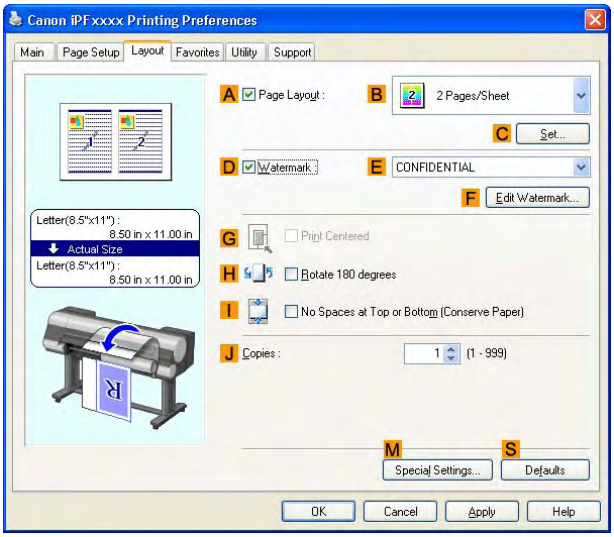
4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Select the printing application in the E **Print Target** list.
6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In A **Page Size**, click the size of the original as specified in the application software. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

8. Click **Roll Paper** in the **L** **Media Source** list.
9. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **M** **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**.
10. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



11. Select the **A** **Page Layout** check box.
12. Click **4 Pages/Sheet** in the **B** **Page Layout** list.

Note

- You can select the layout order for placing four pages on a sheet and a frame border in the **Page Layout Printing** dialog box by clicking **C** **Set**.

13. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.509)

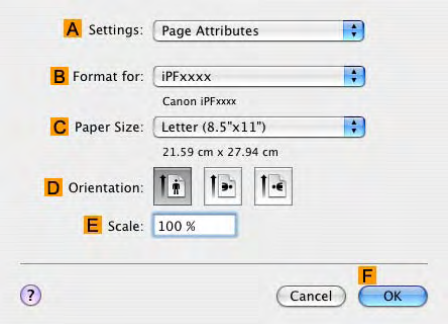
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Mac OS X)

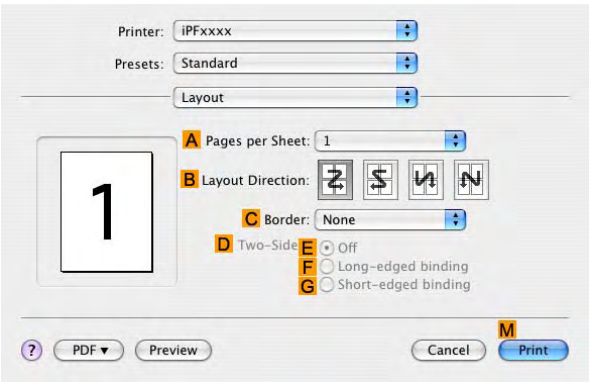
This topic describes how to print four pages of originals together on a single sheet based on the following example.

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A3 (297.0 × 420.0 mm [11.7 × 16.5 in])
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In the C **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A3**.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Layout** pane.



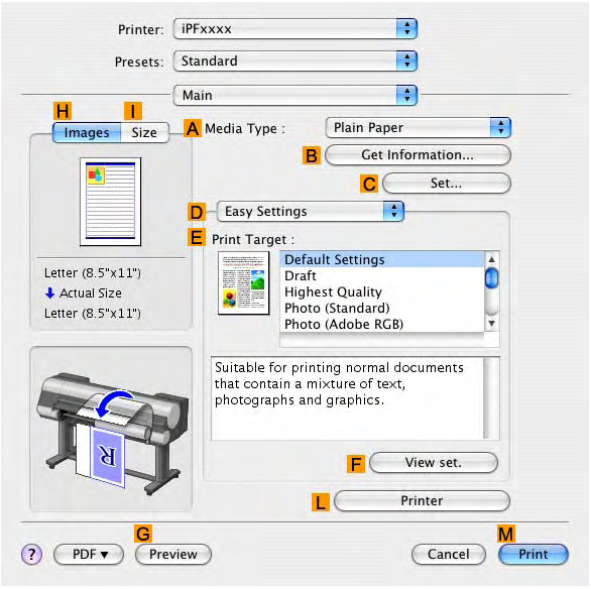
7. Click **4** in the A **Pages per Sheet** list.

Note

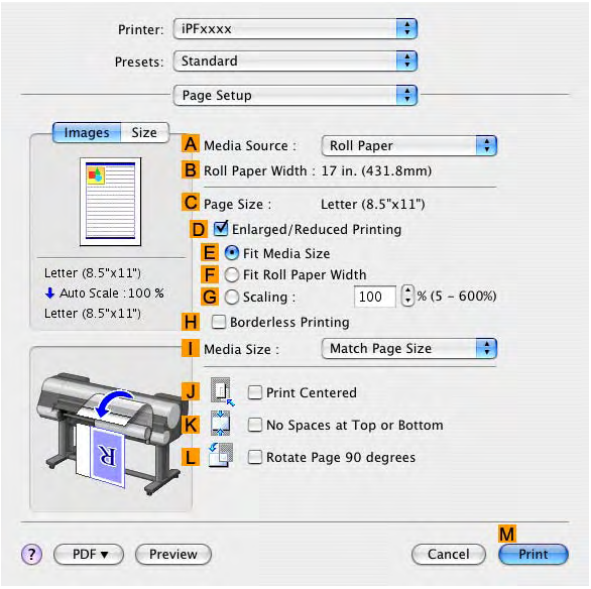
- You can choose the layout order and specify a boundary line for the four pages in B **Layout Direction** and C **Border** (or **Border**).

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

8. Access the **Main** pane.



9. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
10. Select the printing application in the E **Print Target** list.
11. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



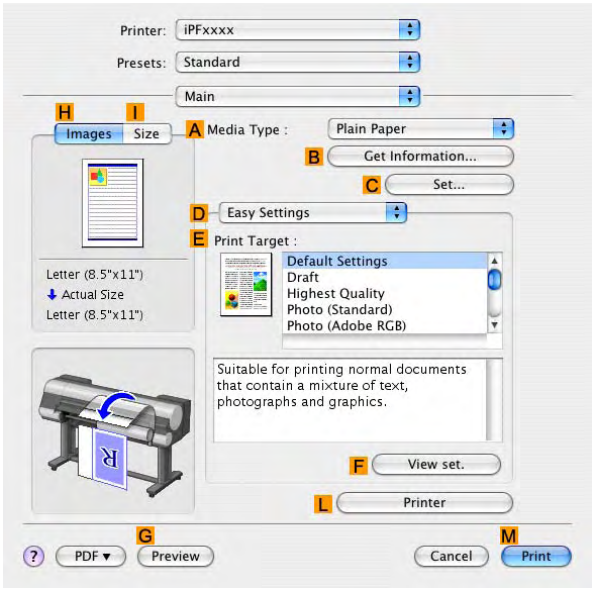
12. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

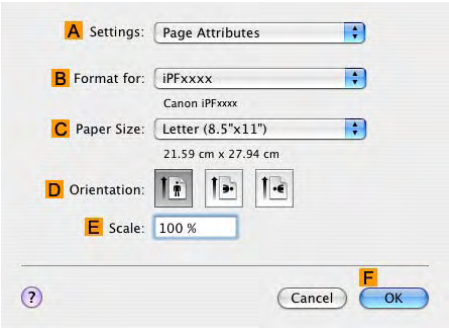
13. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B** **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in **B** **Roll Paper Width**, click **L** **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



14. Make sure **C** **Page Size** shows the original size as specified in **C** **Paper Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A3**.



15. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M** **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.559)

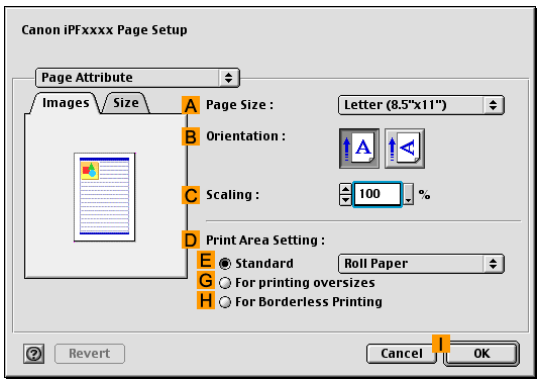
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Mac OS 9)

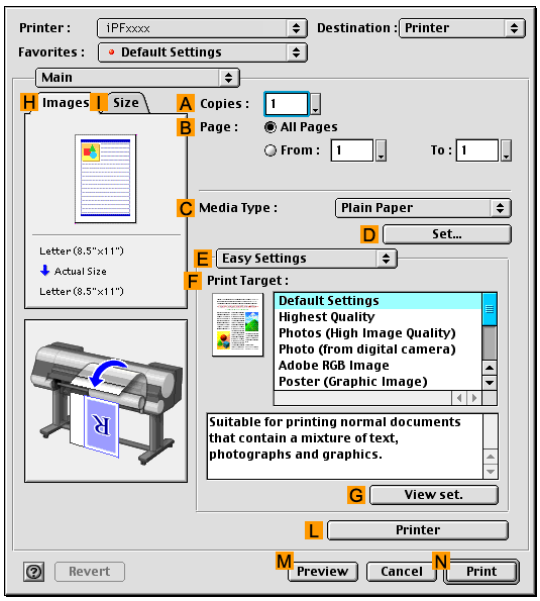
This topic describes how to print four pages of originals together on a single sheet based on the following example.

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A3 (297.0 × 420.0 mm [11.7 × 16.5 in])
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



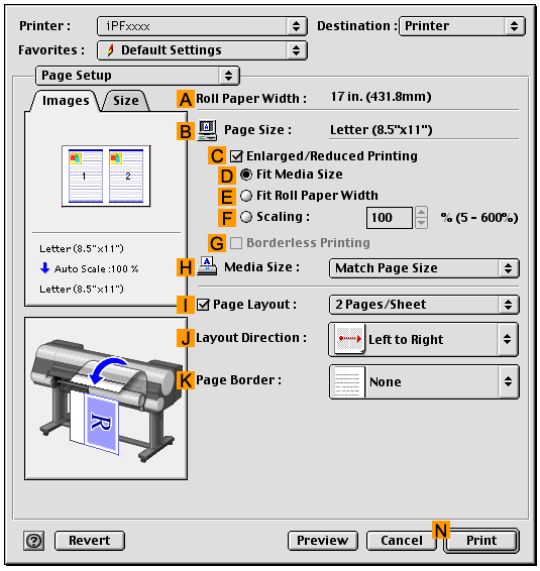
3. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A3**.
4. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



7. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. Select the print target in the F **Print Target** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



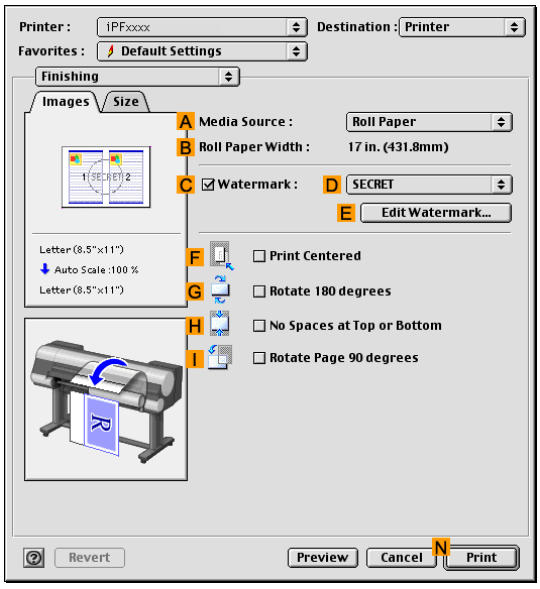
10. Select the **I** **Page Layout** check box.

11. Click **4 Pages/Sheet** in the **I** **Page Layout** list.

Note

- You can choose the layout order and specify a boundary line for the four pages in **J** **Layout Direction** and **K** **Page Border**.

12. Access the **Finishing** pane.



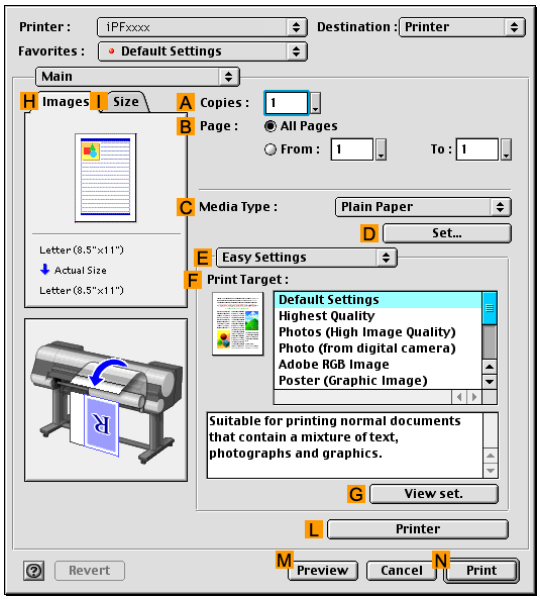
13. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A** **Media Source** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

14. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the B **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



15. Confirm the print settings, and then click N **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.585)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Centering originals

Printing Originals Centered on Rolls

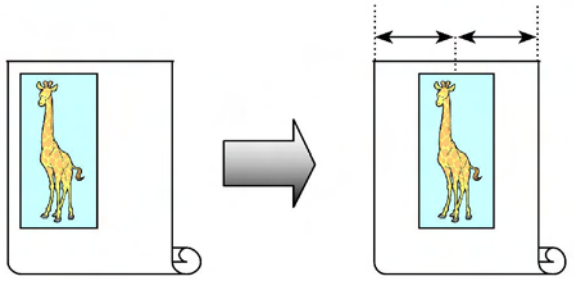
You can print originals centered on a page-for example, if the paper is larger than the original, or if you are reducing the original.

Centering originals relative to roll paper width

If you use originals smaller than the roll paper width, you can center them relative to the width when printing.

Print Centered

Aligns the center of the original with the center of the roll, relative to the width.



For instructions on centering originals when printing on rolls, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Windows) (→P.445)
- Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Mac OS X) (→P.447)
- Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Mac OS 9) (→P.450)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Originals Centered on Sheets

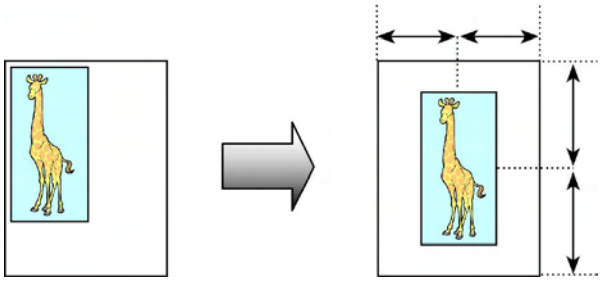
You can print originals centered on a page-for example, if the paper is larger than the original, or if you are reducing the original.

Centering originals on sheets

If you use paper larger than the original size or print originals after reduction, the printed images may be aligned in the upper-left corner of the paper. In this case, you can center originals on sheets when printing.

Print Centered

Aligns the center of the original with the center of the sheet.



For instructions on centering originals when printing on sheets, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Windows) (→P.453)
- Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Mac OS X) (→P.455)
- Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Mac OS 9) (→P.457)

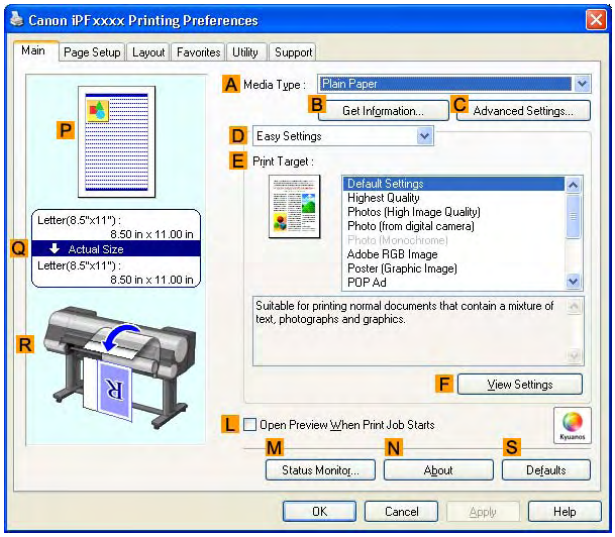
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Windows)

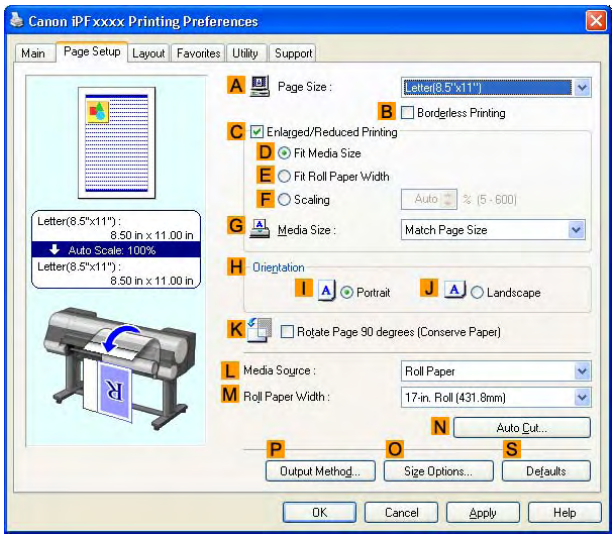
This topic describes how to center originals before printing on rolls based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.539)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



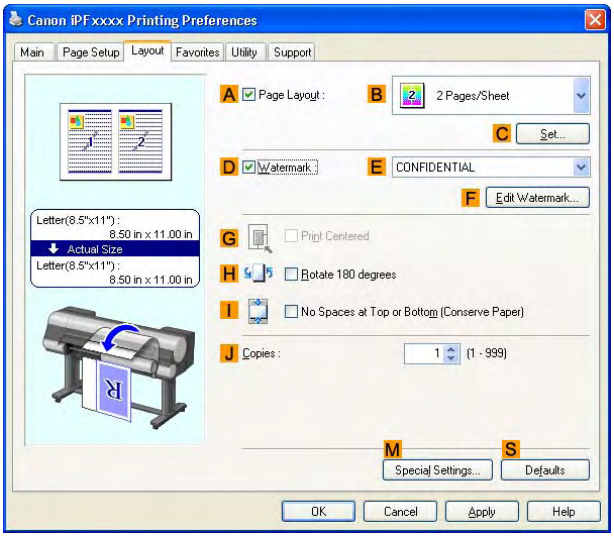
4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Select the print target in the E **Print Target** list.
6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

8. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Media Source** list.
9. Select the width of the loaded roll in the M **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A3/A4 Roll (297.0mm)**.
10. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



11. Select the G **Print Centered** check box.
12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.509)

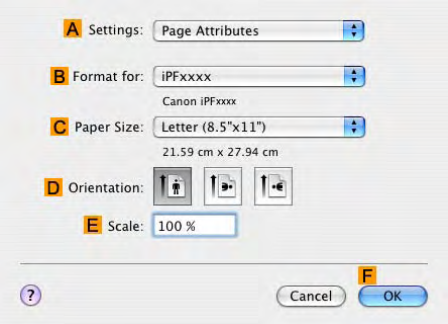
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Mac OS X)

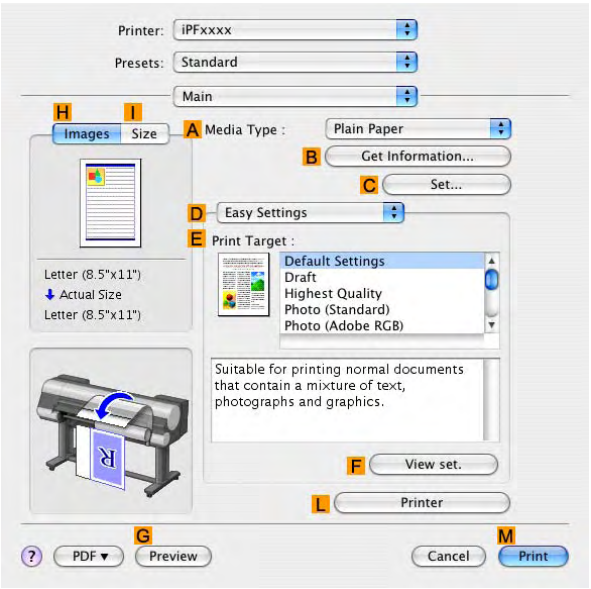
This topic describes how to center originals before printing on rolls based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A3/A4 roll (297.00 mm [11.7 in])

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



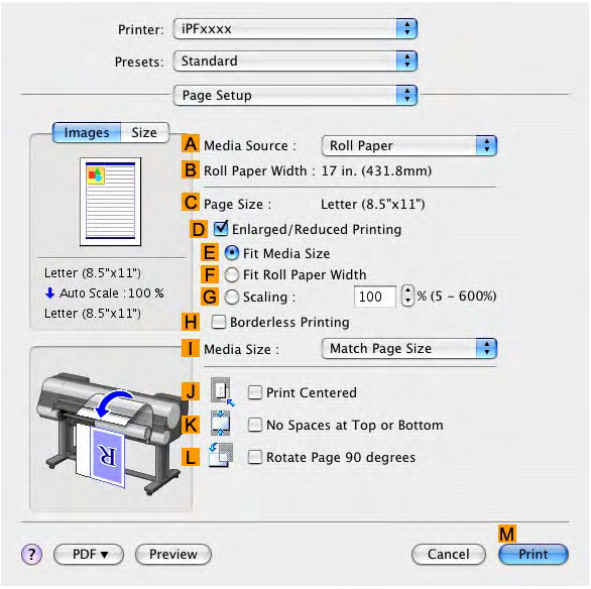
2. Select the print target in the B **Format for** list.
3. In C **Paper Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. Select the print target in the E **Print Target** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.

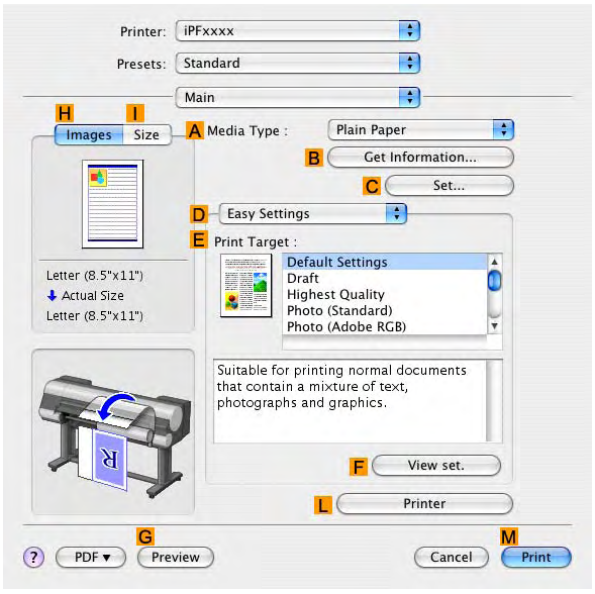


10. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A Media Source** list.

11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **10-in. Roll**.

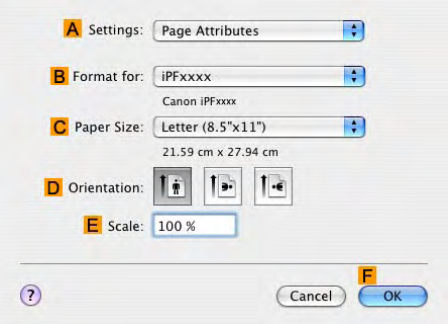
Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in **B Roll Paper Width**, click **L Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

12. Make sure the C **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



13. Select the J **Print Centered** check box.

14. Confirm the print settings, and click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.559)

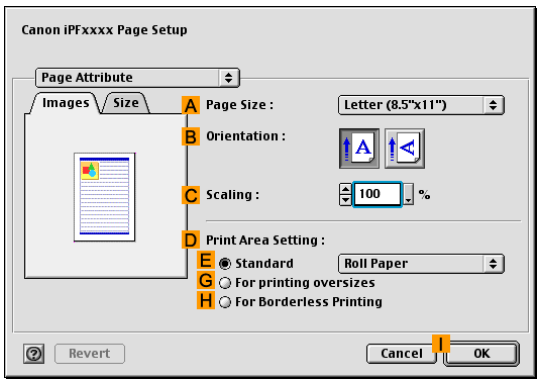
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Mac OS 9)

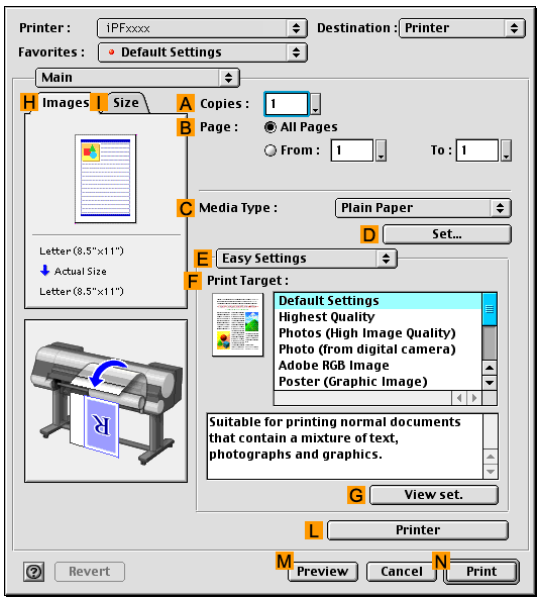
This topic describes how to center originals before printing on rolls based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in])

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



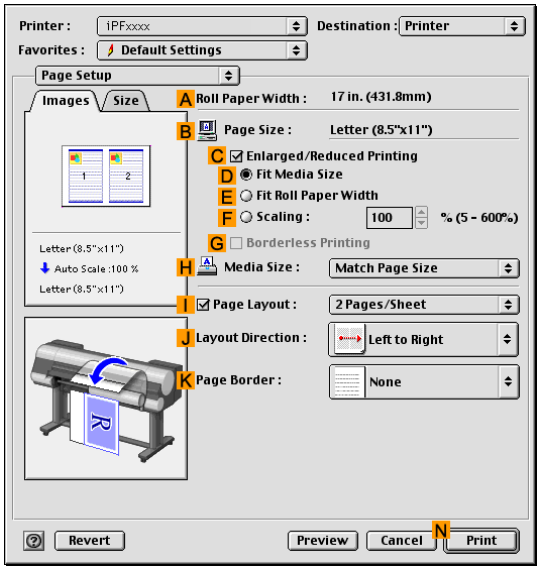
3. In A **Page Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



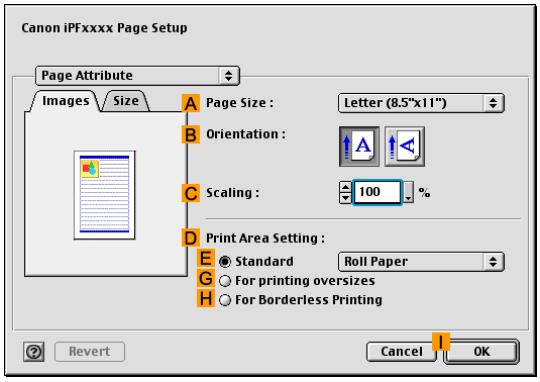
7. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. Select the print target in the F **Print Target** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

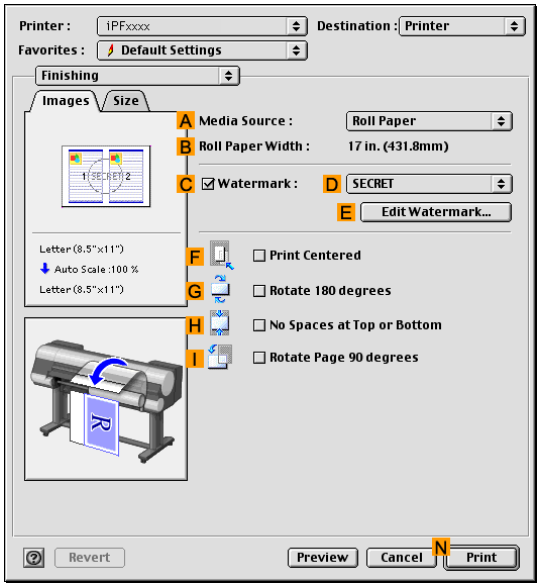
9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



10. Make sure the **B** **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **A** **Page Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



11. Access the **Finishing** pane.

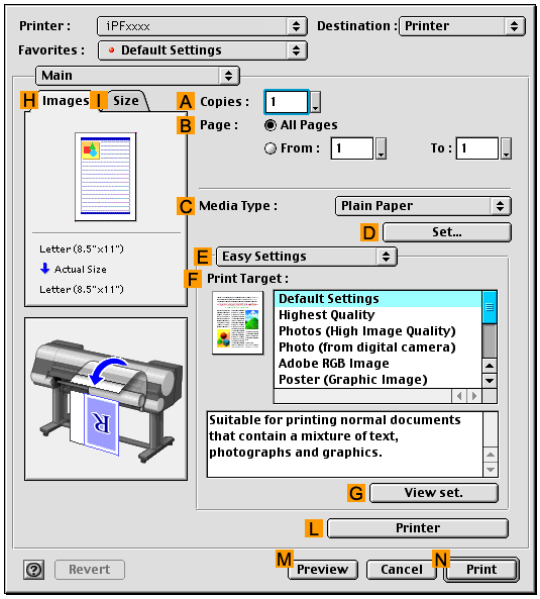


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

12. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.
13. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in B **Roll Paper Width** -in this case, **ISO A3/A4 (297.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



14. Select the F **Print Centered** check box.
15. Confirm the print settings, and click N **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.585)

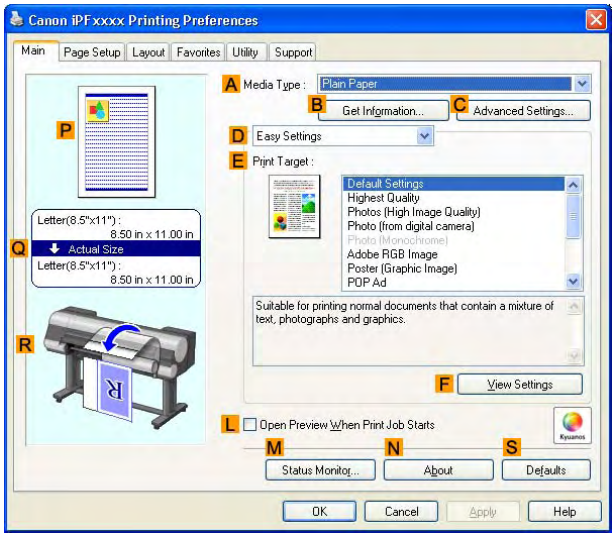
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Windows)

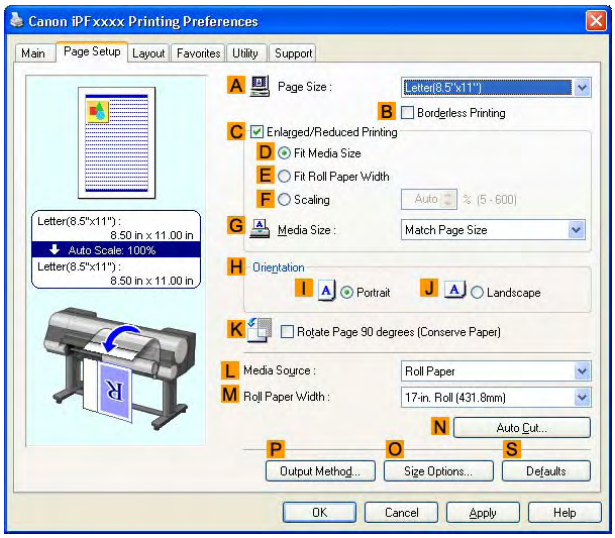
This topic describes how to reduce an original 50% for printing centered on a sheet.

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Sheets
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (→P.539)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



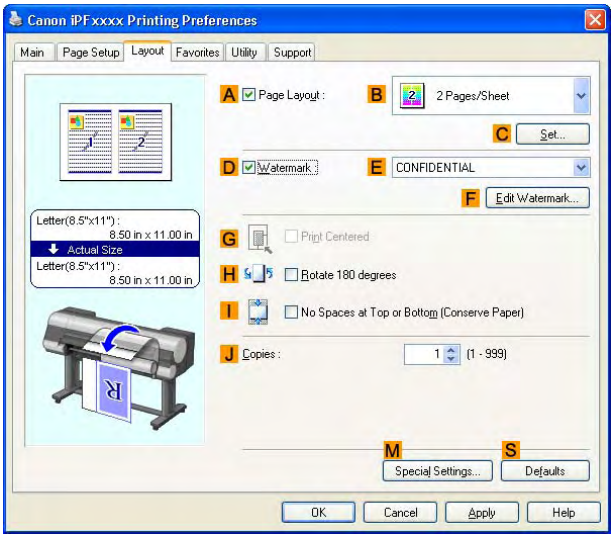
4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Select the printing application in the E **Print Target** list.
6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

8. Select the C **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.
9. Click **Match Page Size** in the G **Media Size** list.
10. Click F **Scaling** and enter “50.”
11. Click **Cut Sheet** in the L **Media Source** list.
12. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



13. Select the G **Print Centered** check box.
14. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.509)

Important

- If you have selected **Cut Sheet** as the media source, follow the instructions on the printer control panel to enter the paper size.

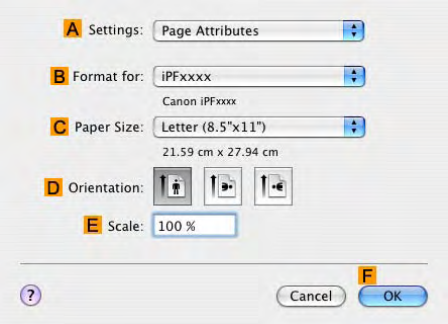
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Mac OS X)

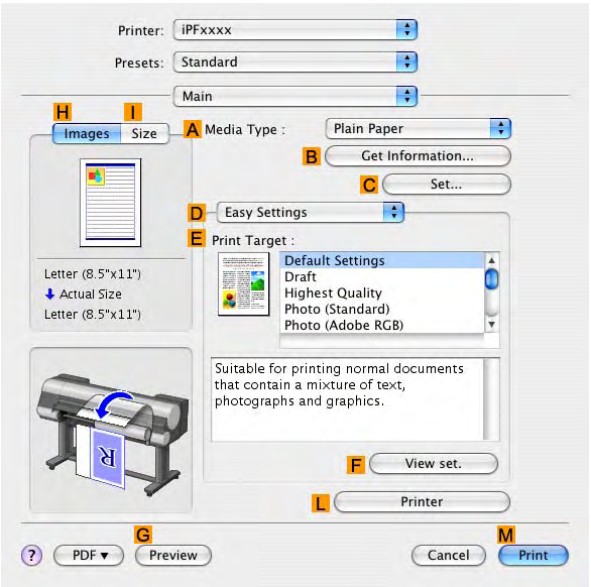
This topic describes how to center originals for printing on sheets, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4/Letter
- Paper: Sheets
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: Non-standard

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



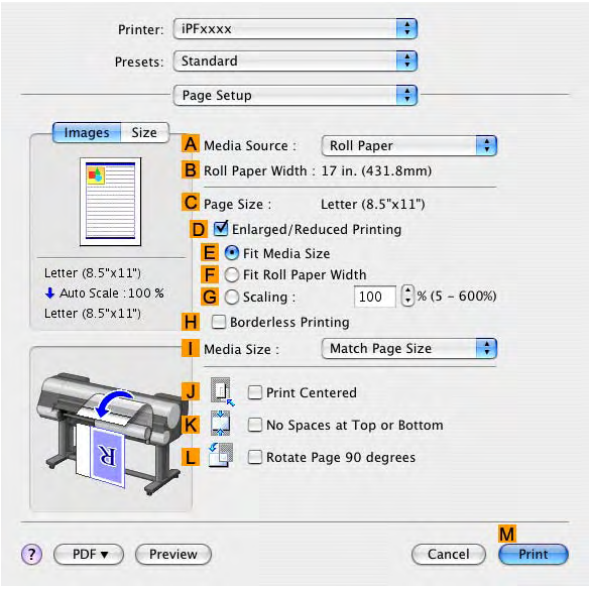
2. In the C **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
3. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
4. In the application software menu, choose **Print**.
5. Access the **Main** pane.



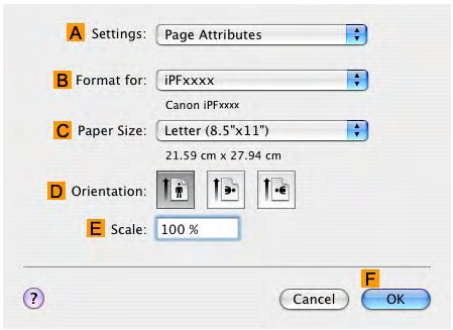
6. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
7. Select the printing application in the E **Print Target** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

8. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



9. Click **Cut Sheet** in the A **Media Source** list.
10. Make sure C **Page Size** shows the original size as specified in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



11. Select the J **Print Centered** check box.
12. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.559)

Important

- If you have selected **Cut Sheet** as the media source, follow the instructions on the printer control panel to enter the paper size.

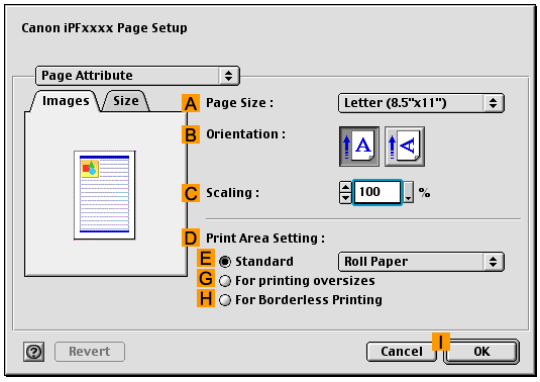
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Mac OS 9)

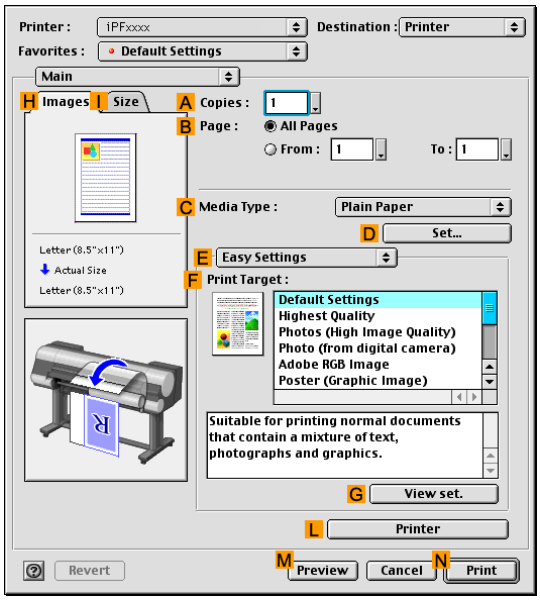
This topic describes how to center originals for printing on sheets, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4/Letter
- Paper: Sheets (**Manual**)
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: Non-standard

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the source application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



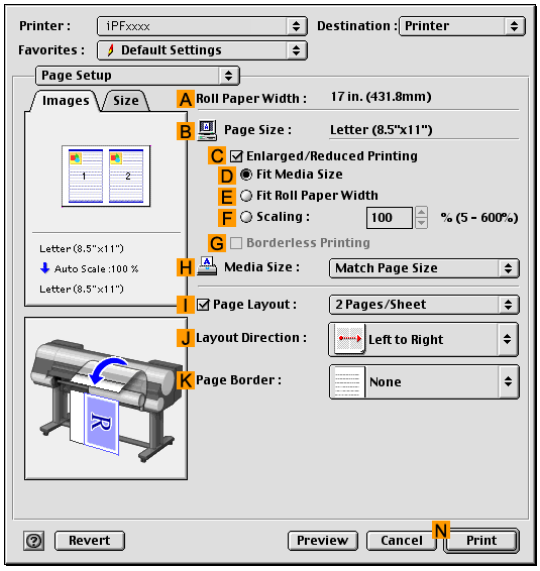
2. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
3. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
4. In the source application menu, choose **Print**.
5. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



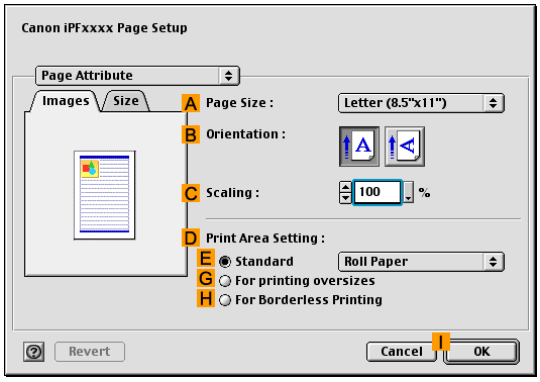
6. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
7. Select the printing application in the F **Print Target** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

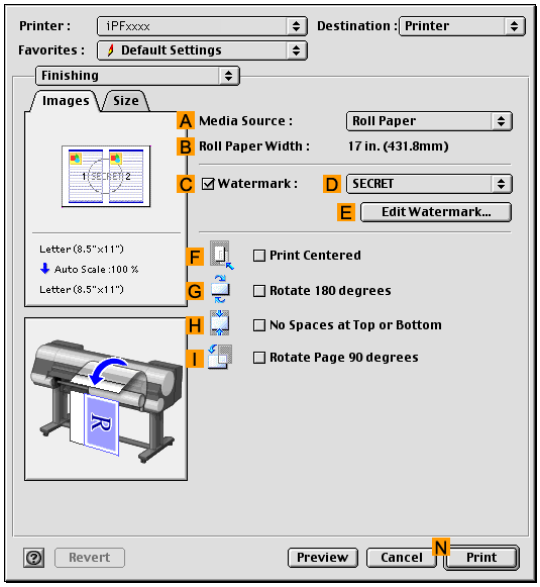
8. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



9. Make sure **B** **Page Size** shows the original size as specified in **Page Setup** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



10. Access the **Finishing** pane.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

11. Click **Cut Sheet** in the A **Media Source** list.
12. Select the F **Print Centered** check box.
13. Confirm the print settings, and then click N **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.585)

Important

- If you have selected **Cut Sheet** as the media source, follow the instructions on the printer control panel to enter the paper size.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

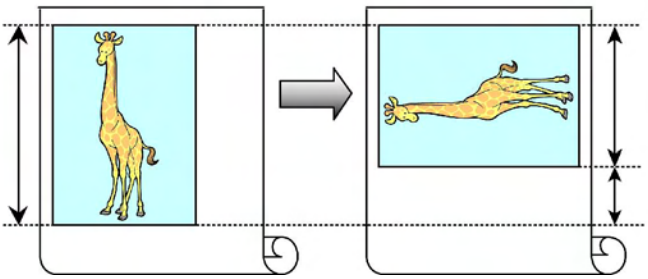
Conserving roll paper

Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees

You can conserve roll paper by specifying particular settings as suitable for your original.

Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)

When originals are printed in portrait orientation, the original is rotated 90 degrees before printing if it fits within the roll width. This enables you to conserve paper.



Important

- If the page would exceed the roll paper width after rotation, use this function with Scale to fit Roll Paper Width to print rotated pages.

For tips on conserving roll paper, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Windows) (→P.469)
- Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Mac OS X) (→P.471)
- Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Mac OS 9) (→P.474)

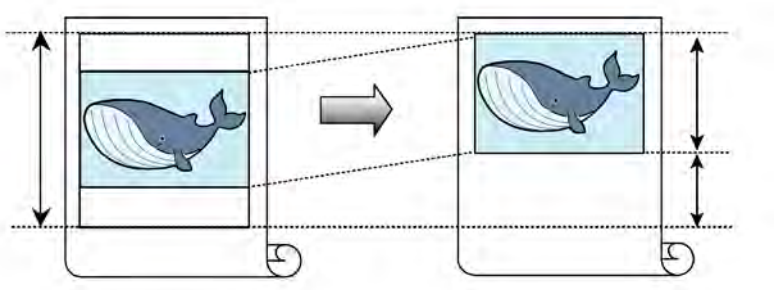
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins

You can conserve roll paper by specifying particular settings as suitable for your original.

No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)

You can print without feeding the paper for blank portions of originals if there are top and bottom margins in originals. This enables you to conserve as much paper as the size of the margins.



Important

- Printing without the top and bottom margins is not supported in the following cases.
  - Banner printing
  - If you have chosen poster as the type of page layout

Note

- Even during borderless printing, you can print without the top and bottom margins.
- Printing without the top and bottom margins may cause inconsistency in the size of printed documents, depending on the layout of images or text in your originals.

For tips on conserving roll paper, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Windows) (→P.462)
- Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Mac OS X) (→P.464)
- Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Mac OS 9) (→P.467)

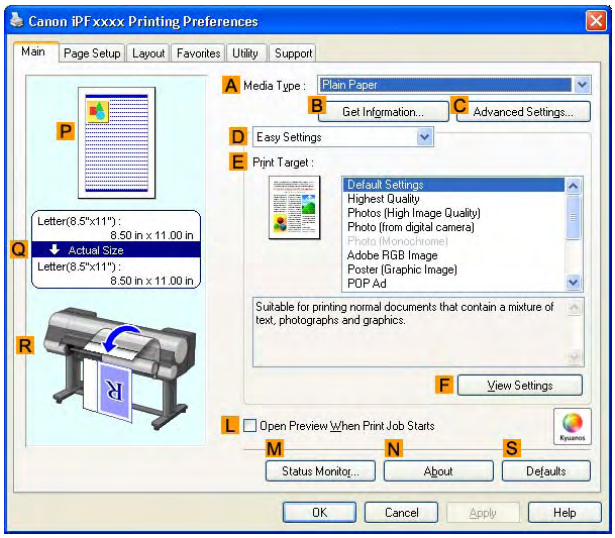
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Windows)

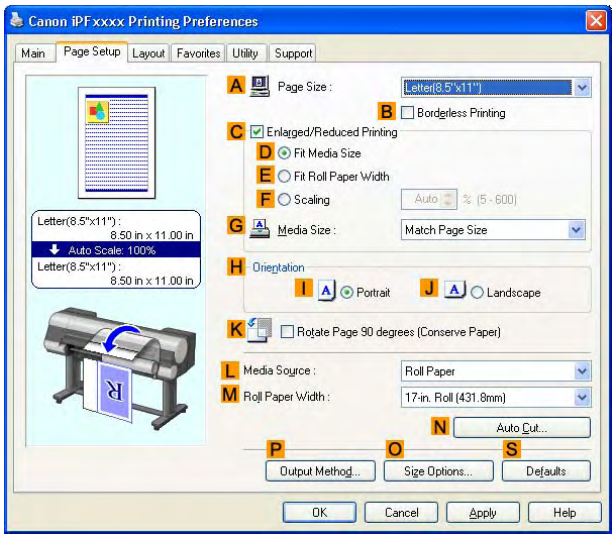
This topic describes how to conserve roll paper when printing originals that have a top and bottom margin, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.539)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

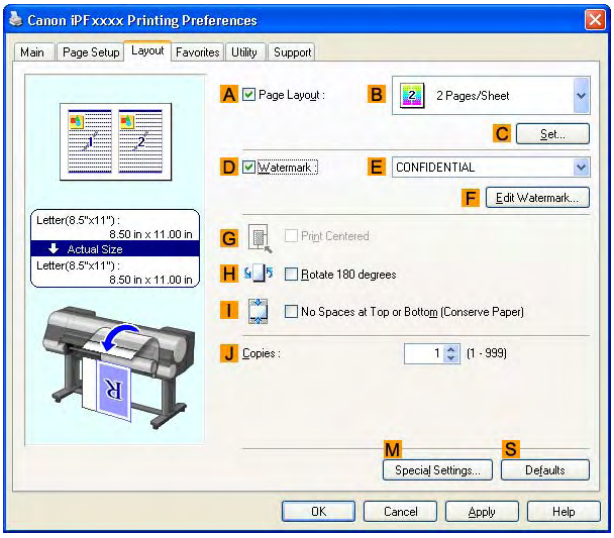


4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

6. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.
7. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Media Source** list.
8. Select the width of the loaded roll in the M **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A3/A4 Roll (297.0mm)**.
9. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



10. Select the I **No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)** check box.
11. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.509)

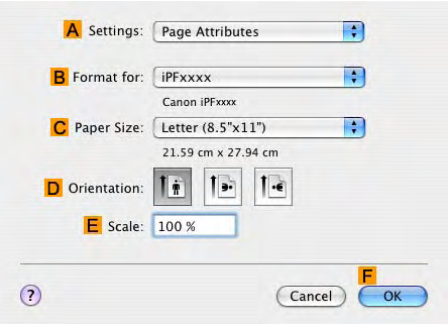
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Mac OS X)

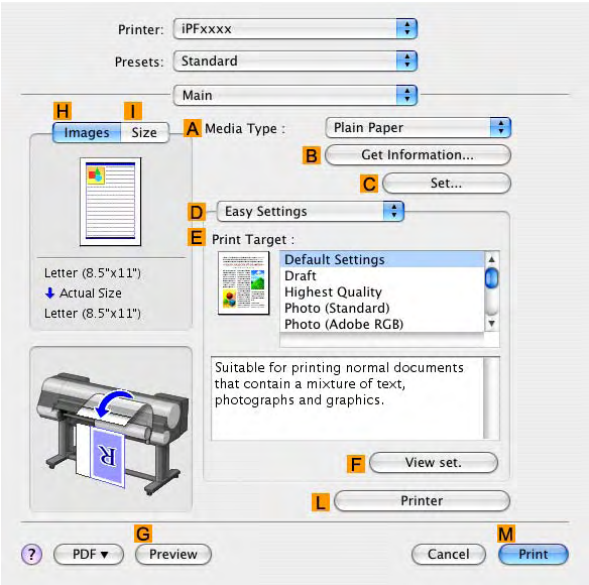
This topic describes how to conserve roll paper when printing originals that have a top and bottom margin, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in])

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



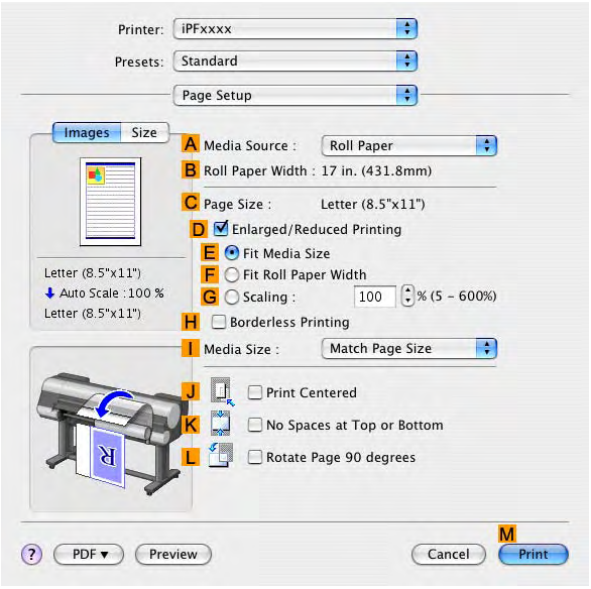
2. Select the print target in the B **Format for** list.
3. In C **Paper Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

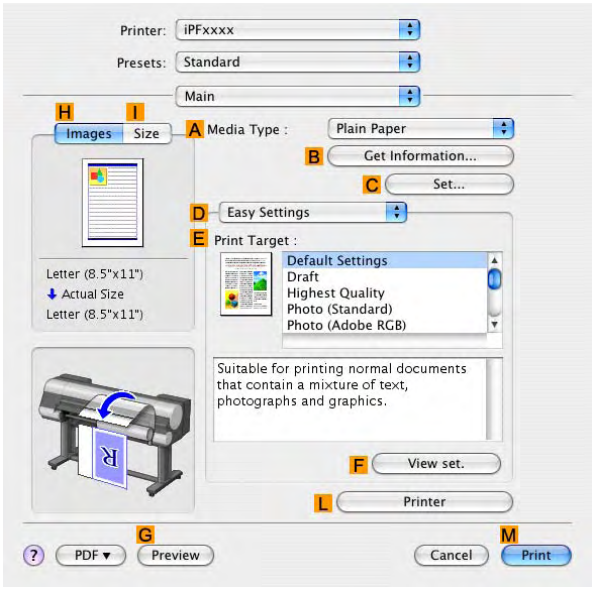
8. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



9. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.
10. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in B **Roll Paper Width** -in this case, **ISO A3/A4 (297.0mm)**.

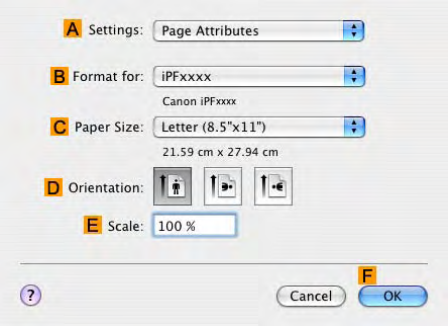
Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

11. Make sure the C **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



12. Select the K **No Spaces at Top or Bottom** check box.

13. Confirm the print settings, and click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.559)

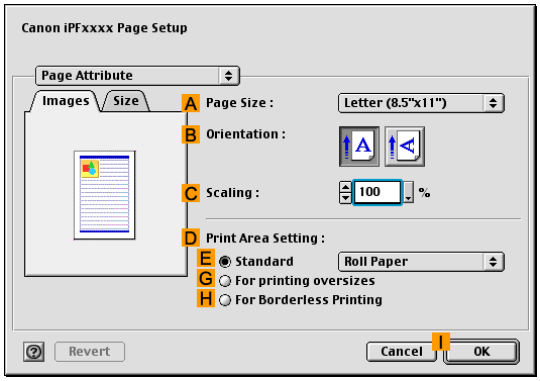
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Mac OS 9)

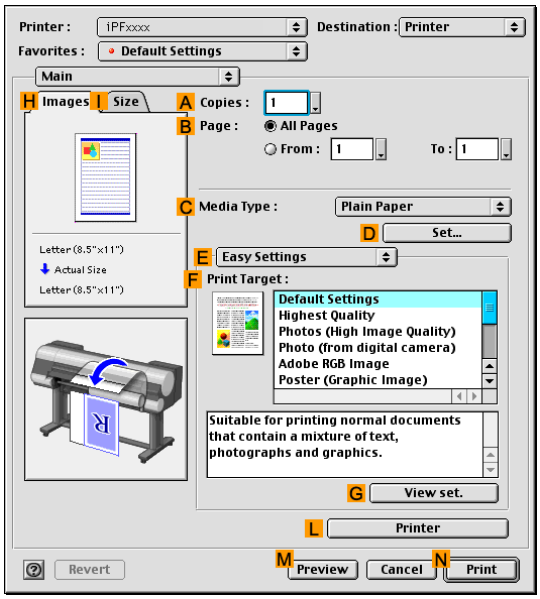
This topic describes how to conserve roll paper when printing originals that have a top and bottom margin, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in])

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



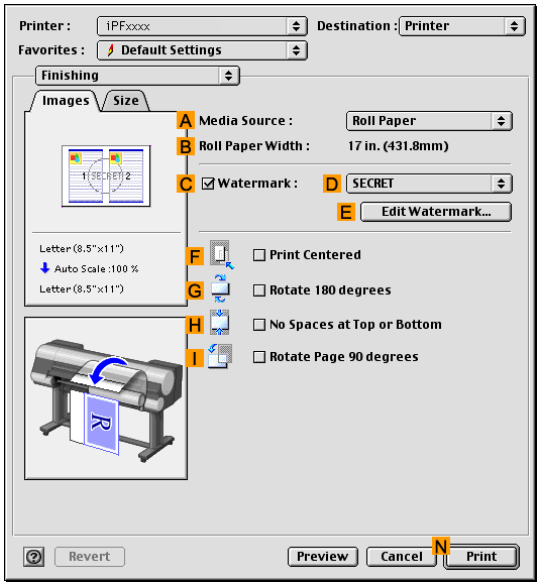
3. In A **Page Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



7. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

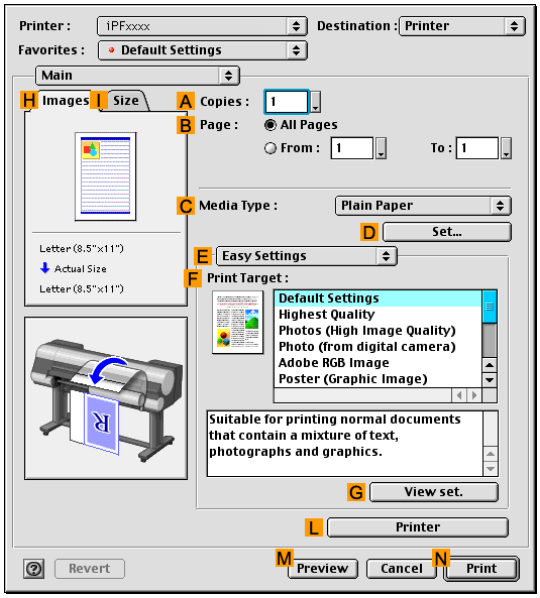
8. Access the **Finishing** pane.



9. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.
10. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in B **Roll Paper Width** -in this case, **ISO A3/A4 (297.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



11. Select the H **No Spaces at Top or Bottom** check box.
12. Confirm the print settings, and click N **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.585)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

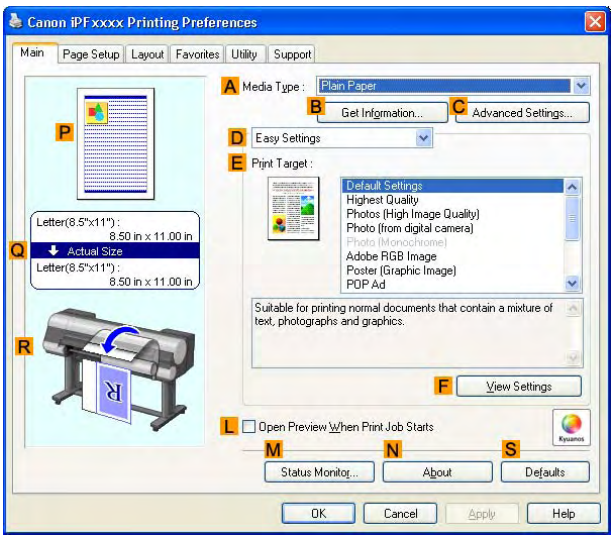
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Windows)

This topic describes how to conserve paper by rotating originals 90 degrees before printing, based on the following example.

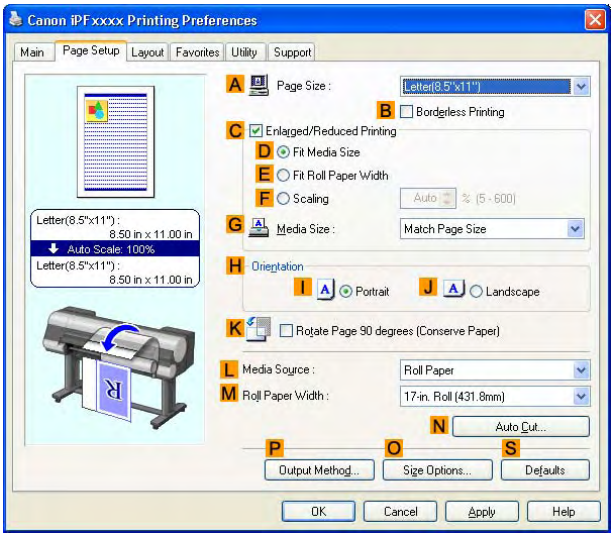
- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3×11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in])

This example illustrates how to rotate an A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3×11.7 in) original in portrait orientation 90 degrees to fit within the width of A3/A4 roll paper (297.0 mm [11.7 in]), which enables you to conserve paper.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (→P.539)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



6. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

7. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Media Source** list.
8. Select the width of the loaded roll in the M **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A3/A4 Roll (297.0mm)**.
9. Select the K **Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)** check box.
10. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.509)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

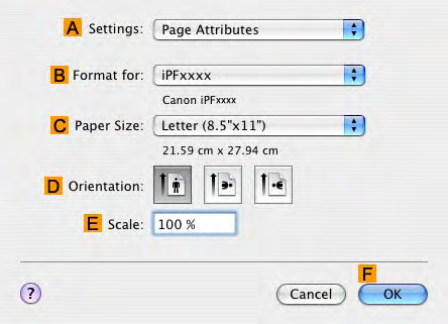
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to conserve roll paper by rotating originals 90 degrees before printing, based on the following example.

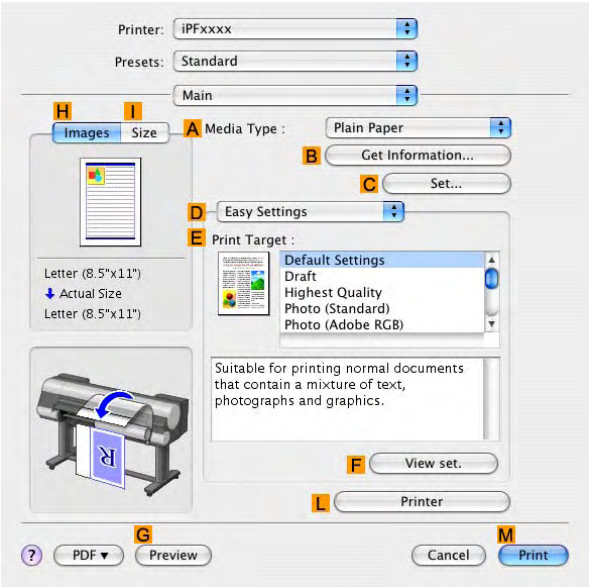
- Document: Any type
- Page Size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in])

This example illustrates how to rotate an A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in) original in portrait orientation 90 degrees to fit within the width of A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in]), which enables you to conserve paper.

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



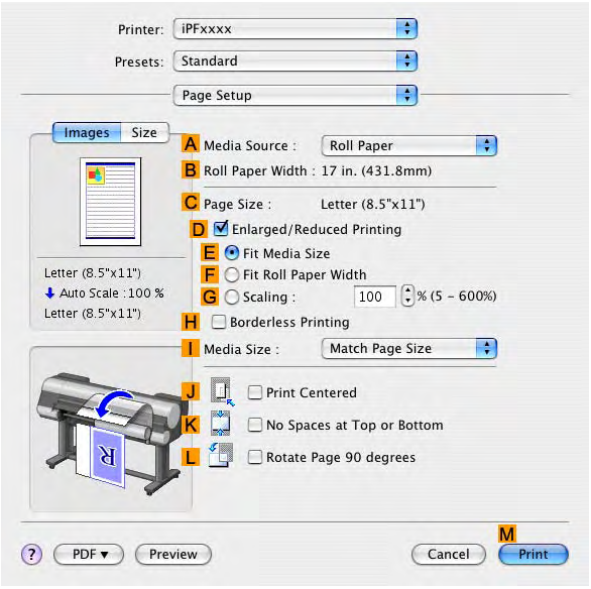
2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In the C **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

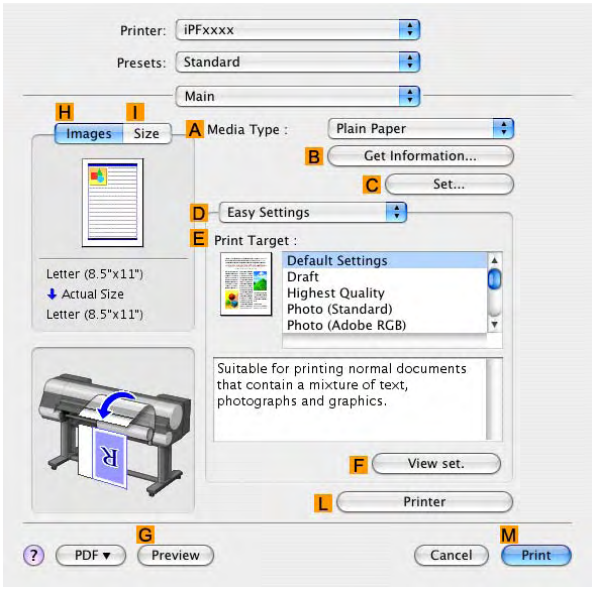
8. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



9. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.
10. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in B **Roll Paper Width** -in this case, **ISO A3/A4 (297.0mm)**.

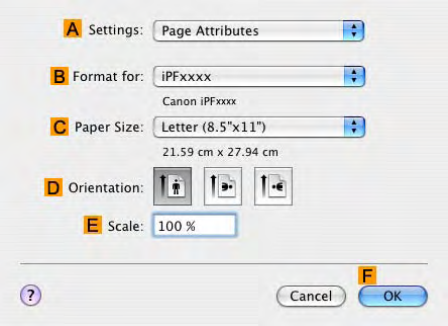
Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

11. Make sure the C **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



12. Select the L **Rotate Page 90 degrees** check box.

13. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.559)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

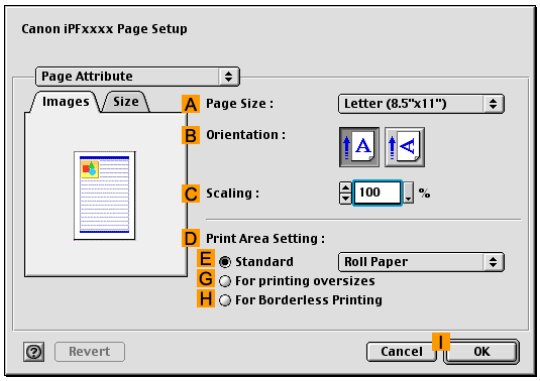
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Mac OS 9)

This topic describes how to conserve roll paper by rotating originals 90 degrees before printing, based on the following example.

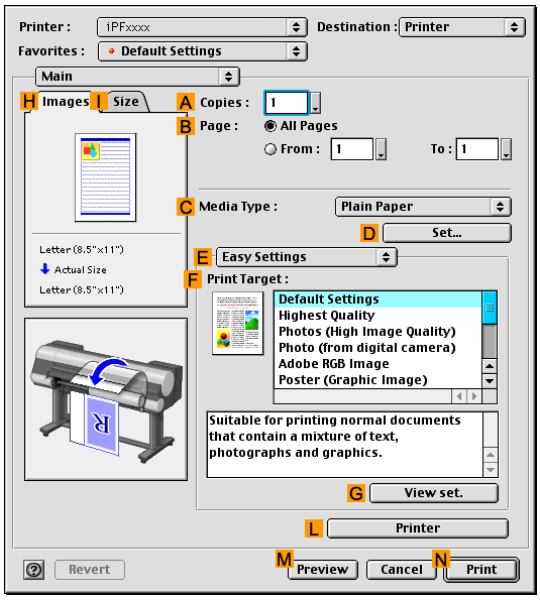
- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in])

This example illustrates how to rotate an A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in) original in portrait orientation 90 degrees to fit within the width of A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in]), which enables you to conserve paper.

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



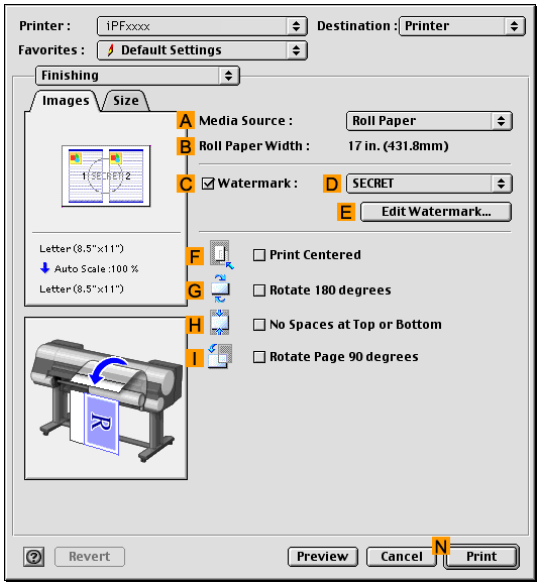
3. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



7. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

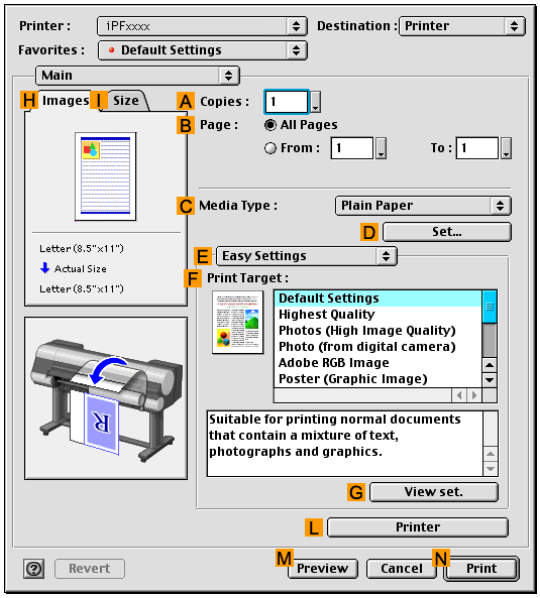
8. Access the **Finishing** pane.



9. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.
10. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the B **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A3/A4 (297.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



11. Select the I **Rotate Page 90 degrees** check box.
12. Confirm the print settings, and then click N **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.585)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing CAD Drawings

Printing CAD Drawings

Using this printer, you can print fine lines and text clearly and sharply. It's easy to produce highly precise drawings from CAD applications.
For instructions on CAD printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows) (→P.284)
- Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS X) (→P.286)
- Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS 9) (→P.252)

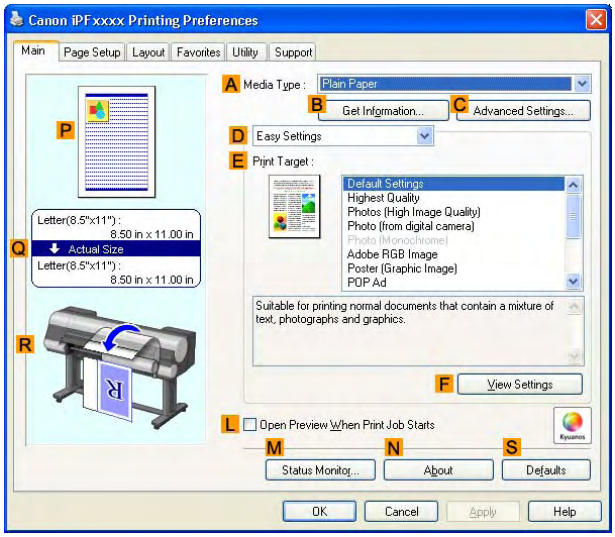
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows)

This topic describes how to print line drawings based on the following example.

- Document: CAD drawing
- Page size: A3 (297.0 × 420.0 mm [11.7 × 16.5 in])
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (→P.539)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

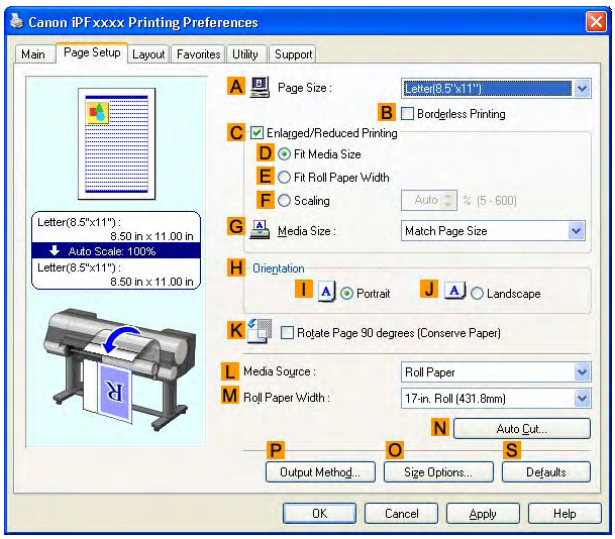


4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **CAD (Line Drawing)** in the E **Print Target** list.

Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the E **Print Target** list by clicking F **View Settings**.

6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

7. In A **Page Size**, click the size of the original as specified in the application software. In this case, click **ISO A3**.
8. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Media Source** list.
9. Select the width of the loaded roll in the M **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**.
10. Specify additional printing conditions.
    For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Windows)”. (→P.507)
11. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.509)

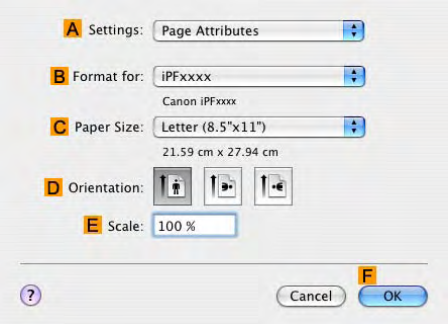
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS X)

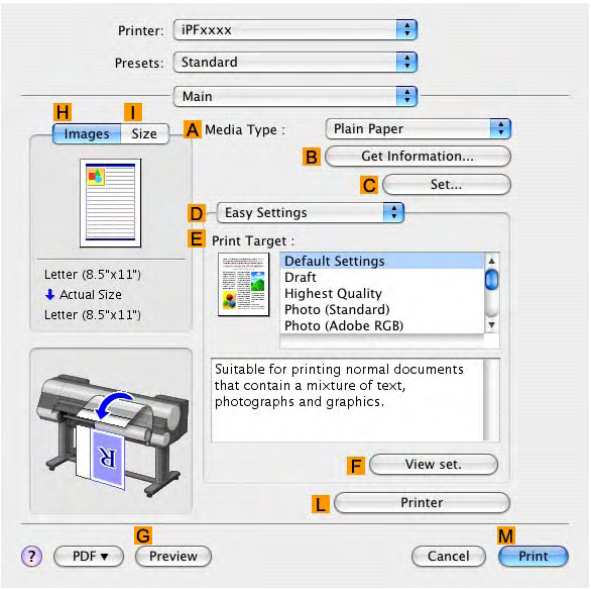
This topic describes how to print line drawings based on the following example.

- Document: CAD drawing
- Page size: A3 (297.0 × 420.0 mm [11.7 × 16.5 in])
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In the C **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A3**.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



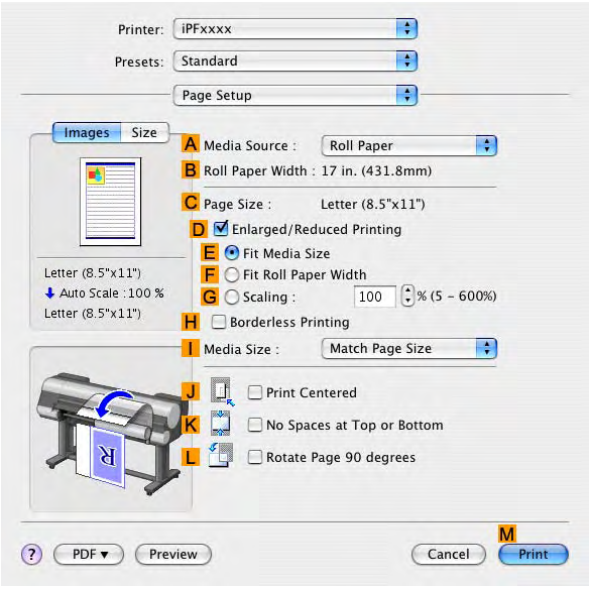
7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **CAD (Line Drawing)** in the E **Print Target** list.

Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the E **Print Target** list by clicking F **View set.**.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.

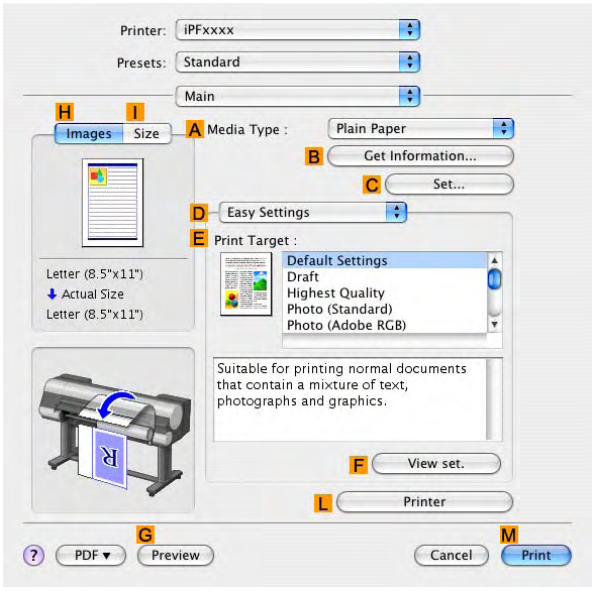


10. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A Media Source** list.

11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm)**.

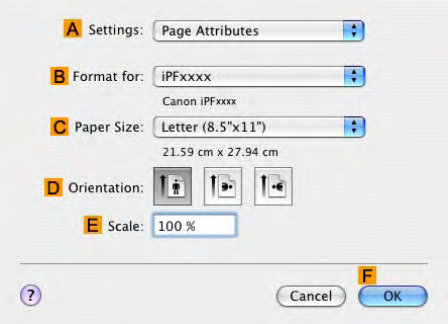
Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in **B Roll Paper Width**, click **L Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

12. Make sure C **Page Size** on the **Page Setup** pane shows the original size as specified in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A3**.



13. Specify additional printing conditions.
For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.558)

14. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.559)

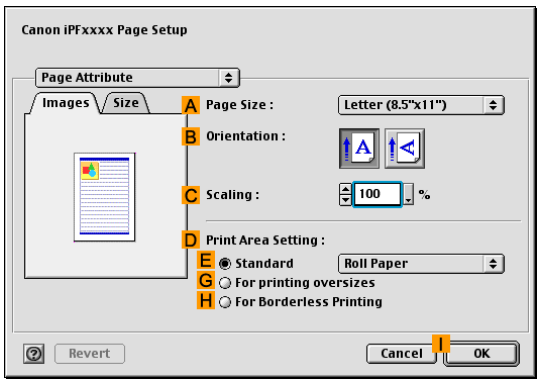
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS 9)

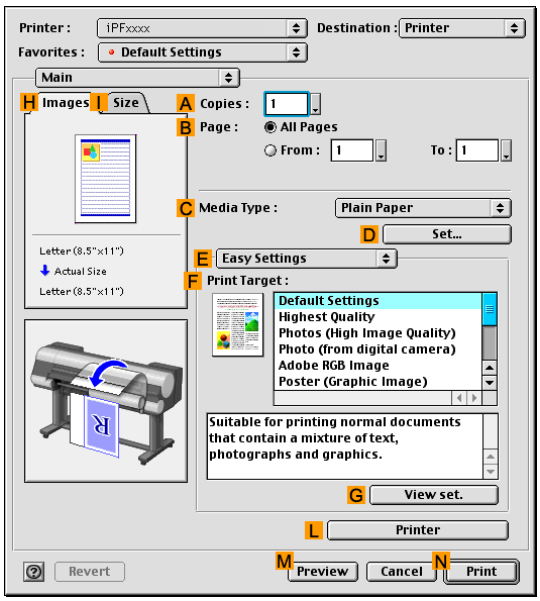
This topic describes how to print line drawings based on the following example.

- Document: CAD drawing
- Page size: A3 (297.0 × 420.0 mm [11.7 × 16.5 in])
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



3. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A3**.
4. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



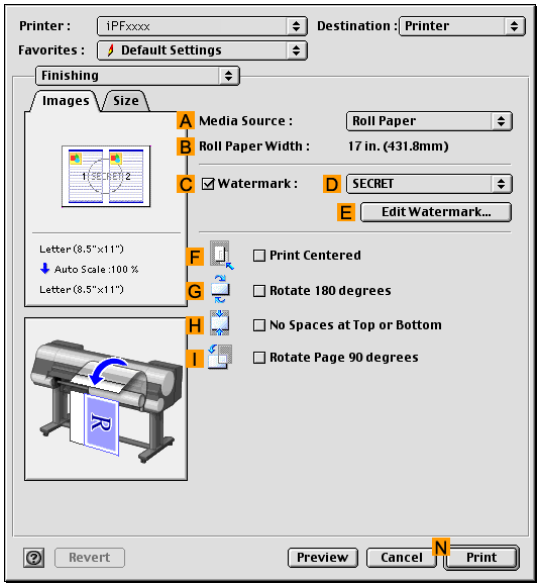
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

7. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. After confirming that E **Easy Settings** is selected, click **CAD (Line Drawing)** in the F **Print Target** list.

Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the F **Print Target** list by clicking G **View set.**

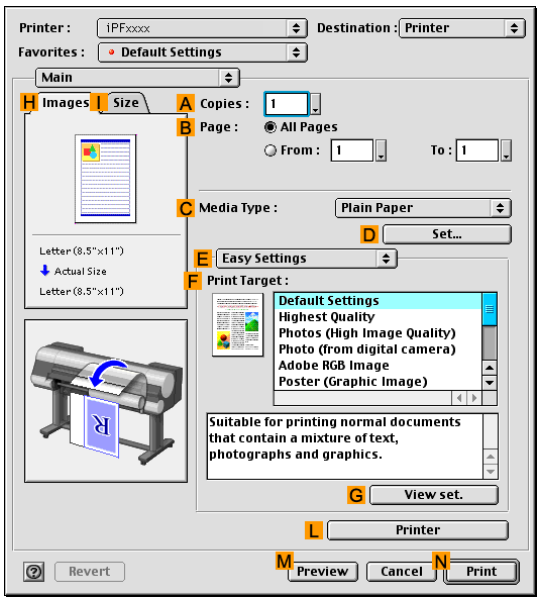
9. Access the **Finishing** pane.



10. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.
11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the B **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

12. Specify additional printing conditions.
    For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.584)
13. Confirm the print settings, and then click **Print** to start printing.

Note

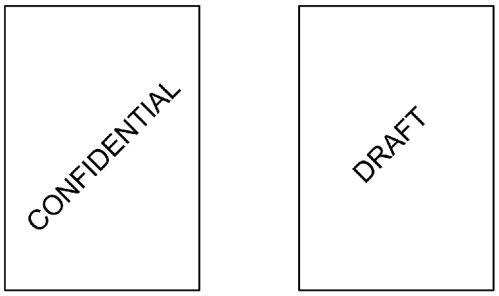
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.585)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Other useful settings

Printing With Watermarks

You can add watermarks (background images) to documents that require special handling.



Watermark

Watermarks are applied to all pages of your document.

Important

- Watermarks are not printed if you select poster as the type of page layout.

The following watermarks are provided:

- CONFIDENTIAL (Windows)
- COPY (Windows and Mac OS 9)
- DRAFT (Windows and Mac OS 9)
- FILE COPY (Windows and Mac OS 9)
- FINAL (Windows)
- PRELIMINARY (Windows and Mac OS 9)
- PROOF (Windows)
- TOP SECRET (Windows and Mac OS 9)

You can also create your own watermarks. Specify the following options to customize your watermark.

- Watermark string: Specify the font, size, color, and so on. Surround the watermark with a frame, if desired.
- Watermark position: Specify the position on the page, the angle, and so on.
- Watermark printing method: Specify whether to print the watermark superimposed or under the document image. You can also print the watermark only on the first page, if desired.

Note

- Watermarks are supported in Windows and Mac OS 9.
- In addition to the provided watermarks, you can create up to 50 original watermarks in Windows. In Mac OS 9, you can use up to 50 original watermarks including the watermarks provided.

For detailed instructions on printing with watermarks, refer to the following topics:

- Printing with Watermarks-COPY, FILE COPY, and so on (Windows) (→P.502)
- Printing with Watermarks-COPY, FILE COPY, and so on (Mac OS 9) (→P.504)

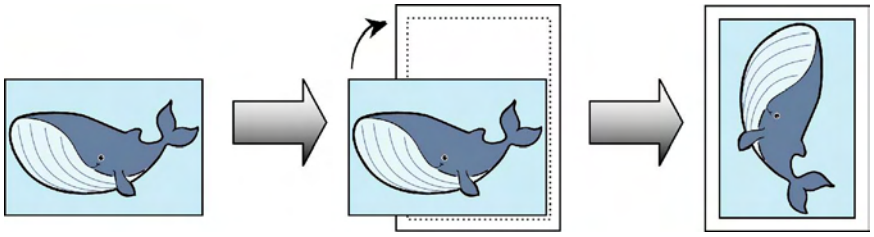
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation

You can specify the original orientation to match the orientation of the paper for printing.

Orientation

Paper is usually loaded in the printer in portrait orientation. When you have an original in landscape orientation, you can specify the printing orientation so that the original is printed in landscape orientation.



Rotate 180 degrees

The original is rotated 180 degrees to print it upside down.

Mirror

A mirror image of the original is printed.

For instructions on specifying the original orientation before printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Windows) (→P.495)
- Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Mac OS X) (→P.497)
- Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Mac OS 9) (→P.500)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Using Favorites

You can register print settings as “favorites” to reuse settings from a particular job that met your expectations, or settings for a particular page size that you will use repeatedly.

Favorites

Registering a favorite for later use. You can choose the settings you have registered from a list before printing, and you can check the settings details.

Note

- You can also save the favorite settings as files. Using these files is a convenient way to print under the same conditions on another computer. (In Windows and Mac OS 9.)

For instructions on using favorites to print, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Using Favorites (Windows) (→P.514)
- Using Favorites (Mac OS X) (→P.572)
- Using Favorites (Mac OS 9) (→P.596)

Cutting Roll Paper After Printing

Roll paper can be automatically cut after printing.

Note

- It may not be possible to cut certain types of paper, such as adhesive paper. For details on types of paper that cannot be used with the auto cut feature, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.169)

Automatic Cutting

Roll paper is cut automatically after printing. If you prefer, you can print continuously without cutting the roll, or you can print a cut line.
For instructions on cutting roll paper after printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Windows) (→P.490)
- Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Mac OS X) (→P.491)
- Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Mac OS 9) (→P.493)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing from Photoshop

You can print images in the Adobe RGB color space that you have created in Photoshop, the Adobe Systems photo retouching application. Using the dedicated Photoshop printer driver plug-in (provided with the printer) makes it easy to print Adobe RGB images more attractively.

- Using the Plug-in to Print (→P.488)
- Using the Printer Driver to Print (→P.488)

Using the Plug-in to Print

The imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Photoshop is a dedicated plug-in provided with the printer that you can load in Photoshop and customize for your printing needs. By using the plug-in, you can print while preserving the 16-bit RGB data from Photoshop without losing the exceptional color gradations of original image. Some of the settings and customizations available in the plug-in are as follows.

- Automatic detection of the color space (sRGB or Adobe RGB) for automatic selection of the optimal profile. This feature eliminates the need to complete intricate settings when printing Adobe RGB images.
- Advanced gray adjustment, including adjustment of tone curves, in addition to an array of standard adjustments for color balance, brightness, contrast, highlight, and shadow.
- Fine-tune color tones in Photoshop while viewing a preview that accurately reproduces printing results.
- With print log management, you can save and load setting parameters from past print jobs.

Note

- imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Photoshop for Windows and Macintosh are provided with the printer.

For instructions and details on which versions of Photoshop are compatible with the imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Photoshop, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Photoshop Guide (Windows)
- imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Photoshop Guide (Macintosh)

Using the Printer Driver to Print

The printer driver offers the following settings and adjustments.

- Choose the standard sRBG color space or Adobe RGB as desired.
- Adjust the color balance, brightness, contrast, saturation, and gray levels.

For instructions on using the printer driver to print Adobe RGB images created in Photoshop, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Adobe RGB Images (Windows) (→P.531)
- Printing Adobe RGB Images (Mac OS X) (→P.573)
- Printing Adobe RGB Images (Mac OS 9) (→P.598)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals

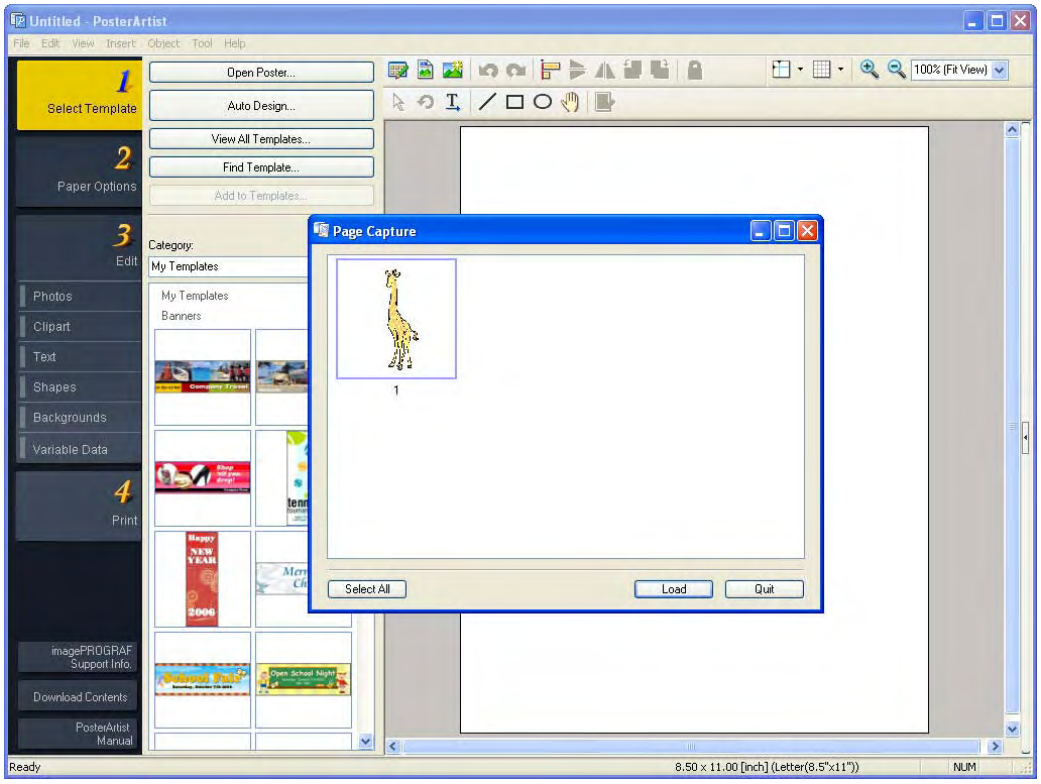
You can print a variety of source documents from word-processing or spreadsheet programs or screen shots from web browsers after composing an original with them using PosterArtist.

Important

- PosterArtist (sold separately) must be installed to use this function.

Edit Using PosterArtist

PosterArtist offers a wide range of features, including features to insert source documents in posters and compose an original with them.



Important

- This function is only supported in Windows.

For detailed instructions on editing with PosterArtist, refer to the following topic:

- Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals (Windows) (→P.529)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

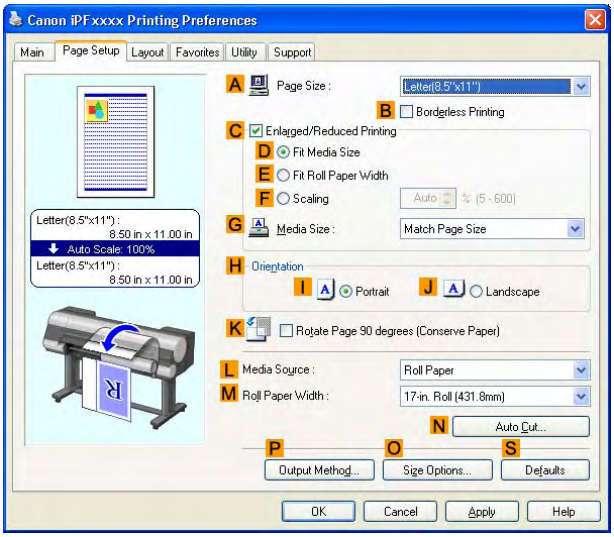
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Windows)

This topic describes how to cut roll paper automatically (using the auto cut function) after printing, as well as how to print a cut line to cut the paper manually.

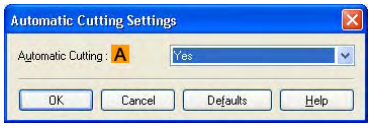
Note

- Auto cut function is activated on the printer by factory default and when the printer driver is installed. Follow the steps below to reactivate the function after it is disabled, or to change the setting for printing a cut line instead.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.539)
3. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



4. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Media Source** list.
5. Click N **Auto Cut** to display the **Automatic Cutting Settings**dialog box.



6. To enable automatic cutting, click **Yes** in the A **Automatic Cutting** list. If you prefer to cut the paper later yourself, click **Print Cut Guideline**.
7. Click **OK** to close the **Automatic Cutting Settings** dialog box.
8. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.509)

Roll paper will be automatically cut after printing.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

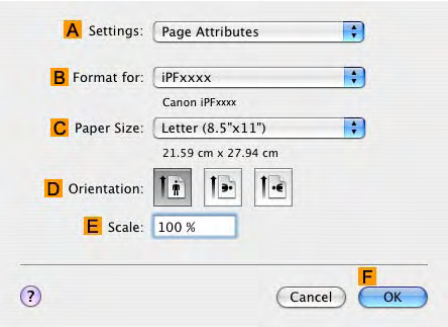
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to cut roll paper automatically (using the auto cut function) after printing, as well as how to print a cut line to cut the paper manually.

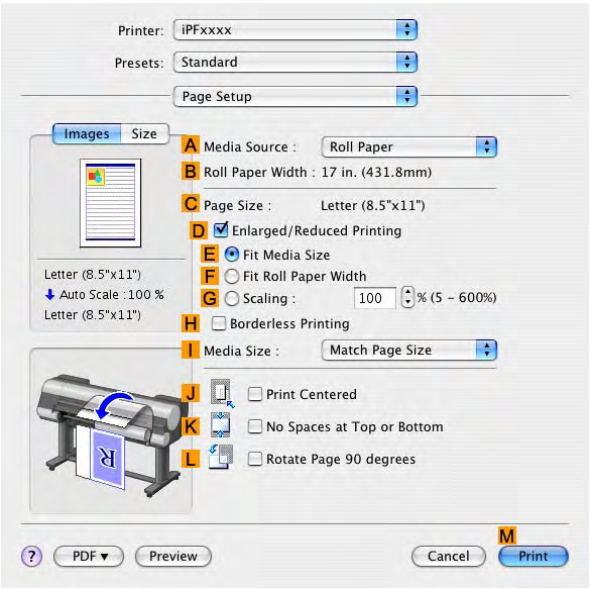
Note

- The auto cut function is activated on the printer by factory default and when the printer driver is installed. Follow the steps below to reactivate the function once disabled, or select the setting for printing a cut guideline instead.

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



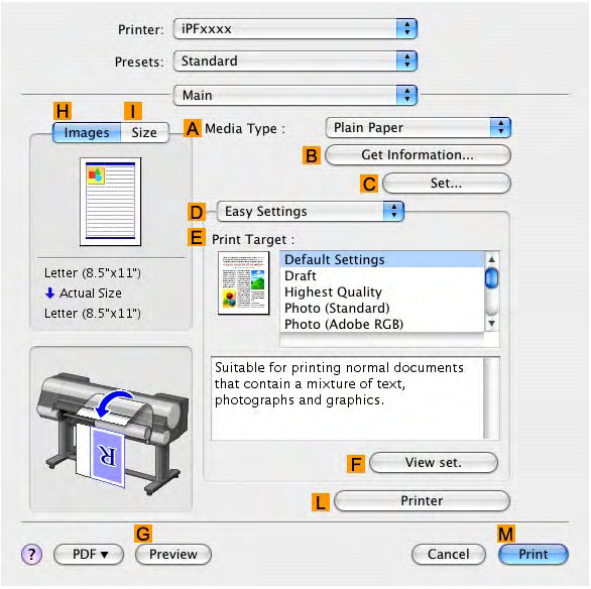
2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. Choose the original size in the C **Paper Size** list.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



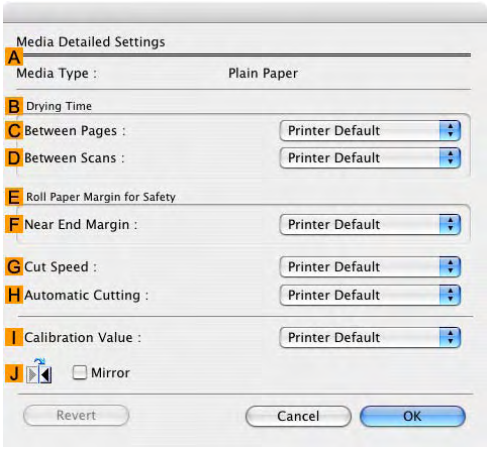
7. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

8. Access the **Main** pane.



9. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.
10. Click C **Set** to display the **Media Detailed Settings**dialog box.



11. To enable automatic cutting, click **Printer Default** in the H **Automatic Cutting** list. If you prefer to cut the paper later yourself, click **Print Cut Guideline**.

Important

- If the automatic cut function has been deactivated on the printer, change the auto cut setting on the printer Control Panel.

12. Click **OK** to close the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box.
13. Confirm the print settings, and click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.559)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

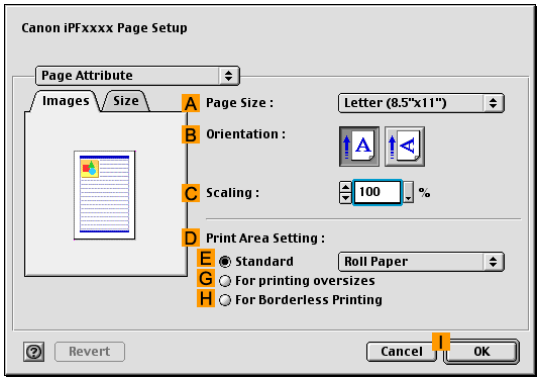
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Mac OS 9)

This topic describes how to cut roll paper automatically (using the auto cut function) after printing, as well as how to print a cut line to cut the paper manually.

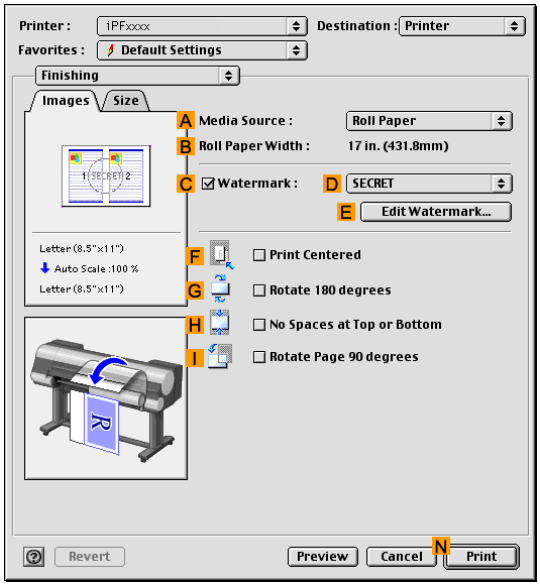
Note

- The auto cut function is activated on the printer by factory default and when the printer driver is installed. Follow the steps below to reactivate the function once disabled, or select the setting for printing a cut guideline instead.

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



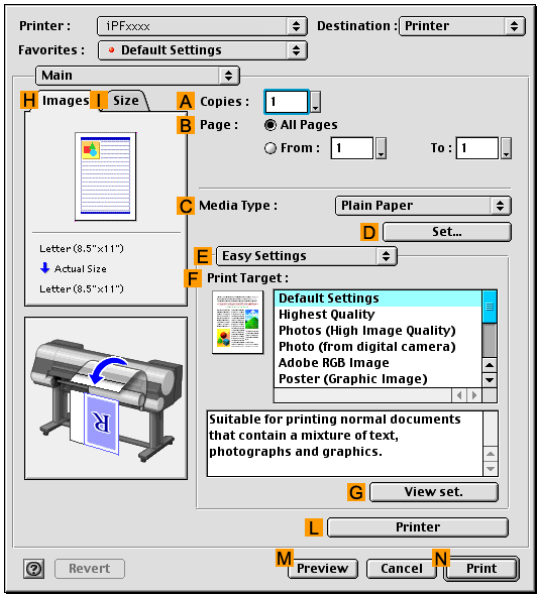
3. Choose the original size in the A **Page Size** list.
4. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Finishing** pane.



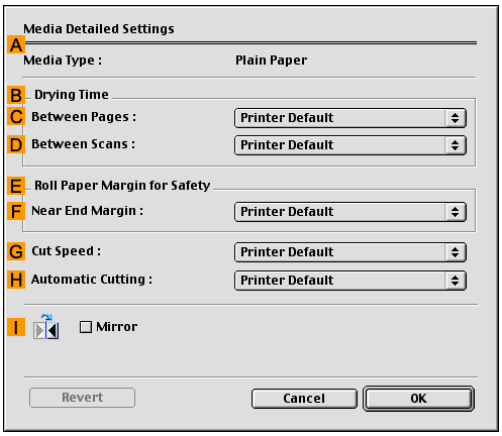
7. Make sure **Roll Paper** is selected in A **Media Source**.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

8. Access the **Main** pane.



9. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.
10. Click D **Set** to display the **Media Detailed Settings**dialog box.



11. To enable automatic cutting, click **Printer Default** in the H **Automatic Cutting** list. If you prefer to cut the paper later yourself, click **Print Cut Guideline**.

Important

- If the automatic cut function has been deactivated on the printer, change the auto cut setting on the printer Control Panel.

12. Click **OK** to close the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box.
13. Confirm the print settings, and then click N **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.585)

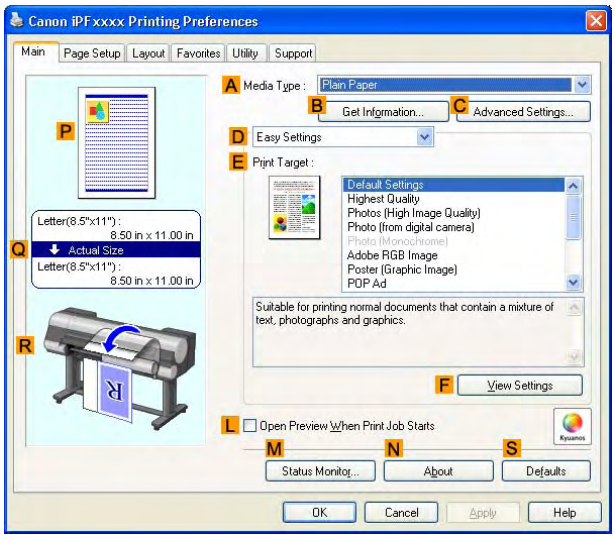
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Windows)

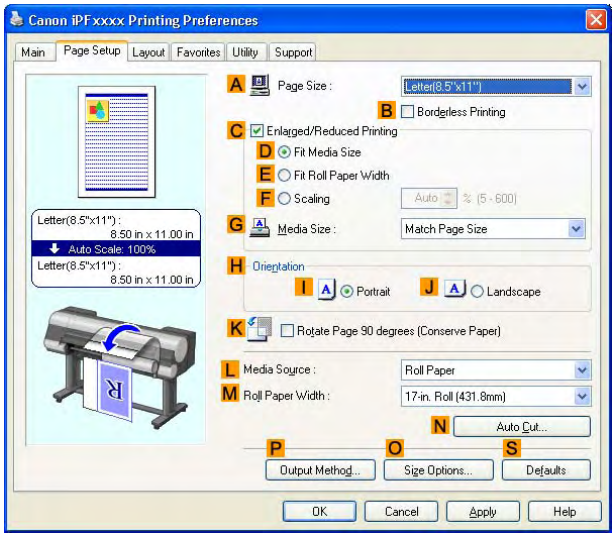
This topic describes how to print an original in landscape orientation after matching the paper orientation, based on the following example.

- Document: An original in landscape orientation
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (→P.539)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Select the printing application in the E **Print Target** list.
6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

7. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.
8. In H **Orientation**, click J **Landscape**.
9. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Media Source** list.
10. Select the width of the loaded roll in the M **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**.
11. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.509)

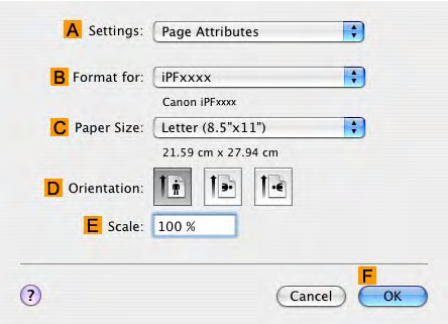
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Mac OS X)

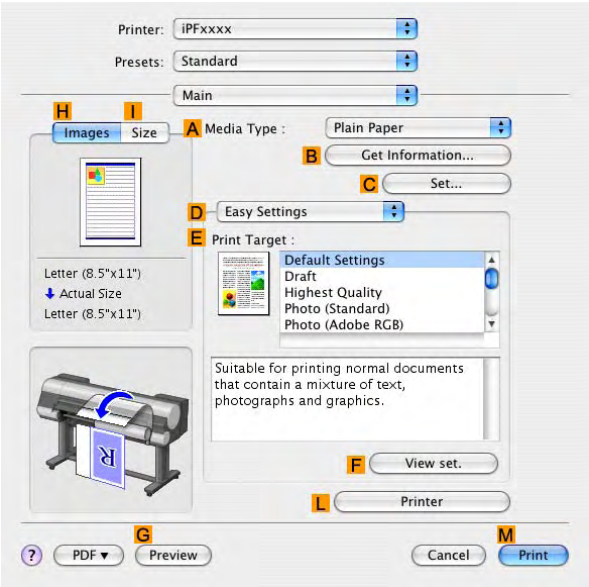
This topic describes how to print an original in landscape orientation after matching the paper orientation, based on the following example.

- Document: An original in landscape orientation
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



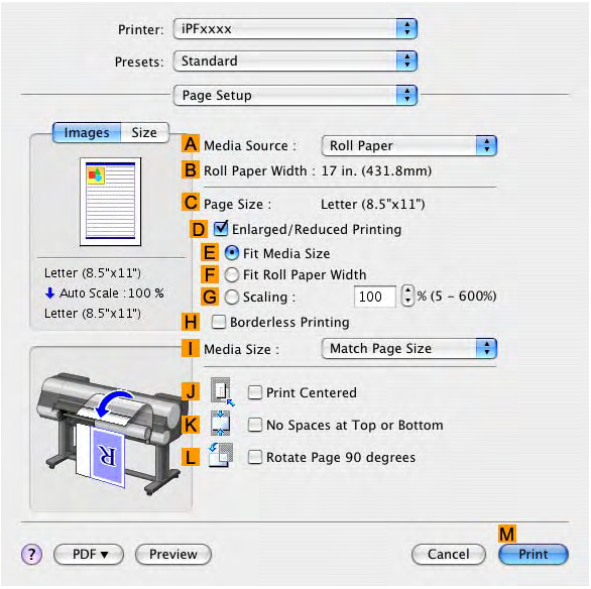
2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In the C **Paper Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. In D **Orientation**, click the icon of the document in landscape orientation.
5. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
6. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
7. Access the **Main** pane.



8. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
9. Select the printing application in the E **Print Target** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

10. Access the **Page Setup** pane.

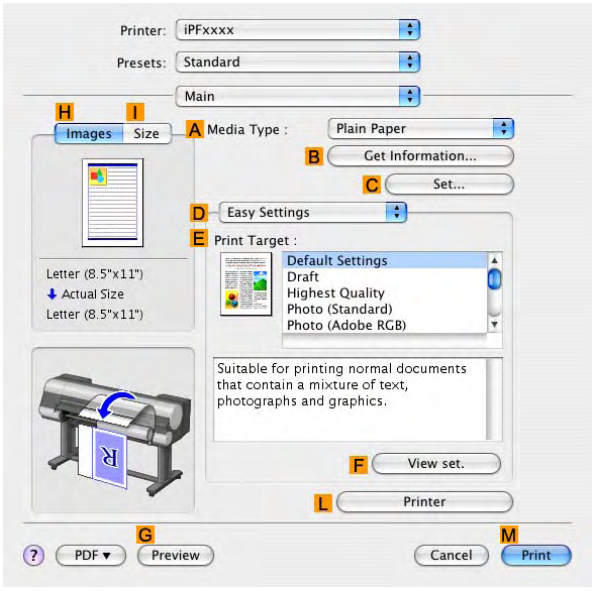


11. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A Media Source** list.

12. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm)**.

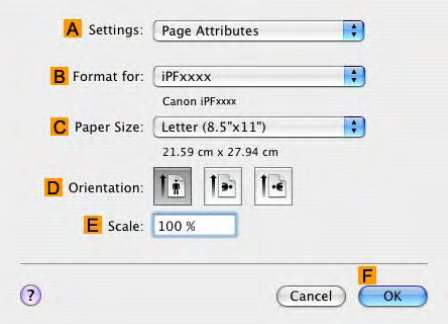
Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in **B Roll Paper Width**, click **L Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

13. Make sure the C **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



14. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.559)

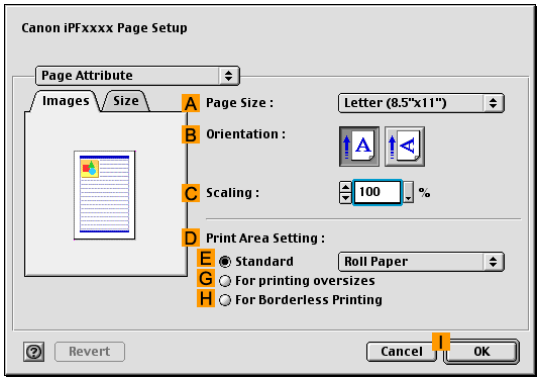
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Mac OS 9)

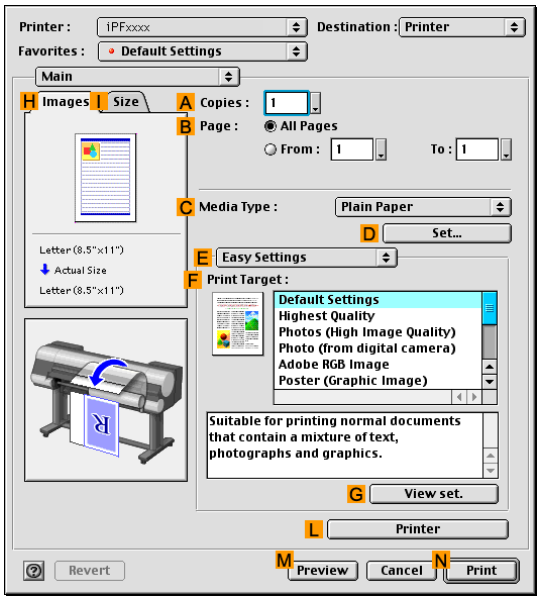
This topic describes how to print an original in landscape orientation after matching the paper orientation, based on the following example.

- Document: An original in landscape orientation
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



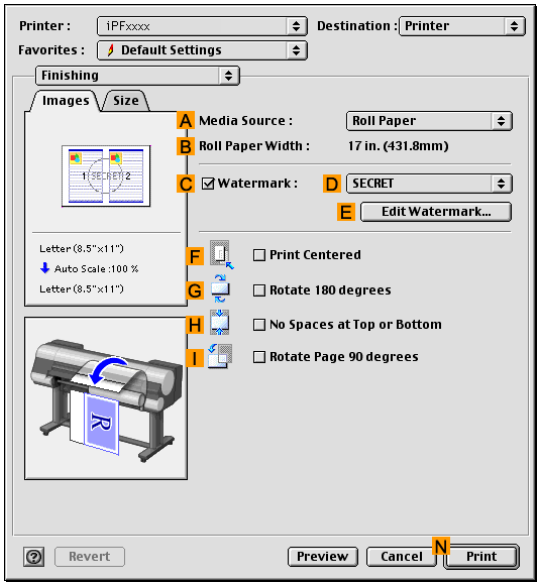
3. In A **Page Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. In B **Orientation**, click the icon of the document in landscape orientation.
5. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
6. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
7. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



8. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
9. Select the printing application in the F **Print Target** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

10. Access the **Finishing** pane.

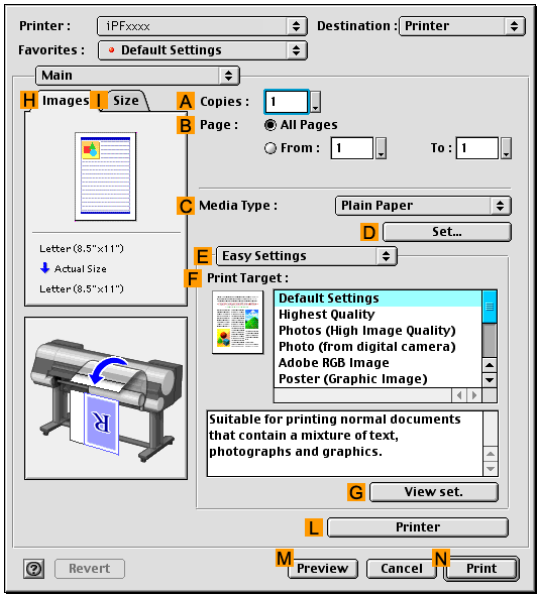


11. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.

12. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the B **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



13. Confirm the print settings, and then click N **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.585)

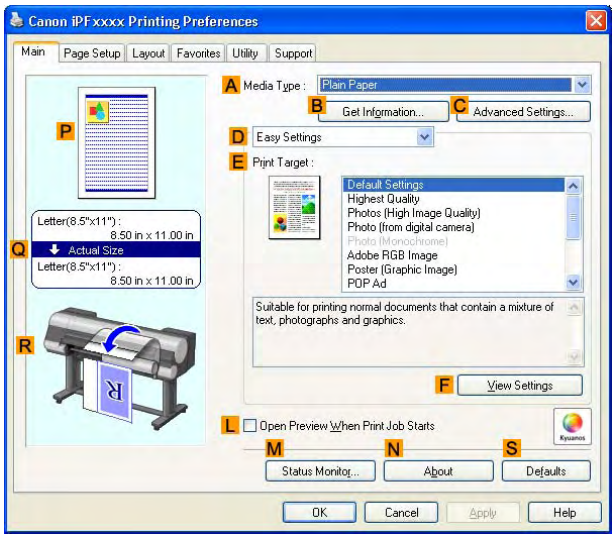
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing with Watermarks-COPY, FILE COPY, and so on (Windows)

This topic describes how to print office documents with a watermark (in this case, “FILE COPY”) based on the following example.

- Document: CAD drawing
- Page size: A2 (420.0 × 594.0 mm [16.5 × 23.4 in])
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (→P.539)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



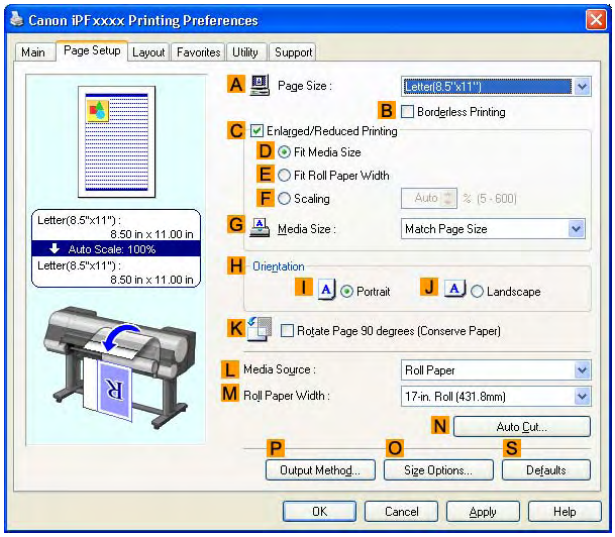
4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **CAD (Line Drawing)** in the E **Print Target** list.

Note

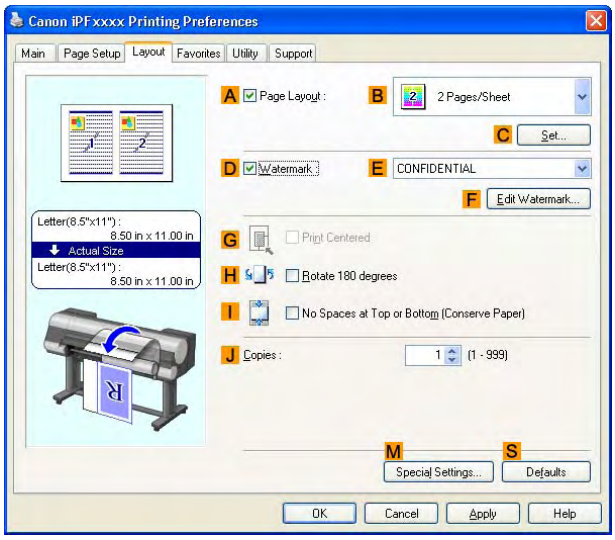
- You can check the settings values selected in the E **Print Target** list by clicking F **View Settings**.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In A **Page Size**, click the size of the original as specified in the application software. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.
8. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Media Source** list.
9. Select the width of the loaded roll in the M **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**.
10. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



11. Select the D **Watermark** check box.
12. Click **FILE COPY** in the E **Watermarks** list.

Note

- To create your own, original watermark, click F **Edit Watermark**. Refer to the printer driver help for instructions on modifying watermarks to create your own.

13. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.509)

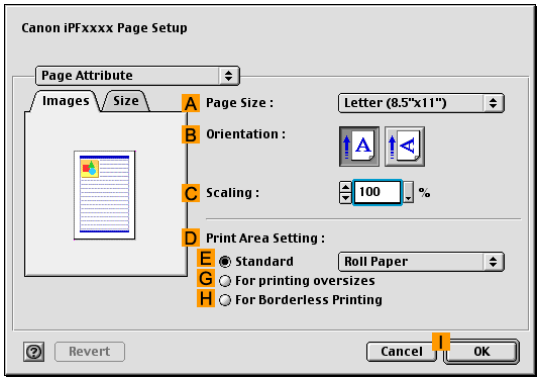
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing with Watermarks-COPY, FILE COPY, and so on (Mac OS 9)

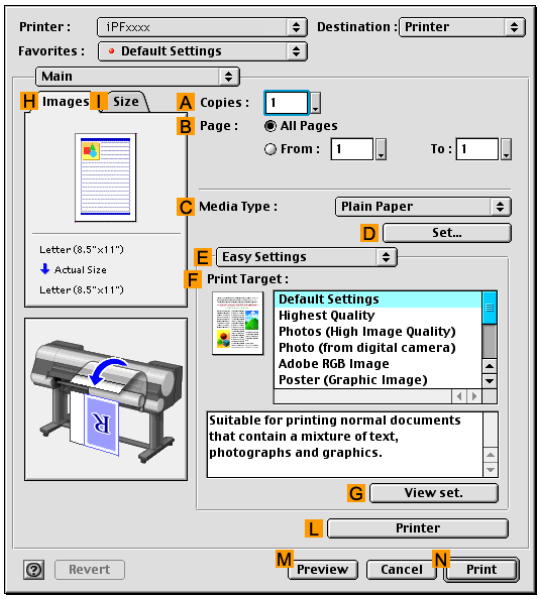
This topic describes how to print office documents with a watermark (in this case, “FILE COPY”) based on the following example.

- Document: CAD drawing
- Page size: A2 (420.0 × 594.0 mm [16.5 × 23.4 in])
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



3. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A2**.
4. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



7. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

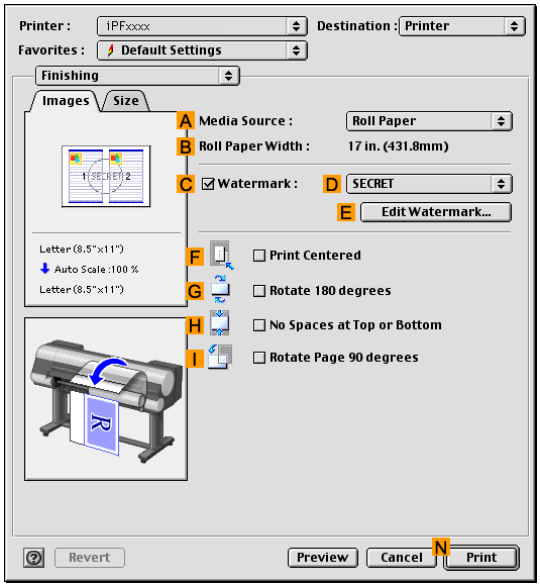
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

8. After confirming that E **Easy Settings** is selected, click **CAD (Line Drawing)** in the F **Print Target** list.

Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the F **Print Target** list by clicking G **View set.**.

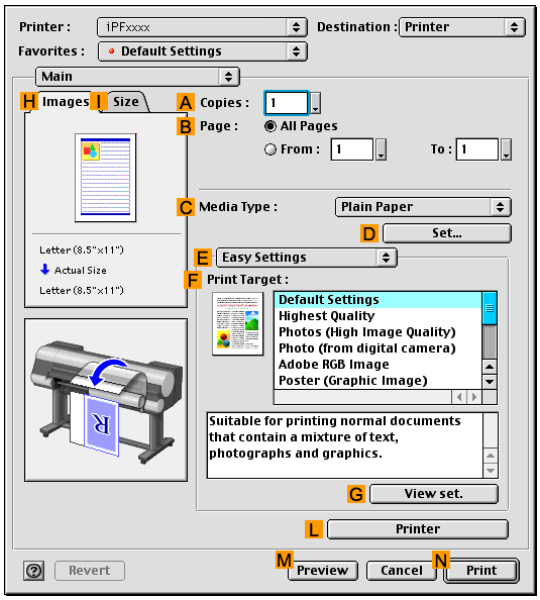
9. Access the **Finishing** pane.



10. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.
11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the B **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

12. Select the C **Watermark** check box.
13. Click **FILE COPY** in the D **Watermarks** list.

Note

- To create your own, original watermark, click E **Edit Watermark**. Refer to the printer driver help for instructions on modifying watermarks to create your own.

14. Specify additional printing conditions.
    For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.584)
15. Confirm the print settings, and then click N **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.585)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

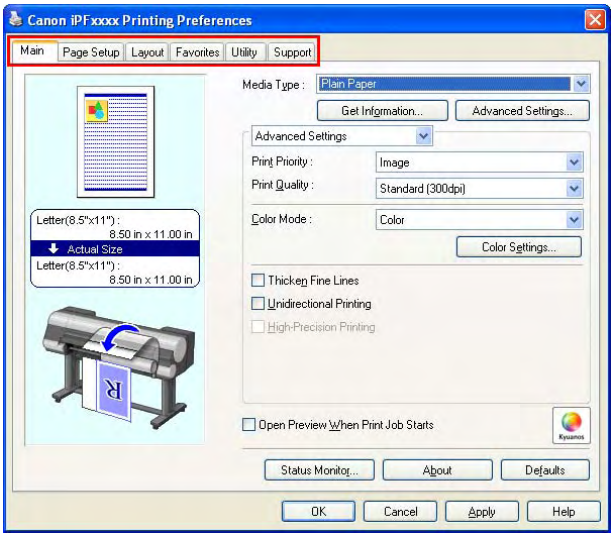
Software

Windows

Printer Driver Settings (Windows)

For instructions on accessing the Windows printer driver, refer to the following topics.

- Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows) (→P.539)
- Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu (Windows) (→P.206)



For information on the Windows printer driver settings, refer to the following topics.

- Main Sheet (Windows) (→P.516)

  You can specify the media type, color processing, print quality, print preview, and other settings. Choose **Easy Settings** to specify basic print settings based on the printing application or **Advanced Settings** to complete more detailed settings as desired.

  - Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Windows) (→P.208)
  - View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Windows) (→P.557)
  - Color Settings Sheet: Color (Windows) (→P.543)
  - Color Settings Sheet: Monochrome (Windows) (→P.549)
  - Gray Adjustment Sheet (Windows) (→P.524)
- Page Setup Sheet (Windows) (→P.520)

  You can specify the page size of the original, borderless printing, enlargement or reduction, the orientation, the media size and source, and automatic cutting.

  - Media Size Options Dialog Box (Windows) (→P.553)
- Layout Sheet (Windows) (→P.522)

  You can specify the page layout, watermarks, the orientation, the number of copies, and print processing options.

  - Special Settings Dialog Box (Windows) (→P.556)
- Favorites Sheet (Windows) (→P.525)

  Groups of print settings you select on each sheet can be saved in a favorite. Favorites you have added can be edited or used at the time of printing as desired.
- Utility Sheet (Windows) (→P.526)

  You can specify settings related to maintenance for the Printhead and feed amount, as well as settings for **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy**.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

- Support Sheet (Windows) (→P.527)
  You can view support information and the user's manual.
- Device Settings Sheet (Windows) (→P.528)
  You can display settings for optional equipment installed on the printer and see the printer driver version.

imagePROGRAF Free Layout is a feature for freely arranging originals from various source applications on a single page as desired before printing. For details, see Free Layout Guide .

Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy is a feature for automatic enlargement and printing of scanned originals from a **Color imageRUNNER**. For details, see Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Guide .

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

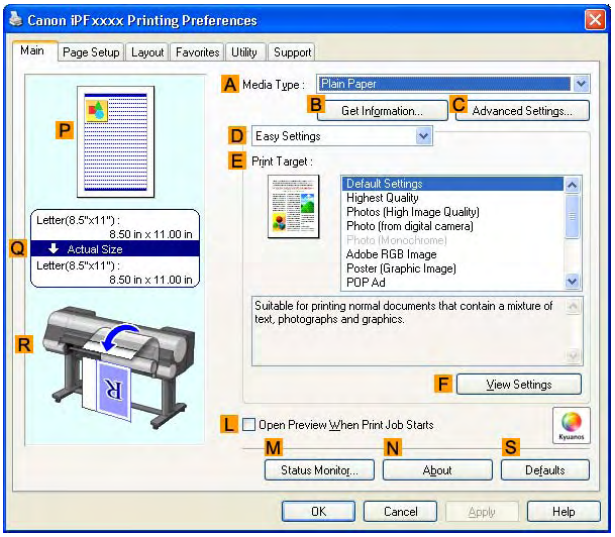
Confirming Print Settings (Windows)

There are two ways to confirm the print settings, as follows.

- Checking a preview of the settings (→P.509)
- Checking a print preview (→P.510)

Checking a preview of the settings

A preview of the settings is displayed on the left side of the **Main**, **Page Setup**, and **Layout** sheets. By checking images and numerical values in the preview, you can confirm current settings for the page size, orientation, media source, layout, and so on.

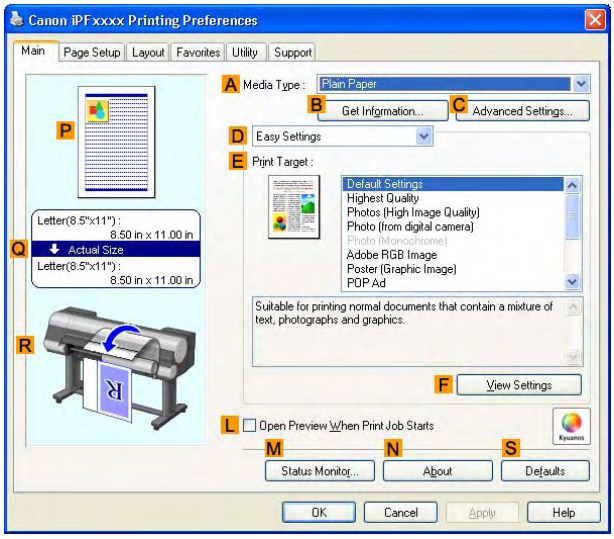


Display Area	Information Displayed
Top illustrations	Illustrations indicate the orientation, page layout, borderless printing selection, color mode, and other settings information.
Middle, bordered area	The page size, paper size, and method and percentage of enlargement or reduction are displayed.
Bottom illustrations	Illustrations indicate the media source, orientation, borderless printing selection, and other settings information.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Note

- To confirm the **Print Target** specified in **Easy Settings**, click **F** **View Settings** on the **Main** sheet to display the **View Settings** dialog box.



Checking a print preview

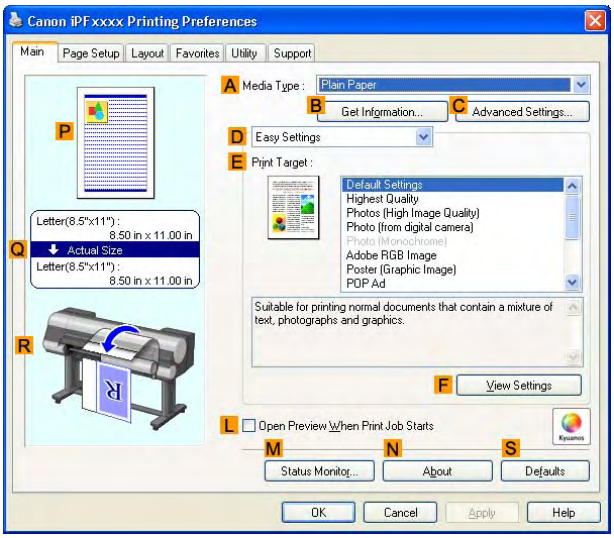
You can check an image of the original just as it will be printed.
When you activate this feature, PageComposer is launched before printing. Confirming how documents will be printed this way helps prevent printing errors.
For details on print previews, see “Previewing Images Before Printing (Windows)”. (→P.511)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Previewing Images Before Printing (Windows)

This topic describes how to preview images of print jobs before actually printing them.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.539)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

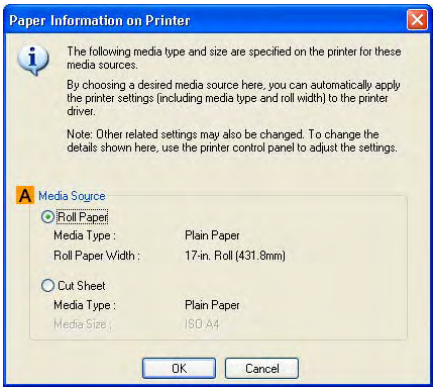


4. Select the L **Open Preview When Print Job Starts** check box.
5. When you attempt to print, the PageComposer window is displayed. (At this point, the document will not be printed yet.)
6. In the PageComposer editing window, select the document to print and open the **Print Preview** window.
7. After confirming that the layout is just as you expected, close the **Print Preview** window.
8. In the PageComposer editing window, make sure the document to print is selected. Choose **Print** from the **File** menu.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box (Windows)

On the **Paper Information on Printer** dialog box, you can obtain information on the paper in the printer and configure printer driver settings for the media source and media type.


Paper Information on Printer
The following media type and size are specified on the printer for these media sources.
By choosing a desired media source here, you can automatically apply the printer settings (including media type and roll width) to the printer driver.
Note: Other related settings may also be changed. To change the details shown here, use the printer control panel to adjust the settings.
A Media Source
Roll Paper
Media Type :
Plain Paper
Roll Paper Width :
17-in. Roll (431.8mm)
Cut Sheet
Media Type :
Plain Paper
Media Size :
ISO A4
OK
Cancel

Note

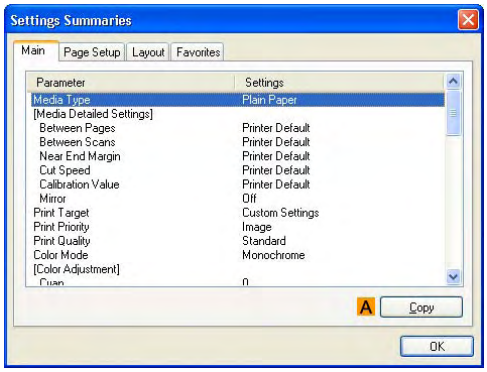
- To display the **Paper Information on Printer** dialog box, on the **Main** Sheet (Windows) (→P.516) , click **Get Information** by **Media Type**.

Setting Item	Description
A **Media Source**	Shows the **Media Source** supported by the printer, as well as information about the loaded paper. To update the **Media Source** and media type settings in the printer driver, select the desired **Media Source** option and click **OK** .

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Settings Summaries Dialog Box (Windows)

The **Settings Summaries** dialog box enables you to confirm the settings for the **Main**, **Page Setup**, **Layout**, and **Favorites** sheets.



Button	Corresponding Utility
A **Copy**	Click to copy the settings information to the clipboard. You can paste the settings information into a file created with a text editor or similar application.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

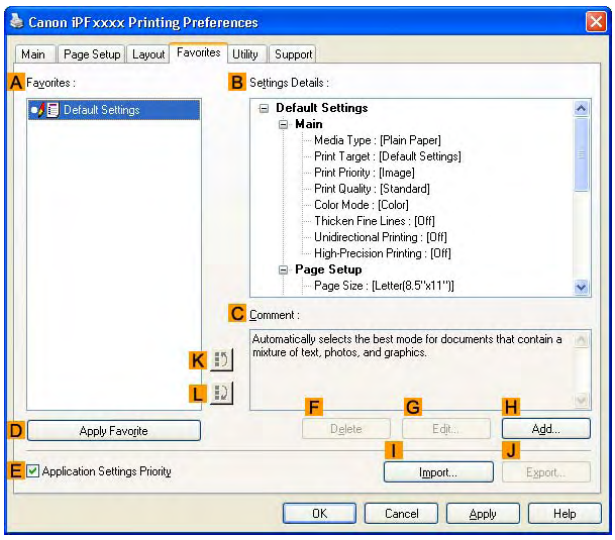
Using Favorites (Windows)

This topic describes how to register favorites and print using favorite settings.

Registering a favorite

Follow the steps below to save the current print settings as a favorite.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.539)
3. Complete the print settings.
4. Click the **Favorites** tab to display the **Favorites** sheet.



5. Click H **Add** to display the **Add** dialog box.
6. Complete the following settings in the **Add** dialog box.
   - Enter a desired name in **Name**, such as “Photos for Presentations” or “Monthly Report.”
   - Choose a fitting icon for these print settings in the **Icon** list.
   - In **Comment**, enter a description of the favorite to be added, as desired.
7. Click **OK** to close the **Add** dialog box.

   The favorite you have added is now displayed in A **Favorites**.

Note

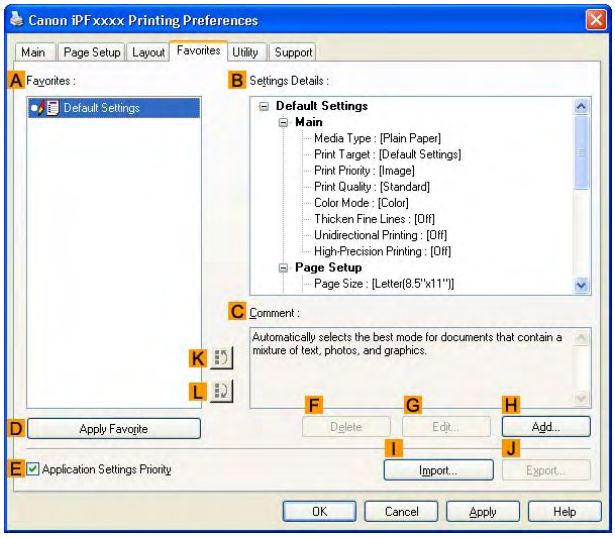
- To save a favorite as a file, click J **Export** and specify the file to save.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing using the favorite

Follow the steps below to print using the favorite you have registered.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.539)
3. Click the **Favorites** tab to display the **Favorites** sheet.



4. In the A **Favorites**, choose the favorite you registered.

Note

- To import a favorite, click I **Import** and specify the favorite file.

5. Click D **Apply Favorite** to replace the favorite settings with the current print settings.
6. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For instructions on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.509)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

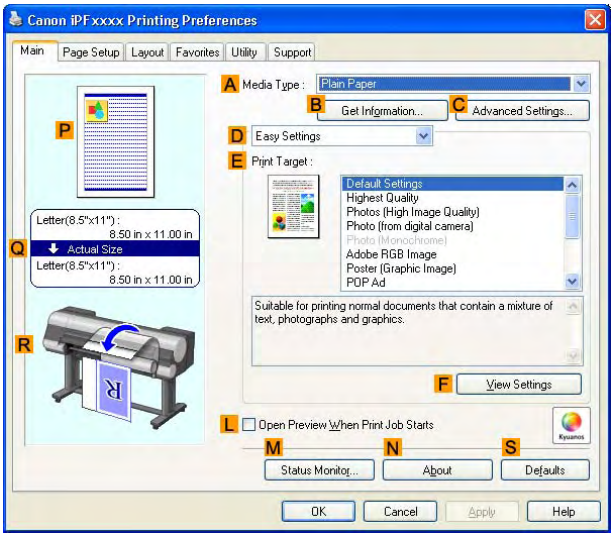
Main Sheet (Windows)

The following settings are available on the **Main** sheet. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.

Note

- On the **Main** sheet, choose **Easy Settings** to specify basic print settings based on the print target, or switch to **Advanced Settings** to complete more detailed settings as desired.

Configuration using Easy Settings



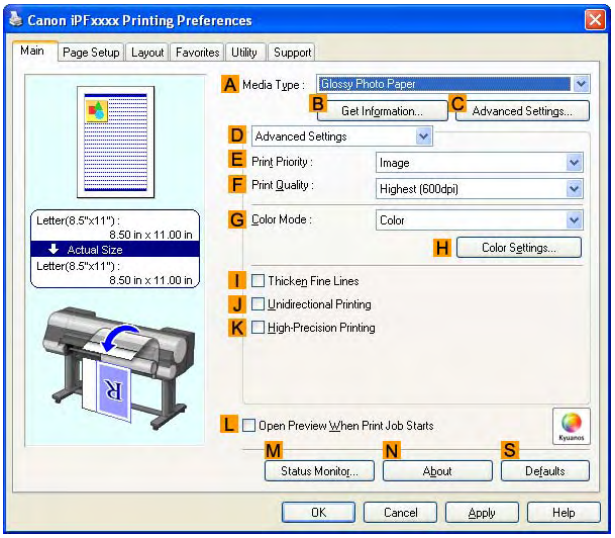
Setting Item		Description
A Media Type		Select the paper type. For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide . (→P.169)
	B Get Information	Click to display the **Get Information** dialog box, which shows media types and sizes by media source, as specified on the printer. When you select a media source, your selection is applied to the printer driver settings for the media source, media type, and roll width.
	C Preferences	Click to display the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box for ink drying time and other detailed settings based on the paper type.
E Print Target		Choose presets that match the type of document to be printed. Printing Photos and Images (Windows, Mac OS X) (→P.247) Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows, Mac OS X) (→P.251) Printing Office Documents (→P.253) Depending on the **Media Type** setting, some **Print Target** options may not be available.
	F View Settings	Click to display the **View Settings** dialog box, which enables you to confirm the settings for the selected item from the **E Print Target** list or change the order of items listed in **E Print Target** .
L Open Preview When Print Job Starts		Activate this option to preview the print image before printing. Confirming the Print Image Before Printing (→P.551)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Setting Item	Description
M **Status Monitor**	Click to start imagePROGRAF Status Monitor , which enables you to confirm the status of the printer and print jobs. You can also set up email notification if printer errors occur by completing the **Email Notice** settings. For details, refer to the **Status Monitor** help.
N **About**	Click to confirm version information for the printer driver.
S **Defaults**	Click to restore all settings on the sheet to the default values.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Configuration using Advanced Settings



Setting Item		Description
A Media Type		Select the paper type. For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide . (→P.169)
	B Get Information	Click to display the **Get Information** dialog box, which shows media types and sizes by media source, as specified on the printer. When you select a media source, your selection is applied to the printer driver settings for the media source, media type, and roll width.
	C Preferences	Click to display the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box for ink drying time and other detailed settings based on the paper type.
E Print Priority		Choose the graphic elements that you want to emphasize for printing. Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing (→P.243)
F Print Quality		Choose the level of print quality. Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing (→P.243)
G Color Mode		Choose the color mode. Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing (→P.243) The available **Color Mode** options vary depending on the **Media Type** setting.
	H Color Settings	Click to display the **Color Settings** dialog box for more advanced color settings. Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver (→P.254)
I Thicken Fine Lines		Activate this option to print fine lines more distinctly.
J Unidirectional Printing		Although unidirectional printing is slower, it can help prevent misaligned lines and ensure better results.
K High-Precision Printing		Select this option for printing at the highest level of quality. However, this will take more time than regular printing.
L Open Preview When Print Job Starts		Activate this option to preview the print image before printing. Confirming the Print Image Before Printing (→P.551)

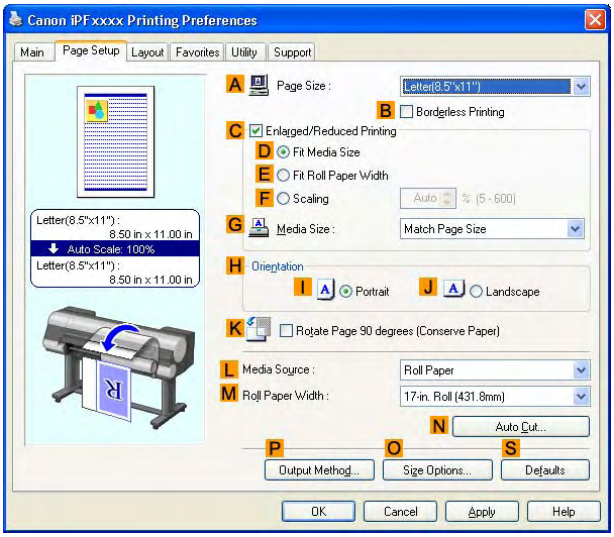
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

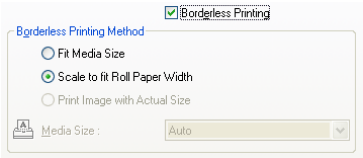
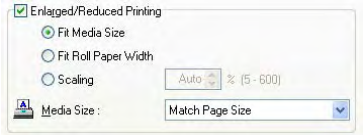
Setting Item	Description
M Status Monitor	Click to start imagePROGRAF Status Monitor , which enables you to confirm the status of the printer and print jobs. You can also set up email notification if printer errors occur by completing the **Email Notice** settings. For details, refer to the **Status Monitor** help.
N About	Click to confirm version information for the printer driver.
S Defaults	Click to restore all settings on the sheet to the default values.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

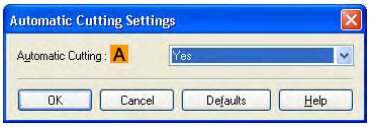
Page Setup Sheet (Windows)

The following settings are available on the **Page Setup**sheet. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



Setting Item		Description
A Page Size		Select the page size as specified in the source application. For details on available page sizes, see “Paper Sizes”. (→P.175)
B Borderless Printing 		Borderless printing is available if **Roll Paper** is selected in the **L Media Source** list. Choose from the following options when this setting is activated. Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size (→P.365) Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (→P.367) Borderless Printing at Actual Size (→P.348)
	D Fit Media Size	Scales the document image to match the paper size.
	E Scale to fit Roll Paper Width	Scales the document image to match the roll width.
	F Print Image with Actual Size	Prints documents at their actual size. This function is available, when you have selected the size same as the width of **Roll Paper** for either length or width of the document from the **A Page Size** list.
	G Media Size Available when **Fit Media Size** is selected.	Choose the size of the paper you will print on. For details on available paper sizes, see “Paper Sizes”. (→P.175) Paper sizes compatible with borderless printing are shown in the list.
C Enlarged/Reduced Printing 		Choose from the following options when this setting is activated. Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (→P.313) Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (→P.314) Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (→P.315)
	D Fit Media Size	Scales the document image to match the paper size.
	E Fit Roll Paper Width	Scales the document image to match the roll width.
	F Scaling	Resizes the document image based on a specified scaling value. Enter a value in a range of “5-600.”
	G Media Size	Choose the size of the paper you will print on. For details on available paper sizes, see “Paper Sizes”. (→P.175)

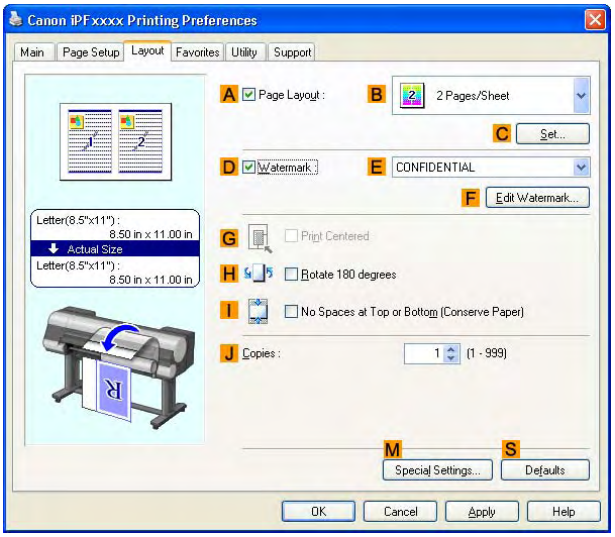
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Setting Item	Description
H **Orientation**	Choose the printing orientation. Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (→P.486)
K **Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)**	Activate this setting to rotate the document image by 90 degrees before printing. Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (→P.460)
L **Media Source**	Choose how paper is supplied. Options displayed in the list vary depending on the selection in **Media Type** in the **Main** sheet.
M **Roll Paper Width**	Choose the roll width. For details on available roll widths, see “Paper Sizes”. (→P.175)
N **Auto Cut**	You can activate or deactivate automatic cutting and printing of cut lines, as desired. Click to display the **Automatic Cutting Settings** dialog box.  Under A **Automatic Cutting** , you can specify **Yes** or **No** and **Print Cut Guideline** . Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (→P.487)
O **Size Options**	Click to display the **Media Size Options** dialog box, which enables you to register additional paper sizes or select the size system for use.
S **Defaults**	Restores all settings on the sheet to the default values.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Layout Sheet (Windows)

The following settings are available on the **Layout** sheet. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



Setting Item		Description
A Page Layout		Activate this setting to select a particular page layout. Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (→P.420) Printing Posters in Sections (→P.421) Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (→P.417) Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals (→P.489)
	C Set	Click to display one of the following dialog boxes depending on the selection in **A Page Layout** . In these dialog boxes, you can specify layout details and which pages to print, as well as other settings. • **Page Layout Printing** • **Pages to Print** • **Free Layout Settings**
D Watermark		Activating this option makes two settings available, **E Watermarks** and **F Edit Watermark** . Printing With Watermarks (→P.485)
	E Watermarks	Lists the provided watermarks. Choose the watermark to print.
	F Edit Watermark	Click to display the **Edit Watermark** dialog box for creating your own, original watermark.
G Print Centered		Activate this setting to print document images in the center of the paper. Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (→P.443) Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (→P.444)
H Rotate 180 degrees		Activate this option to rotate document images by 180 degrees before printing.
I No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)		Activate this setting to print the next image skipping blank areas above and below printable data in documents, which enables you to conserve the paper. Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (→P.461)
J Copies		Enter the number of copies to print, in a range of “1-999.”

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Setting Item	Description
M Special Settings	If the printing results are not as you expected, click this option to change how printing is processed.
S Defaults	Click to restore all settings on the sheet to the default values.

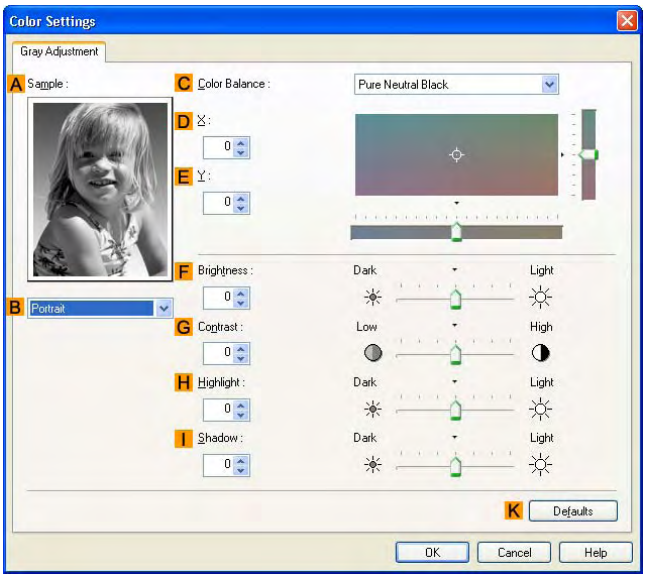
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Gray Adjustment Sheet (Windows)

The following settings are available on the **Gray Adjustment** sheet.

Gray Adjustment

On the **Gray Adjustment** sheet, you can adjust the color balance, brightness, contrast, and other image qualities.



Note

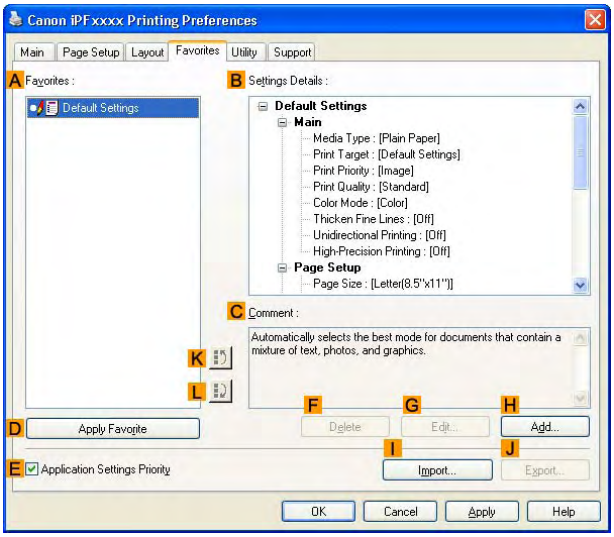
- To display the **Gray Adjustment** sheet, on the **Main** Sheet (Windows) (→P.516) , select **Monochrome (Photo)** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**, and then click **Color Settings**.
- **Monochrome (Photo)** is not available for all types of paper.

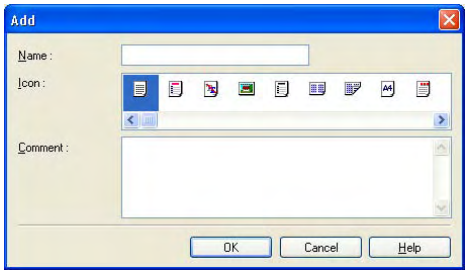
Setting Item	Description
A **Sample**	The image at left is updated to reflect any changes you make to setting items on the sheet, enabling you to check the results of adjustment.
B **Sample List**	Select a sample image, as desired.
C **Color Balance**	Click the list to select a color balance that suits the printing application.
D **X**	Adjust the color balance as you check the color tone in the adjustment area. You can adjust the square area in the center by clicking or dragging it. Drag the vertical or horizontal scroll bars for adjustment, as desired. You can click the arrows by the X (horizontal) and Y (vertical) boxes or enter the values directly.
E **Y**	
F **Brightness**	Adjust the overall image brightness as desired. You can adjust the brightness if the printed document is lighter or darker than the original image (that is, the original photo that was scanned or the original graphic as it appears on the computer screen).
G **Contrast**	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other, as desired. Increasing the **Contrast** makes images sharper, and reducing the **Contrast** softens images.
H **Highlight**	Adjust the brightness of the lightest portion.
I **Shadow**	Adjust the brightness of the darkest portion.
K **Defaults**	Click to restore all settings on the sheet to the default values.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Favorites Sheet (Windows)

The following settings are available on the **Favorites**sheet. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.

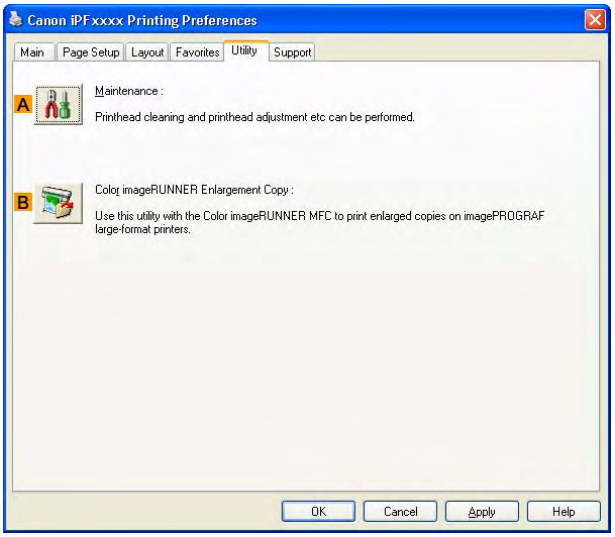


Setting Item	Description
A Favorites	Printing favorites you have created are listed with **Default Settings** favorites. Using Favorites (→P.487)
B Settings Details	Displays details of the favorite selected in the **A Favorites** .
C Comment	Displays notes registered in the favorite.
D Apply Favorite	Click to change the current print settings to those of the favorite selected in the **A Favorites** .
E Application Settings Priority	Activate this setting to use settings values specified in the source application in preference to favorite settings selected in the **A Favorites** , when clicking **D Apply Favorite** . For details on the settings items used in preference, refer to the printer driver help.
F Delete	Click to delete the selected favorite settings from the **A Favorites** .
G Edit	Click to display the **Edit** dialog box, which enables you to change the name and icon for the favorite settings selected in the **Favorites** .
H Add	Click to display the **Add** dialog box, which enables you to add the current print settings as a favorite. 
I Import	Click to display the **Open** dialog box, which enables you to import favorite settings saved as a file.
J Export	Click to display the **Save As** dialog box, which enables you to save the favorite settings as a file.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Utility Sheet (Windows)

The following settings are available on the **Utility**sheet. For details on the utilities, refer to the relevant utility help.



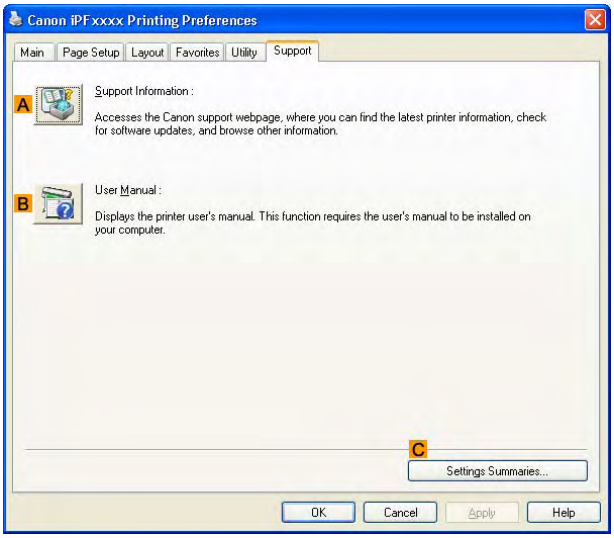
Button	Corresponding Utility
A **Maintenance**	Click to start the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor , which offers the following maintenance for the printer. • Nozzle (ink ejecting outlet) check • Nozzle (ink ejecting outlet) cleaning • Head alignment adjustment • Feed amount adjustment
B **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy**	Click to launch Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy (*1) (iR enlargement copy), which enables you to create hot folders used for Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy and assign print settings to hot folders. Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Windows) (→P.317)

*1: For details, see Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Guide .

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Support Sheet (Windows)

On the **Support** sheet, you can view support information and the user's manual.

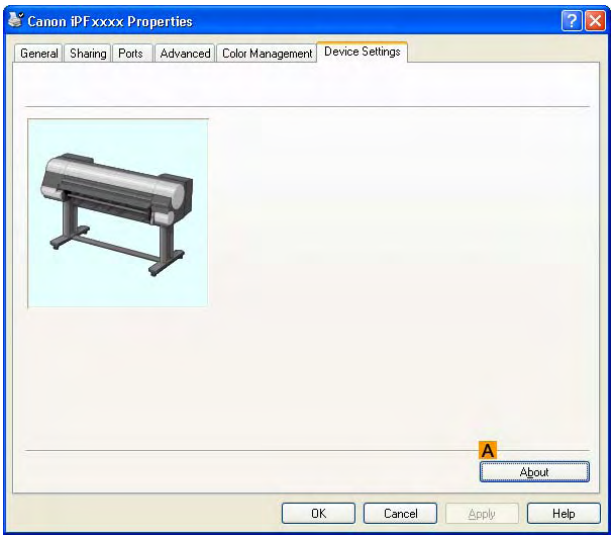


Button	Corresponding Utility
A **Support Information**	Click to access the Canon support webpage, where you can find the latest information on the printer and consumables, check for printer driver updates, and browse other information.
B **User Manual**	Click to view the printer user's manual. This function requires the user's manual to be installed on your computer.
C **Settings Summaries**	Click to display the **View Settings** dialog box, which enables you to confirm the settings for the **Main** , **Page Setup** , **Layout** , and **Favorites** sheets.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Device Settings Sheet (Windows)

Many settings items on the printer properties sheets are controlled by Windows applications. However, the **Device Settings** sheet is for configuring the printer, and it is an extension of the printer driver.
The following settings are available on the **Device Settings** sheet.



Setting Item	Description
A **About**	You can display version information for the printer driver.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

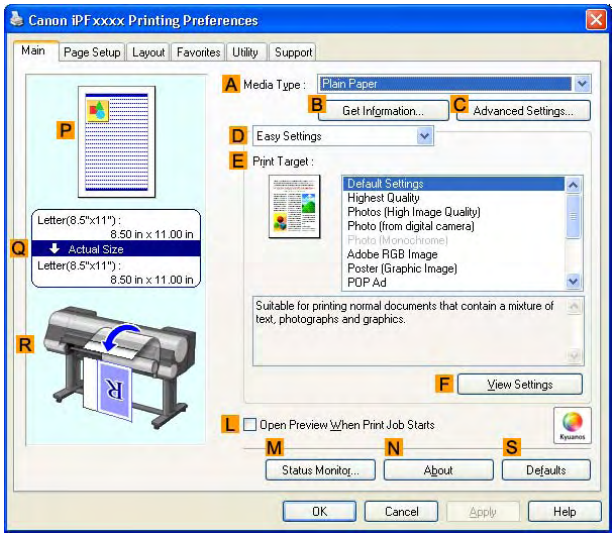
Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals (Windows)

This topic describes how to use PosterArtist to compose originals from multiple applications, creating a poster layout for printing.

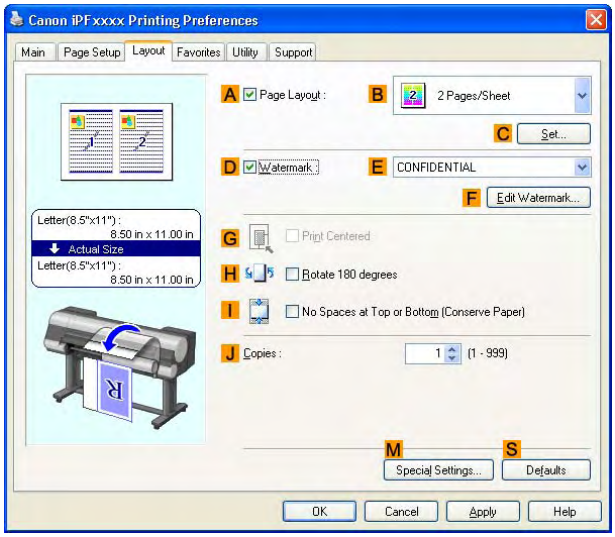
Important

- PosterArtist (sold separately) must be installed to use this function.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (→P.539)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

5. Select the A **Page Layout** check box.
6. Click in the **Edit Using PosterArtist** in the B **Page Layout** list.
7. When you attempt to print, PosterArtist starts up and the PageCapture window is displayed. (At this point, the document will not be printed yet.)
8. Choose the page to load in PosterArtist.
9. Edit and rearrange the image in the PosterArtist window as desired.

   Important

   - Without closing the PosterArtist window, repeat steps 1-8 to arrange originals from multiple applications on the same page.

   Note

   - For instructions on editing and rearranging images, refer to the PosterArtist Manual.

10. Print from the PosterArtist menu.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Adobe RGB Images (Windows)

This topic describes how to print Adobe RGB images based on the following example.

- Document: Adobe RGB image created in Photoshop
- Page Size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Glossy Photo Paper
- Roll Paper Width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

Important

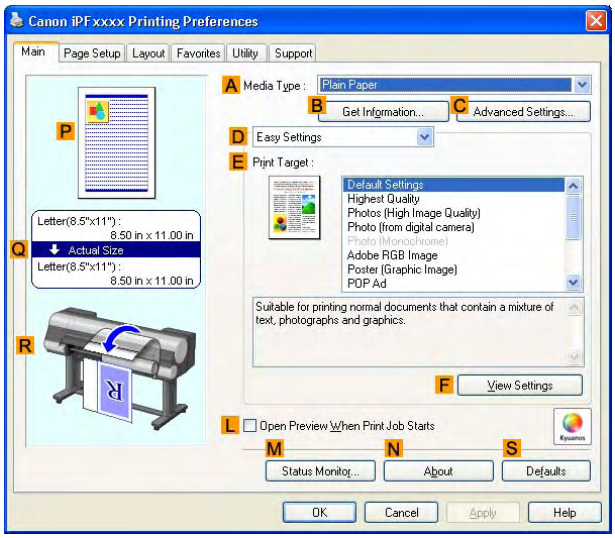
- In Photoshop, select no color-matching.
- In the printer driver settings, select **Driver Matching Mode** and choose **Adobe RGB** in **Color Space**.

1. In Photoshop, create an image in the Adobe RGB color space.

   Note

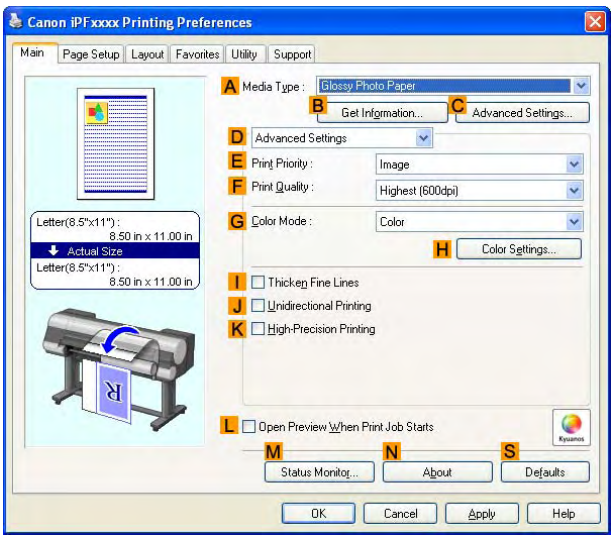
   - The following procedures are based on the example of Photoshop CS2.
   - For instructions on creating Adobe RGB images, refer to the Photoshop documentation.

2. Choose **Print with Preview** from the **File** menu to display the **Print** dialog box.
3. Make sure the setting mode is **Color Management**.
4. In the **Color Handling** list in **Options**, click **No Color Management**.
5. Click **Print** to display the **Print** dialog box.
6. Select the printer and click **Properties** to display the printer driver dialog box.
7. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

8. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Glossy Photo Paper.
9. Click D **Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.

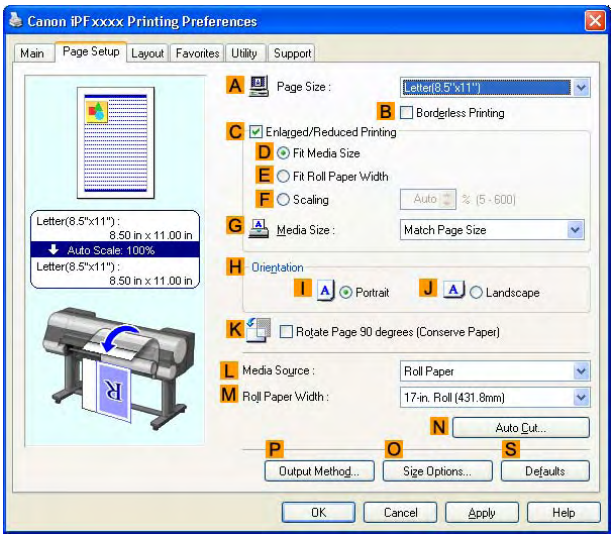


10. Click **Image** in the E **Print Priority** list.
11. Select the print quality in the F **Print Quality** list.

Note

- Options displayed in the F **Print Quality** list vary depending on the paper type.

12. Click **Color** in the G **Color Mode** list.
13. Click H **Color Settings** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.
14. Click the **Matching** tab to display the **Matching** sheet.
15. In **Matching Mode**, click **Driver Matching Mode**.
16. In **Color Space**, click **Adobe RGB**.
17. Click **OK** to close the **Color Settings** dialog box.
18. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

19. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the source application. In this case, click **10"x12"**.
20. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Media Source** list.
21. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **Roll Paper Width** list. In this case, click **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**, and then click **OK**.
22. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

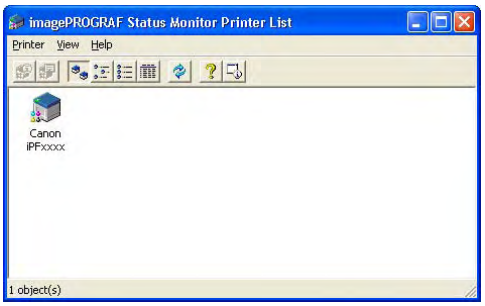
Note

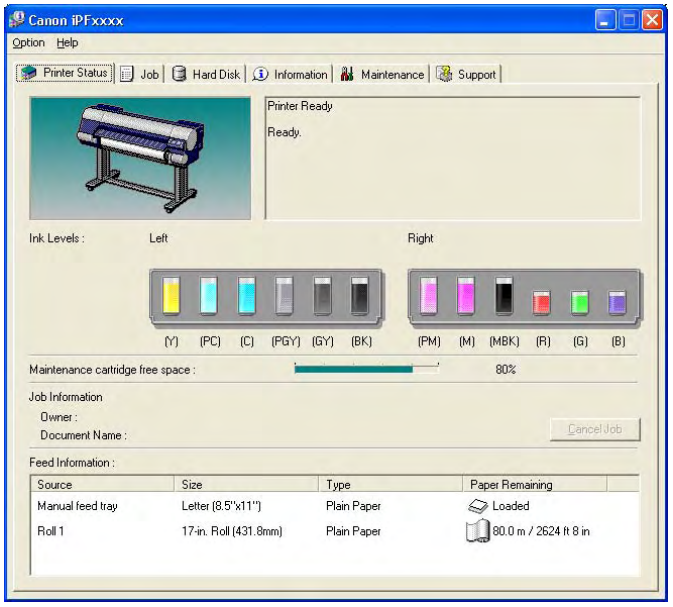
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.509)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)

imagePROGRAF Status Monitor is a utility for checking the printer status and managing print jobs.
Two screens are available in imagePROGRAF Status Monitor : “Printer List” shows a list of printers, and “Status Monitor” shows details for each printer.





- You can view a list of the printers for which printer drivers have been installed on your computer, printers connected to your computer, and printers found on the network.
- Printer status can be checked in real time on a computer monitor.
- If a printer error occurs, you can investigate the corrective action immediately.
- Images of Ink Tanks are shown, with different images for various types of ink. An icon and warning message will notify you when ink levels are low.
- The type of paper loaded in each media source is identified. You can also check to see if paper has run out.
- This way, the utility enables you to check printer information and take care of printer maintenance for optimal printing results.
- You can also set up automatic email notification of any printer problems or errors to email addresses you designate in advance.

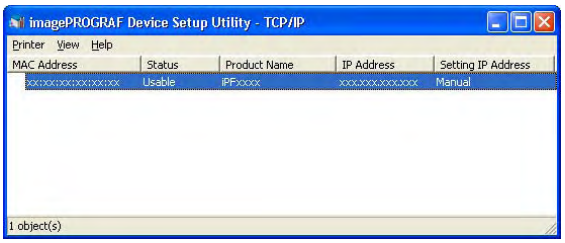
Note

- For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility

imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility is a utility to establish communication between the printer and your computer by completing relevant settings. After the printer is installed, for example, you can use imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility to complete the network settings initially.



- Starting imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility will show a list of printers found on the network. In this list, select the printer (specifically, the printer's MAC address) that you want to set up, and then configure the basic settings from your computer, such as the printer's IP address and the network frame type.
- You can see which printers are online in the network by checking the printer list. Communication between your computer and these printers is possible.

Note

- We recommend that your network or printer administrator complete the setup work using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.
- For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility help.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility

Install imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility from the User Software CD-ROM provided with the printer as follows:

Important

- In Windows 2000/Windows XP/Windows Server 2003/Windows Vista, you must log on with administrative rights equivalent to the “Administrator” account.

1. Insert the User Software CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive.
2. On the **Setup Menu** window, click **Install Individual Software**.
3. Click **Install** in imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.
4. Follow the instructions on the screen to proceed with the installation.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility

From a computer running Windows, you can use imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility provided with the printer to configure the printer's IP address. This topic describes how to configure the IP address using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.

Important

- To configure network settings, you must be logged in with administrative rights such as "Administrator" account. We recommend that your network administrator configure the network settings.
- For instructions on installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility, see "Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility". (→P.536)

1. Start imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility from the **start** menu.
2. In the list of printers, select the printer to configure.
3. Choose **Protocol Settings** from the **Printer** menu.
4. In the **Setting IP Address** list, choose **Manual**.
5. Enter the IP address assigned to the printer and click the **Set** button.
6. Click **OK** after the **Confirmation** message dialog box is displayed.
7. Exit imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.

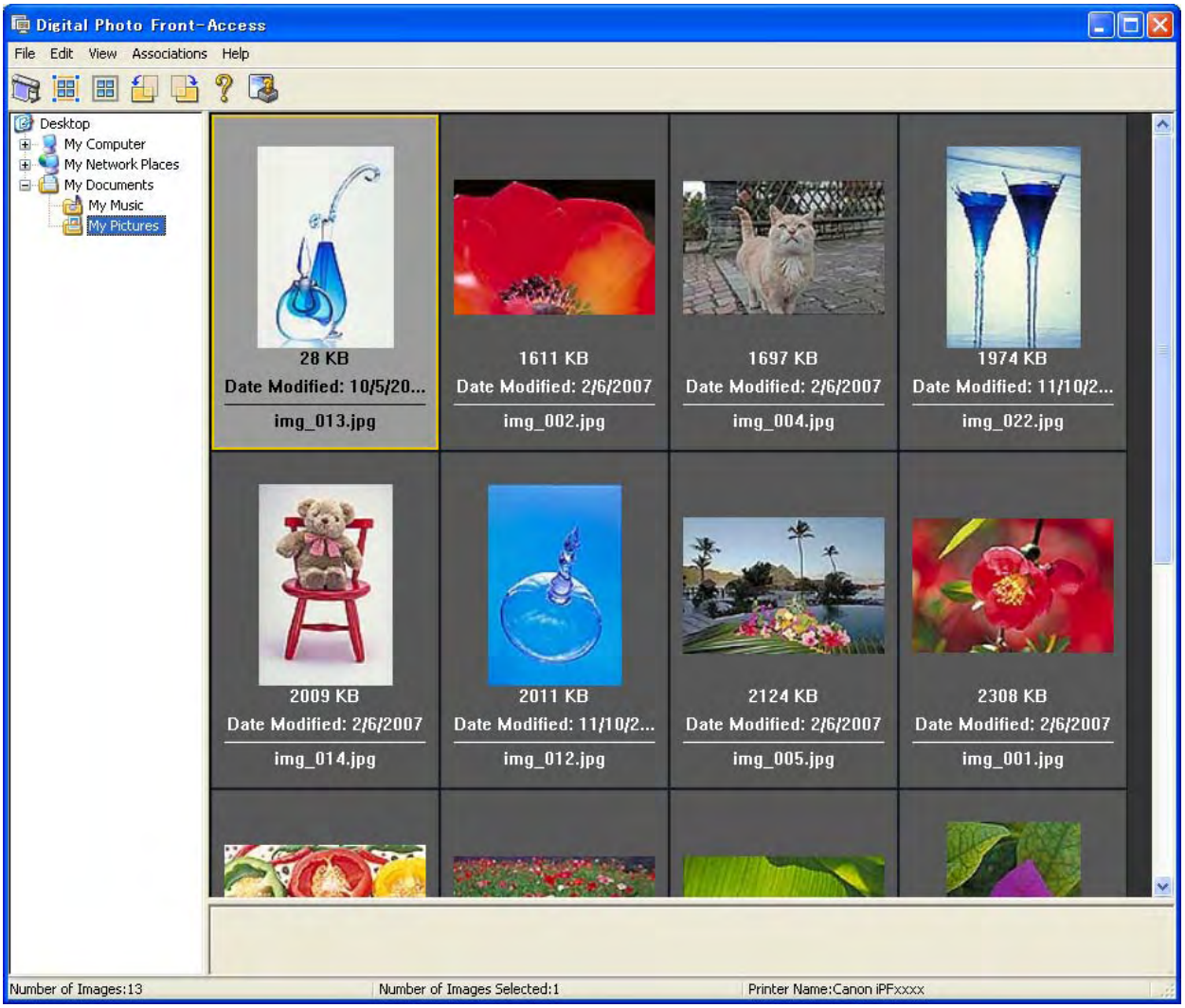
Note

- To configure the IP address automatically, choose **Auto** in the **Setting IP Address** list and select **DHCP**, **BOOTP**, or **RARP**.
- You can also specify the subnet mask and default gateway.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Digital Photo Front-Access

Digital Photo Front-Access is an application that links photos from Canon digital cameras and other image files on your computer with various other applications.



- Simply select an image and click the icon of the application you want to start to launch the application.
- You can also print from Digital Photo Front-Access. In short, Digital Photo Front-Access can help you manage images in many ways from editing to printing as an effective way to work with other applications.
- Digital Photo Front-Access also enables image retouching. For automatic retouching, select an image for retouching and click Image Adjustment.
- Because this application automates the workflow from retouching to display for all of your images, it can save time and work in retouching.

Note

- For details, refer to the Digital Photo Front-Access help.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

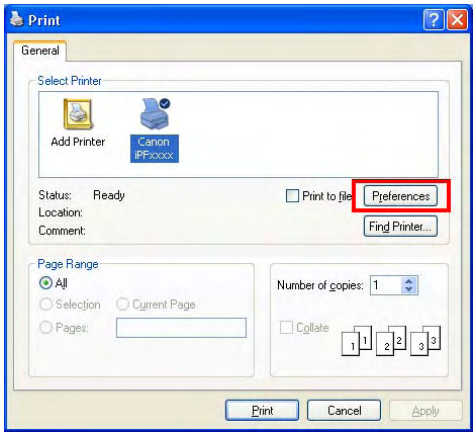
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows)

1. Choose **Print** from the **File** menu to display the dialog box for printing conditions.
2. Select the printer, and then display the printer driver dialog box.

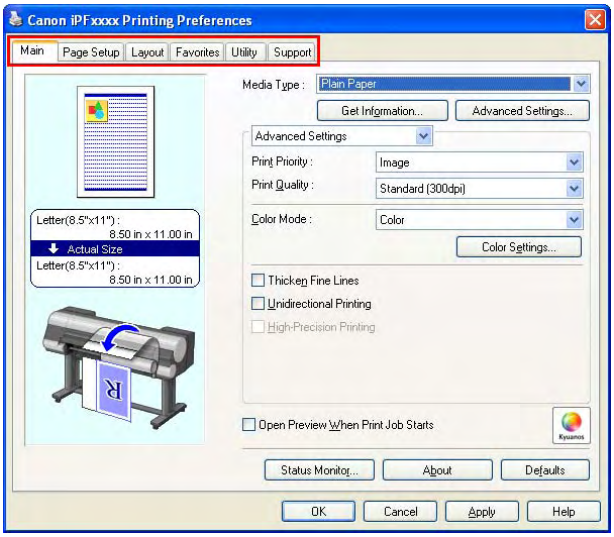
Note

- The dialog box for specifying printing conditions varies depending on the source application. In some cases, when you select the printer, a sheet for configuring the printer driver is added to the dialog box. In the following case, click **Preferences**.

■Example: Print dialog box displayed by the application software



Six sheets of print settings are displayed by the printer driver: **Main**, **Page Setup**, **Layout**, **Favorites**, **Utility**, and **Support**.



Note

- The titles of dialog boxes may vary depending on the application, and sheets other than these six sheets may be displayed.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

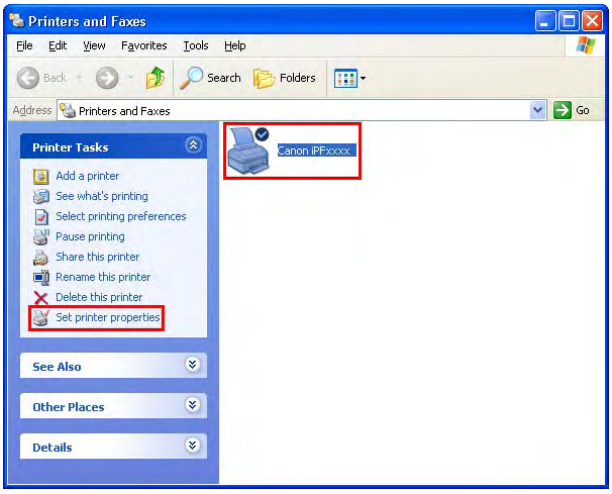
Important

- If you access the printer driver dialog box from the source application, changes you make to the settings will only apply temporarily to that application. Because these are sizes you specify temporarily in the printer driver, the sizes will not be available after you exit the application.
- You can also access the printer driver dialog box from the Windows system menu.
  see “Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu (Windows)”. (→P.206)

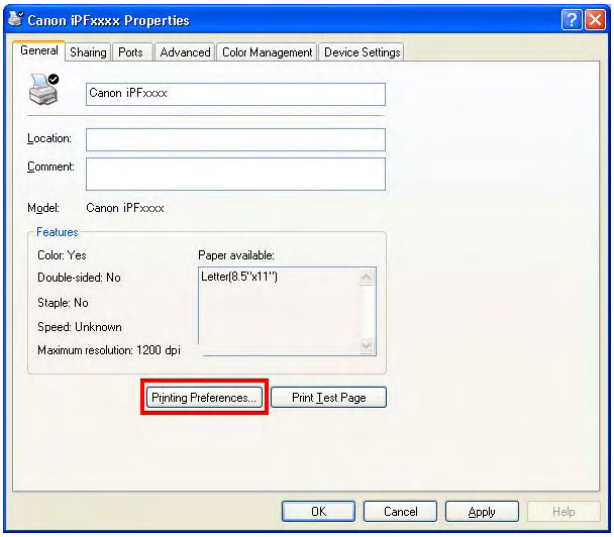
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu (Windows)

1. Click **start** > **Printers and Faxes** (or **Printers**).
2. Select the printer, and then display the printer properties dialog box.

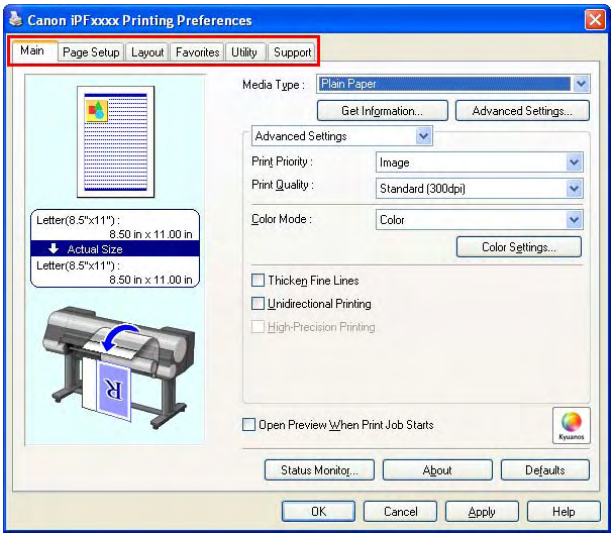


3. Click **Printing Preferences** to display the **Printing Preferences** dialog box, titled with the name of this printer.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Six sheets of print settings are displayed by the printer driver: **Main**, **Page Setup**, **Layout**, **Favorites**, **Utility**, and **Support**.



Important

- If you access the printer driver dialog box from the operating system menu, changes you make to the settings will apply to all applications you use for printing.
- You can also access the printer driver dialog box from applications.
  see “Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows)”. (→P.539)

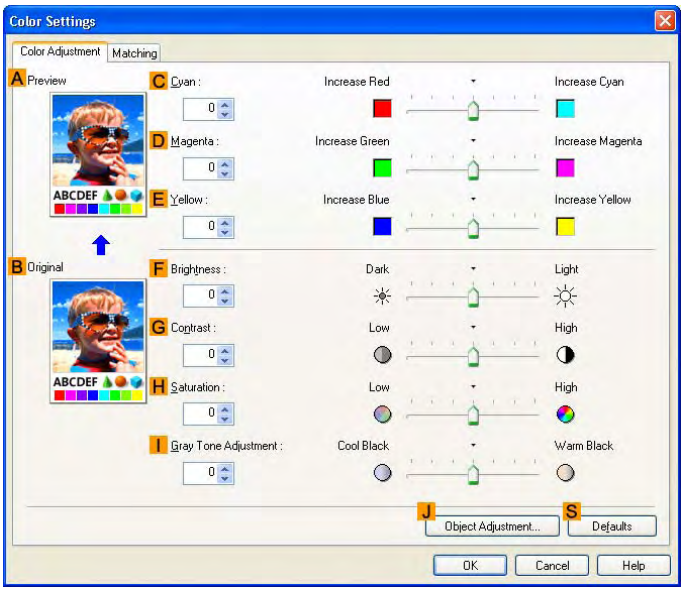
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Color Settings Sheet: Color (Windows)

In general, make any needed adjustments to the color of documents in the application used to create them. However, if the color tone as printed is not as you expected, you can also adjust the color in the printer driver.

Color Adjustment : color

If the color tone as printed is not as you expected, you can adjust it on the **Color Adjustment** sheet.



Note

- To display the **Color Adjustment** sheet, on the **Main** Sheet (Windows) (→P.516) , click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**.

Setting Item	Description
A **Preview**	The image at left is updated to reflect any changes you make to setting items on the sheet, enabling you to check the results of adjustment.
B **Original**	The image at right shows the original state before adjustment. You can compare it to the **Preview** image.
C **Cyan**	Correct color tones by adjusting the levels of each color.
D **Magenta**	
E **Yellow**	
F **Brightness**	Adjust the overall image brightness as desired. You can adjust the brightness if the printed document is lighter or darker than the original image (that is, the original photo that was scanned or the original graphic as it appears on the computer screen).
G **Contrast**	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other, as desired. Increasing the **Contrast** makes images sharper, and reducing the **Contrast** softens images.
H **Saturation**	Adjust the color intensity as desired. Increasing the **Saturation** setting makes colors more vivid, and reducing the **Saturation** makes colors more subdued.
I **Gray Tone Adjustment**	Adjust the color tone of grays as desired. Choose **Cool Black** (tinged with blue), **Warm Black** (tinged with red), and so on.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

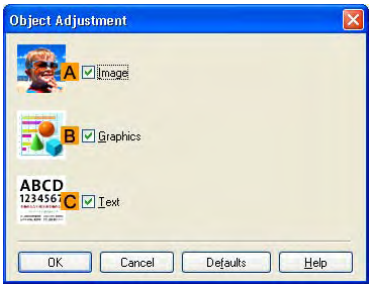
Setting Item	Description
J **Object Adjustment**	Select this option to display the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, in which you can specify objects subject to color adjustment.
S **Defaults**	Click to restore all settings on the sheet to the default values.

Note

- For details on settings items, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.254)

Object Adjustment dialog box

In the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, you can specify what type of print jobs to apply color adjustment to. If an original comprises images, graphics, and text, you can specify which portion to apply color adjustment to.



Note

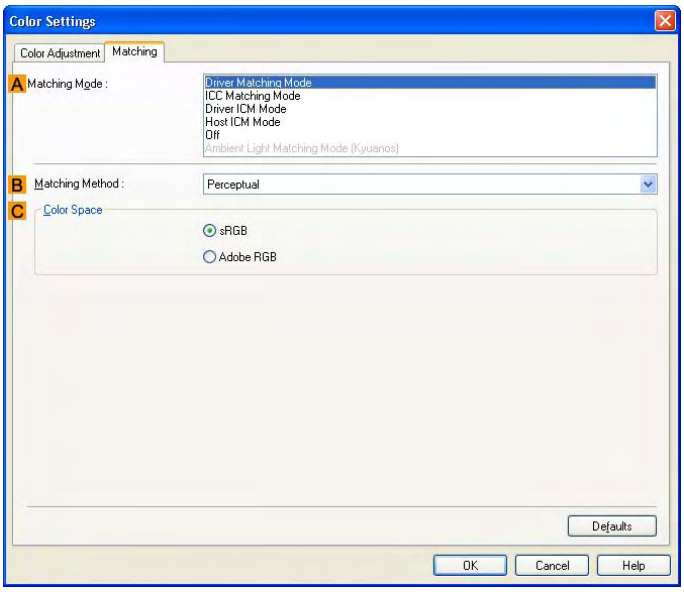
- To display the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, click **Object Adjustment** on the **Color Adjustment** sheet.

Setting Item	Description
A **Image**	Select this option to apply color adjustment to image areas, such as photos.
B **Graphics**	Select this option to apply color adjustment to graphics, such as lines and circles.
C **Text**	Select this option to apply color adjustment to text.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Matching sheet: Driver Matching Mode

On the **Matching** sheet, you can specify color matching, to compensate for differences in the appearance of colors on various devices. The following options are available when you select **Driver Matching Mode** in the **Matching Mode** list.



Note

- To display the **Matching** sheet, on the **Main** Sheet (Windows) (→P.516) , click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**, and then click the **Matching** sheet.

Setting Item	Description
A **Matching Mode**	Select the color matching mode to use, as desired. Normally, select **Driver Matching Mode** . For color matching based on ICC profiles, select **ICC Matching Mode** , **Driver ICM Mode** , or **Host ICM Mode** , depending on your color matching system. If you don't want color matching using the printer driver, select **Off** .
B **Matching Method**	Select the color matching method that suits the document to be printed. Various **Matching Method** options are available depending on your selection in **Matching** .
C **Color Space**	Select the applicable color space as desired.

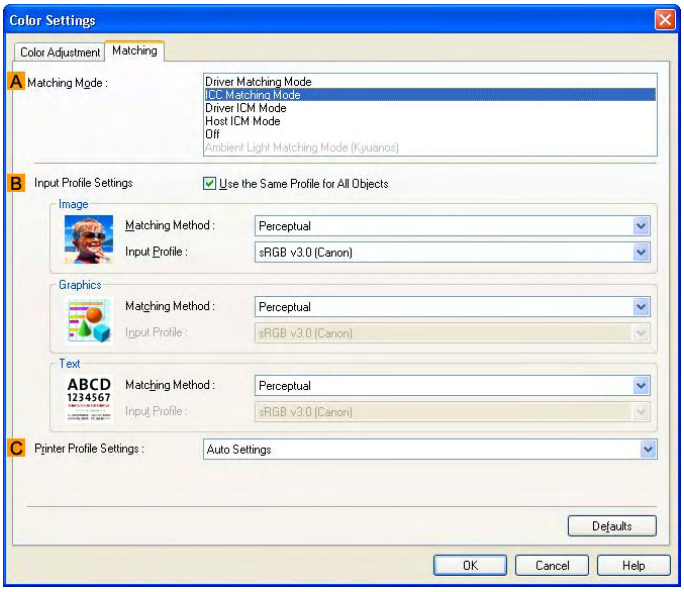
Note

- For details on settings items, see "Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver". (→P.254)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Matching sheet: ICC Matching Mode, Driver ICM Mode, and Host ICM Mode

On the **Matching** sheet, you can specify color matching, to compensate for differences in the appearance of colors on various devices. The following options are available when you select **ICC Matching Mode**, **Driver ICM Mode**, or **Host ICM Mode** on the **Matching Mode** sheet.



Note

- To display the **Matching** sheet, on the **Main** Sheet (Windows) (→P.516) , click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**, and then click the **Matching** sheet.

Setting Item	Description
A **Matching Mode**	Select the color matching mode to use, as desired.
B **Input Profile Settings**	You can select **Image** , **Graphics** , or **Text** . You can choose **Matching Method** and **Input Profile** . Various options are available depending on your selected **Matching Mode** . To apply the same input profile automatically for **Graphics** and **Text** , select **Use the Same Profile for All Objects** . To apply separate input profiles to **Graphics** and **Text** , clear **Use the Same Profile for All Objects** and specify the individual settings.
C **Printer Profile Settings**	Specify the printer profile as desired. Normally, select **Auto Settings** .

Note

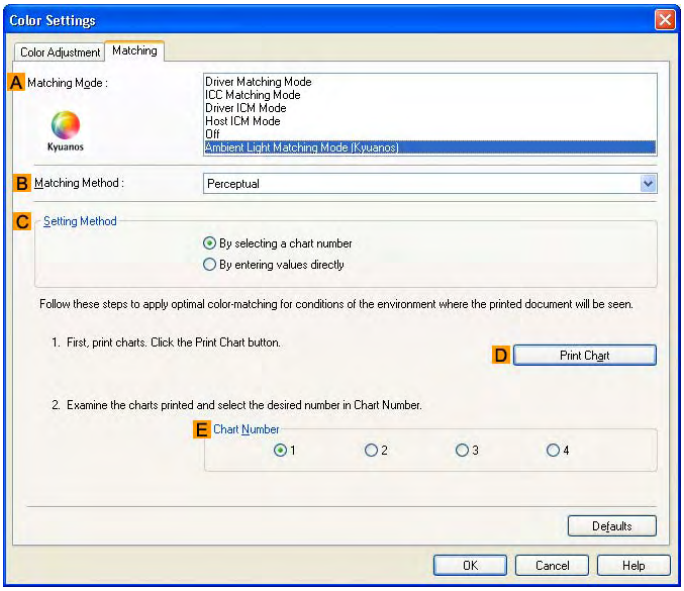
- For details on settings items, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.254)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

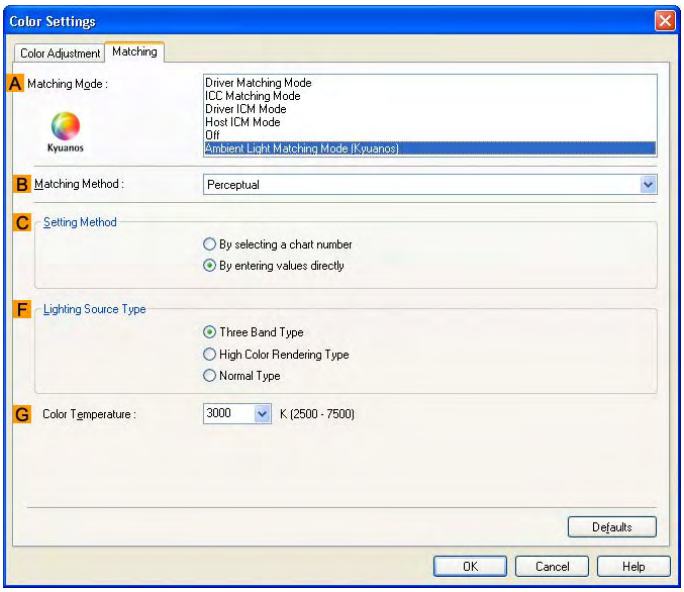
Matching sheet: Ambient Light Matching Mode (Kyuanos)

On the **Matching** sheet, you can specify color matching to compensate for differences in the appearance of colors on various devices. The following options are available when you select **Ambient Light Matching Mode (Kyuanos)** in the **Matching Mode** list.

When you select **By selecting a chart number** in **Setting Method**



When you select **By entering values directly** in **Setting Method**



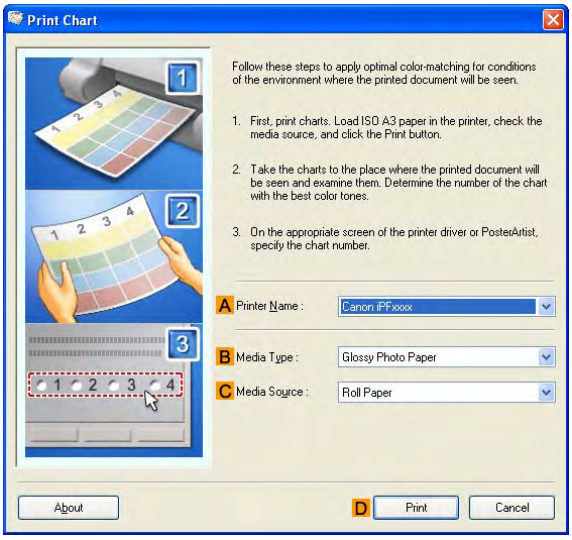
Setting Item	Description
A **Matching Mode**	Select the color matching mode to use, as desired. Here, select **Ambient Light Matching Mode (Kyuanos)** .
B **Matching Method**	Select the matching method.
C **Setting Method**	You can choose configuration based on printed **Charts** or based on using the Eye-One spectrophotometer.
D **Print Chart**	Click to start the **Light Source Check Tool** , for printing **Charts** . The **Light Source Check Tool** must be installed to use this function.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Setting Item	Description
E Chart Number	In **Chart** , select the number of the pattern with your desired colors.
F Lighting Source Type	Select the light source measured using the Eye-One spectrophotometer.
G Color Temperature	Select the value measured using the Eye-One spectrophotometer.

Light Source Check Tool

The **Light Source Check Tool** enables you to print **Chart**.


Print Chart
Follow these steps to apply optimal color-matching for conditions of the environment where the printed document will be seen.
1. First, print charts. Load ISO A3 paper in the printer, check the media source, and click the Print button.
2. Take the charts to the place where the printed document will be seen and examine them. Determine the number of the chart with the best color tones.
3. On the appropriate screen of the printer driver or PosterArtist, specify the chart number.
A Printer Name :
Canon iPFxxxx
B Media Type :
Glossy Photo Paper
C Media Source :
Roll Paper
About
D Print
Cancel

Setting Item	Description
A Printer	The printer name is displayed here.
B Media Type	Select the type of paper, as desired. For information on the types of paper compatible with **Ambient Light Matching Mode (Kyuanos)** , refer to the Paper Reference Guide . (→P.169)
C Media Source	Choose the media source, as desired. Options displayed in the list vary depending on the selection in **Media Type** in the **Main** sheet.
D Print	Click to print the **Chart** .

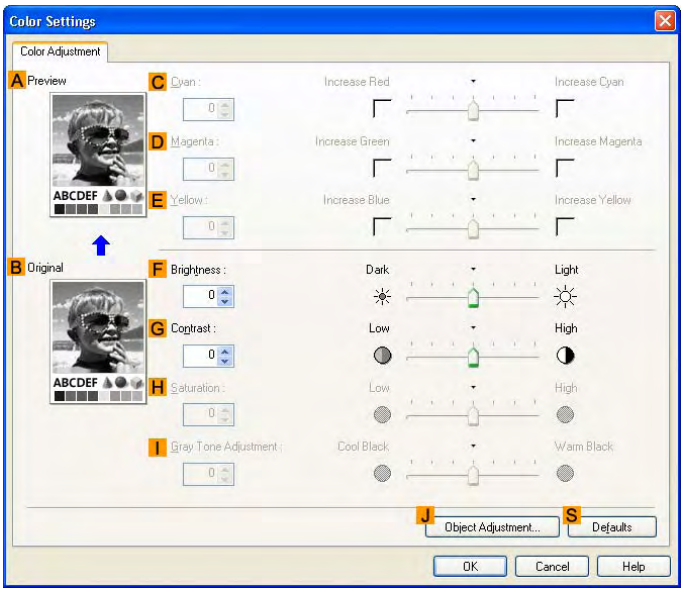
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Color Settings Sheet: Monochrome (Windows)

The following settings are available on the **Color Settings** sheet for monochrome printing.

Color Adjustment : monochrome

On the **Color Adjustment** sheet for monochrome printing, you can adjust the brightness and contrast.



Note

- To display the **Color Adjustment** sheet, on the **Main** Sheet (Windows) (→P.516) , click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**.

Setting Item	Description
A Preview	The image at left is updated to reflect any changes you make to setting items on the sheet, enabling you to check the results of adjustment.
B Original	The image at right shows the original state before adjustment. You can compare it to the **Preview** image.
C Cyan	Not available.
D Magenta	
E Yellow	
F Brightness	Adjust the overall image brightness as desired. You can adjust the brightness if the printed document is lighter or darker than the original image (that is, the original photo that was scanned or the original graphic as it appears on the computer screen).
G Contrast	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other, as desired. Increasing the **Contrast** makes images sharper, and reducing the **Contrast** softens images.
H Saturation	Not available.
I Gray Tone Adjustment	Not available.
J Object Adjustment	Select this option to display the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, in which you can specify objects subject to color adjustment.
S Defaults	Click to restore all settings on the sheet to the default values.

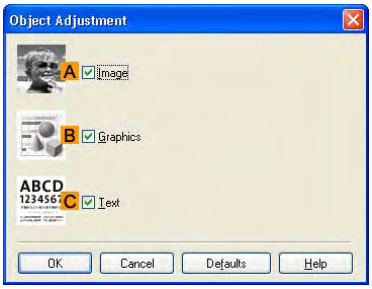
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Note

- For details on settings items, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.254)

Object Adjustment dialog box

In the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, you can specify what type of print jobs to apply color adjustment to. If an original comprises images, graphics, and text, you can specify which portion to apply color adjustment to.



Note

- To display the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, click **Object Adjustment** on the **Color Adjustment** sheet.

Setting Item	Description
A **Image**	Select this option to apply color adjustment to image areas, such as photos.
B **Graphics**	Select this option to apply color adjustment to graphics, such as lines and circles.
C **Text**	Select this option to apply color adjustment to text.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Confirming the Print Image Before Printing

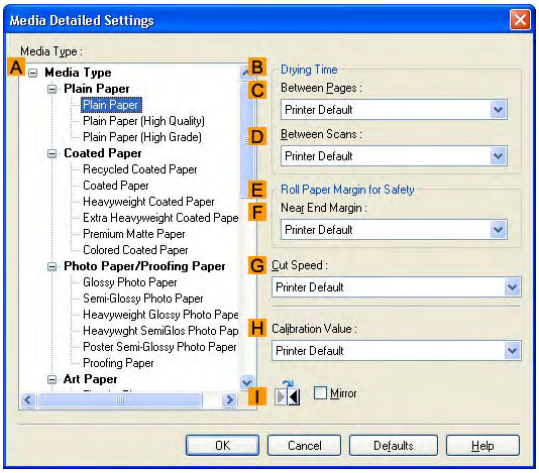
The preview screen displayed before printing enables you to see the original image just as it will be printed. Confirming the image of print jobs helps prevent printing errors.
For instructions on previewing print jobs, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Previewing Images Before Printing (Windows) (→P.511)
- Previewing Images Before Printing (Mac OS X) (→P.563)
- Previewing Images Before Printing (Mac OS 9) (→P.587)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Windows)

The **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box offers the following settings. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



Note

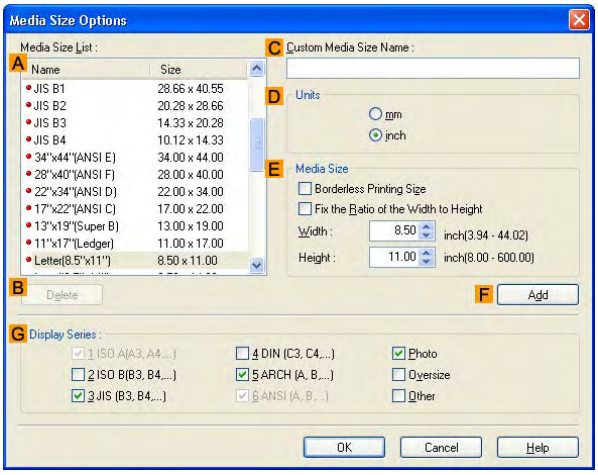
- To display the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box, on the **Main** Sheet (Windows) (→P.516) , click **Settings** by **Media Type**.

Setting Item		Description
A Media Type		Select the paper type. For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide . (→P.169)
B Drying Time		Specify the time that the printer waits for ink to dry, as needed. The **Drying Time** setting is only valid for rolls. (→P.198)
	C Between Pages	Specify the time the printer waits after printing a page until ejecting the paper, as needed.
	D Between Scans	Specify the time the printer waits after printing a line on the page until printing the next line, as needed.
E Roll Paper Margin for Safety		You can specify the length of a margin on the leading edge of paper to ensure that paper susceptible to curling is held firmly against the Platen .
	F Near End Margin	Specify the length of the **Near End Margin** (the leading edge margin) of the roll, as needed.
G Cut Speed		Select the speed of automatic cutting, as needed. You can adjust this setting if paper is not cut well when automatic cutting is used.
H Calibration Value		You can specify whether to apply the results of calibration performed on the printer to image processing.
I Mirror		Specify whether to print a mirror image, as needed. Select this option to print a version of the document or image with the left and right sides inverted.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Media Size Options Dialog Box (Windows)

In the **Media Size Options** dialog box, you can create and register your own **Custom Media Size**. The sizes you define are listed with standard media sizes for selection later as needed.



Note

- To display the **Media Size Options** dialog box, on the **Page Setup** Sheet (Windows) (→P.520) , click **Media Size Options**.

Setting Item	Description
A **Media Size List**	Shows the names and sizes of paper that can be used with the printer driver.
B **Delete**	Custom media sizes created by users can be deleted from the **Media Size List** , as needed. However, they cannot be deleted in the following situations. • If a standard media size of the printer driver is selected. • If an oversized media size is selected. • If a media size in a red box is selected.
C **Custom Media Size Name**	You can name **Custom Media Size** as desired.
D **Units**	Specify the desired unit of measure for the **Custom Media Size** height and width.
E **Media Size**	Specify the desired **Width** and **Height** . You can make your selection from sizes that are compatible with **Borderless Printing** by selecting **Borderless Printing Size** . To maintain the aspect ratio of the **Width** and **Height** as you resize the paper, select **Fix the Ratio of the Width to Height** .
F **Add**	Enables you to register the custom media size you have specified or overwrite an existing custom media size.
G **Display Series**	You can limit the number of options shown in **Page Size** , **Media Size** , and **Media Size List** .

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Windows)

Scanned originals from a Color imageRUNNER can be enlarged and printed automatically.
Originals you create by scanning with a Color imageRUNNER are transferred to a "hot folder" and printed automatically after enlargement according to printing conditions you specify for that folder.
This processing sequence is called the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy function.
To use Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy, first complete these settings in the following order.

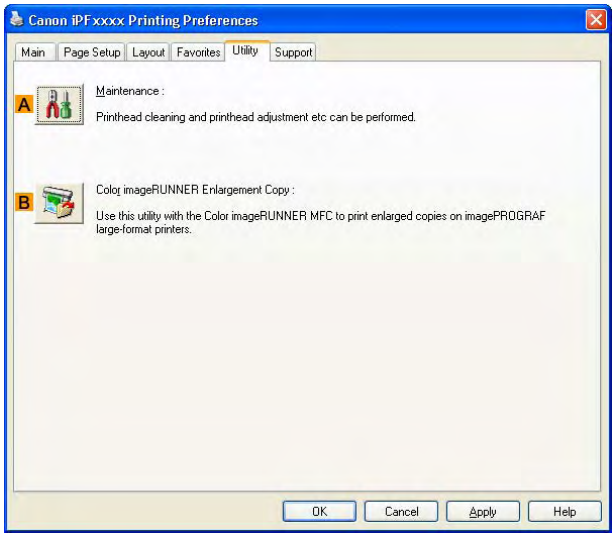
1. Register a hot folder on your computer
   Register a hot folder on your computer for storing scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER and complete the settings for enlargement copy.
2. Complete the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER.
   Configure the Color imageRUNNER to send scanned originals to the hot folder.

After these settings are complete, you can print enlarged copies of scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER.

Registering a hot folder on your computer

Folders used for **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** (iR enlargement copy) are called hot folders. Register a hot folder on your computer for storing scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER. You can specify printing conditions (such as the image quality and paper size), based on which originals transferred to the hot folder will be printed. Follow these steps to register and modify hot folders.

1. Display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.206)
2. Click the **Utility** tab to display the **Utility** sheet.



3. Click **B Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** to start the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility.
4. Use the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility to register or modify hot folders.
   For instructions on registering and modifying hot folders, refer to the help file for the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Completing the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER.

Configure the Color imageRUNNER to send scanned originals to the hot folder. It is easy to send scanned originals to the hot folder if you assign the scanning settings and destination to a **Favorites** button on the Color imageRUNNER.
For instructions on assigning scanning settings and destinations to a **Favorites** button, refer to the setting manual, displayed by clicking **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Setup Manual** button of Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility, or refer to the Color imageRUNNER manual.

Scanning the original and print an enlargement

Follow the steps below to scan an original on the Color imageRUNNER for enlarged printing on the printer. For detailed instructions, refer to the Color imageRUNNER manual.

1. Load the original on the platen glass or document feeder of the Color imageRUNNER.
2. Press **Send** to display the screen for transmission.
3. Press **Favorites**, and then press the **Favorites** button assigned to the hot folder.
4. Press **Start** on the control panel. If you scan originals on the platen glass, after scanning all originals, press **Done** on the touch-panel display.
   Scanned originals are sent to the hot folder and automatically enlarged and printed following the conditions you specified for the folder.

Note

- For details on Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy, refer to Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Guide .

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Special Settings Dialog Box (Windows)

If the printing results are not as you expected, you can change how printing is processed in the **Special Settings** dialog box.

Note

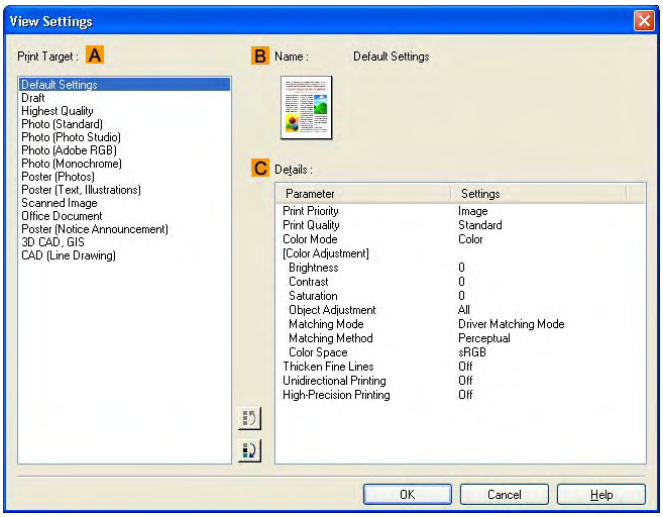
- To display the **Special Settings** dialog box, on the **Layout** Sheet (Windows) (→P.522) , click **Special Settings**.

Setting Item	Description
A **FineZoom Settings**	This function is used in large-format printing. Normally, choose **Auto** . If documents are not printed correctly on large-format media, it may help to select **Yes** , and if fine lines are not visible or if images are distorted when printed, it may help to select **No** .
B **Fast Graphic Process**	If image colors are inconsistent in printed documents or if lines are printed in varying thicknesses, clearing this option may help produce the expected results.
C **Application Color Matching Priority**	You can give applications priority in color management.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Windows)

In the **View Settings** dialog box, you can check details of the selected printing application.



Note

- To display the **View Settings** dialog box, on the **Main** Sheet (Windows) (→P.516) , click **View Settings** by **Print Target**.

Setting Item	Description
A **Print Target**	Shows all **Print Target** options (settings items for the printing application).
B **Name**	Identifies the item selected in **Print Target** by its name and an icon.
C **Details**	Here, you can confirm detailed settings values for each listed item for the selected **Print Target** .

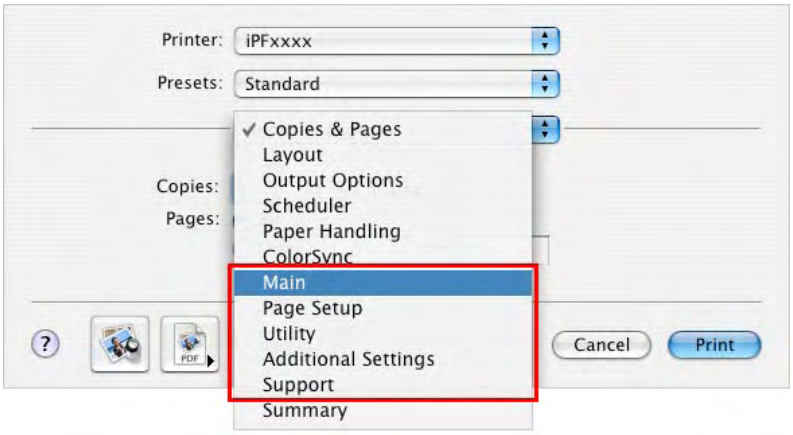
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Mac OS X

Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X)

For instructions on accessing the Mac OS X printer driver, refer to the following topics.

- Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Mac OS X) (→P.578)



For information on the Mac OS X printer driver settings, refer to the following topics.

- Main Pane (Mac OS X) (→P.565)

  You can specify the media type, color processing, print quality, print preview, and other settings. Choose **Easy Settings** to specify basic print settings based on the printing application or **Advanced Settings** to complete more detailed settings as desired.

  - Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS X) (→P.209)
  - View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Mac OS X) (→P.583)
  - Color Settings Pane: Color (Mac OS X) (→P.579)
  - Color Settings Pane: Monochrome (Mac OS X) (→P.581)
  - Gray Adjustment Pane (Mac OS X) (→P.570)
- Page Setup Pane (Mac OS X) (→P.567)

  You can specify the page size of the original, borderless printing, enlargement or reduction, the orientation, the media size and source, and automatic cutting.
- Utility Pane (Mac OS X) (→P.569)

  You can specify settings related to maintenance for the Printhead and feed amount, as well as settings for **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy**.
- Additional Settings Pane (Mac OS X) (→P.571)

  You can specify settings for how print jobs are sent to the printer.
- Support Pane (Mac OS X) (→P.572)

  You can view support information and the user's manual.

With the **imagePROGRAF Free Layout** feature, you can arrange originals from various source applications on a single page before printing. For details, see the Free Layout Guide .
With the **imagePROGRAF Preview** feature, you can check the layout before printing and adjust layout or size settings while viewing a preview screen. For details, see the imagePROGRAF Preview Guide .
With the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** feature, you can automatically enlarge and print scanned originals from a **Color imageRUNNER**. For details, see the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Guide .

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

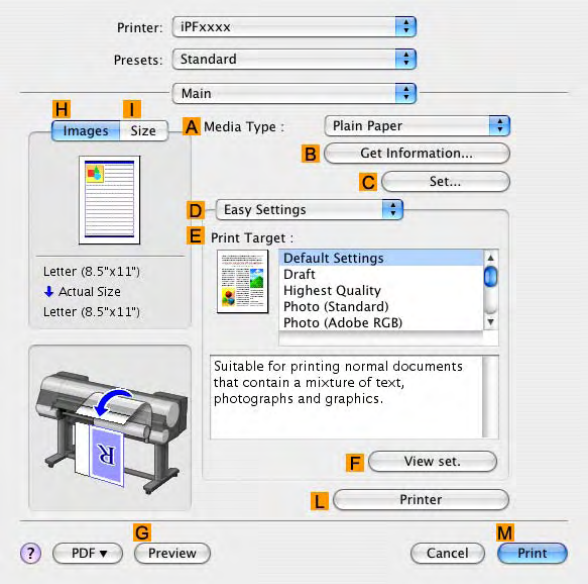
Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)

There are two ways to confirm what printing conditions have been specified, as follows.

- Checking a preview of the settings (→P.559)
- Checking a print preview (→P.560)

Checking a preview of the settings

A preview of the settings is displayed on the left side of the **Main**, **Page Setup**, **Utility**, and **Additional Settings** panes. By checking images and numerical values in the preview, you can confirm current settings for the page size, orientation, media source, and so on.

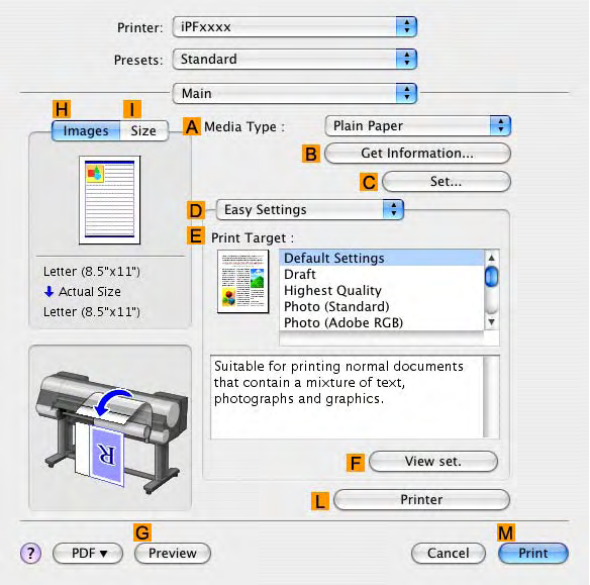


Display Area	Information Displayed
Pane displayed when the **Images** tab is clicked	On top, illustrations indicate the page size of the original, the paper size, orientation, layout, borderless printing selection, color mode, and other settings information. Under this, the page size, paper size, and method and percentage of enlargement or reduction is displayed.
Pane displayed when the **Size** tab is clicked	Paper size details are indicated numerically.
Pane with printer and paper illustrations	Illustrations indicate the media source, orientation, borderless printing selection, and other settings information.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Note

- To confirm the **Print Target** specified in **Easy Settings**, click **F** **View set.** on the **Main** pane to display the **View settings** dialog box.



Checking a print preview

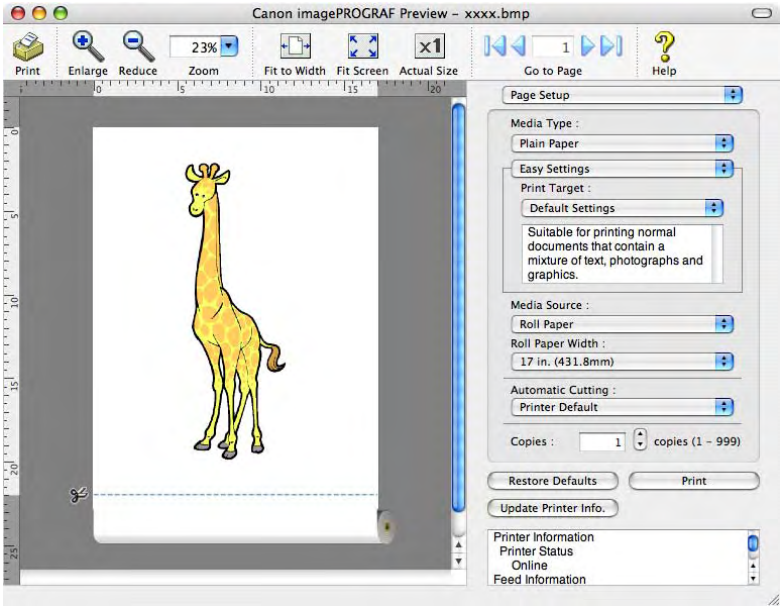
You can check an image of the original just as it will be printed.
Confirming the image of print jobs beforehand helps prevent printing errors.
For details on print previews, see “Previewing Images Before Printing (Mac OS X)”. (→P.563)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Checking the Layout Before Printing

You can check the print layout on the preview screen. While viewing this screen, you can also adjust layout or size settings, and your changes will be instantly applied on the preview screen.

Preview (Macintosh)



Important

- The driver must be installed from the User Software CD-ROM to use this function.

For instructions on how to check the layout before printing, refer to the following topics:

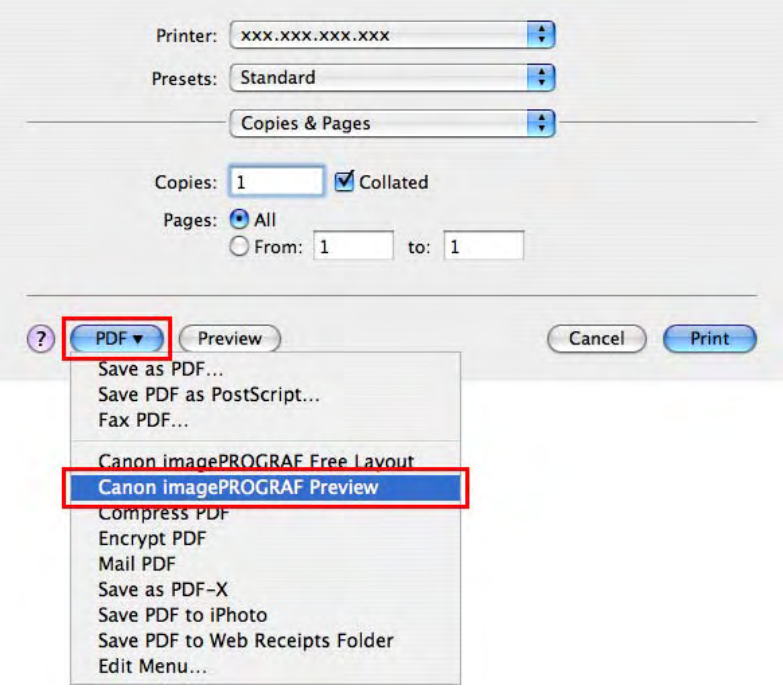
- Checking the Layout Before Printing (Mac OS X) (→P.562)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

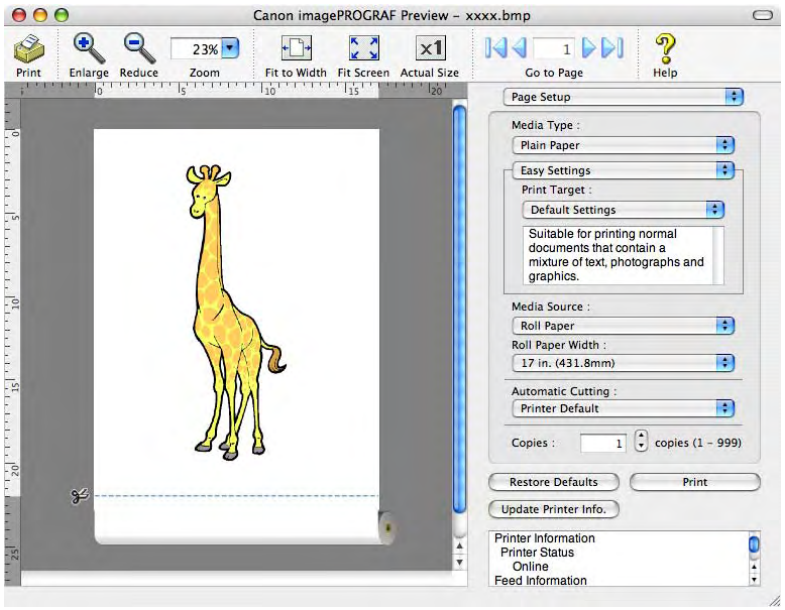
Checking the Layout Before Printing (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to check the layout before printing using the **Preview** function.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Click **PDF** and select **Canon imagePROGRAF Preview**.



3. The **Canon imagePROGRAF Preview** window is displayed.



4. Check the layout and adjust settings in the **Canon imagePROGRAF Preview** window as desired.
5. Print from the **Canon imagePROGRAF Preview** menu.

Note

- For details on **imagePROGRAF Preview** functions, refer to imagePROGRAF Preview Guide .

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Previewing Images Before Printing (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to preview images of print jobs before actually printing them.

1. In the application menu, choose **Print**.
2. Click **Preview** to open the preview window.
3. Check the layout and other aspects of the printing image, and then click **Print** to start printing.

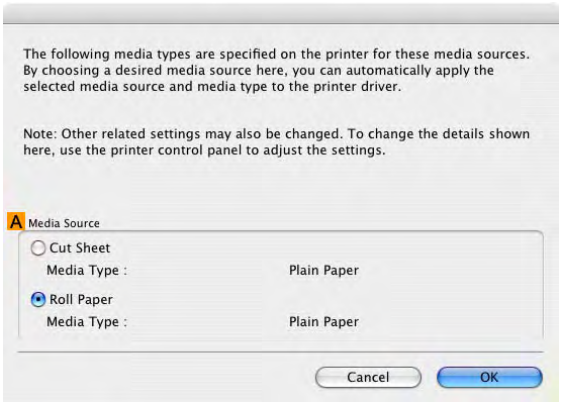
Note

- “Preview” is provided as a standard feature of the operating system. For details, refer to the Mac OS documentation.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box (Mac OS X)

On the **Paper Information on Printer** dialog box, you can obtain information on the paper in the printer and configure printer driver media type setting.


The following media types are specified on the printer for these media sources. By choosing a desired media source here, you can automatically apply the selected media source and media type to the printer driver.
Note: Other related settings may also be changed. To change the details shown here, use the printer control panel to adjust the settings.
A Media Source
Cut Sheet
Media Type : Plain Paper
Roll Paper
Media Type : Plain Paper
Cancel
OK

Note

- To display the **Paper Information on Printer** dialog box, on the **Main** Pane (Mac OS X) (→P.565) , click **Get Information** by **Media Type**.

Setting Item	Description
A **Media Source**	Shows the **Media Source** supported by the printer, as well as the type of paper loaded. To update the media type setting in the printer driver, select the desired **Media Source** option and click **OK** .

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

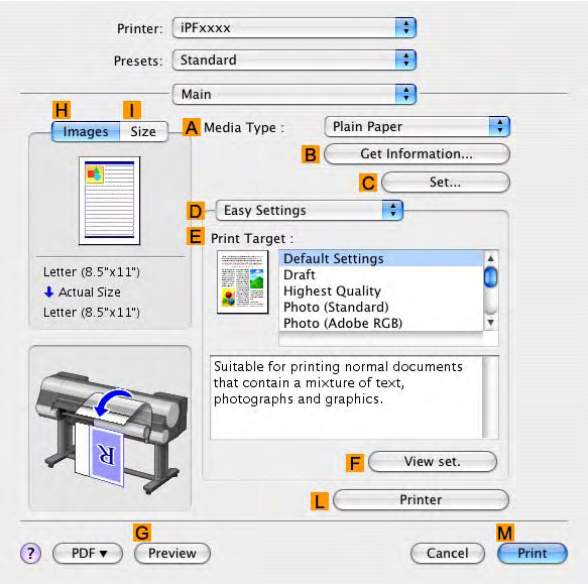
Main Pane (Mac OS X)

The following settings are available on the **Main** pane. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.

Note

- On the **Main** pane, choose **Easy Settings** to specify basic print settings based on the print target, or switch to **Advanced Settings** to complete more detailed settings as desired.

Configuration using Easy Settings



Setting Item		Description
A Media Type		Select the paper type. For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide . (→P.169)
	B Get Information	Click to display the **Get Information** dialog box, which shows media types specified on the printer for each media source. When you select a media source, your selection is applied to the printer driver settings for the media source and media type.
	C Set	Click to display the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box for ink drying time and other detailed settings based on the paper type.
E Print Target		Choose presets that match the type of document to be printed. Printing Photos and Images (Windows, Mac OS X) (→P.247) Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows, Mac OS X) (→P.251) Printing Office Documents (→P.253)
	F View set.	Click to display the **View settings** dialog box, which enables you to confirm the settings for the selected item from the **E Print Target** list or change the order of items listed in **E Print Target** .
L Printer Information		Click to display the **Printer** dialog box, which indicates the ink levels and gives other information about the printer.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

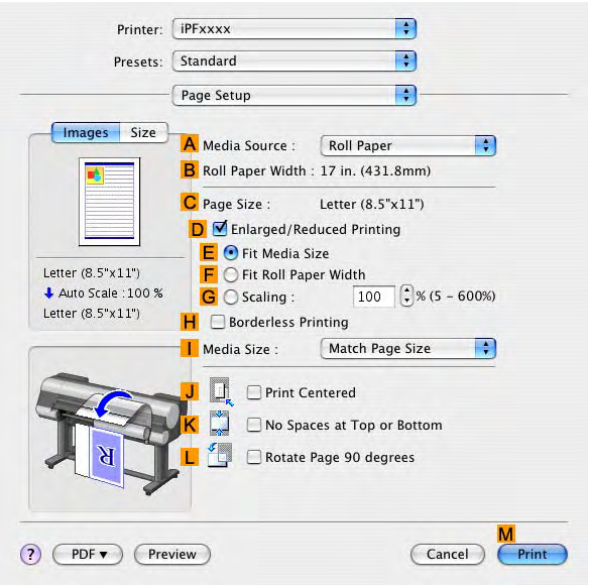
Configuration using Advanced Settings

Setting Item		Description
A Media Type		Select the paper type. For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide . (→P.169)
	B Get Information	Click to display the **Get Information** dialog box, which shows media types specified on the printer for each media source. When you select a media source, your selection is applied to the printer driver settings for the media source and media type.
	C Set	Click to display the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box for ink drying time and other detailed settings based on the paper type.
E Print Priority		Choose the graphic elements that you want to emphasize for printing. Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing (→P.243)
F Print Quality		Choose the level of print quality. Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing (→P.243)
H Color Mode		Choose the color mode. Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing (→P.243)
	I Set	Click to display the **Color Settings** dialog box for more advanced color settings. Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver (→P.254)
J Unidirectional Printing		Although unidirectional printing is slower, it can help prevent misaligned lines and ensure better results.
K High-Precision Printing		Select this option for printing at the highest level of quality. However, this will take more time than regular printing.
L Printer Information		Click to display the **Printer** dialog box, which indicates the ink levels and gives other information about the printer.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Page Setup Pane (Mac OS X)

The following settings are available on the **Page Setup** pane. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



Setting Item		Description
A **Media Source**		Choose how paper is supplied. Options displayed in the list vary depending on the selection in A **Media Type** in the **Main** pane.
B **Roll Paper Width**		Displays the paper width of the roll loaded in the printer. **Unknown** is displayed if the printer cannot detect the roll paper width.
C **Page Size**		Displays the size of the original, as specified in the page settings of the application. For details on page sizes available in the application.see “Paper Sizes”. (→P.175)
D **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**		Choose from the following options when this setting is activated. Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (→P.313) Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (→P.314) Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (→P.315)
	E **Fit Media Size**	Resizes the document image to match the paper size.
	F **Fit Roll Paper Width**	Resizes the document image to match the roll width.
	G **Scaling**	Resizes the document image based on a specified scaling value. Enter a value in a range of “5-600.”
H **Borderless Printing**		Borderless printing is available if **Roll Paper** is selected in the A **Media Source** list. Activate this setting for borderless printing to match the size and width of the paper. Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size (→P.365) Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (→P.367) Borderless Printing at Actual Size (→P.348)
I **Media Size**		Choose the size of the paper you will print on. Click **Display all selections for Media Size** to list available sizes. For details on available paper sizes, see “Paper Sizes”. (→P.175)

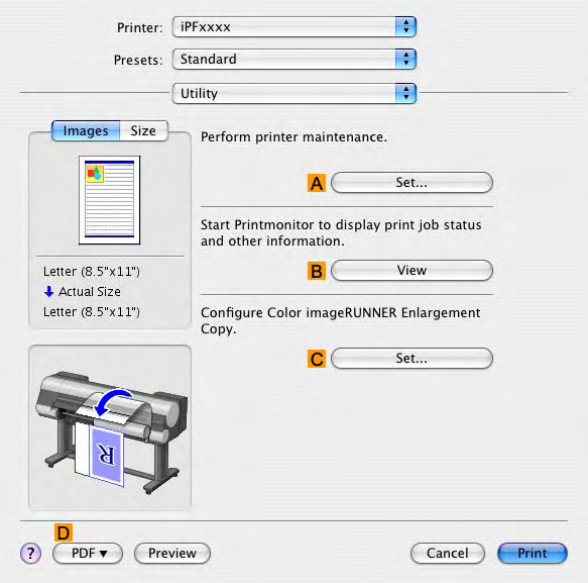
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Setting Item	Description
J Print Centered	Activate this setting to print document images in the center of the paper. Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (→P.443) Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (→P.444)
K No Spaces at Top or Bottom	Activate this setting to print the next image skipping blank areas above and below printable data in documents, which enables you to conserve the paper. Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (→P.461)
L Rotate Page 90 degrees	Activate this setting to rotate the original 90 degrees before printing. Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (→P.460)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Utility Pane (Mac OS X)

The following settings are available on the **Utility**pane.



Setting Item	Description
A **Set**	Click to display the **Printer** dialog box, which offers the following maintenance for the printer. • Nozzle (ink ejecting outlet) cleaning • Head alignment adjustment • Feed amount adjustment
B **View**	Click to start **imagePROGRAF Printmonitor** , which enables you to view the status of print jobs.
C **Set**	Click to complete the settings for Auto Arrange or Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy (iR enlargement copy).

*1: For details, see Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Guide .

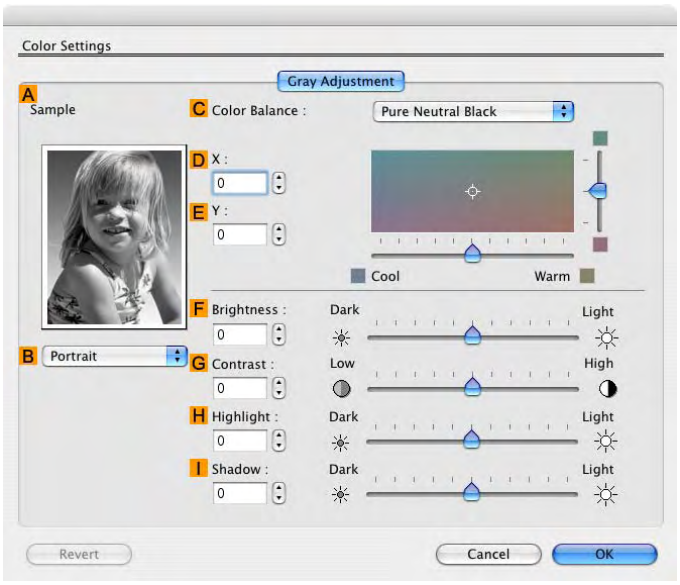
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Gray Adjustment Pane (Mac OS X)

The following settings are available on the **Gray Adjustment** pane.

Gray Adjustment

On the **Gray Adjustment** pane, you can adjust the color balance, brightness, contrast, and other image qualities.



Note

- To display the **Gray Adjustment** pane, on the **Main** Pane (Mac OS X) (→P.565) , select **Monochrome (Photo)** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**, and then click **Color Settings**.
- **Monochrome (Photo)** is not available for all types of paper.

Setting Item	Description
A **Sample**	The image at left is updated to reflect any changes you make to setting items on the sheet, enabling you to check the results of adjustment.
B **Sample List**	Select a sample image, as desired.
C **Color Balance**	Click the list to select a color balance that suits the printing application.
D **X**	Adjust the color balance as you check the color tone in the adjustment area. You can adjust the square area in the center by clicking or dragging it. Drag the vertical or horizontal scroll bars for adjustment, as desired. You can click the arrows by the X (horizontal) and Y (vertical) boxes or enter the values directly.
E **Y**	
F **Brightness**	Adjust the overall image brightness as desired. You can adjust the brightness if the printed document is lighter or darker than the original image (that is, the original photo that was scanned or the original graphic as it appears on the computer screen).
G **Contrast**	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other, as desired. Increasing the **Contrast** makes images sharper, and reducing the **Contrast** softens images.
H **Highlight**	Adjust the brightness of the lightest portion.
I **Shadow**	Adjust the brightness of the darkest portion.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Additional Settings Pane (Mac OS X)

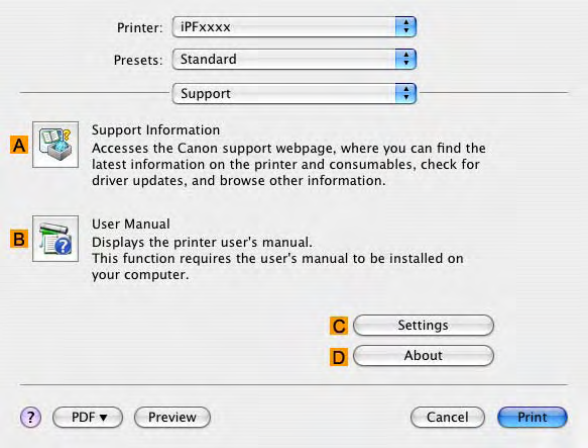
The following settings are available on the **Additional Settings** pane.

Setting Item	Description
A Data Send Method	Choose how print data is sent to the printer. • **B Send Print Data Immediately to Printer** • **C Send All Print Data as Batch to Printer**
D Send job to	Click to display the **Send job to** dialog box, which enables you to specify how print jobs are stored on the printer's hard disk. • **E Print** • **F Print (auto delete)** • **G Save in mail box**
H Save data before printing	Jobs are printed after they are saved on the hard disk.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Support Pane (Mac OS X)

On the **Support** pane, you can view support information and the user's manual.



Button	Corresponding Utility
A **Support Information**	Click to access the Canon support webpage, where you can find the latest information on the printer and consumables, check for printer driver updates, and browse other information.
B **User Manual**	Click to view the printer user's manual. This function requires the user's manual to be installed on your computer.
C **Settings**	The settings can be saved as a file. Click to display the **Export** dialog box, which enables you to specify where to save the file.
D **About**	You can display version information for the printer driver.

Using Favorites (Mac OS X)

You can use the **Presets** function in Mac OS X for favorite-based printing.

Note

- In the printing dialog box, click **Save As** in the **Presets** list to save the current print settings. This is a standard feature of the operating system. For details, refer to the Mac OS documentation.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Adobe RGB Images (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to print Adobe RGB images based on the following example.

- Document: Adobe RGB image created in Photoshop
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Glossy Photo Paper
- Roll Width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

Important

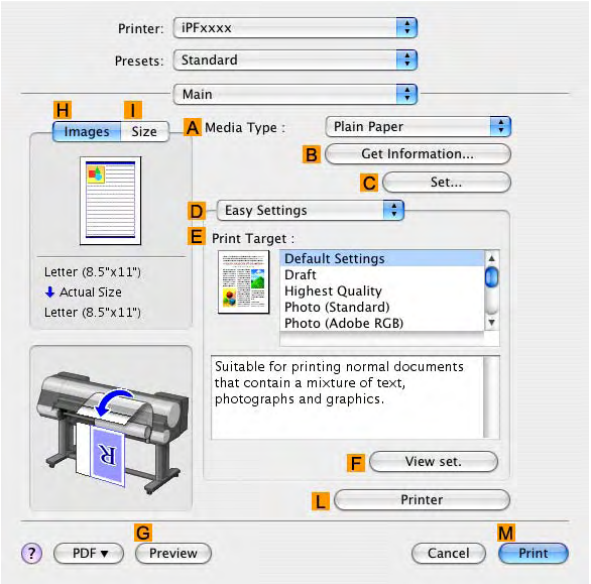
- Do not set up color-matching in Photoshop.
- In the printer driver, specify **Driver Correction** and set **Color Space** to **Adobe RGB**.

1. In Photoshop, create an image in the Adobe RGB color space.

   Note

   - Photoshop CS2 is used in this example.
   - For instructions on creating Adobe RGB images, refer to the Photoshop documentation.

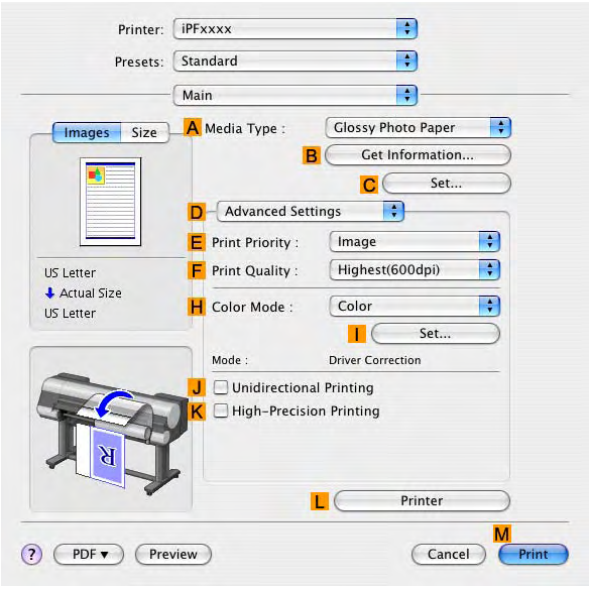
2. Choose **Print with Preview** from the Photoshop menu to display the **Print** dialog box.
3. Make sure the setting mode is **Color Management**.
4. In the **Color Handling** list in **Options**, click **No Color Management**.
5. Click **Print**.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Glossy Photo Paper.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

8. Click **D** **Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.

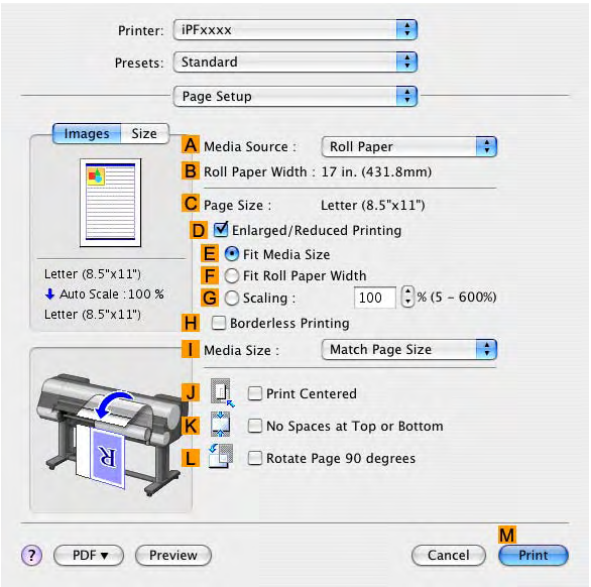


9. Click **Image** in the **E** **Print Priority** list.
10. Select the print quality in the **F** **Print Quality** list.

Note

- Options displayed in the **F** **Print Quality** list vary depending on the paper type.

11. Click **Color** in the **H** **Color Mode** list.
12. Click **I** **Set** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.
13. Click **Matching** to display the **Matching** pane.
14. In **Mode**, click **Driver Correction**.
15. In **Color Space**, click **Adobe RGB**.
16. Click **OK** to close the **Color Settings** dialog box.
17. Access the **Page Setup** pane.

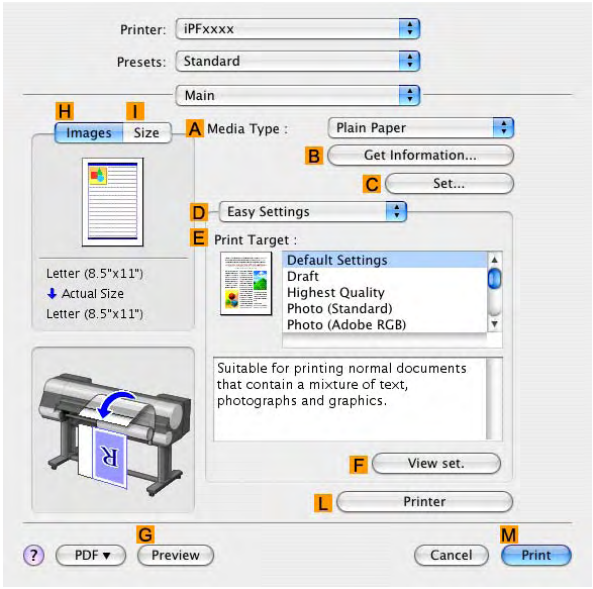


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

18. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A Media Source** list.
19. Make sure the width of the loaded roll paper is displayed in the **B Roll Paper Width** list-here, **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in **B Roll Paper Width**, click **L Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



20. Make sure the page size as specified in Photoshop is shown in **C Page Size** -in this case, **10"x12"**.
21. Confirm the print settings, and click **M Print** to start printing.

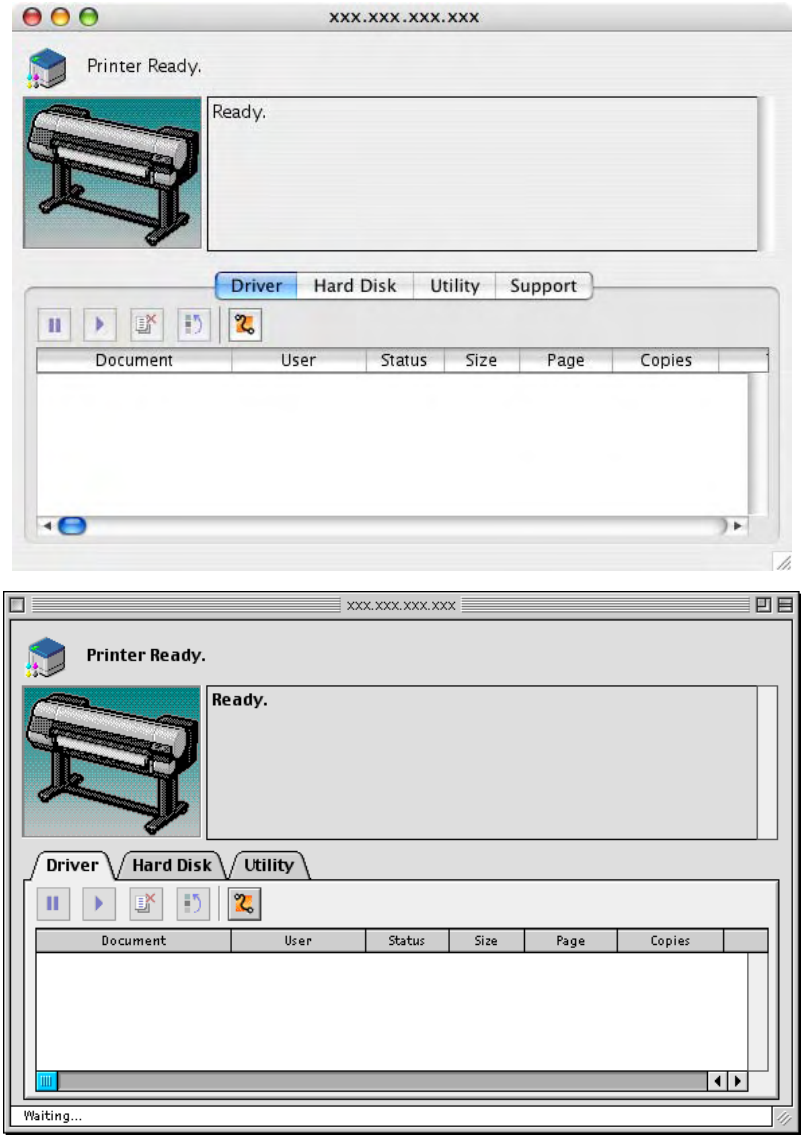
Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.559)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh)

imagePROGRAF Printmonitor is a utility for checking the printer status and managing print jobs.



- Printer status can be checked in real time on a computer monitor.
- You can check the status of print jobs, cancel jobs, and manage them as needed.
- If a printer error occurs, you can investigate the corrective action immediately.
- You can also set up automatic email notification of any printer problems or errors to email addresses you designate in advance.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Note

- If the status of the desired printer is not shown in **imagePROGRAF Printmonitor**, select the printer again as follows.
  1. Make sure the printer is on and connected to the network or to a local port.
  2. In the **Printer** menu, select the name of the desired printer.
     After the printer is detected, the printer status is shown.
  3. If information about the printer is not shown in step 2, choose **Search Printer** in the **Printer** menu.
  4. Select the zone to search (or select ***(My Zone)** if no zones have been set up) and click the **Search** button.
     Printer names listed in the **Printer** menu are updated with the printers that are now detected.
  5. In the **Printer** menu, select the name of the desired printer.
     After the printer is detected, the printer status is shown.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

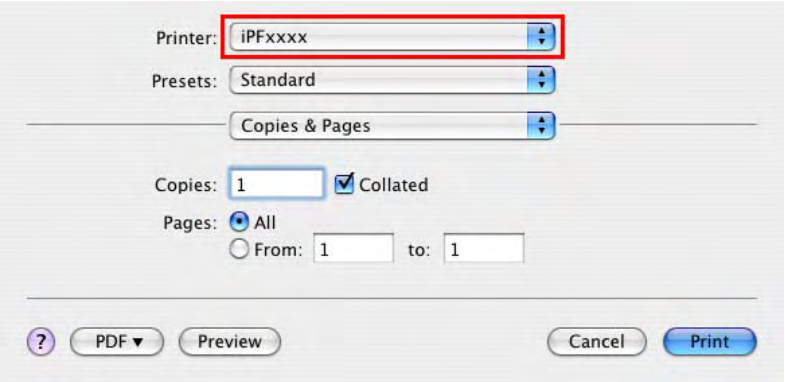
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Mac OS X)

1. In the application software, select **Print** from the **File** menu to display the dialog box for printing conditions.

   Note

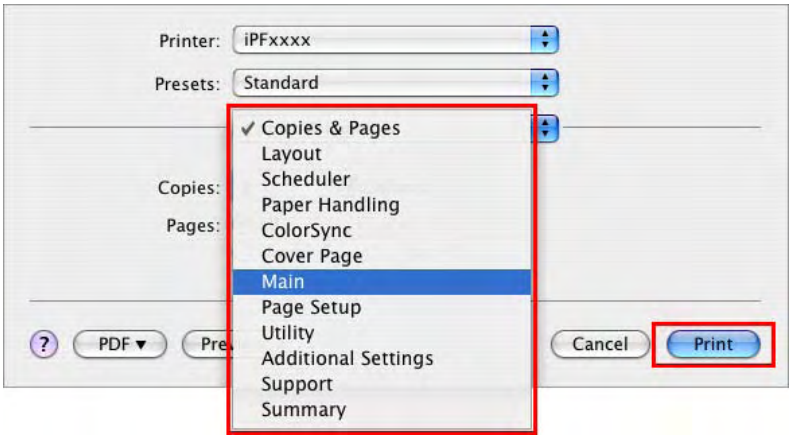
   - This dialog box includes basic printing options and enables you to choose the printer, specify the range of pages, number of copies, and so on.

2. Select the printer in the **Printer** list.



3. Click **Print** to start printing.

   As shown in the following illustration, you can switch to other panes in this dialog box to complete settings for various methods of printing, including enlarged and reduced printing, borderless printing, and so on.



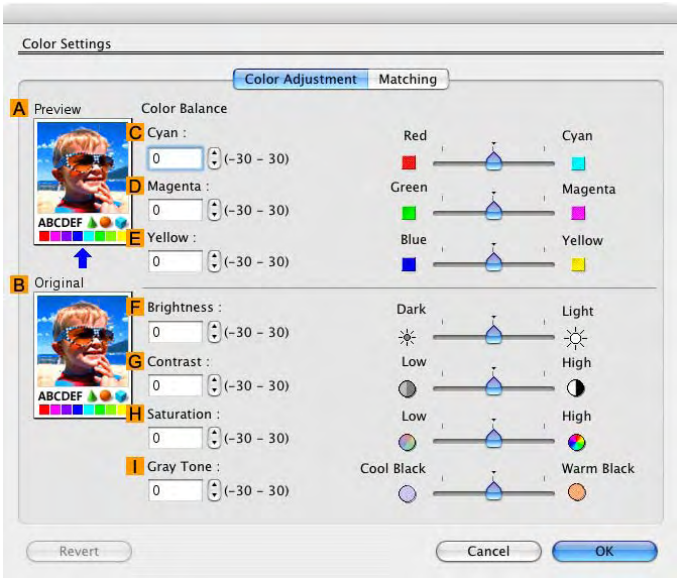
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Color Settings Pane: Color (Mac OS X)

In general, make any needed adjustments to the color of documents in the application used to create them. However, if the color tone as printed is not as you expected, you can also adjust the color in the printer driver.

Color Adjustment pane: color

If the color tone as printed is not as you expected, you can adjust it on the **Color Adjustment** pane.



Note

- To display the **Color Adjustment** pane, on the **Main** Pane (Mac OS X) (→P.565) , click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**.

Setting Item	Description
A **Preview**	The image at left is updated to reflect any changes you make to setting items on the pane, enabling you to check the results of adjustment.
B **Original**	The image at right shows the original state before adjustment. You can compare it to the **Preview** image.
C **Cyan**	Correct color tones by adjusting the levels of each color.
D **Magenta**	
E **Yellow**	
F **Brightness**	Adjust the overall image brightness as desired. You can adjust the brightness if the printed document is lighter or darker than the original image (that is, the original photo that was scanned or the original graphic as it appears on the computer screen).
G **Contrast**	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other, as desired. Increasing the **Contrast** makes images sharper, and reducing the **Contrast** softens images.
H **Saturation**	Adjust the color intensity as desired. Increasing the **Saturation** setting makes colors more vivid, and reducing the **Saturation** makes colors more subdued.
I **Gray Tone**	Adjust the color tone of grays as desired. Choose **Cool Black** (tinged with blue), **Warm Black** (tinged with red), and so on.

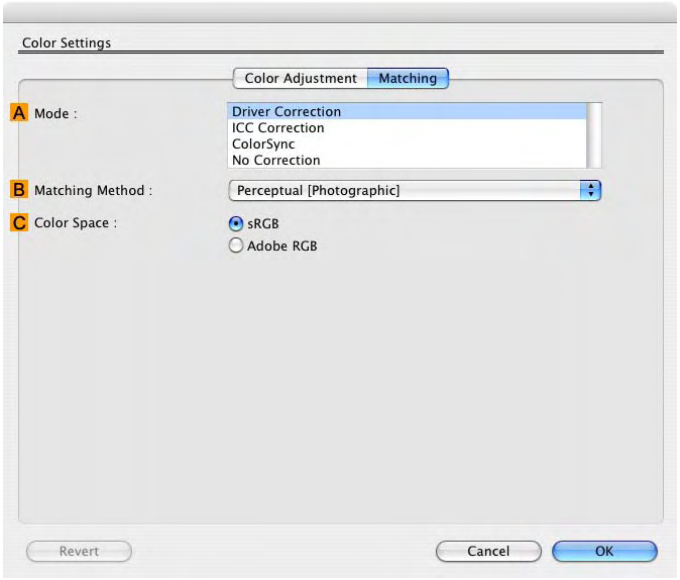
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Note

- For details on settings items, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.254)

Matching pane

On the **Matching** pane, you can specify color matching, to compensate for differences in the appearance of colors on various devices.



Note

- To display the **Matching** pane, on the **Main** Pane (Mac OS X) (→P.565) , click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**, and then click **Matching**.

Setting Item	Description
A **Matching Mode**	Select the color matching mode to use, as desired.
B **Matching Method**	Select the matching method that suits the document to be printed. Various **Matching Method** options are available depending on your selection in **Matching** .
C **Color Space**	Select the applicable color space as desired.

Note

- For details on settings items, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.254)

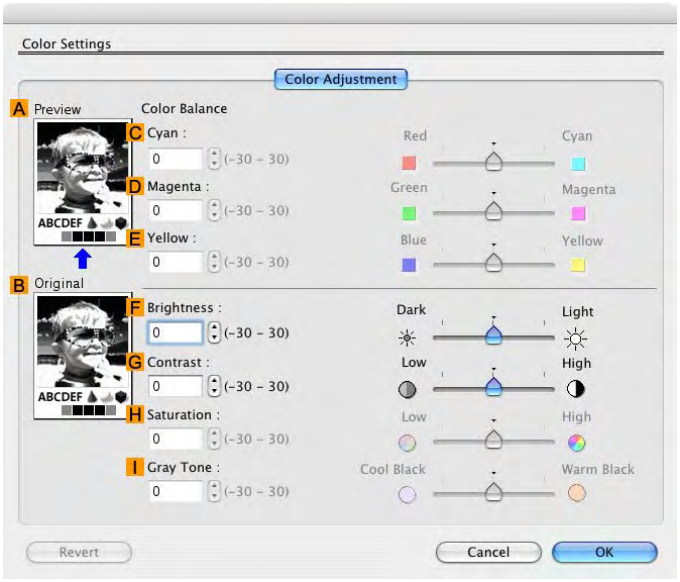
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Color Settings Pane: Monochrome (Mac OS X)

The following settings are available on the **Color Settings** pane for monochrome printing.

Color Adjustment pane: monochrome

On the **Color Adjustment** pane for monochrome printing, you can adjust the brightness and contrast.



Note

- To display the **Color Adjustment** pane, on the **Main** Pane (Mac OS X) (→P.565) , click **Color Settings** in **Advanced Settings**.

Setting Item	Description
A Preview	The image at left is updated to reflect any changes you make to setting items on the pane, enabling you to check the results of adjustment.
B Original	The image at right shows the original state before adjustment. You can compare it to the **Preview** image.
C Cyan	Not available.
D Magenta	
E Yellow	
F Brightness	Adjust the overall image brightness as desired. You can adjust the brightness if the printed document is lighter or darker than the original image (that is, the original photo that was scanned or the original graphic as it appears on the computer screen).
G Contrast	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other, as desired. Increasing the **Contrast** makes images sharper, and reducing the **Contrast** softens images.
H Saturation	Not available.
I Gray Tone	Not available.

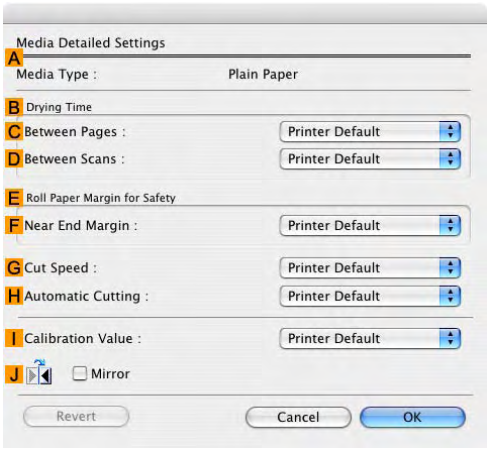
Note

- For details on settings items, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.254)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS X)

The **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box offers the following settings. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



Note

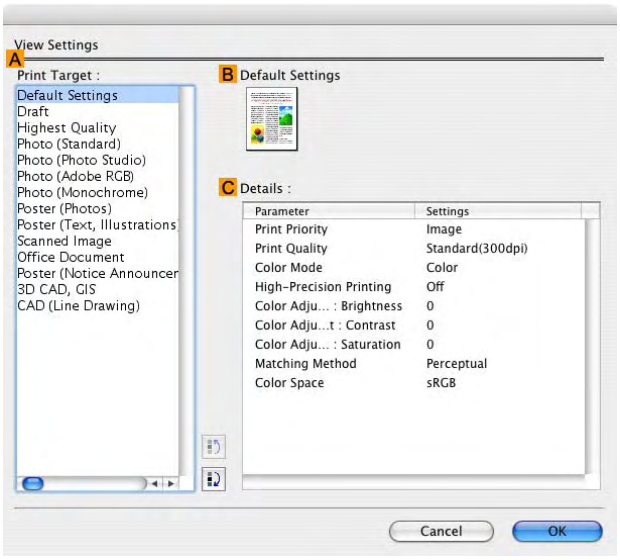
- To display the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box, on the **Main** Pane (Mac OS X) (→P.565) , click **Settings** by **Media Type**.

Setting Item		Description
A Media Type		Select the paper type. For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide . (→P.169)
B Drying Time		Specify the time that the printer waits for ink to dry, as needed. The **Drying Time** setting is only valid for rolls. (→P.198)
	C Between Pages	Specify the time the printer waits after printing a page until ejecting the paper, as needed.
	D Between Scans	Specify the time the printer waits after printing a line on the page until printing the next line, as needed.
E Roll Paper Margin for Safety		You can specify the length of a margin on the leading edge of paper to ensure that paper susceptible to curling is held firmly against the Platen .
	F Near End Margin	Specify the length of the **Near End Margin** (the leading edge margin) of the roll, as needed.
G Cut Speed		Select the speed of automatic cutting, as needed. You can adjust this setting if paper is not cut well when automatic cutting is used.
H Automatic Cutting		You can activate or deactivate **Automatic Cutting** and printing of cut lines, as desired. In this list, specify **Yes** , **No**, or **Print Cut Guideline** .
I Calibration Value		You can specify whether to apply the results of calibration performed on the printer to image processing.
J Mirror		Specify whether to print a mirror image, as needed. Select this option to print a version of the document or image with the left and right sides inverted.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Mac OS X)

In the **View Settings** dialog box, you can check details of the selected printing application.



Note

- To display the **View Settings** dialog box, on the **Main** Pane (Mac OS X) (→P.565) , click **View Settings** by **Print Target**.

Setting Item	Description
A **Print Target**	Shows all **Print Target** options (settings items for the printing application).
B **Name**	Identifies the item selected in **Print Target** by its name and an icon.
C **Details**	Here, you can confirm detailed settings values for each item selected in the **Print Target** list.

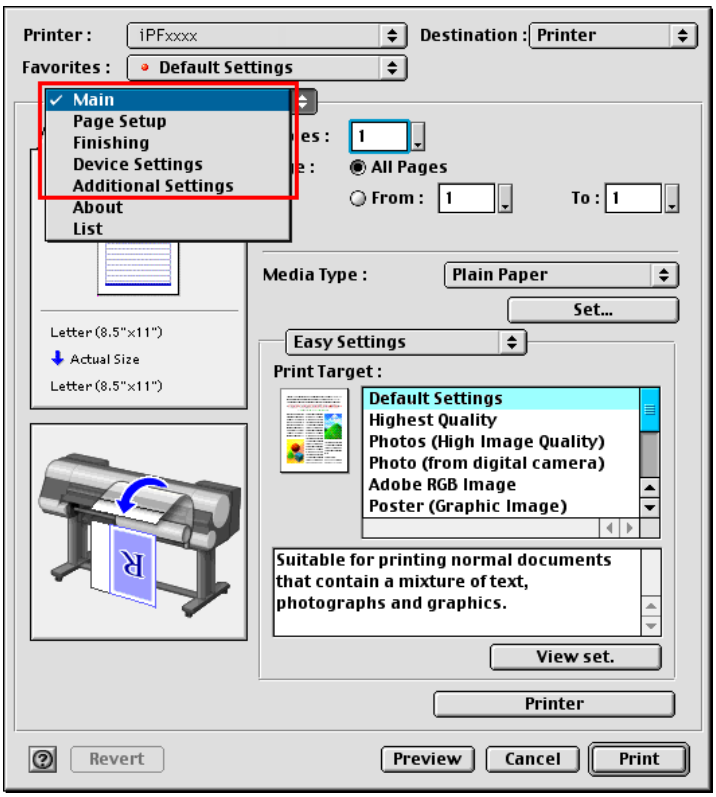
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Mac OS 9

Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS 9)

For instructions on accessing the Mac OS 9 printer driver, refer to the following topics.

- Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Mac OS 9) (→P.603)



For information on the Mac OS 9 printer driver settings, refer to the following topics.

- Main Pane (Mac OS 9) (→P.588)

  You can specify the number of copies, page range, media type, color processing, print quality, and print preview. Choose **Easy Settings** to specify basic print settings based on the printing application or **Advanced Settings** to complete more detailed settings as desired.

  - Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS 9) (→P.210)
  - View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Mac OS 9) (→P.612)
  - Color Settings Pane: Color (Mac OS 9) (→P.605)
  - Color Settings Pane: Monochrome (Mac OS 9) (→P.608)
  - Gray Adjustment Pane (Mac OS 9) (→P.593)
- Page Setup Pane (Mac OS 9) (→P.590)

  You can specify the amount of enlargement or reduction, borderless printing, media size, and page layout.
- Finishing Pane (Mac OS 9) (→P.592)

  You can specify the media source, watermarks, and orientation.
- Device Settings Pane (Mac OS 9) (→P.594)

  You can perform maintenance for the Printhead or feed amount.
- Additional Settings Pane (Mac OS 9) (→P.595)

  You can specify settings for background printing, how print jobs are sent to the printer, and notification after printing.

  - Special Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS 9) (→P.611)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

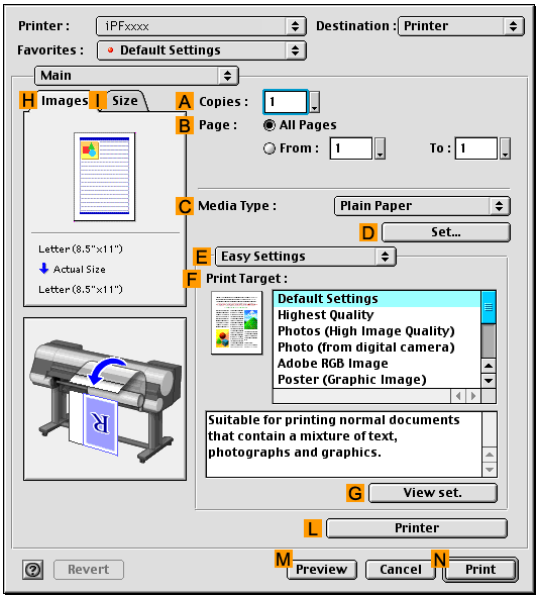
Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)

There are two ways to confirm what printing conditions have been specified, as follows.

- Checking a preview of the settings (→P.585)
- Checking a print preview (→P.586)

Checking a preview of the settings

A preview of the settings is displayed on the left side of the **Main**, **Page Setup**, **Finishing**, **Utility**, and **Additional Settings** panes. By checking images and numerical values in the preview, you can confirm current settings for the page size, orientation, media source, and so on.

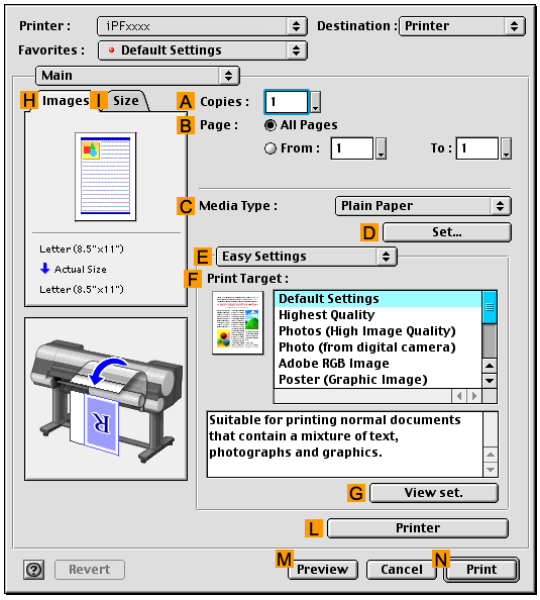


Display Area	Information Displayed
Pane displayed when the H **Images** tab is clicked	On top, illustrations indicate the page size of the original, the paper size, orientation, layout, borderless printing selection, color mode, and other settings information. Under this, the page size, paper size, and method and percentage of enlargement or reduction is displayed.
Pane displayed when the I **Size** tab is clicked	Paper size details are indicated numerically.
Pane with printer and paper illustrations	Illustrations indicate the media source, orientation, borderless printing selection, and other settings information.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Note

- To confirm the **Print Target** specified in **Easy Settings**, click G **View set.** on the **Main** pane to display the **View set.** dialog box.



Checking a print preview

You can check an image of the original just as it will be printed.
Confirming the image of print jobs beforehand helps prevent printing errors.
For details on print previews, see “Previewing Images Before Printing (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.587)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Previewing Images Before Printing (Mac OS 9)

This topic describes how to preview images of print jobs before actually printing them.

1. In the application menu, choose **Print**.
2. Click **Preview** to open the preview window.
3. Check the layout and other aspects of the printing image, and then click **Print this page** to start printing.

Note

- “Preview” is provided as a standard feature of the operating system. For details, refer to the Mac OS documentation.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

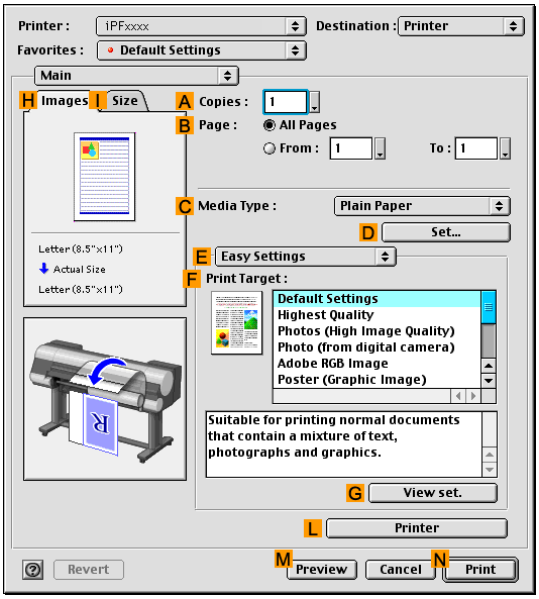
Main Pane (Mac OS 9)

The following settings are available on the **Main** pane. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.

Note

- On the Main pane, choose **Easy Settings** to specify basic print settings based on the printing application, or switch to **Advanced Settings** to complete more detailed settings as desired.

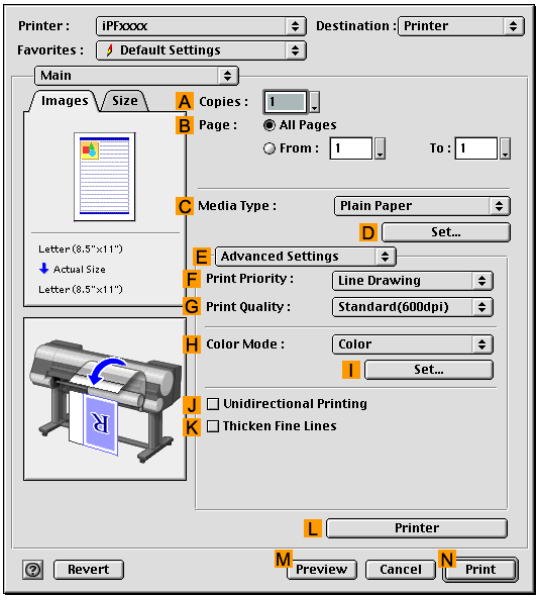
Configuration using Easy Settings



Setting Item		Description
A **Copies**		Enter the number of copies to print, in a range of “1-999.”
B **Page**		Specify the pages to print. • **All Pages** • **From** and **To**
C **Media Type**		Select the paper type. For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide . (→P.169)
	D **Set**	Click to display the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box for ink drying time and other detailed settings based on the paper type.
F **Print Target**		Choose presets that match the type of document to be printed. Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS 9) (→P.249) Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS 9) (→P.252) Printing Office Documents (→P.253)
	G **View set.**	Click to display the **View set.** dialog box, which enables you to confirm the settings for the selected item from the F **Print Target** list or change the order of items listed in F **Print Target** .
L **Printer**		Click to display the **Printer Information** dialog box, which indicates the ink levels and gives other information about the printer.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Configuration using Advanced Settings

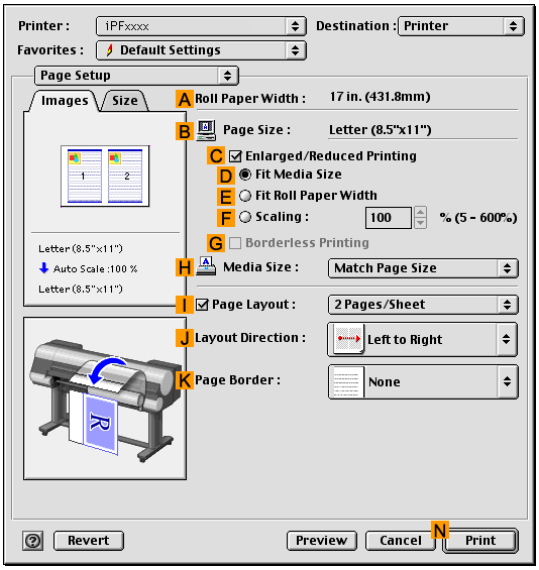


Setting Item	Description
A Copies	Enter the number of copies to print, in a range of “1-999.”
B Page	Specify the pages to print. • **All Pages** • **From** and **To**
C Media Type	Select the paper type. For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide . (→P.169)
D Set	Click to display the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box for ink drying time and other detailed settings based on the paper type.
F Print Priority	Choose the graphic elements that you want to emphasize for printing. Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing (→P.243)
G Print Quality	Choose the level of print quality. Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing (→P.243)
H Color Mode	Choose the color mode. Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing (→P.243)
I Set	Click to display the **Color Settings** dialog box for more advanced color settings. Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver (→P.254)
J Unidirectional Printing	Although unidirectional printing is slower, it can help prevent misaligned lines and ensure better results. Depending on the printing conditions, unidirectional printing may be the default setting even if you do not choose it. In this case, the printing speed will not change if you activate the setting.
K Thicken Fine Lines	Activate this option to print fine lines more distinctly.
L Printer	Click to display the **Printer Information** dialog box, which indicates the ink levels and gives other information about the printer.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Page Setup Pane (Mac OS 9)

The following settings are available on the **Page Setup** pane. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



Setting Item		Description
A Roll Paper Width		Displays the paper width of the roll loaded in the printer.
B Page Size		Displays the page size, as specified in the source application. For details on paper sizes available from the source application, see "Paper Sizes". (→P.175)
C Enlarged/Reduced Printing		Choose from the following options when this setting is activated. Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (→P.313) Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (→P.314) Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (→P.315)
	D Fit Media Size	Scales the document image to match the paper size.
	E Fit Roll Paper Width	Scales the document image to match the roll width.
	F Scaling	Resizes the document image based on a specified scaling value. Enter a value in a range of "5-600."
	G Borderless Printing	Borderless printing is available if **Roll Paper** is selected from the **A Media Source** list in the **Finishing** Pane (Mac OS 9). (→P.592) Activate this setting for borderless printing to match the size and width of the paper. Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size (→P.365) Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (→P.367) Borderless Printing at Actual Size (→P.348)
	H Media Size	Choose the size of the paper you will print on. For details on available paper sizes, see "Paper Sizes". (→P.175)
I Page Layout		Activate this option to select the page layout when printing multiple pages per sheet.(*1) Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (→P.420) Printing Posters in Sections (→P.421)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

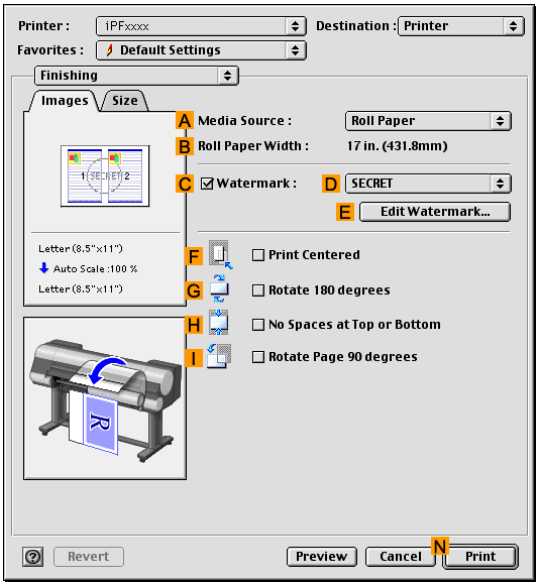
	Setting Item	Description
	J **Layout Direction**	This setting is available when I **Page Layout** is selected. Here, you can specify the orientation of multiple pages to be printed on a single sheet.
	K **Page Border**	This setting is available when I **Page Layout** is selected. Here, you can specify the type of boundary line around each page of multiple pages printed on a single sheet.

*1: Selecting poster layout from the I **Page Layout** list displays a check box for specifying the pages to print.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Finishing Pane (Mac OS 9)

The following settings are available on the **Finishing** pane. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



Setting Item		Description
A Media Source		You can choose the media source. Options displayed in the list vary depending on the selection in **C Media Type** in the **Main** Pane (Mac OS 9). (→P.588)
B Roll Paper Width		Displays the paper width of the roll loaded in the printer. **Unknown** is displayed if the printer cannot detect the roll paper width.
C Watermark		Activating this option makes two settings available, **D Watermarks** and **E Edit Watermark** . Printing With Watermarks (→P.485)
	D Watermarks	Lists the provided watermarks. Choose the watermark to print.
	E Edit Watermark	Click to display the **Edit Watermark** dialog box for creating your own, original watermark.
F Print Centered		Choose this option to print the document images in the center of the paper. Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (→P.443) Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (→P.444)
G Rotate 180 degrees		Activate this setting to rotate the document image by 180 degrees before printing.
H No Spaces at Top or Bottom		Activate this setting to print the next image skipping blank areas above and below printable data in documents, which enables you to conserve the paper. Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (→P.461)
I Rotate Page 90 degrees		Activate this setting to rotate the document image by 90 degrees before printing. Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (→P.460)

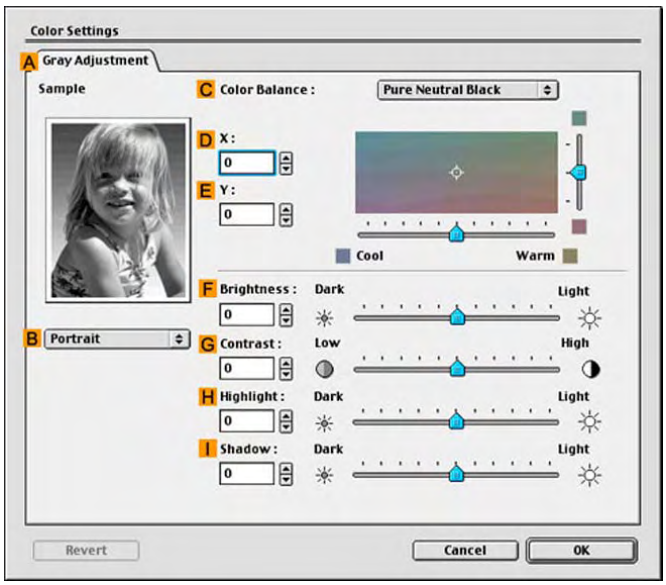
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Gray Adjustment Pane (Mac OS 9)

The following settings are available on the **Gray Adjustment** pane.

Gray Adjustment

On the **Gray Adjustment** pane, you can adjust the color balance, brightness, contrast, and other image qualities.



Note

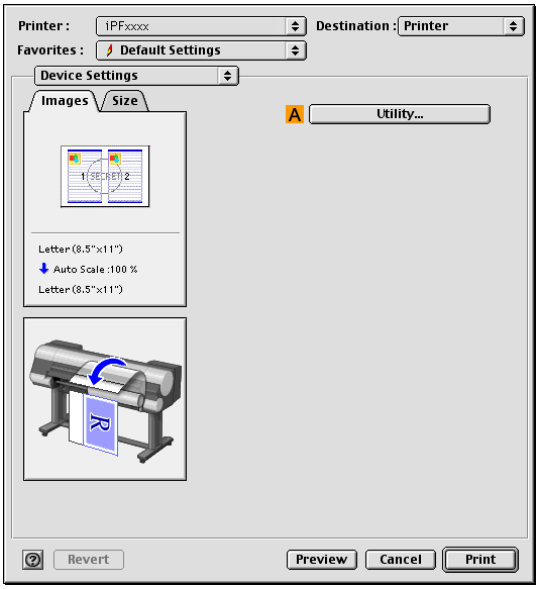
- To display the **Gray Adjustment** pane, on the **Main** Pane (Mac OS 9) (→P.588) , select **Monochrome (Photo)** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**, and then click **Color Settings**.
- **Monochrome (Photo)** is not available for all types of paper.

Setting Item	Description
A **Sample**	The image at left is updated to reflect any changes you make to setting items on the sheet, enabling you to check the results of adjustment.
B **Sample List**	Select a sample image, as desired.
C **Color Balance**	Click the list to select a color balance that suits the printing application.
D **X**	Adjust the color balance as you check the color tone in the adjustment area. You can adjust the square area in the center by clicking or dragging it. Drag the vertical or horizontal scroll bars for adjustment, as desired. You can click the arrows by the X (horizontal) and Y (vertical) boxes or enter the values directly.
E **Y**	
F **Brightness**	Adjust the overall image brightness as desired. You can adjust the brightness if the printed document is lighter or darker than the original image (that is, the original photo that was scanned or the original graphic as it appears on the computer screen).
G **Contrast**	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other, as desired. Increasing the **Contrast** makes images sharper, and reducing the **Contrast** softens images.
H **Highlight**	Adjust the brightness of the lightest portion.
I **Shadow**	Adjust the brightness of the darkest portion.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Device Settings Pane (Mac OS 9)

The following settings are available on the **Device Settings** pane.

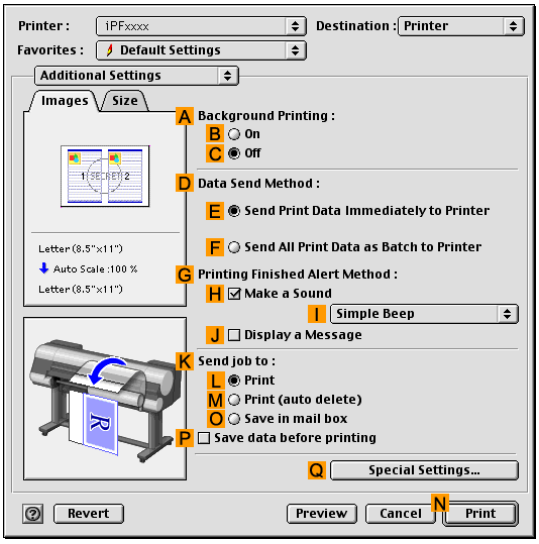


Setting Item	Description
A **Utility**	Click to display the **Printer Information** dialog box, which offers the following maintenance for the printer. • Nozzle (ink ejecting outlet) cleaning • Head alignment adjustment • Feed amount adjustment

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Additional Settings Pane (Mac OS 9)

The following settings are available on the **Additional Settings** pane. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



Setting Item		Description
A Background Printing		Choose the printing method. Activate this setting by clicking **B On** to print in the background. Deactivate this setting by clicking **C Off** to print in the foreground.
D Data Send Method		Choose how print data is sent to the printer. • **E Send Print Data Immediately to Printer** • **F Send All Print Data as Batch to Printer**
G Printing Finished Alert Method		Choose how to be notified when printing is finished. Specify how to be notified when printing is finished, by a tone or a message.
	H Make a Sound	Activate this setting to be notified by a tone when printing is finished. You can also choose a different tone.
	J Display a Message	Activate this setting to be notified by a dailog box when printing is finished.
K Send job to		You can choose the output method of print jobs. • **L Print** • **M Print (auto delete)** • **O Save in mail box**
Q Special Settings		If the printing results are not as you expected, click this option to change how printing is processed.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Using Favorites (Mac OS 9)

This topic describes how to register favorites and print using favorite settings.

Registering a favorite

Follow the steps below to save the current print settings as a favorite.

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
3. Complete the print settings.
4. In the **Favorites** list, click **Add Favorite** to display the **Add Favorite** dialog box.
5. Complete the following settings in the **Add Favorite** dialog box.
   - Enter a desired name in **Name**, such as “Photos for Presentations” or “Monthly Report.”
   - In **Comment**, enter a description of the favorite to be added.
6. Click **OK** to close the **Add Favorite** dialog box.

   The favorite you have added is now displayed in **Favorites**.

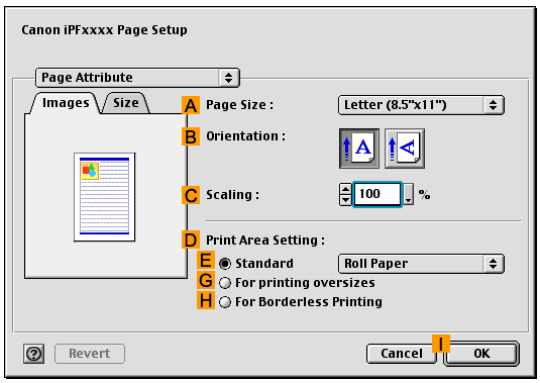
Note

- To edit the name of an existing favorite or comment, click **Edit Favorite** in the **Favorites** list to display the **Edit Favorite** dialog box.
- To save a favorite as a file, click **Export** and specify the file to save.

Printing using the favorite

Follow the steps below to print using the favorite you have registered.

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



3. Choose the original size in the A **Page Size** list.
4. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. In the application menu, choose **Print**.
6. In the **Favorites** list, choose the favorite you registered.

Note

- To import a favorite, click **Import** and specify the favorite file.
- If you select a favorite and edit it, an icon is displayed at left of the name to indicate that the settings have been changed. For details, refer to the printer driver help.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

7. Confirm the print settings, and then click **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.585)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Adobe RGB Images (Mac OS 9)

This topic describes how to print Adobe RGB images based on the following example.

- Document: Adobe RGB image created in Photoshop
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Glossy Photo Paper
- Roll width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

Important

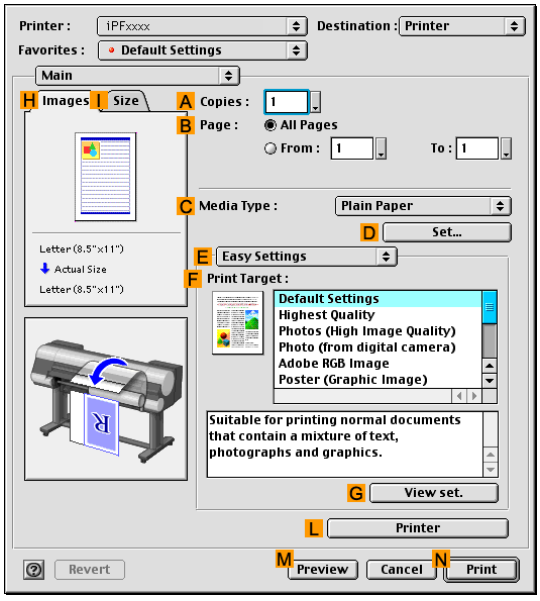
- Do not set up color-matching in Photoshop.
- In the printer driver, specify **Driver Matching Mode** and set **Color Space** to **Adobe RGB**.

1. In Photoshop, create an image in the Adobe RGB color space.

Note

- Photoshop CS2 is used in this example.
- For instructions on creating Adobe RGB images, refer to the Photoshop documentation.

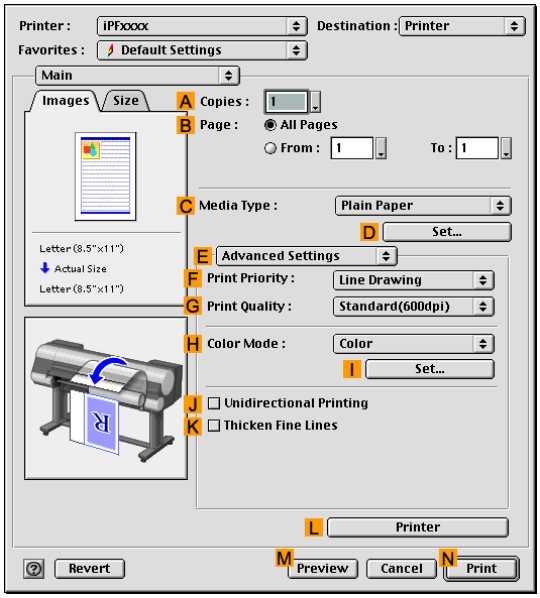
2. In the Photoshop menu, choose **Print**.
3. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



4. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Glossy Photo Paper.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

5. Click **E Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.

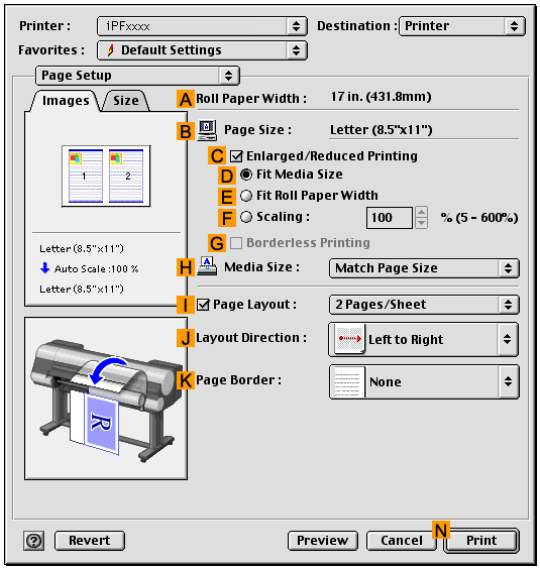


6. Click **Image** in the **F Print Priority** list.
7. Select the print quality in the **G Print Quality** list.

Note

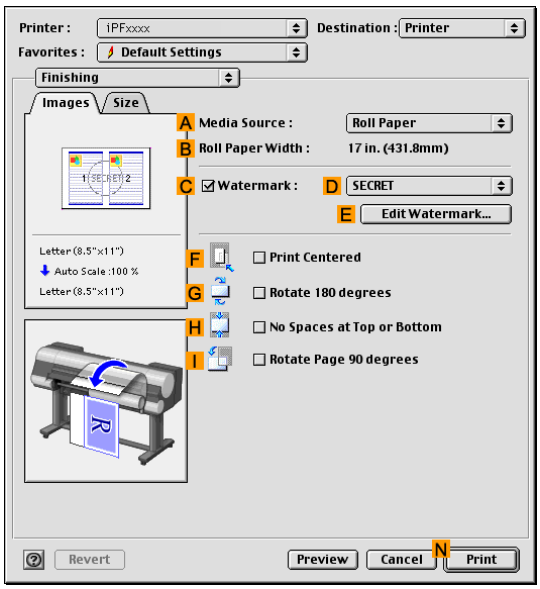
- Options displayed in the **G Print Quality** list vary depending on the paper type.

8. Click **Color** in the **H Color Mode** list.
9. Click **I Set** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.
10. Click **Matching** to display the **Matching** pane.
11. In **Mode**, click **Driver Correction**.
12. In **Color Space**, click **Adobe RGB**.
13. Click **OK** to close the **Color Settings** dialog box.
14. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

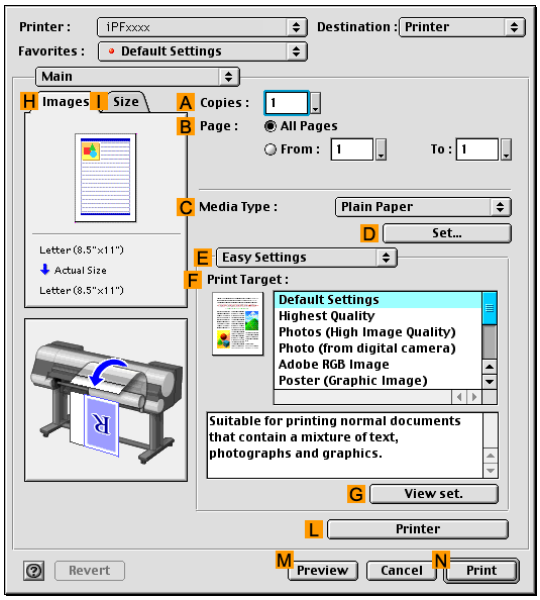
15. Make sure the page size as specified in Photoshop is shown in B **Page Size** -in this case, **10"x12"**.
16. Access the **Finishing** pane.



17. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.
18. Make sure the width of the loaded roll paper is displayed in the B **Roll Paper Width** list-here, **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in the B **Roll Paper Width** list, click the L **Printer** in the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



19. Confirm the print settings, and click N **Print** to start printing.

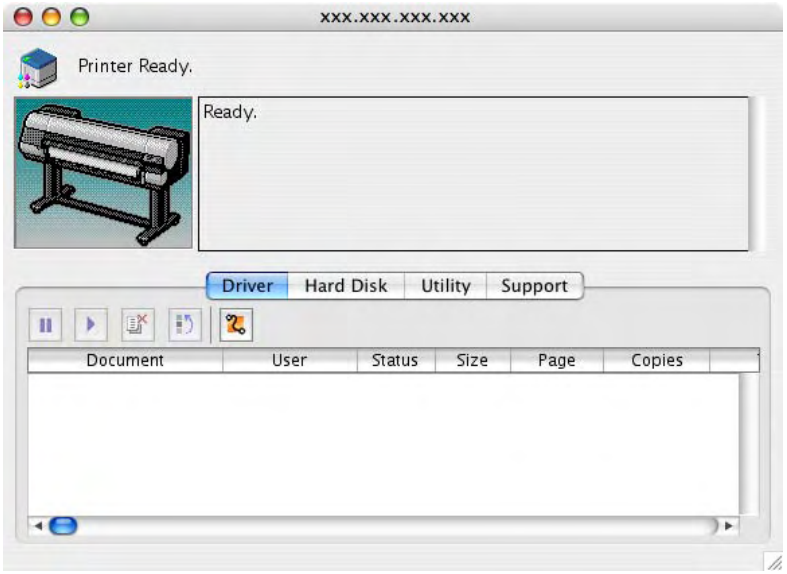
Note

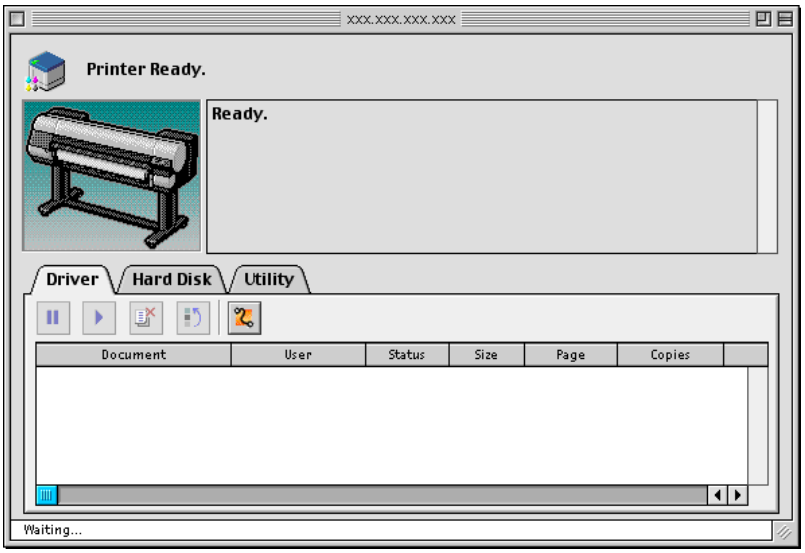
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.585)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh)

imagePROGRAF Printmonitor is a utility for checking the printer status and managing print jobs.





- Printer status can be checked in real time on a computer monitor.
- You can check the status of print jobs, cancel jobs, and manage them as needed.
- If a printer error occurs, you can investigate the corrective action immediately.
- You can also set up automatic email notification of any printer problems or errors to email addresses you designate in advance.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Note

- If the status of the desired printer is not shown in **imagePROGRAF Printmonitor**, select the printer again as follows.
  1. Make sure the printer is on and connected to the network or to a local port.
  2. In the **Printer** menu, select the name of the desired printer.
     After the printer is detected, the printer status is shown.
  3. If information about the printer is not shown in step 2, choose **Search Printer** in the **Printer** menu.
  4. Select the zone to search (or select ***(My Zone)** if no zones have been set up) and click the **Search** button.
     Printer names listed in the **Printer** menu are updated with the printers that are now detected.
  5. In the **Printer** menu, select the name of the desired printer.
     After the printer is detected, the printer status is shown.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

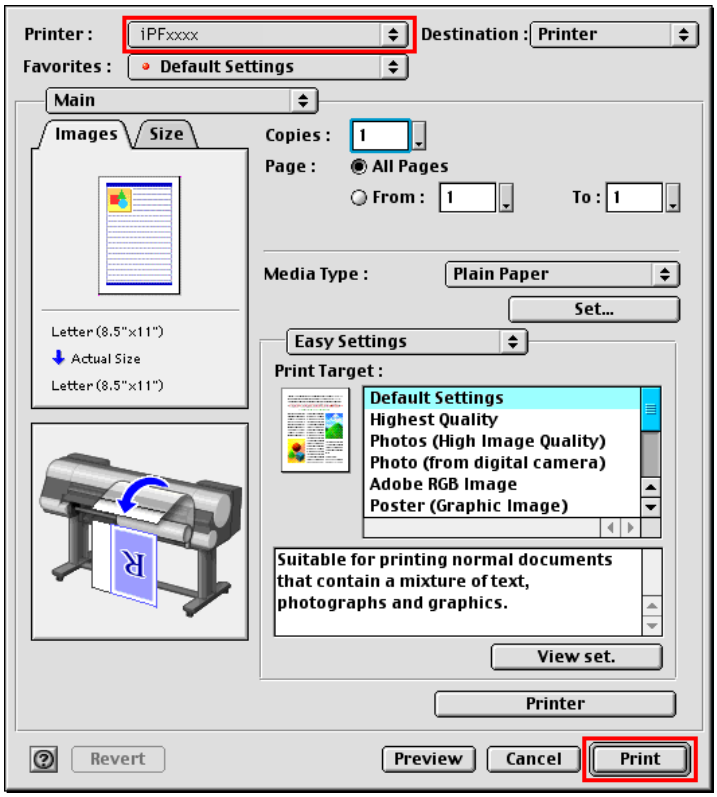
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Mac OS 9)

1. In the application software, select **Print** from the **File** menu to display the dialog box for printing conditions.

   Note

   - This dialog box includes basic printing options and enables you to choose the printer, specify the range of pages, number of copies, and so on.

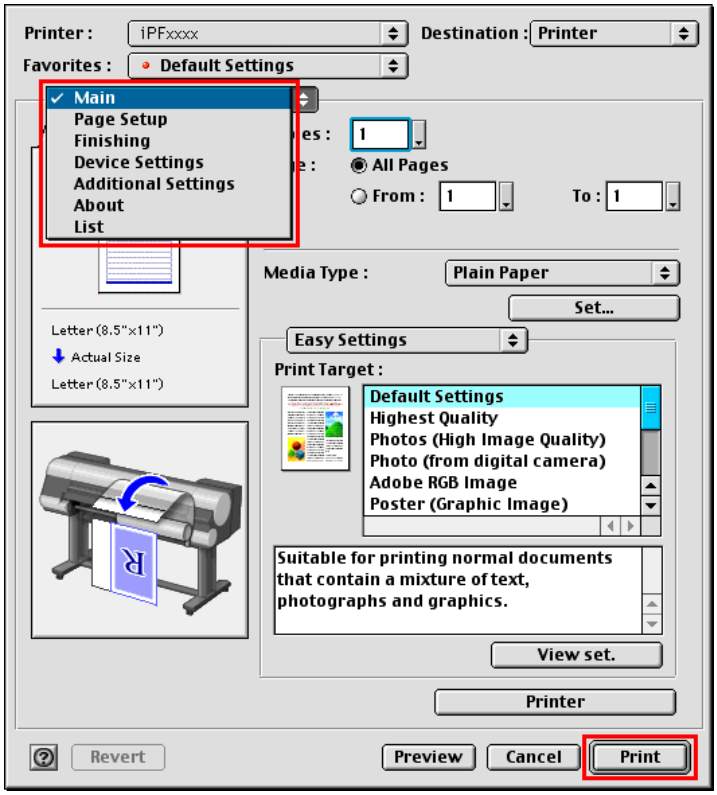
2. Select the printer in the **Printer** list.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

3. Click **Print** to start printing.

As shown in the following illustration, you can switch to other panes in this dialog box to complete settings for various methods of printing, including enlarged and reduced printing, borderless printing, and so on.



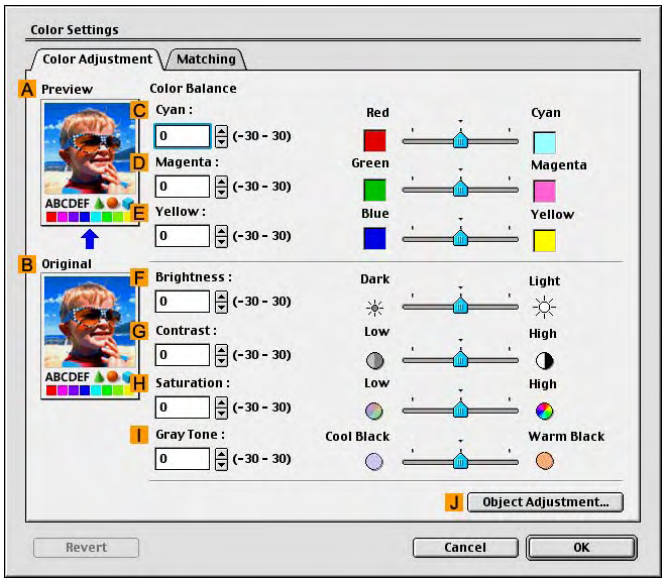
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Color Settings Pane: Color (Mac OS 9)

In general, make any needed adjustments to the color of documents in the application used to create them. However, if the color tone as printed is not as you expected, you can also adjust the color in the printer driver.

Color Adjustment pane: color

If the color tone as printed is not as you expected, you can adjust it on the **Color Adjustment** pane.



Note

- To display the **Color Adjustment** pane, on the **Main** Pane (Mac OS 9) (→P.588) , click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**.

Setting Item	Description
A **Preview**	The image at left is updated to reflect any changes you make to setting items on the pane, enabling you to check the results of adjustment.
B **Original**	The image at right shows the original state before adjustment. You can compare it to the **Preview** image.
C **Cyan**	Correct color tones by adjusting the levels of each color.
D **Magenta**	
E **Yellow**	
F **Brightness**	Adjust the overall image brightness as desired. You can adjust the brightness if the printed document is lighter or darker than the original image (that is, the original photo that was scanned or the original graphic as it appears on the computer screen).
G **Contrast**	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other, as desired. Increasing the **Contrast** makes images sharper, and reducing the **Contrast** softens images.
H **Saturation**	Adjust the color intensity as desired. Increasing the **Saturation** setting makes colors more vivid, and reducing the **Saturation** makes colors more subdued.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

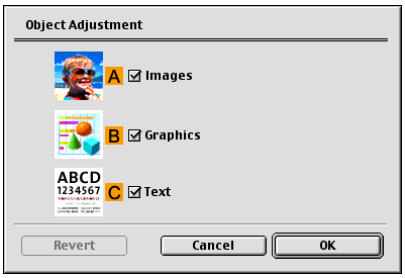
Setting Item	Description
I **Gray Tone**	Adjust the color tone of grays as desired. Choose **Cool Black** (tinged with blue), **Warm Black** (tinged with red), and so on.
J **Object Adjustment**	Select this option to display the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, in which you can specify objects subject to color adjustment.

Note

- For details on settings items, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.254)

Object Adjustment dialog box

In the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, you can specify what type of print jobs to apply color adjustment to. If an original comprises images, graphics, and text, you can specify which portion to apply color adjustment to.



Note

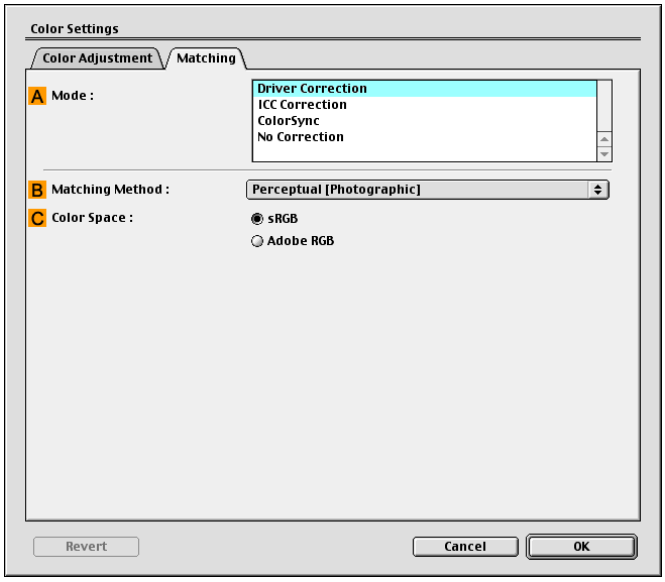
- To display the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, click **Object Adjustment** on the **Color Adjustment** pane.

Setting Item	Description
A **Image**	Select this option to apply color adjustment to image areas, such as photos.
B **Graphics**	Select this option to apply color adjustment to graphics, such as lines and circles.
C **Text**	Select this option to apply color adjustment to text.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Matching pane

On the **Matching** pane, you can specify color matching, to compensate for differences in the appearance of colors on various devices.



Note

- To display the **Matching** pane, on the **Main** Pane (Mac OS 9) (→P.588) , click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**, and then click **Matching**.

Setting Item	Description
A **Matching Mode**	Select the color matching mode to use, as desired.
B **Matching Method**	Select the matching method that suits the document to be printed. Various **Matching Method** options are available depending on your selection in **Matching** .
C **Color Space**	Select the applicable color space as desired.

Note

- For details on settings items, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.254)

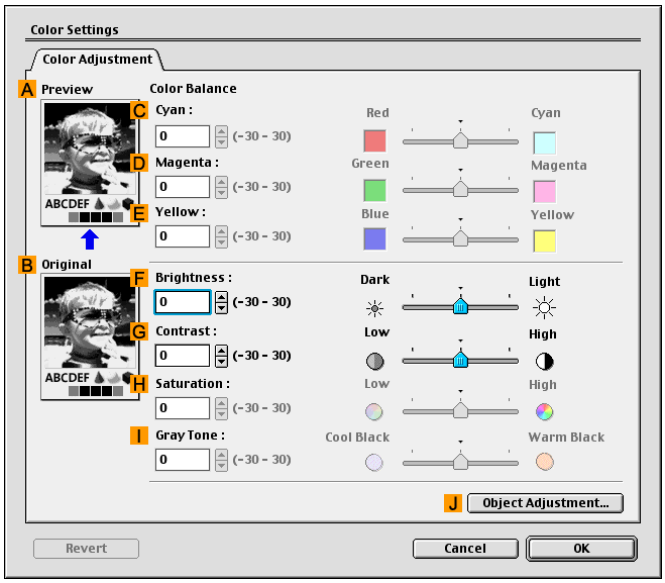
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Color Settings Pane: Monochrome (Mac OS 9)

The following settings are available on the **Color Settings** pane for monochrome printing.

Color Adjustment pane: monochrome

On the **Color Adjustment** pane for monochrome printing, you can adjust the brightness and contrast.



Note

- To display the **Color Adjustment** pane, on the **Main** Pane (Mac OS 9) (→P.588) , click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**.

Setting Item	Description
A **Preview**	The image above is updated to reflect any changes you make to setting items on the right of this pane, enabling you to check the results of adjustment.
B **Original**	The image on the bottom shows the original state before adjustment. You can compare it to the **Preview** image.
C **Cyan**	Not available.
D **Magenta**	
E **Yellow**	
F **Brightness**	Adjust the overall image brightness as desired. You can adjust the brightness if the printed document is lighter or darker than the original image (that is, the original photo that was scanned or the original graphic as it appears on the monitor).
G **Contrast**	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other, as desired. Increasing the **Contrast** makes images sharper, and reducing the **Contrast** softens images.
H **Saturation**	Not available.
I **Gray Tone**	Not available.
J **Object Adjustment**	Select this option to display the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, in which you can specify objects subject to color adjustment.

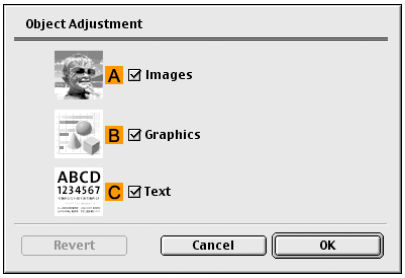
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Note

- For details on settings items, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.254)

Object Adjustment dialog box

In the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, you can specify what type of print jobs to apply color adjustment to. If an original comprises images, graphics, and text, you can specify which portion to apply color adjustment to.



Note

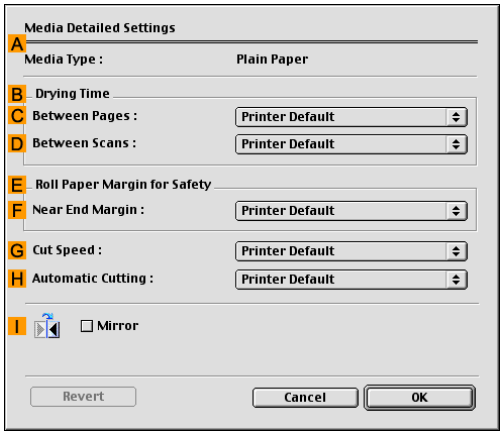
- To display the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, on the **Color Adjustment** pane, click **Object Adjustment**.

Setting Item	Description
A **Image**	Select this option to apply color adjustment to image areas, such as photos.
B **Graphics**	Select this option to apply color adjustment to graphics, such as lines and circles.
C **Text**	Select this option to apply color adjustment to text.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS 9)

The **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box offers the following settings. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



Note

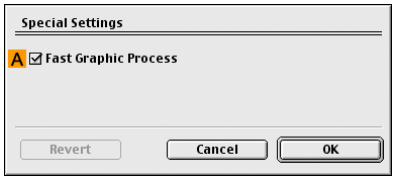
- To display the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box, on the **Main** Pane (Mac OS 9) (→P.588) , click **Settings** by **Media Type**.

Setting Item		Description
A **Media Type**		Select the paper type. For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide . (→P.169)
B **Drying Time**		Specify the time that the printer waits for ink to dry, as needed. The **Drying Time** setting is only valid for rolls. (→P.198)
	C **Between Pages**	Specify the time the printer waits after printing a page until ejecting the paper, as needed.
	D **Between Scans**	Specify the time the printer waits after printing a line on the page until printing the next line, as needed.
E **Roll Paper Margin for Safety**		You can specify the length of a margin on the leading edge of paper to ensure that paper susceptible to curling is held firmly against the Platen .
	F **Near End Margin**	Specify the length of the **Near End Margin** (the leading edge margin) of the roll, as needed.
G **Cut Speed**		Select the speed of automatic cutting, as needed. Adjust this setting if paper is not cut well when automatic cutting is used.
H **Automatic Cutting**		You can activate or deactivate **Automatic Cutting** and printing of cut lines, as desired. In this list, you can specify **Yes** or **No** and **Print Cut Guideline** .
I **Mirror**		Specify whether to print a mirror image, as needed. Select this option to print a version of the document or image with the left and right sides inverted.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Special Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS 9)

If the printing results are not as you expected, you can change how printing is processed in the **Special Settings** dialog box.



Note

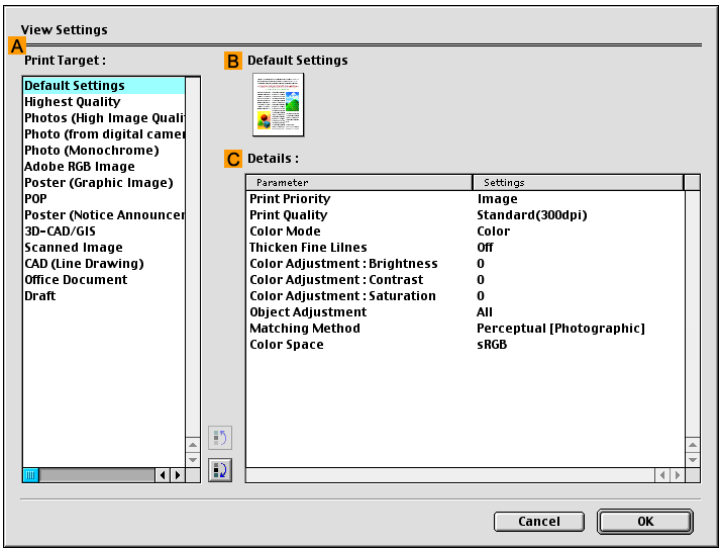
- To display the **Special Settings** dialog box, on the **Additional Settings** Pane (Mac OS 9) (→P.595) , click **Special Settings**.

Setting Item	Description
A **Fast Graphic Process**	If image colors are inconsistent in printed documents or if lines are printed in varying thicknesses, clearing this option may help produce the expected results.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Mac OS 9)

In the **View Settings** dialog box, you can check details of the selected printing application.



Note

- To display the **View Settings** dialog box, on the **Main** Pane (Mac OS 9) (→P.588) , click **View Settings** by **Print Target**.

Setting Item	Description
A **Print Target**	Shows all **Print Target** options (settings items for the printing application).
B **Name**	Identifies the item selected in **Print Target** by its name and an icon.
C **Details**	Here, you can confirm detailed settings values for each item selected in the **Print Target** list.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Network Setting

Network Setting

Network Environment

System requirements

The system requirements, which vary depending on your network, are as follows.

- Printing over a TCP/IP network
  - Compatible operating systems
    - Windows 2000 (Professional or Server)
    - Windows XP (Home Edition or Professional)
    - Windows Server 2003 (Standard Edition)
    - Windows Vista (Home Basic/Business/Ultimate)
    - Mac OS 9.1 or later
    - Mac OS X 10.2.8 or later
  - Compatible computer
    - A computer that runs one of the above operating systems
- Printing over an AppleTalk network
  - Compatible operating systems
    - Mac OS 9.1 or later
    - Mac OS X 10.2.8 or later
  - Compatible computer
    - A computer that runs one of the above operating systems

Note

- The printer cannot be used over a LocalTalk network.
- Compatible with EtherTalk Phase 2.

- Printing over a NetWare network
  - Compatible servers
    - Novell NetWare 4.2/5.1/6.0
  - Compatible clients
    - Windows 2000 (Professional or Server)
    - Windows XP (Professional)
  - Compatible computer
    - A computer that runs one of the above operating systems

Note

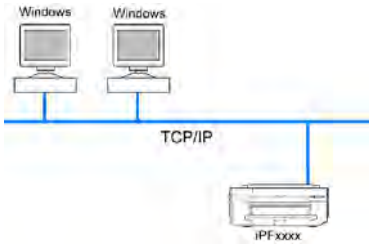
- In NetWare 6.0, iPrint is not supported.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Network environment

After confirming what type of network environment you will connect the printer to, set up the printer and computers as needed.

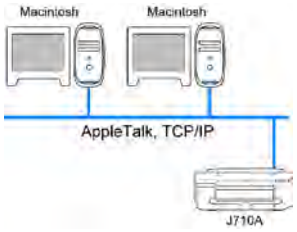
- Example of a Windows network
  In Windows networks, print over TCP/IP.



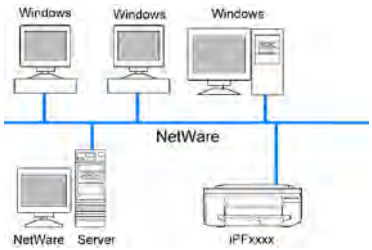
Note

- NetBIOS is not supported.

- Example of a Macintosh network
  In Macintosh networks, print over AppleTalk (EtherTalk) or TCP/IP, using Bonjour(Zeroconf) functions.



- Example of a NetWare network



Note

- Even if there is a NetWare server in your network environment, you can use both TCP/IP and AppleTalk. In this case, complete the settings for each protocol you will use.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Configuring the IP Address on the Printer

You must configure the printer's IP address before using the printer on a TCP/IP network.
The printer's IP address is configured automatically when you install the printer driver following the instructions in the Quick Start Guide.
Follow the steps below to configure the IP address by using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility, the printer Control Panel, or ARP or PING commands, if the IP address is changed, or if you change the printer connection mode to a network connection. For details on configuring the IP address, refer to the following topics.

- Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility (Windows) (→P.537)
- Configuring the IP Address Using the Printer Control Panel (→P.619)
- Configuring the IP Address Using ARP and PING Commands (→P.620)

Note

- We recommend configuring the printer's IP address even if you will use the printer in other network except for TCP/IP. Configuring the printer's IP address enables you to use RemoteUI to configure the network settings and manage the printer with a web browser.
  For details on RemoteUI, see "Using RemoteUI". (→P.623)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Initializing the Network Settings

Use RemoteUI to restore the network settings to the default values as follows.

Important

- Initializing the network settings will also restore the default value of the printer's IP address. As a result, the RemoteUI page cannot be displayed in the web browser after this procedure.
- For instructions on reconfiguring the IP address, see "Configuring the IP Address on the Printer". (→P.615)
- For details on RemoteUI, see "Using RemoteUI". (→P.623)

1. Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.
   http://"printer IP address or name"/
   Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/
2. Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.
3. If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.
4. Click **Network** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Network** page.
5. Click **Reset to Default settings** in the lower-right corner of the **Network Interface** group.
6. After confirming the message, click **OK** to restore the network settings to the default values.

Note

- You can also use imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility or the Control Panel to restore the default network settings.
- If you use the Control Panel to initialize the network settings, press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**, and then press ▲, ▼, and ► to select **Interface Setup** → **Ethernet Driver** → **Init. Settings** → **Yes** (in this order), and finally press the **OK** button.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Configuring the Printer's TCP/IP Network Settings

Follow the steps below to configure the TCP/IP network settings.

1. Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.
   http://"printer IP address or name"/
   Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/
2. Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.
3. If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.
4. Click **Network** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Network** page.
5. Click **Edit** in the upper-right corner of the **TCP/IP** group to display the **Edit TCP/IP Protocol Settings** page.
6. Refer to the TCP/IP Settings Items table to complete the settings.

TCP/IP Settings Items

Item	Details	Default Setting
Use DHCP	Activate this setting to use DHCP for configuring the IP address.	Off
Use BOOTP	Activate this setting to use BOOTP for configuring the IP address.	Off
Use RARP	Activate this setting to use RARP for configuring the IP address.	Off
RAW Mode Bi-direction	Activate this setting to use Raw mode bidirectional communication.	Off
Enable DNS Dynamic Update	Activate this setting to perform DNS server registration automatically.	Off
Use Zeroconf Function	Activate this setting to use Bonjour.	On
IP Address	Specify the printer's IP address.	0.0.0.0
Subnet Mask	Specify the printer's subnet mask.	0.0.0.0
Gateway Address	Specify the printer's default gateway.	0.0.0.0
LPD Printing	Activate this setting to use LDP Printing.	On
IPP Printing	Activate this setting to use IPP Printing.	On
IPP Printer URI	Specify the URI of the printer used for IPP printing using up to 252 characters (1-252 characters). When using a standard Windows port for IPP printing, enter an URL less than 255 bytes for all characters for "http://<IP address/IPP-URI."	printer

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Item	Details	Default Setting
RAW Printing	Activate this setting to use Raw Printing.	On
SMTP Server Address	Specify the SMTP server's IP address.	0.0.0.0
Primary DNS Server Address	Specify the IP address of the primary DNS server.	0.0.0.0
Secondary DNS Server Address	Specify the IP address of the secondary DNS server.	0.0.0.0
DNS Host Name	Specify the printer host name, up to 63 characters (1-63 characters). Use single-byte letters, numbers, and "-" (hyphens). Do not use numbers or "-" for the first character or "-" for the last character.	NB-17FBxxxxxxxxxxx
DNS Domain Name	Specify the printer domain name, up to 63 characters. Use single-byte letters, numbers, "-" (hyphens), and "." (periods). Do not use numbers, "-", or "." for the first character, or "-" or "." for the last character.	(Blank)
Multicast DNS Service Name	Specify the printer's Multicast DNS service name, up to 63 characters. (1-63 characters) This name will be displayed when Bonjour functions are used.	Canon iPFxxxx (xxxxxx)

7. Click **OK** to display the **Network** page.

Note

- If you specify to configure the IP address using DHCP, BOOTP, or RARP, there must be a server that supports such protocol running in the network.
- If you specify to configure the IP address using DHCP, BOOTP, or RARP, the IP address obtained by this method is used first. If you cannot obtain the IP address, the address specified in **IP Address** is used.
- It takes a minute or two to determine whether DHCP, BOOTP, or RARP are available. We recommend clearing check boxes of options you will not use.
- If you are using a DNS server, select **Enable DNS Dynamic Update** and enter the IP Address for DNS servers, DNS host name, and DNS domain name in **Primary DNS Server Address**, **Secondary DNS Server Address**, **DNS Host Name**, and **DNS Domain Name**, respectively.

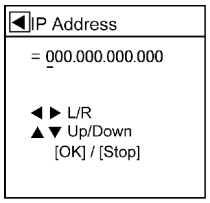
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Configuring the IP Address Using the Printer Control Panel

This topic describes how to configure the printer's IP address on the Control Panel.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Interface Setup**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **TCP/IP**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **IP Setting**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **IP Address**, and then press the ► button.
6. Press ◄ or ► to move to another digit for numerical input.



7. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the number, and then press the **OK** button.

Note

- Hold down ▲ or ▼ to increase or decrease the value continuously.

8. Repeat steps 6-7 to enter the IP address assigned to the printer.
9. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.
   If any of the settings are changed, a message for confirmation is displayed. In this case, press the **OK** button.

Note

- If an error message is displayed, check the settings and correct any invalid values.
- To cancel the setup process, hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more.

Important

- Be sure to complete step 6. This will activate the values you have entered.
- You can also specify the subnet mask and default gateway on the Control Panel.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Configuring the IP Address Using ARP and PING Commands

This topic describes how to configure the IP address using ARP and PING commands.
To use the ARP and PING commands, you will need to know the printer's MAC address. You can confirm the MAC address on the Control Panel.

1. Check the printer's MAC address.

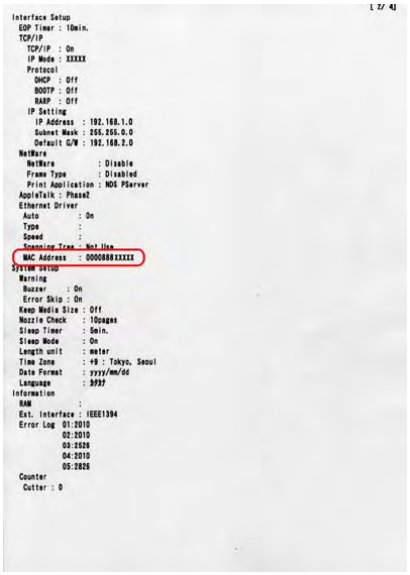
   You can confirm the MAC address on the Control Panel as follows:

   1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.
   2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Interface Setup**, and then press the ► button.
   3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Ethernet Driver**, and then press the ► button.
   4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **MAC Address**, and then press the ► button.

   You can also print information on the printer status, which includes the MAC address, as follows:

   1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.
   2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Test Print**, and then press the ► button.
   3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Status Print**, and then press the ► button.
   4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.

      The MAC address is indicated in the printer status information in the following location.



2. In Windows, open a command prompt or MS-DOS prompt, or in Mac OS X, start Terminal.
3. Execute the following command to add entries to the ARP table for managing IP addresses and corresponding MAC addresses.

   arp -s [IP address] [the printer's MAC address you have verified]

   Example: arp -s xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx 00-00-85-xx-xx-xx

Note

- In Mac OS X when using Terminal, enter the arp command in the format "arp -s xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx 00:00:85:xx:xx:xx." For details, refer to the help file for the command line.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

4. Execute the following command to send the IP address to the printer and configure it.
ping [IP address as specified in the ARP command] -l 479
Example: ping xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx -l 479

Note

- In “-l,” the “l” is the letter “l”.
- In Mac OS X when using Terminal, enter the ping command in the format “ping -s 479 xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx.” For details, refer to the help file for the command line.

Note

- The subnet mask and default gateway will be set to “0.0.0.0.”Use RemoteUI to change the subnet mask and default gateway to match your network settings.
For details on RemoteUI, see “Using RemoteUI”. (→P.623)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Specifying Printer-Related Information

Follow the steps below to specify device information and security settings.

1. Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.
   http://“printer IP address or name”/
   Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/
2. Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.
3. If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.
4. Click **Information** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Information** page.
5. To display the relevant settings page, click **Edit** in the upper-right corner of **Device Information** or **Security**, depending on what information you want to specify.
6. Refer to the tables of settings items for device information and security settings to complete the settings.

   Device information settings items

Item	Details	Default Setting
Device Name	Specify the device name. (0-32 characters)	(Blank)
Location	Specify where the device is installed. (0-32 characters)	(Blank)
Administrator	Identify the administrator. (0-32 characters)	(Blank)
Phone	Specify the device administrator’s contact information. (0-32 characters)	(Blank)
Comments(E-mail)	Enter any notes from the device administrator. (0-32 characters)	(Blank)

   Security settings items

Item	Details	Default Setting
Old Password	Enter the current device password. (0-15 characters)	(Blank)
New Password	Enter a new password. (0-15 characters)	(Blank)
Confirm	Enter the new password again to confirm it. (0-15 characters)	(Blank)

   Besides entering a password, you can specify other security-related information, such as use of SNMP or IPP authentication, or an IP address to restrict printing via TCP/IP.
7. Click **OK** to activate the settings.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Using RemoteUI

Enter the printer's IP address in a web browser to display the RemoteUI page. After you log on to RemoteUI from the page, you can check and change the status of the printer and print jobs, and configure network settings.
For details on configuring printer settings for networks, refer to the following topics.

- Configuring the Printer's TCP/IP Network Settings (→P.617)
- Configuring the Printer's AppleTalk Network Settings (→P.638)
- Configuring the Printer's NetWare Network Settings (→P.625)
- Specifying Printer-Related Information (→P.622)

Note

- RemoteUI also offers many other features. You can display the ink levels, check error messages and other status information, and cancel print jobs.
- By factory default, the English screen is displayed. You can change the display language after logging on in Administrator Mode by choosing the desired language in the **Language** list.

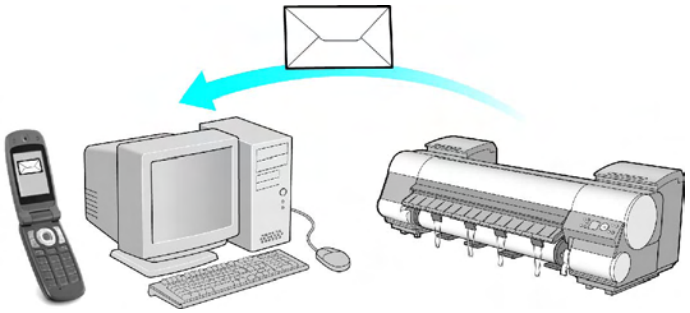
Important

- Use Netscape Navigator/Communicator 6.0 or later, Internet Explorer 5.01 or later, or Firefox 1.5 or later as a web browser. In Mac OS X, you can also use Safari 1.32 or later or Safari 2.03 or later.
- Access is not possible via a proxy server. In environments where a proxy server is used, add the printer's IP address to **Exceptions** (addresses accessed without a proxy server) in the web browser proxy server settings. (Settings may vary depending on the network environment.)
- Enable JavaScript and cookies in the web browser.
- If you access RemoteUI with the printer name instead of its IP address, make sure the DNS settings are correctly configured.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Email Notification When Printing is Finished or Errors Occur

The printer can notify you of the printer status by email. Even when you are away from the printer, you can know when printing is finished or if errors occur. Receive notification via email on your mobile phone or at your computer.



Use the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows) function to set up email recipients and message timing. Besides being informed of finished print jobs or errors, you can also complete settings for email notification when service is needed or it’s time to replace consumables.

Note

- For details on email notification using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (in Windows), refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Network Setting (Windows)

Configuring the Printer's NetWare Network Settings

Follow the steps below to configure the NetWare network settings.

1. Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.
   http://"printer IP address or name"/
   Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/
2. Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.
3. If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.
4. Click **Network** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Network** page.
5. Click **Edit** in the upper-right corner of the **NetWare** group to display the **Edit NetWare Protocol Settings** page.
6. Refer to the NetWare Settings Items table to complete the settings.

NetWare Settings Items

Item		Details	Default Setting
Frame Type		Specify the type of frame to use in NetWare.	Disabled
NCP Burst Mode		Activate this setting to use NCP Burst Mode. This mode supports fast data transfer when printing in queue server mode. Normally, leave the setting On.	On
Print Application		Choose the print service. • **Bindery PServer** • **RPrinter** • **NDS PServer** • **NPrinter**	NDS PServer
Packet Signature		Select **If Requested by Server** to use packet signature.	**If Requested by Server**
Bindery PServer	**File Server Name**	Specify the name of a file server that has a NetWare print server, up to 47 characters.	-
	Print Server Name	Specify the name of a NetWare print server, up to 47 characters.	-
	Print Server Password	Set a password for the print server, up to 20 characters.	-
	Polling Interval	Specify the interval to confirm jobs. (1-15 seconds)	5

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Item		Details	Default Setting
RPrinter	**Print Server Name**	Specify the name of a NetWare print server, up to 47 characters.	-
	Printer Number	Specify the number of the printer connected to the NetWare print server. (0-5)	0
NDS PServer	**Tree Name**	Specify the name of an NDS tree that has a NetWare print server, up to 32 characters.	-
	Context Name	Specify the name of a context that has a NetWare print server, up to 255 characters.	-
	Print Server Name	Specify the name of a NetWare print server, up to 64 characters.	-
	Print Server Password	Set a password for the print server, up to 20 characters.	-
	Polling Interval	Specify the interval to confirm jobs. (1-255 seconds)	5
NPrinter	**Print Server Name**	Specify the name of a NetWare print server, up to 47 characters. Enter the advertising name of the print server designated by the NetWare print service. Usually, the advertising name is the same as the name of the print server.	-
	Printer Number	Specify the number of the printer connected to the NetWare print server. (0-254) Enter the printer number designated by the NetWare print service.	0

7. Click **OK** to display the **Network** page.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Specifying the Printer's Frame Type

To enable communication between the printer and computers on your network, specify the Ethernet frame type in your NetWare environment.
Follow the steps below to specify the frame type by using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility or the printer Control Panel.

Note

- You can specify the frame type by using RemoteUI if the printer's IP address is configured.

Important

- Before specifying the frame type, make sure the printer is on and connected to the network.
- For instructions on installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility, see "Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility". (→P.536)

Specifying the frame type using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility

1. Start imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.
2. In the list of printers, select the printer to configure.
3. Choose **Protocol Settings** from the **Printer** menu.
4. In the **NetWare Frame Type** list, select the frame type.
5. Click **ETHERNET II** under **Frame Type** in **TCP/IP**.
6. In **IP Address**, enter the IP address assigned to the printer, and then enter the subnet mask in **Subnet Mask** and the default gateway in **Gateway Address**.

   Important

   - You must specify the IP address here to be able to configure NetWare protocol settings using RemoteUI.

7. Click **Set**.
8. Click **OK** after the **Confirmation** message dialog box is displayed.
9. Exit imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Specifying the frame type using the printer Control Panel

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Interface Setup**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **NetWare**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **NetWare**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **On**, and then press the **OK** button.
   Return to the **NetWare** menu.
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Frame Type**, and then press the ► button.
7. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the frame type to use, and then press the **OK** button.
   Return to the **NetWare** menu.
8. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print Service**, and then press the ► button.
9. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the desired print service, and then press the **OK** button.
   Return to the **NetWare** menu.
10. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.
    If any of the settings is changed, a message for confirmation is displayed. In this case, press the **OK** button.

Note

- If an error message is displayed, check the settings and correct any invalid values.
- To cancel the setup process, hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more.

Important

- Be sure to complete step 5. This will activate the values you have entered.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Specifying NetWare Print Services

Before printing in a NetWare network, you must configure print services such as print servers, print queues, and so on. You can configure the print service settings from a computer using any of the following software.

- NWADMIN
- PCONSOLE
  (from Novell, provided with NetWare)

Important

- If you use NWADMIN to configure the print service settings, Novell Client (the Novell NetWare client software) must be installed as the client software application.
- NetWare networking is unsupported in Windows Vista.

This topic gives instructions for configuring NetWare print services. The order of this procedure may vary depending on the environment.

Choosing the type of print services

Before completing print service settings, choose the type of print service. Refer to the following descriptions as needed.

Note

- In NetWare 5.1/6.0/6.5, NDPS may also be used as the print service. If you use NDPS, use the Novell printer gateway included with NetWare. For details on configuring NDPS, refer to the NetWare documentation.

- NDS (Novell Directory Service) and Bindery
  NDS and bindery are both supported. Use the mode that is compatible with your network environment.
- Queue Server Mode and Remote Printer Mode
  Queue server mode and remote printer mode are both supported.
  - Queue Server Mode
    When using queue server mode, all print server functions are supported, so there is no need for other print server software or hardware. In NDS queue server mode (NDS PServer), the NDS print server is used for printing. In bindery queue server mode (Bindery PServer), the bindery print server is used for printing. Note that if you use queue server mode, a NetWare user license is required for each network interface.
  - Remote Printer Mode
    In remote printer mode, the printer is controlled by the NetWare print server. Thus, a NetWare print server is required. In NDS remote printer mode (NPrinter), the NDS print server is used for printing, and in bindery remote printer mode (RPrinter), the bindery print server is used for printing.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Using NWADMIN or PCONSOLE to set up the print server

Use NWADMIN to set up the print server if NDS queue server mode or remote printer mode is used.

1. Log into NetWare as Administrator or with equivalent rights, and then start NWADMIN.
2. Run Quick Setup.
   1. Choose **Print Services Quick Setup** in the **Tools** menu.
   2. Enter a desired name in **Print Server Name**. To use an existing print server, click the button at right and choose the name from the list.
   3. Enter a desired printer name in **Name**.
   4. To use the printer in queue server mode, choose **Other/Unknown** in **Type**. To use the printer in remote printer mode, choose **Parallel** in **Type**, click **Communications**, and set **Ports** to **LPT1** and **Connection Type** to **Manual Load**.
   5. Enter a desired queue name in **Name**.
   6. In **Volume**, enter the volume object (that is, the object representing the physical volume on the network) where the print queue will be created. Click the button at right to choose from a list.
   7. Complete other settings as needed and click **OK**.

   Note
   - The print server name will be required when configuring the printer's network settings. Note the print server name for future reference.
   - When running Quick Setup, the printer is assigned printer number "0." When using the printer in queue server mode, do not change the printer number from "0."
3. Set a password.
   1. Right-click the print server created in step 2 and choose **Details**.
   2. Click **Change Password** to open the password input dialog box. Enter the password.
   3. Click **OK** to close the password input dialog box.
   4. Click **OK** or **Cancel** to close the details dialog box.
4. To use the printer in remote printer mode, start the print server.

   To use the NetWare file server as the print server, enter "LOAD PSERVER.NLM" at the file server and press the Enter key.

   Note
   - This procedure is not required when using queue server mode.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Use PCONSOLE to set up the print server if bindery queue server mode or remote printer mode is used.

1. Log into NetWare as Supervisor and start PCONSOLE.
2. Switch to bindery mode.
3. If the print server has not been created, create it.
    1. In **Available Options**, select **Quick Setup** and press the Enter key.
    2. Enter the name of the new print server, the new printer, and the queue.

    Note
    - The print server name will be required when configuring the printer's protocol settings. Note down the print server name for future reference.
4. Specify the printer type.
    1. To use the printer in queue server mode, choose **Other/Unknown** in **Type**. To use remote printer mode, set **Printer Type** to **Parallel** and **Position** to **Manual Load**.
    2. Press the Esc key.
    3. After the confirmation message is displayed, choose **Yes** and press the Enter key.
5. Set a password.
    1. In **Available Options**, select **Print Servers** and press the Enter key.
    2. Select the print server created in step 2 and press the Enter key.
    3. Select **Password**, and press the Enter key to display the password input dialog box.
    4. Enter the password and press the Enter key.
6. Press the Esc key several times to display the dialog box for confirming that PCONSOLE is finished.
7. Click **Yes** to exit PCONSOLE.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Specifying NetWare Protocols

Follow the steps below to configure NetWare protocol settings other than the frame type by using RemoteUI.

Note

- For details on RemoteUI, see “Using RemoteUI”. (→P.623)

1. Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.
   http://“printer IP address or name”/
   Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/
2. Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.
3. If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.
4. Click **Network** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Network** page.
5. Click **Edit** in the upper-right corner of the **NetWare** group to display the **Edit NetWare Protocol Settings** page.
6. Make sure the **Frame Type** indicates the frame type used on the NetWare network.
7. To use burst mode, choose **On** for **NCP Burst Mode**.

   Note

   - Burst mode supports fast data transfer when printing in queue server mode. Normally, choose **On**.

8. In **Print Application**, click the print service to be used.

   Note

   - Only one print service selected here will be enabled. Multiple print services are not available at the same time.

9. For packet signature, click **If Requested by Server** in **Packet Signature**.
10. Complete the following settings based on the selected service.
    - If you have selected Bindery PServer: Queue Server Mode (Using a Bindery Print Server)
      1. In **File Server Name**, enter the file server name.
      2. In **Print Server Name**, enter the name of the print server created in Specifying NetWare Print Services. (→P.629)
      3. In **Print Server Password**, enter the password of the print server created in Specifying NetWare Print Services. (→P.629)
      4. In **Polling Interval**, specify the interval at which the printer checks the NetWare print queue.
    - If you have selected RPrinter: Remote Printer Mode (Using a Bindery Print Server)
      1. In **Print Server Name**, enter the advertising name of the print server created in Specifying NetWare Print Services. (→P.629)
      2. In **Printer Number**, enter the same printer number specified in Specifying NetWare Print Services. (→P.629)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

- If you have selected NDS PServer: Queue Server Mode (Using an NDS Print Server)
  1. In **Tree Name** and **Context Name**, enter the tree and context name of the print server. Do not exceed 255 characters for the context name.
  2. In **Print Server Name**, enter the name of the print server created in Specifying NetWare Print Services. (→P.629)
  3. In **Print Server Password**, enter the password of the print server created in Specifying NetWare Print Services. (→P.629)
  4. In **Polling Interval**, specify the interval at which the printer checks the NetWare print queue.
- If you have selected NPrinter: Remote Printer Mode (Using a NDS Print Server)
  1. In **Print Server Name**, enter the advertising name of the print server created in Specifying NetWare Print Services. (→P.629) Usually, the advertising name is the same as the name of the print server.
  2. In **Printer Number**, enter the same printer number specified in Specifying NetWare Print Services. (→P.629)

11. Click **OK** to display the **Network** page.
12. Click **Reset** to activate the settings.

For a list of NetWare protocol settings items, see “Configuring the Printer’s NetWare Network Settings”. (→P.625)

Note

- If you use RemoteUI to display the print log in RPrinter or NPrinter mode, the document and user information cannot be obtained. Thus, **Document Name** only indicates **Unknown**, and the **User Name** information is identified as **RPRINTER/NPRINTER**.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Configuring NetWare Network Settings

To print over a NetWare network, configure the network environment as follows.

Important

- To configure network settings, you must be logged in with administrative rights such as “Administrator” account. We recommend that your network administrator configure the network settings.

1. Specify the Ethernet frame type for communication between the printer and computers.
   For instructions, see “Specifying the Printer’s Frame Type”. (→P.627)
2. Specify the NetWare print services, including the print server and queue.
   For instructions, see “Specifying NetWare Print Services”. (→P.629)
3. Specify NetWare protocol details besides the frame type.
   For instructions, see “Specifying NetWare Protocols”. (→P.632)
   After you have completed the steps above, configure each computer for printing over the NetWare network.
4. Connect to the NetWare network.
   Install NetWare client software on each computer to be used for printing over the network, and log in to the NetWare server or tree. For instructions on connection, refer to the NetWare and operating system documentation.
5. Install the printer driver.
   Follow the instructions of your network administrator to install the printer driver on each computer to be used for printing. When installing the printer driver, choose **Network Printer** as the printer destination, and then choose the print queue created from the NetWare print service settings.
6. Follow these steps to configure the printer port.
   1. Open the **Printers and Faxes** (or **Printers**) window.
   2. Right-click the printer icon and choose **Properties**.
   3. Click the **Port** (or **Advanced**) tab to display the **Port** (or **Advanced**) sheet.
   4. As the destination port, specify the print queue created by configuring the NetWare print service settings.

   Note

   - This step is not necessary if you specified the printer destination during installation of the printer driver.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Windows)

This topic describes how to specify the printer driver destination if the printer's IP address is changed, or if you will use the printer over a network connection instead of via USB connection.

Important

- If you use the printer on a TCP/IP network, make sure the printer's IP address is configured correctly.
  - Configuring the IP Address on the Printer (→P.615)

1. Open the **Printers and Faxes** (or **Printers**) window.
2. Right-click the icon of this printer and choose **Properties** to open the printer properties window.
3. Click the **Port** tab to display the **Port** sheet.
4. Click **Add Port** to display the **Printer Ports** dialog box.
5. In the **Available Port** list, select **Standard TCP/IP Port**.
6. Click **New Port**.

   After the wizard starts, a window is displayed for the **Welcome to the Add Standard TCP/IP Printer Port Wizard**.
7. Click **Next**.
8. In **Printer Name or IP Address**, enter the printer's IP address.
9. Follow the instructions on the screen to add a printer port.
10. Click **Close** to close the **Printer Ports** dialog box.
11. Make sure the printer port you added is displayed under **Ports**, and that the port is selected.
12. Click **OK** to close the printer properties window.

Note

- The procedure described above is the configuration based on the LPR or RAW protocol using the standard TCP/IP port in Windows (**Standard TCP/IP Port**).

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility

Install imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility from the User Software CD-ROM provided with the printer as follows:

Important

- In Windows 2000/Windows XP/Windows Server 2003/Windows Vista, you must log on with administrative rights equivalent to the “Administrator” account.

1. Insert the User Software CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive.
2. On the **Setup Menu** window, click **Install Individual Software**.
3. Click **Install** in imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.
4. Follow the instructions on the screen to proceed with the installation.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility

From a computer running Windows, you can use imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility provided with the printer to configure the printer's IP address. This topic describes how to configure the IP address using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.

Important

- To configure network settings, you must be logged in with administrative rights such as "Administrator" account. We recommend that your network administrator configure the network settings.
- For instructions on installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility, see "Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility". (→P.536)

1. Start imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility from the **start** menu.
2. In the list of printers, select the printer to configure.
3. Choose **Protocol Settings** from the **Printer** menu.
4. In the **Setting IP Address** list, choose **Manual**.
5. Enter the IP address assigned to the printer and click the **Set** button.
6. Click **OK** after the **Confirmation** message dialog box is displayed.
7. Exit imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.

Note

- To configure the IP address automatically, choose **Auto** in the **Setting IP Address** list and select **DHCP**, **BOOTP**, or **RARP**.
- You can also specify the subnet mask and default gateway.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Network Setting (Macintosh)

Configuring the Printer's AppleTalk Network Settings

Follow the steps below to configure the AppleTalk network settings.

1. Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.
   http://"printer IP address or name"/
   Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/
2. Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.
3. If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.
4. Click **Network** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Network** page.
5. Click **Edit** in the upper-right corner of the **AppleTalk** group to display the **Edit AppleTalk Protocol Settings** page.
6. Refer to the AppleTalk Settings Items table to complete the settings.

AppleTalk Settings Items

Item	Details	Default Setting
Phase Type	Specify whether to use AppleTalk. If you will use AppleTalk, choose **Phase 2**. If you will not use AppleTalk, choose **Disabled** .	Disabled
Name (*1)	Specify the object name used by AppleTalk (in up to 31 single-byte or 15 double-byte characters). However, do not use the following single-byte characters: @ * : =	Canon NB-17FB (xxxxxx)
Zone (*2)	Specify the printer zone name, up to 31 single-byte characters. However, do not use the following single-byte characters: @ : = Also avoid using "*" (which represents the default zone) in the middle of a string.	*

*1:The object name you have specified in **Name** is displayed in **Chooser** in Mac OS 9 or **Printer Setup Utility** (or **Print Center**) in Mac OS X. If you use multiple printers in the same zone, assign a unique name to each printer. By default, the network interface name is "Canon NB-17FB (xxxxxx)." (Here, xxxxxx is the last six digits of the printer's MAC address.)

2: If zones have been created on the network, enter the name of the printer's zone. If there are no zones, leave the asterisk "" entry (for the default zone) as it is. If you enter a network zone name that does not match created zones, the printer will not be detected by Macintosh computers. Consult your network administrator for information on zone names.

7. Click **OK** to display the **Network** page.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Macintosh)

Specify the printer driver destination as follows if the printer's IP address is changed, or if you will use the printer over a network connection instead of via USB connection.

- If you switch to printing in an AppleTalk network, see "Configuring the Destination for AppleTalk Network (Macintosh)". (→P.640)
- If you switch to printing in a TCP/IP network, or if the printer's IP address is changed, see "Configuring the Destination for TCP/IP Network (Macintosh)". (→P.644)
- If you switch to printing in a Bonjour network, see "Configuring the Destination for Bonjour Network (Macintosh)". (→P.648)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Configuring the Destination for AppleTalk Network (Macintosh)

To print over an AppleTalk network, activate the AppleTalk protocol and configure the destination as follows.

Activating AppleTalk on the printer

Important

- By factory default, the AppleTalk protocol is disabled on the printer.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Interface Setup**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **AppleTalk**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **On**, and then press the **OK** button.
5. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.
   If any of the settings is changed, a message for confirmation is displayed. In this case, press the **OK** button.

Note

- By using RemoteUI, you can also specify the object name used by AppleTalk, as well as the printer zone name.
  For details on RemoteUI, see “Using RemoteUI”. (→P.623)

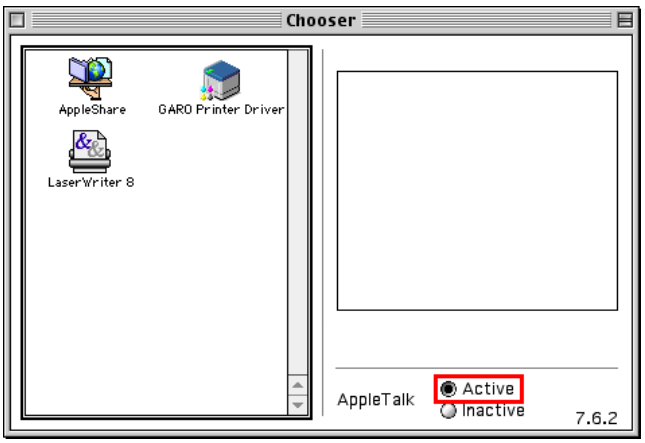
Important

- Be sure to complete step 3. This will activate the values you have entered.

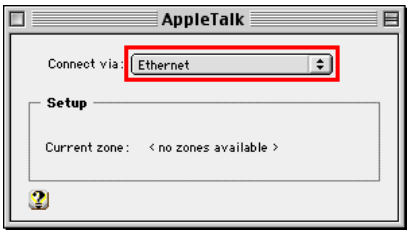
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Configuring the destination (Mac OS 9)

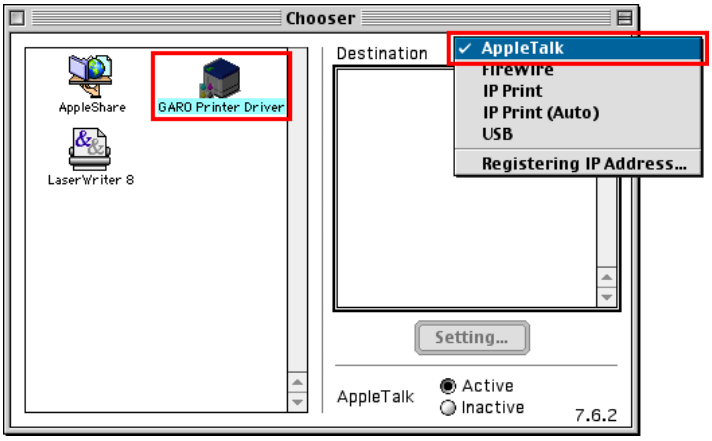
1. Choose **Chooser** from the Apple menu to display the **Chooser** window.
2. In **AppleTalk**, click **Active**.



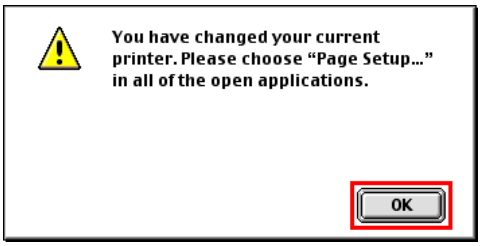
3. Close the **Chooser** window.
4. Click **AppleTalk** under **Control Panels** to display the **AppleTalk** window.
5. In **Connect via**, choose **Built-in Ethernet**.



6. Close the **AppleTalk** window and save the settings.
7. Choose **Chooser** from the Apple menu to display the **Chooser** window.
8. In the list at left, click **GARO Printer Driver**.
9. In the **Destination** list at right, select **AppleTalk**, and then select the printer in the list below.



10. Close the **Chooser** window and click **OK** after the confirmation message is displayed.



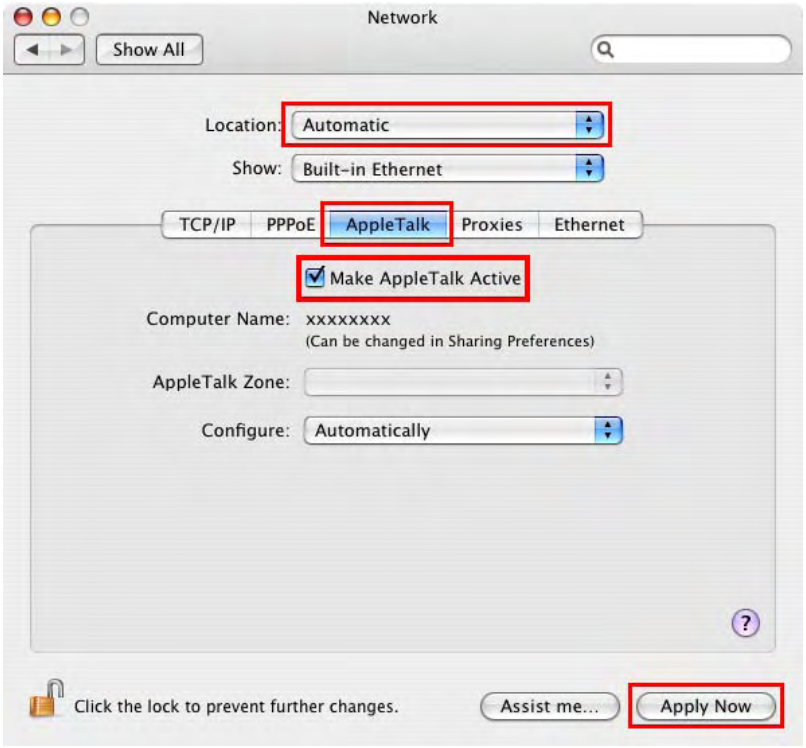
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Configuring the destination (Mac OS X)

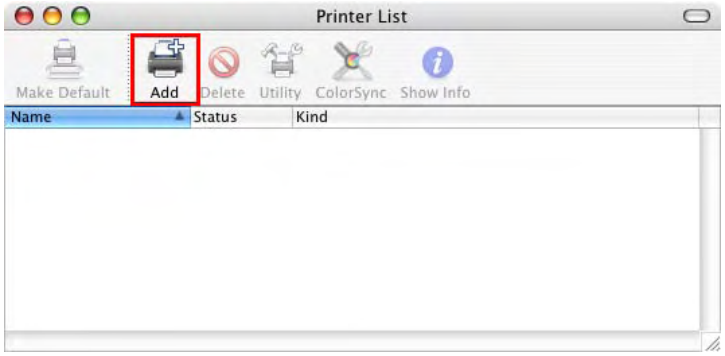
Note

- The following procedures are based on Mac OS X 10.4. The method of configuring the destination varies depending on the version of Mac OS X.

1. In **System Preferences**, click **Network** to display the **Network** window.
2. In **Show**, choose **Built-in Ethernet**. Next, click **AppleTalk**, select **Make AppleTalk Active**, and click **Apply now**.

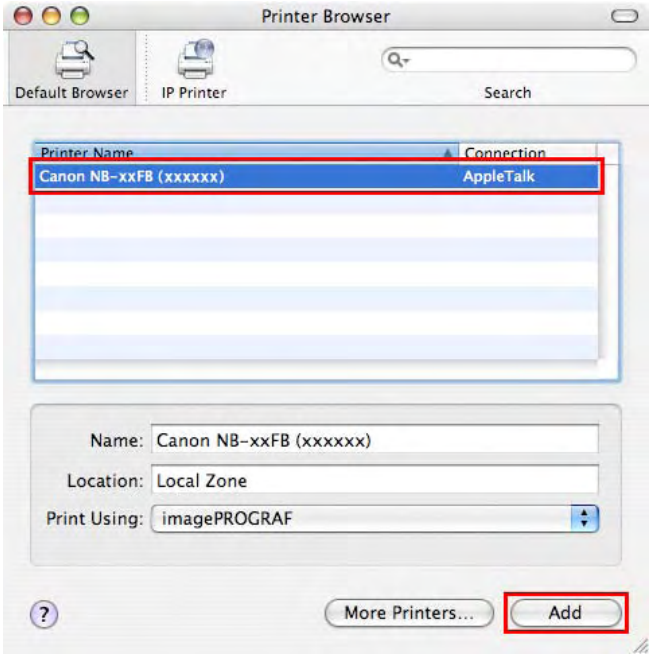


3. Close the **Network** window and save the settings.
4. Choose **Utilities** (or **Applications**) in the **Go** menu of **Finder**.
5. Click **Printer Setup Utility** (or **Print Center**) in the **Utilities** folder.
6. If the printer name is not displayed in **Printer List**, click **Add**.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

7. Select the printer from the list in the **Printer Browser** window and click **Add**.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Configuring the Destination for TCP/IP Network (Macintosh)

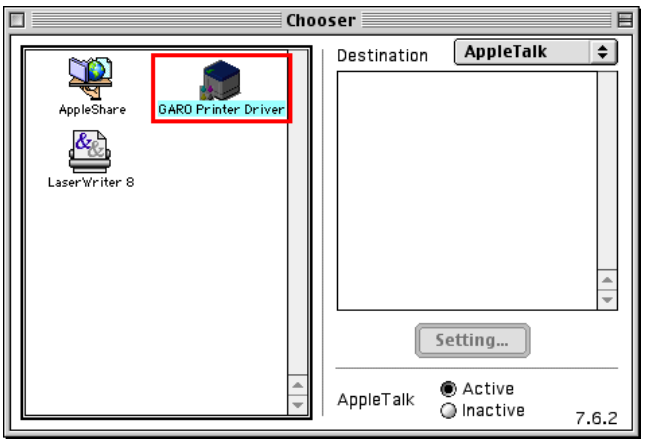
Follow the steps below to configure the destination if you use the printer on TCP/IP network.

Important

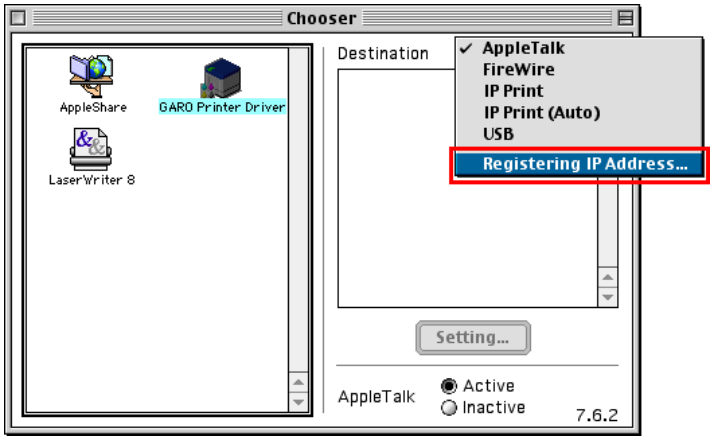
- If you use the printer on TCP/IP network, make sure the printer's IP address is configured correctly.
  - Configuring the IP Address Using the Printer Control Panel (→P.619)

Configuring the Destination (Mac OS 9)

1. Choose **Chooser** from the Apple menu to display the **Chooser** window.
2. In the list at left, click **GARO Printer Driver**.

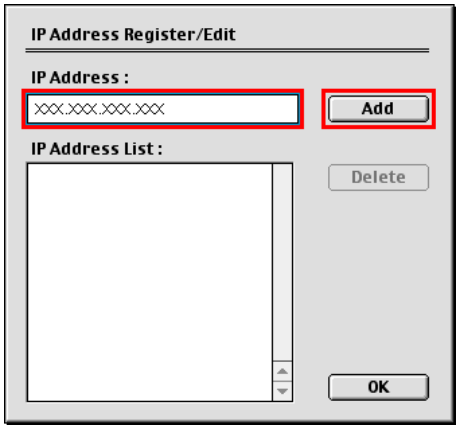


3. Click **Registering IP Address** in the **Destination** list to display the **IP Address Register/Edit** dialog box.

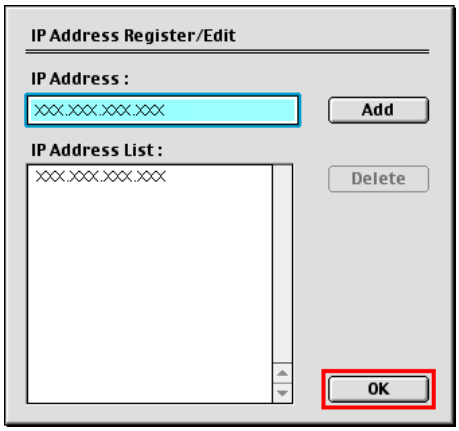


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

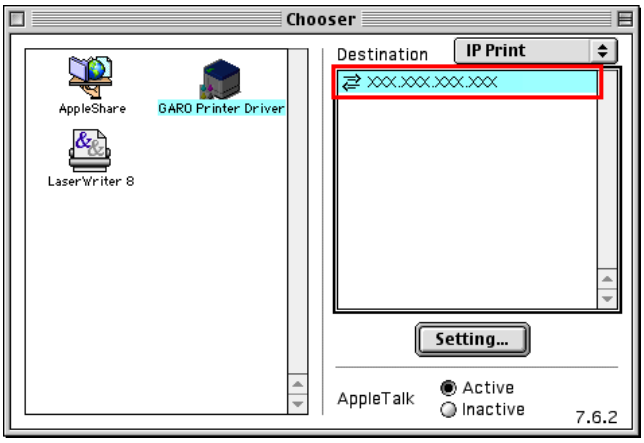
4. Enter the printer's IP address in **IP Address** and click **Add**.



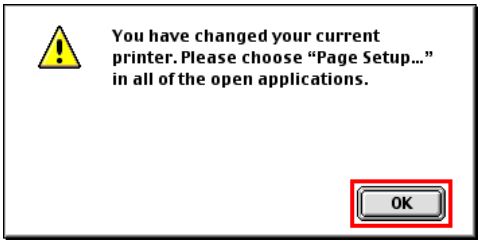
5. Click **OK** to close the **IP Address Register/Edit** dialog box.



6. In the **Destination** list, click the address you registered.



7. Close the **Chooser** window and click **OK** after the confirmation message is displayed.



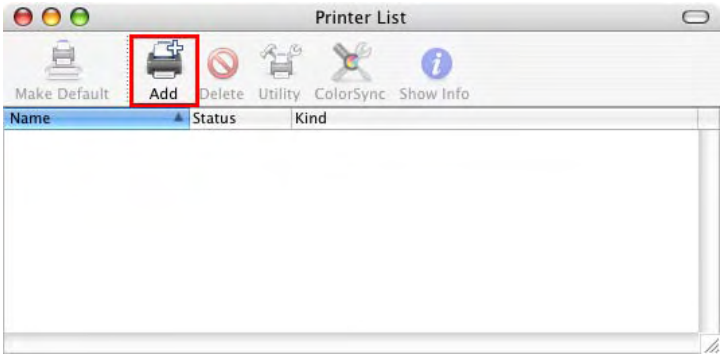
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Configuring the Destination (Mac OS X)

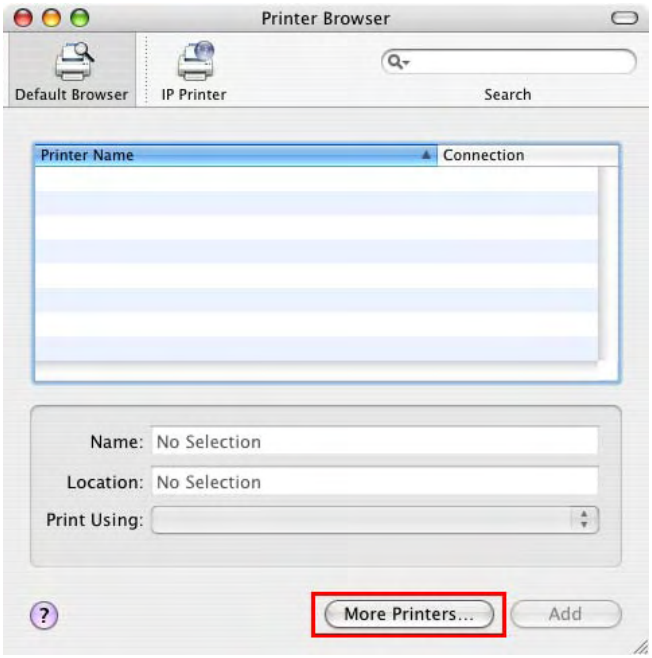
Note

- The following procedures are based on Mac OS X 10.4. The method of configuring the destination varies depending on the version of Mac OS X. If you use other versions, refer to the help for the **Printer Setup Utility** (or the **Print Center**).

1. Choose **Utilities** (or **Applications**) in the **Go** menu of **Finder**.
2. Click **Printer Setup Utility** (or **Print Center**) in the **Utilities** folder.
3. Click **Add** to display the **Printer Browser** window.

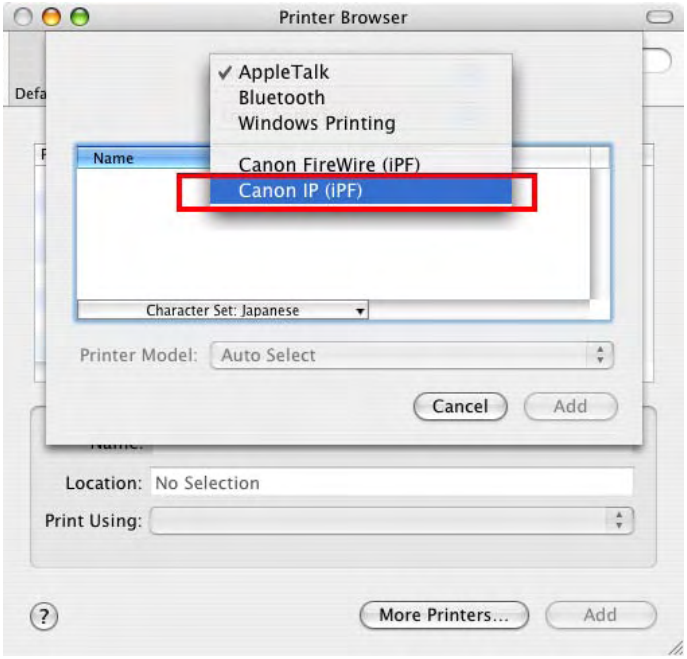


4. Click **More Printers**.

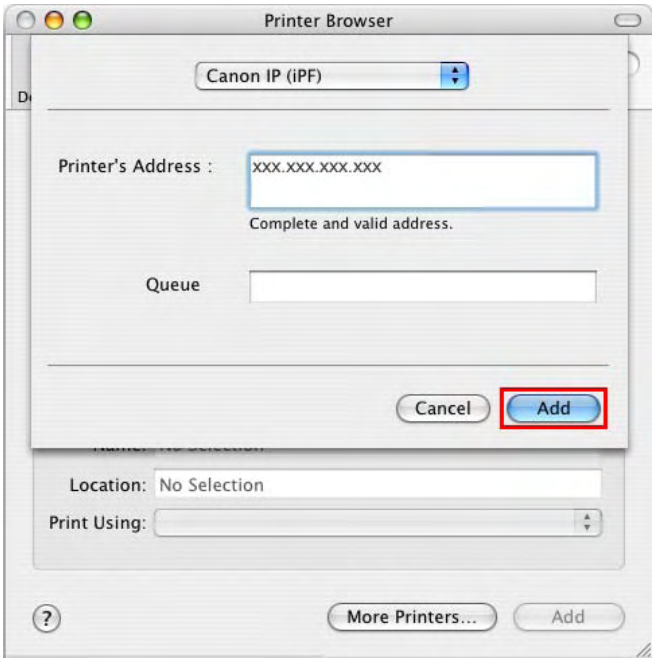


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

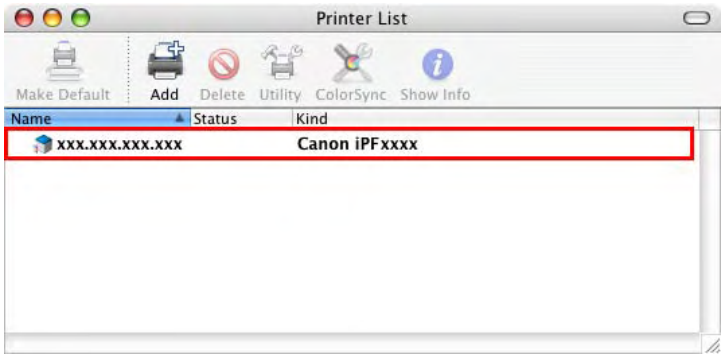
5. In the list of connection methods, click **Canon IP(iPF)**.



6. Enter the printer's IP address in **Printer's Address** and click **Add**.



7. Make sure the printer has been added, and then close the **Printer List** window.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Configuring the Destination for Bonjour Network (Macintosh)

In Mac OS X 10.2.8 and later, use Bonjour functions to easily connect the printer to the network. Follow the steps below to configure the destination if you use the printer on TCP/IP network.

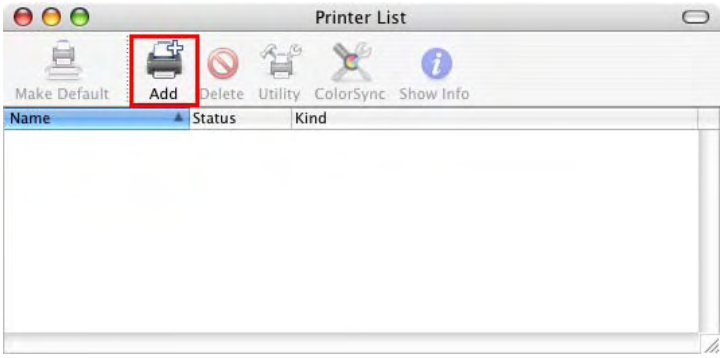
Note

- In Mac OS 9, if the computer's TCP/IP settings have been configured, you can connect the printer to the network as easily as with the Bonjour function.
  Select **IP Print (Auto)** from the **Destination** list in **Chooser** to specify the destination.

Important

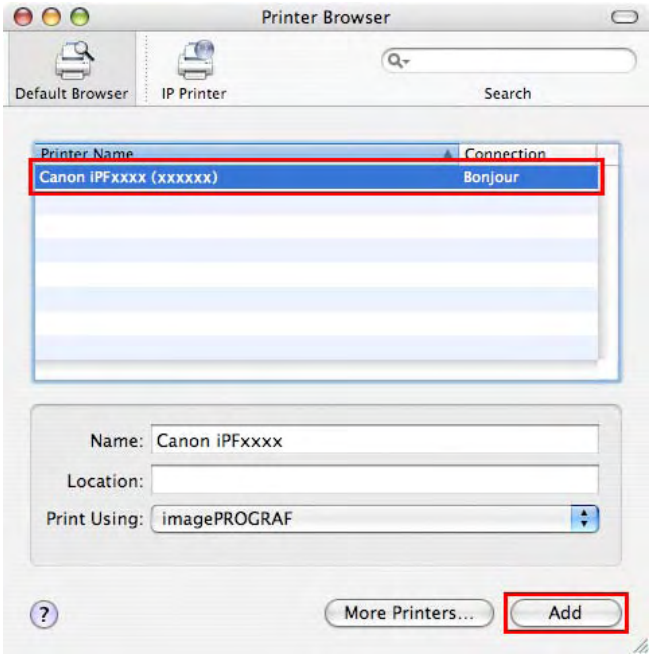
- Bonjour and **IP Print (Auto)** do not support printing to a printer on other network groups that require a router for connection. Make sure the computer and printer are on the same network. For information about network settings, ask your network administrator.
- By default, Bonjour is activated on the printer. The printer name as displayed in **Chooser** in Mac OS 9 or **Printer Setup Utility** (or **Print Center**) in Mac OS X is predefined as the **Multicast DNS Service Name**. You can activate or deactivate the Bonjour function or change the printer name by using RemoteUI. For instructions on changing it, see "Using RemoteUI". (→P.623)

1. Choose **Utilities** (or **Applications**) in the **Go** menu of **Finder**.
2. Click **Printer Setup Utility** (or **Print Center**) in the **Utilities** folder.
3. If the printer name is not displayed in **Printer List**, click **Add**.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

4. Select the printer from the list in the **Printer Browser** window and click **Add**.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Maintenance

Adjusting the Printhead

Correcting Print Misalignment

If printed vertical lines are warped or colors are out of alignment, adjust the Printhead alignment. Adjust the Printhead alignment automatically or manually by using a printed test pattern.
For instructions on automatic adjustment, see “Adjusting the Printhead Alignment Automatically”. (→P.650)
For instructions on manual adjustment, see “Adjusting the Printhead Alignment Manually”. (→P.652)

Adjusting the Printhead Alignment Automatically

If printed vertical lines are warped or colors are out of alignment, adjust the Printhead alignment. Adjust the Printhead alignment automatically or manually by printing and reading a test pattern.
There are two modes for automatic adjustment: **Standard Adj.** and **Advanced Adj. Standard Adj.** will fix most slight image distortion or color misalignment, but if not, try **Advanced Adj.**
If using special media or printing does not improve even after performing automatic adjustment using advanced adjustment, try manual adjustment. For instructions on manual adjustment, see “Adjusting the Printhead Alignment Manually”. (→P.652)
Follow these steps for standard automatic adjustment of the Printhead.

1. When using sheets, have three unused sheets A4/Letter-sized or larger ready when **Standard Adj.** is selected or 11 when **Advanced Adj.** is selected.
   When using a roll, load a roll 10 inches (254 mm) or wider.
   - Setting the Roll on the Roll Holder (→P.179)
   - Loading the Roll in the Printer (→P.182)
   - Loading the Sheet in the Printer (→P.212)

   Note
   - Use **Standard Adj.** if you have switched to another type of paper or if you want the boundaries between colors to appear as attractive as possible.
   - Use **Advanced Adj.** to fine-tune the space between nozzles or colors if you have switched the printhead or if you want printed documents to appear as vivid as possible. We recommend using **Advanced Adj.** for printing at a higher level of image quality.
   - Always make sure the loaded paper matches the media type setting on the printer. Adjustment cannot be completed correctly unless the setting value matches the loaded paper.
   - We recommend using the type of paper you use most often for adjustment.
   - This function is not available for CAD Tracing Paper, CAD Translucent Matte Film, or CAD Clear Film. If adjustment is not possible as expected using highly transparent film or similar media, try another type of media or adjust the Printhead alignment manually. (→P.652)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Auto Head Adj.**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Advanced Adj.**, and then press the ► button.
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.

   A test pattern is printed for printhead adjustment.

   After reading the pattern, the printer automatically adjusts the Printhead alignment.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Adjusting the Printhead Alignment Manually

If printed vertical lines are warped or colors are out of alignment, adjust the Printhead alignment. Adjust the Printhead alignment automatically or manually by using a printed test pattern.
You can adjust the Printhead alignment automatically or manually. Normally, choose automatic adjustment. If using special media or printing does not improve even after performing automatic adjustment using advanced adjustment, try manual adjustment. For instructions on automatic adjustment, see “Adjusting the Printhead Alignment Automatically”. (→P.650)
Follow these steps for standard manual adjustment of the Printhead.

Note

- If **Manual Head Adj** is unusable although displayed in the menu, choose **Advanced Adj.** in **Auto Head Adj.** **Manual Head Adj** is available in the menu after you try **Auto Head Adj.** once.

1. When using sheets, have two unused sheets A4-sized or larger ready.
   When using a roll, load a roll 10 inches (254 mm) or wider.
   - Setting the Roll on the Roll Holder (→P.179)
   - Loading the Roll in the Printer (→P.182)
   - Loading the Sheet in the Printer (→P.212)

Note

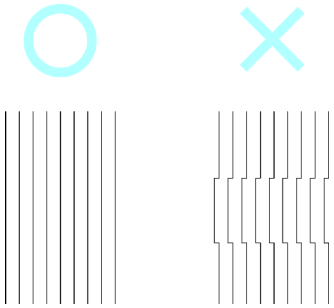
- Always make sure the loaded paper matches the media type setting on the printer. Adjustment cannot be completed correctly unless the setting value matches the loaded paper.
- We recommend using the type of paper you use most often for adjustment.

2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Manual Head Adj**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
   A test pattern is printed for printhead adjustment.
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **D**, and then press the ► button.
7. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **D-1**, and then press the ► button.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

8. Examine test pattern **D-1** for printhead adjustment. After you determine the pattern with straight lines, press ▲ or ▼ to choose the pattern number, and then press the **OK** button.



Note

- If lines seem straightest in two patterns but you cannot decide which one is better, choose an intermediate value. For example, choose 11 if you cannot decide whether pattern 10 or 12 is better.

9. Repeat steps 7 and 8 to specify the adjustment value for **D-2** to **D-5**, **D-7** to **D-11**, and **D-13** to **D-24**.
10. Press ◄.
11. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Register Setting**, and then press the ► button.
12. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
    The printer goes online.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Adjusting the Printhead Height

If the printing rubs or the edge of paper is wrinkled from rubbing, adjusting the Printhead height may improve results.
If image edges are blurred, it may help to lower the Printhead.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Head Height**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the Printhead height, and then press the **OK** button.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Adjusting the feed amount

Adjusting the Feed Amount Automatically

If printed images are affected by banding in different colors, adjust the amount that paper is fed. There are two modes for adjusting the amount paper is fed, **Standard Adj.** and **Advanced Adj.** Use **Advanced Adj.** if **Standard Adj.** does not eliminate streaks, or when using paper other than genuine Canon paper or paper for purposes other than checking output. When using highly transparent media not compatible with automatic adjustment, you must adjust the feed amount manually. For instructions on manual adjustment, see “Adjusting the Feed Amount Manually”. (→P.658)

Note

- To adjust the measurement scale and ensure accuracy (so that lines in CAD drawings are printed at exactly the right length, for example), specify the amount of paper stretching or shrinkage when adjusting the feed amount. (→P.662)
- This may take some time, depending on the type of paper.

Important

- Use paper of the same type and size for adjustment as you will use for printing.
- To apply the results of adjusting the feed amount in printing, you must first set **Feed Priority** to **Band Joint**. Note that if you select **Automatic**, the results of adjustment will only be applied in printing if you set **Print Priority** in the printer driver to **Image** or **Office Document**. (→P.243)
  Follow these steps to change the **Feed Priority** setting.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Feed Priority**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Band Joint**, and then press the **OK** button.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Follow the steps below to adjust the feed amount automatically.

1. Prepare one unused sheet A4/Letter-sized or larger when **Standard Adj.** is selected or two when **Advanced Adj.** is selected.
   When using a roll, load a roll 10 inches (254 mm) or wider.
   - Setting the Roll on the Roll Holder (→P.179)
   - Loading the Roll in the Printer (→P.182)
   - Loading the Sheet in the Printer (→P.212)

   Note
   - Always make sure the loaded paper matches the media type setting. Adjustment cannot be completed correctly unless the setting value matches the loaded paper.

2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Auto Band Adj.**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Standard Adj.** or **Advanced Adj.**, and then press the ► button.
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
   A test pattern is printed for band adjustment.
   After reading the pattern, the printer automatically adjusts the feed amount and returns to online mode.

Note
- In some cases, the feed amount cannot be adjusted automatically. If so, choose **Advanced Adj.** in **Auto Band Adj.** (→P.49)
- If printed documents are still affected by uneven contrast or banding in different colors at regular intervals after this adjustment, you can adjust the feed amount during printing. (→P.657)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Adjusting the feed amount during printing

If, during printing, the contrast is uneven sideways across the paper or banding in different colors appears every 50 mm (2.0 in) or so, try adjusting the feed amount as follows. However, note that because printing is paused, colors may be slightly different.

1. Press the **Online** button to pause printing.

2. Press the **Menu** button to display **Menu Durng Prtng**.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Fine Band Adj.**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to change the value, and then press the **OK** button.

Note

- The supported range is -5 to +5.

5. Press the **Online** button to resume printing.

Note

- The **Fine Band Adj.** value set during printing is also applied to the next print job. However, if you adjust the feed amount (manually or automatically), the **Fine Band Adj.** value is reset to 0.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Adjusting the Feed Amount Manually

If printed images are affected by banding in different colors, adjust the amount that paper is fed.
This topic describes how to adjust the feed amount manually.
When using highly transparent media for which automatic adjustment is not supported, adjust the feed amount manually. We recommend automatic adjustment for other types of media. For instructions on automatic adjustment, see “Adjusting the Feed Amount Automatically”. (→P.655)

Note

- To adjust the measurement scale and ensure accuracy (so that lines in CAD drawings are printed at exactly the right length, for example), specify the amount of paper stretching or shrinkage when adjusting the feed amount. (→P.662)

Important

- Use paper of the same type and size for adjustment as you will use for printing.
- To apply the results of adjusting the feed amount in printing, you must first set **Feed Priority** to **Band Joint**. Note that if you select **Automatic**, the results of adjustment will only be applied in printing if you set **Print Priority** in the printer driver to **Image** or **Office Document**. (→P.243)
  Follow these steps to change the **Feed Priority** setting.
  1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

  2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the ► button.
  3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the ► button.
  4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Feed Priority**, and then press the ► button.
  5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Band Joint**, and then press the **OK** button.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

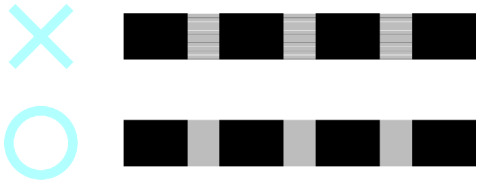
Follow the steps below to adjust the feed amount manually.

1. When using sheets, have two unused sheets A4/Letter-sized or larger ready.
   When using a roll, load a roll 10 inches (254 mm) or wider.
   - Setting the Roll on the Roll Holder (→P.179)
   - Loading the Roll in the Printer (→P.182)
   - Loading the Sheet in the Printer (→P.212)

   Note
   - Always make sure the loaded paper matches the media type setting. Adjustment cannot be completed correctly unless the setting value matches the loaded paper.

2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Manual Band Adj**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
   Test pattern A is printed for band adjustment.
6. Examine test pattern A for band adjustment.After you determine the pattern in which streaks are least noticeable, press ▲ or ▼ to choose the pattern number, and then press the **OK** button.



   Test pattern B is printed for band adjustment.

   Note
   - If streaks seem least noticeable in two patterns but you cannot decide which one is better, choose an intermediate value. For example, choose 11 if you cannot decide whether pattern 10 or 12 is better.

7. Examine test pattern B for band adjustment.After you determine the pattern in which streaks are least noticeable, press ▲ or ▼ to choose the pattern number, and then press the **OK** button.
   The feed amount is adjusted, and the printer goes online.
   If printed documents are still affected by uneven contrast or banding in different colors at regular intervals after this adjustment, you can adjust the feed amount during printing. (→P.660)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Adjusting the feed amount during printing

If, during printing, the contrast is uneven sideways across the paper or banding in different colors appears every 50 mm (2.0 in) or so, try adjusting the feed amount as follows. The results of adjustment are applied to printing in progress, enabling you to check the results immediately. However, note that because printing is paused, colors may be slightly different.

1. Press the **Online** button to pause printing.

2. Press the **Menu** button to display **Menu Durng Prtng**.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Fine Band Adj.**, and then press the **OK** button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to change the value, and then press the **OK** button.

Note

- The supported range is -5 to +5.

5. Press the **Online** button to resume printing.

Note

- The **Fine Band Adj.** value set during printing is also applied to the next print job. However, if you adjust the paper feed amount (automatically or manually), the **Fine Band Adj.** value is reset to 0.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Adjusting the Vacuum Strength

When printing on heavyweight paper or paper that curls or wrinkles easily, if the printing rubs or the edge of paper is wrinkled from rubbing, results may be improved by adjusting the strength of vacuum against paper on the Platen.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **VacuumStrngth**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the level of suction against paper on the Platen, and then press the **OK** button.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Adjusting the Measurement Scale for Better Accuracy

To adjust the measurement scale and ensure accuracy (so that lines in CAD drawings are printed at exactly the right length, for example), specify the amount of paper stretching or shrinkage when adjusting the feed amount.

Note

- If printed images are affected by banding in different colors, adjust the amount that paper is fed. (→P.658)

Important

- Use paper of the same type and size for adjustment as you will use for printing.
- To apply the results of adjusting the measurement scale for better accuracy in printing, you must first set **Feed Priority** to **Print Length**. Note that if you select **Automatic**, the results of adjustment will only be applied in printing if you set **Print Priority** in the printer driver to **Line Drawing/Text**. (→P.243)
  Follow these steps to change the **Feed Priority** setting.
  1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

  2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the ► button.
  3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the ► button.
  4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Feed Priority**, and then press the ► button.
  5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print Length** or **Automatic**, and then press the **OK** button.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

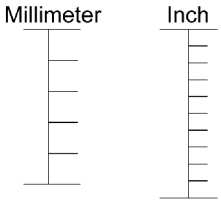
Follow these steps to adjust the scale for better accuracy.

1. When using sheets, load one unused sheet A4/Letter-sized or larger.
   When using a roll, load a roll 10 inches (254 mm) or wider.
   - Setting the Roll on the Roll Holder (→P.179)
   - Loading the Roll in the Printer (→P.182)
   - Loading the Sheet in the Printer (→P.212)

   Note
   - When loading paper, specify the correct paper type. When the paper type is not specified, the printing quality may be affected without the correct adjustment of the feeding.
   - We recommend using the type of paper you use most often for feed amount adjustment.

2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adjust Length**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
   A test pattern is printed for adjustment based on the amount of paper stretching or shrinkage.
   The scale bar shows “Millimeter” in 50 mm units and “Inch” in 1 inch units.



6. Measure the length of the adjustment pattern. Calculate the difference between the measured length and actual length. Enter it as a percentage and press the **OK** button.
   You can adjust the value in 0.02% increments. Press ▲ to increase the value and ▼ to decrease it.
   If the scale is printed shorter than actual size, set the value toward the positive side; if it is printed longer, set the value toward the negative side.

   Note
   - You can also specify the adjustment value by selecting **Paper Details** → **Adjust. Setting**.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Color adjustment

Using Color Calibration to Adjust Colors

Color calibration is a feature that compensates for changes in color from individual variation among Printhead or from the printing environment, ensuring better color consistency.
We recommend using color calibration in the following situations.

- After initial installation
- After Printhead replacement
- If colors seem different from before (however, make sure you are printing under the same conditions and in the same printing environment)
- When consistent color is desired from multiple printers (in this case, also use the same version of firmware and printer driver and the same settings.)

When you execute color calibration, a test pattern is printed and an adjustment value is automatically set based on the results of printing.

Important

- Before executing color calibration, you must prepare one of the following types of paper. Note that various environmental conditions are recommended for various types of paper. Use the printer under the recommended environmental conditions for the paper to be used. For details on recommended environmental conditions for various paper, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.169)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Paper Compatible With Color Calibration	Japan	Europe	Americas
HW Coated	Compatible	Compatible	Compatible
Premium MatteP	Compatible	Compatible	Compatible
Glossy Photo	Compatible	Compatible	Compatible
FineArt Photo	Compatible	Compatible	Compatible
FneArt HW Photo	Compatible	Compatible	Compatible
HW GlossyPhoto2	Compatible	Compatible	Compatible
HW SemiGlPhoto2	Compatible	Compatible	Compatible
Poster Semi-Gl	Compatible	Compatible	Compatible
SatinPhoto 190	-	Compatible	Compatible
Proofing Paper	Compatible	Compatible	Compatible
GlossyPhoto 190	-	Compatible	Compatible
GlossyPhoto 240	-	Compatible	Compatible
SatinPhoto 240	-	Compatible	Compatible
Comm Proofing	-	Compatible	Compatible
RC Proofing 210	-	Compatible	Compatible
Opaque Paper	-	Compatible	-
Art Extr Smooth	-	Compatible	-

- Optimal adjustment values from color calibration are also applied for paper other than the type you use to execute color calibration when printing on that other type of paper.
- In the printer driver or in the **MAIN MENU** of the Control Panel, you can specify whether to apply the adjustment value from color calibration when printing. The printer driver settings are given priority.
  For menu details, see “Main Menu Settings”. (→P.49)
  For information on printer driver settings, refer to the following topics.
  - Printer Driver Settings (Windows) (→P.507)
  - Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X) (→P.558)
  - Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS 9) (→P.584)
- Before color calibration, ensure the printer is not exposed to direct sunlight or other strong sources of light.
- If you reinstall the printer driver and change the region selection of the Media Configuration Tool, region-specific paper information originally registered on the printer before installation will be deleted. If the information of paper you used for color calibration is deleted, such color calibration can no longer be applied to any type of paper. To apply the results of color calibration, perform color calibration again using paper supported in the newly selected region and compatible with color calibration. See the Media Configuration Tool Guide (Windows) or Media Configuration Tool Guide (Macintosh)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

- Default settings will be restored if you select **MAIN MENU** > **System Setup** > **Reset PaprSetngs** > **Yes**. Because information added or updated using the Media Configuration Tool is also deleted, if paper of which information was added using the Media Configuration Tool was used for color calibration and is now deleted, such color calibration can no longer be applied to any type of paper. To apply the results of color calibration, perform color calibration again using a paper included originally in the default settings that is compatible with color calibration. See the Media Configuration Tool Guide (Windows) or Media Configuration Tool Guide (Macintosh).

Note

- We recommend using only one type of paper for color calibration. Using the same type of paper for color calibration can improve color consistency.
- For better color consistency, we recommend performing color calibration under the same conditions of temperature and humidity each time.
- For further adjustment of the color of documents as printed applying color calibration, adjust the color in the printer driver. (→P.254)
- You can check when color calibration was executed and what paper was used from **Status Print**, imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (in Windows) or imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (on a Macintosh computer) in the **MAIN MENU** on the Control Panel.
  For menu details, see “Main Menu Settings”. (→P.49)
  For details on imagePROGRAF Status Monitor, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help.
  For details on imagePROGRAF Printmonitor, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Follow these steps to execute color calibration.

1. Load paper compatible with color calibration.
   When using sheets, load paper A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.5×11 in) vertical, or larger. One sheet is required.
   When using a roll, load a roll 10 inches (254 mm) or wider.
   - Loading and Printing on Rolls (→P.142)
   - Loading and Printing on Sheets (→P.146)
2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Calibration**, and then press ►.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Auto Adjust**, and then press the ► button.
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
   After the printer measures environmental conditions and checks the paper, a test pattern for color calibration is printed. An adjustment value based on the results of printing is set automatically.
   After adjustment is complete, the printer goes online or offline automatically.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing in Ideal Colors for Light in the Viewing Environment

You can print in the colors that look best when viewed under the light where the printed image will be displayed. There are two ways to adjust the color tone for the ambient light, as follows.

By selecting color tones on Charts before printing

On the printed **Chart**, note the number of the set of colors with the desired color tone and enter this number in the printer driver before printing.

Important

- This function requires that the **Light Source Check Tool** be installed.
- You can install the **Light Source Check Tool** from the User Software CD-ROM.
- This function is only supported in Windows.

For instructions on selecting color tones on **Charts** before printing, refer to the following topic:

- By selecting color tones on Charts before printing (Windows) (→P.669)

Printing in Colors Matching the Measured Ambient Light

Measure the light level in the viewing environment and enter the results in the printer driver before printing.

Important

- This function requires the Eye-One spectrophotometer. The Light Source Measure Tool must also be installed.
- You can install the Light Source Measure Tool from the User Software CD-ROM.
- For a list of supported Eye-One devices, refer to the manual provided with the Light Source Measure Tool.
- This function is only supported in Windows.

For instructions on measuring light levels before printing, refer to the following topic:

- Printing in Colors Matching the Measured Ambient Light (→P.673)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

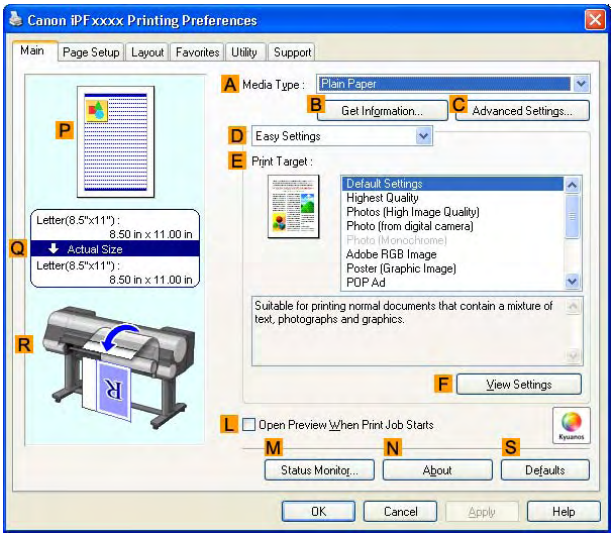
By selecting color tones on Charts before printing (Windows)

Print **Charts**, note the number of the chart with your desired color tone, and enter this number in the printer driver before printing.

Important

- This function requires that the **Light Source Check Tool** be installed.
- You can install the **Light Source Check Tool** from the User Software CD-ROM.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.539)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



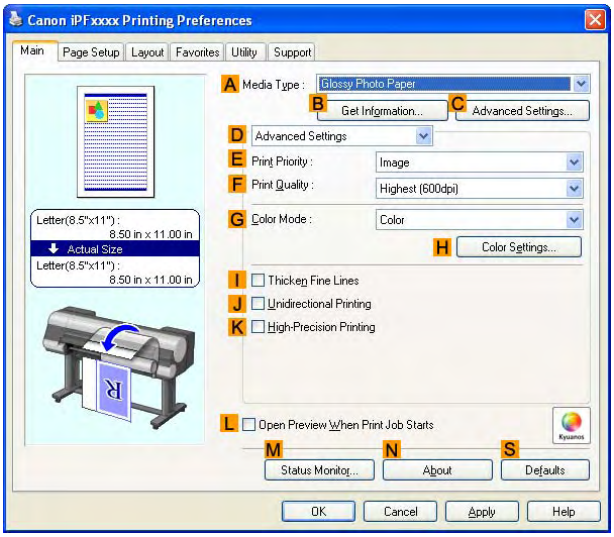
4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded (for example, Glossy Photo Paper).

Important

- **Ambient Light Matching Mode (Kyuanos)** may not be available, depending on the type of paper used. For details, see “Types of Paper”. (→P.169)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

5. Click D **Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.

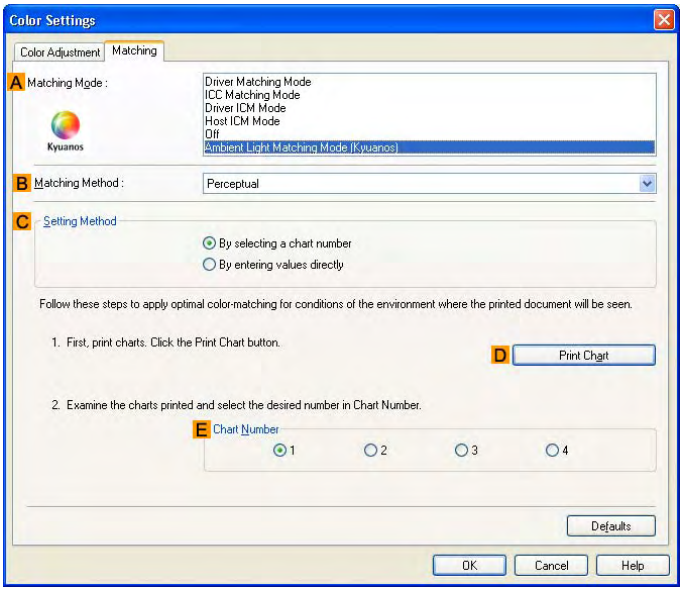


6. In F **Print Quality**, click **Highest** or **High**.

Important

- Ambient Light Matching mode is only available when the F **Print Quality** is set to **Highest** or **High**.

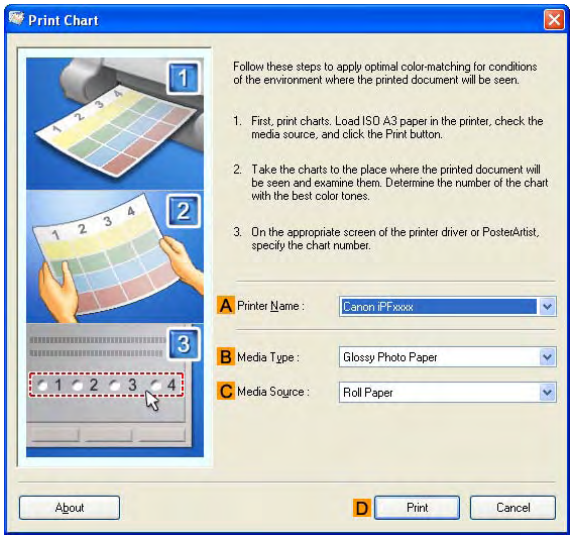
7. Click **Color** in the G **Color Mode** list.
8. Click H **Color Settings** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.
9. Click the **Matching** tab to display the **Matching** sheet.
10. Click **Ambient Light Matching Mode (Kyuanos)** in the A **Matching Mode** list.



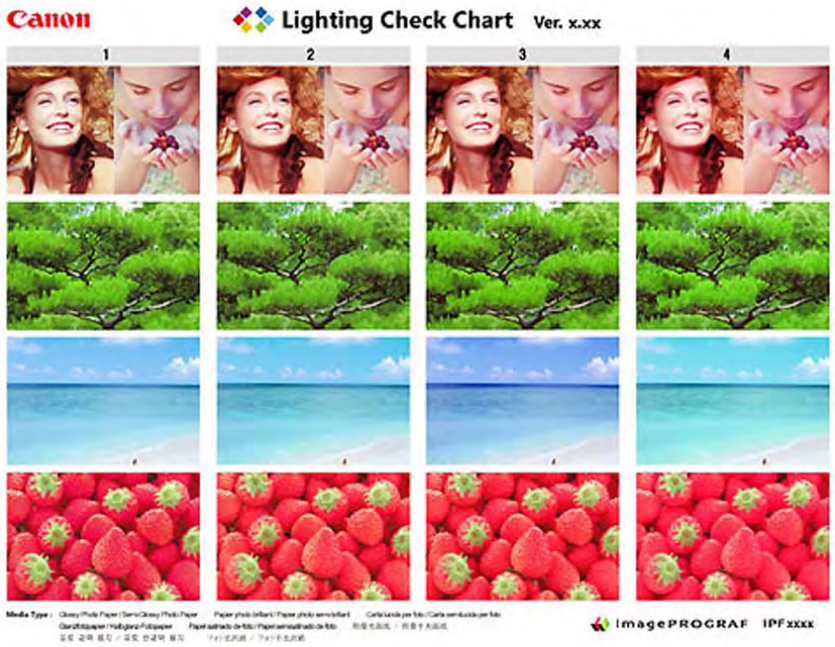
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

11. Confirm that **By selecting a chart number** is selected in C **Setting Method**.
If it is not selected already, select it.

12. Click D **Print Chart**.
Light Source Check Tool now starts up.


Print Chart
Follow these steps to apply optimal color-matching for conditions of the environment where the printed document will be seen.
1. First, print charts. Load ISO A3 paper in the printer, check the media source, and click the Print button.
2. Take the charts to the place where the printed document will be seen and examine them. Determine the number of the chart with the best color tones.
3. On the appropriate screen of the printer driver or PosterArtist, specify the chart number.
A Printer Name :
Canon iPFxxxx
B Media Type :
Glossy Photo Paper
C Media Source :
Roll Paper
About
D
Print
Cancel

13. Check the settings and click **Print**.
The **Chart** is printed.



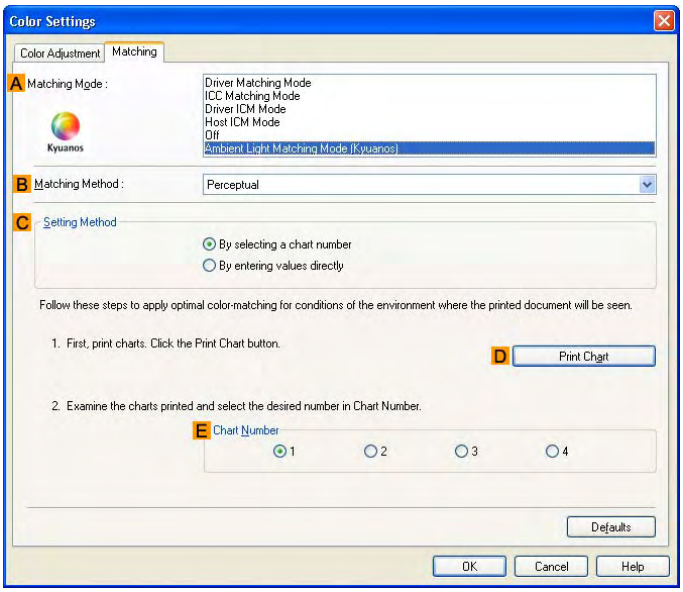
14. In the viewing environment, determine the number of the set of images on the **Chart** in which all four vertical images have the best overall color tone.

Note

- Choose the number of the set of images in which the people, the blue of the sky, and the red of the strawberries look the most natural overall.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

15. After confirming that **Ambient Light Matching Mode (Kyuanos)** is selected in **A Matching Mode**, select the number for the desired color tone on the chart in **E Chart Number**.



16. Click **OK**.

17. Confirm the print settings and start printing.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing in Colors Matching the Measured Ambient Light

Measure the light level in the viewing environment and enter the results in the printer driver before printing.

Important

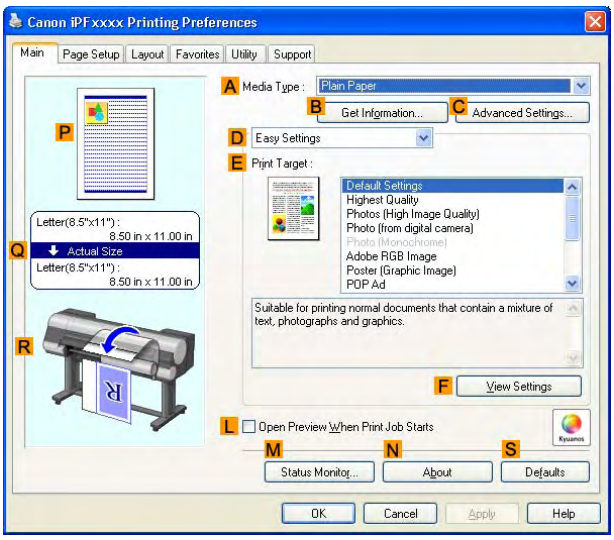
- This function requires the Eye-One spectrophotometer. The Light Source Measure Tool must also be installed.
- You can install the Light Source Measure Tool from the User Software CD-ROM.
- For a list of supported Eye-One devices, refer to the manual provided with the Light Source Measure Tool.

1. Using the Eye-One spectrophotometer and the Light Source Measure Tool, determine the **Lighting Source Type** and **Color Temperature** in the viewing environment.

Note

- For detailed instructions on Eye-One and the Light Source Measure Tool, refer to the provided instructions.

2. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
3. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.539)
4. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



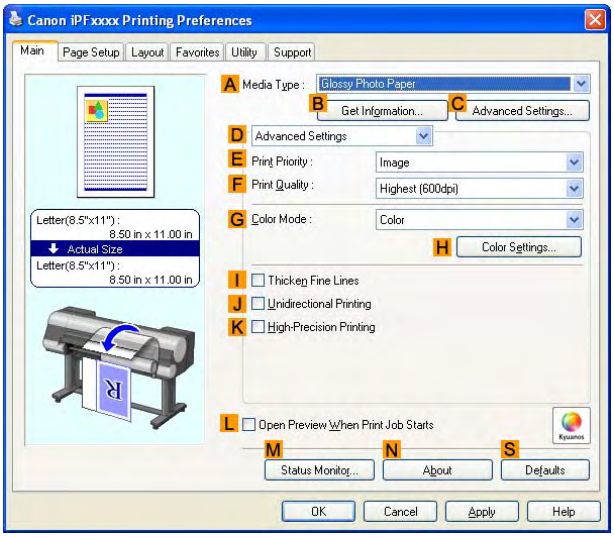
5. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded (for example, Glossy Photo Paper).

Important

- **Ambient Light Matching Mode (Kyuanos)** may not be available, depending on the type of paper used. For details, see “Types of Paper”. (→P.169)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

6. Click D **Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.

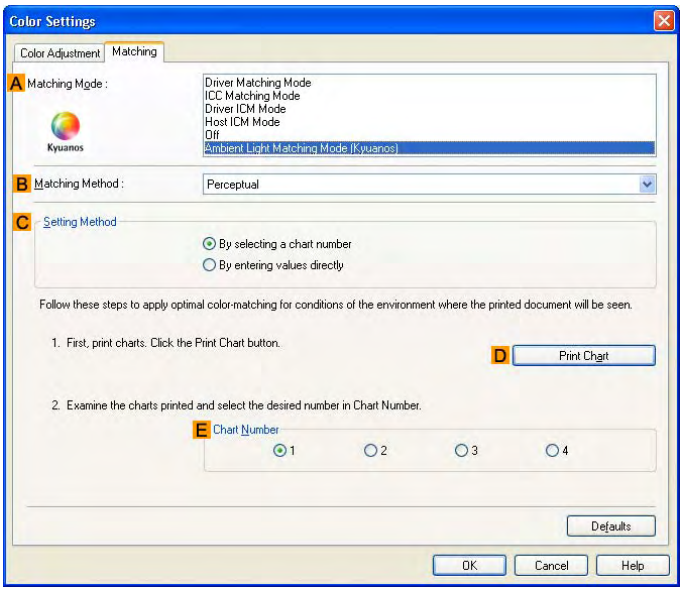


7. In F **Print Quality**, click **Highest** or **High**.

Important

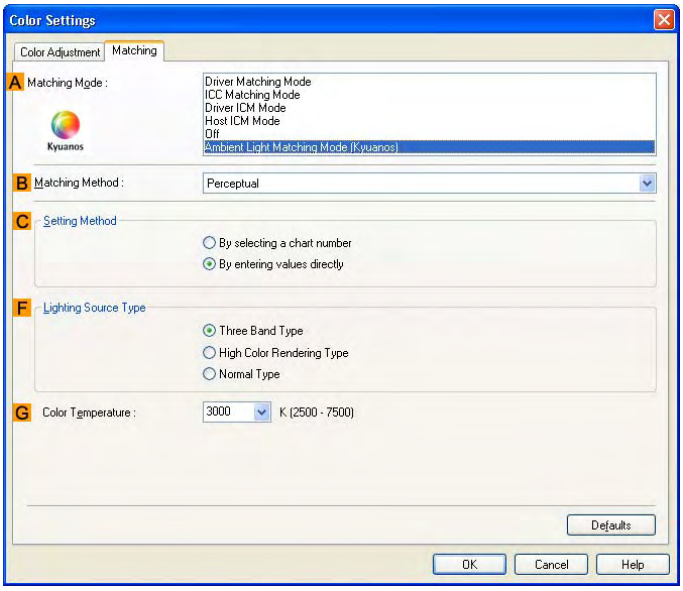
- Ambient Light Matching mode is only available when the F **Print Quality** is set to **Highest** or **High**.

8. Click **Color** in the G **Color Mode** list.
9. Click H **Color Settings** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.
10. Click the **Matching** tab to display the **Matching** sheet.
11. Click **Ambient Light Matching Mode (Kyuanos)** in the A **Matching Mode** list.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

12. Select **By entering values directly** in **C Setting Method**.



13. Select the **F Lighting Source Type** and **G Color Temperature** determined in step 1.

14. Click **OK**.

15. Confirm the print settings and start printing.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

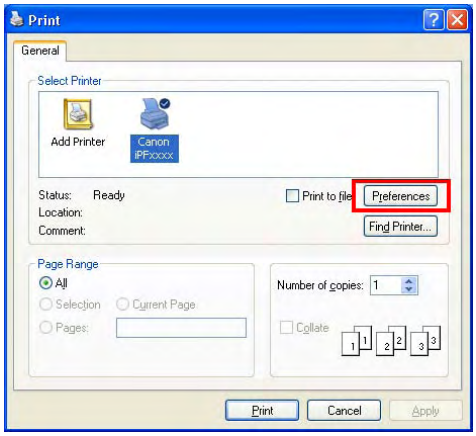
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows)

1. Choose **Print** from the **File** menu to display the dialog box for printing conditions.
2. Select the printer, and then display the printer driver dialog box.

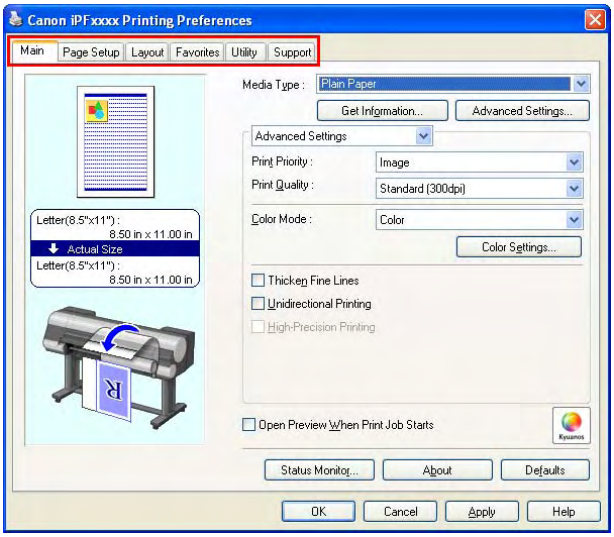
Note

- The dialog box for specifying printing conditions varies depending on the source application. In some cases, when you select the printer, a sheet for configuring the printer driver is added to the dialog box. In the following case, click **Preferences**.

■Example: Print dialog box displayed by the application software



Six sheets of print settings are displayed by the printer driver: **Main**, **Page Setup**, **Layout**, **Favorites**, **Utility**, and **Support**.



Note

- The titles of dialog boxes may vary depending on the application, and sheets other than these six sheets may be displayed.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Important

- If you access the printer driver dialog box from the source application, changes you make to the settings will only apply temporarily to that application. Because these are sizes you specify temporarily in the printer driver, the sizes will not be available after you exit the application.
- You can also access the printer driver dialog box from the Windows system menu.
  see “Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu (Windows)”. (→P.206)

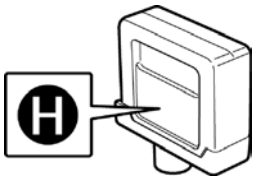
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Ink Tanks

Ink Tanks

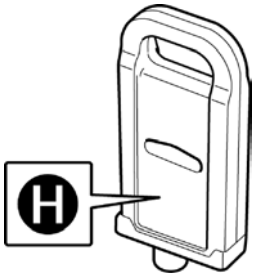
An Ink Tank that can be used in the printer is labeled with a white letter “H” in a black circle on the side. When purchasing an Ink Tank, make sure an “H” is printed on the label, along with the following Ink Tank part numbers.

- 330 ml (11.2 fl oz)
  - MBK Ink Tank PFI-302MBK
  - BK Ink Tank PFI-302BK
  - C Ink Tank PFI-301C
  - M Ink Tank PFI-301M
  - Y Ink Tank PFI-301Y
  - PC Ink Tank PFI-301PC
  - PM Ink Tank PFI-301PM
  - R Ink Tank PFI-301R
  - G Ink Tank PFI-301G
  - B Ink Tank PFI-301B
  - GY Ink Tank PFI-302GY
  - PGY Ink Tank PFI-302PGY



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

- 700 ml (23.7 fl oz)
  - MBK Ink Tank PFI-702MBK
  - BK Ink Tank PFI-702BK
  - C Ink Tank PFI-701C
  - M Ink Tank PFI-701M
  - Y Ink Tank PFI-701Y
  - PC Ink Tank PFI-701PC
  - PM Ink Tank PFI-701PM
  - R Ink Tank PFI-701R
  - G Ink Tank PFI-701G
  - B Ink Tank PFI-701B
  - GY Ink Tank PFI-702GY
  - PGY Ink Tank PFI-702PGY



Note

- For instructions on replacing Ink Tank, see “Replacing Ink Tanks”. (→P.680)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Replacing Ink Tanks

Compatible Ink Tank

The printer supports both 330 ml (11.2 fl oz) and 700 ml (23.7 fl oz) Ink Tanks as replacement tanks.
An Ink Tank for this printer is labeled with a white letter “H” in a black circle on the side. Request an Ink Tank with the same label when you purchase a new Ink Tank. For more information, see “Ink Tanks”. (→P.678)

Precautions when handling an Ink Tank

Take the following precautions when handling an Ink Tank.

Caution

- For safety, keep an Ink Tank out of the reach of children.
- If ink is accidentally ingested, contact a physician immediately.

Important

- Before removing an Ink Tank from the pouch for installation, shake it gently seven or eight times. If you do not shake the Ink Tank, the ink may sediment, which may affect printing quality.
- Do not remove and shake an Ink Tank that has already been installed in the printer. Ink may leak out.
- Avoid dropping the Ink Tank after removing it from the pouch. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains.
- There may be ink around the ink holes of Ink Tank you remove. Handle an Ink Tank carefully during replacement. The ink may stain clothing.
- We recommend using up an Ink Tank in the course of printing within six months after breaking the seal. Using an old Ink Tank may affect the printing quality.
- Do not remove the Ink Tank if the printer is not used for a long period (a month or more). Ink remaining in the printer may become clogged and cause of printing problems.
- Coverage may be uneven if you replace the ink during a print job.

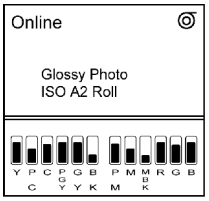
How to Replace the Ink Tank

1. Make sure the printer is ready for Ink Tank replacement. (→P.681)
2. Access the menu for Ink Tank replacement. (→P.681) (Otherwise, open the Ink Tank Cover.)
3. Remove the Ink Tank.
    - 330 ml (11.2 fl oz) Ink Tank (→P.682)
    - 700 ml (23.7 fl oz) Ink Tank (→P.684)
4. Load the new Ink Tank.
    - 330 ml (11.2 fl oz) Ink Tank (→P.686)
    - 700 ml (23.7 fl oz) Ink Tank (→P.689)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Make sure the printer is ready for Ink Tank replacement

You can replace Ink Tank if the Display Screen indicates the printer is **Online** or **Offline**, or if messages advise you to check the amount of ink left or replace the Ink Tank.



If a message prompts you to replace the Ink Tank, press the **OK** button.

Do not remove an Ink Tank during initialization immediately after turning on the printer, or during printhead cleaning.

Note

- Ink Tank replacement is possible even when print jobs are being canceled or if paper is being fed.

Access the menu for Ink Tank replacement

Note

- This step is not necessary if a message prompts you to replace the Ink Tank. Check the message on the Display Screen and press the **OK** button. Next, remove the Ink Tank.

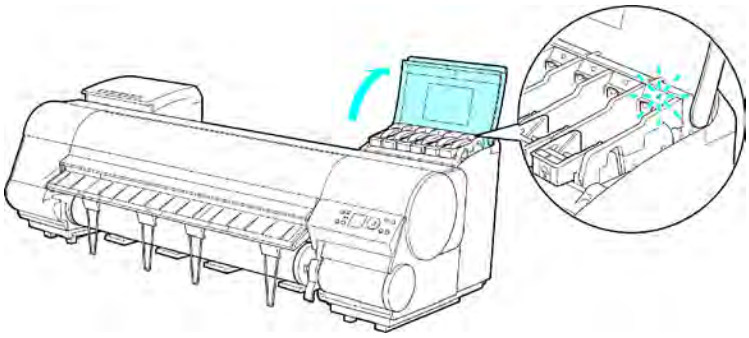
1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Rep. Ink Tank**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
   A message on the Display Screen advises you to open the Ink Tank Cover. Next, remove the Ink Tank.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Remove the Ink Tank (330 ml [11.2 fl oz])

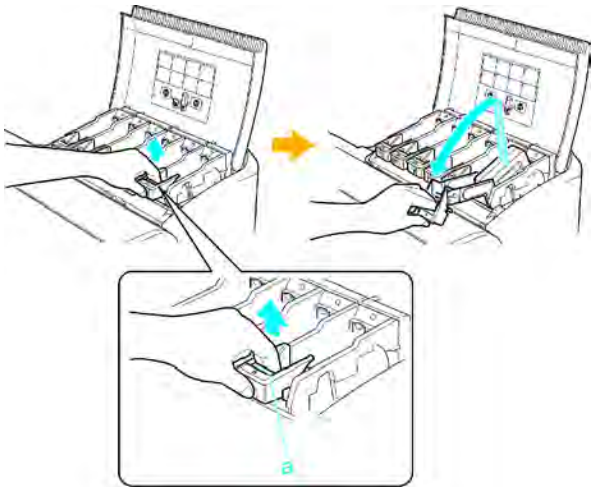
1. Open the Ink Tank Cover of the tank for replacement and check the Ink Lamp.
   The Ink Lamp flashes quickly if there is no ink left.



Caution

- Avoid hitting the printer when replacing an Ink Tank. Handle the printer gently when replacing tanks.

2. Lift the stopper (a) of the Ink Tank Lock Lever of the color for replacement. Lift the Ink Tank Lock Lever until it stops, and then push it down to the front.

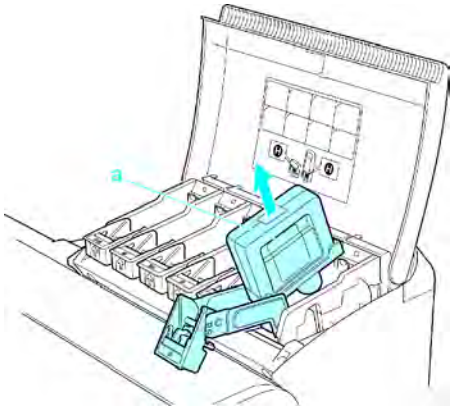


Important

- Push the Ink Tank Lock Lever down until it locks.
- Make sure the Ink Tank Lock Lever does not return to the previous position.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

3. Hold the empty Ink Tank by the grip (a) to remove it, and press the **OK** button.



Note

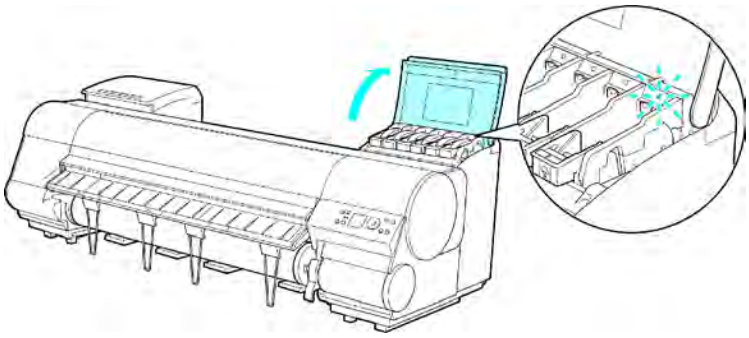
- If there is still some ink left in the Ink Tank you removed, store the ink tank with the ink holes (a) facing up. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains. Put the Ink Tank in a plastic bag and seal it.

- Dispose of used Ink Tanks according to local regulations.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Remove the Ink Tank (700 ml [23.7 fl oz])

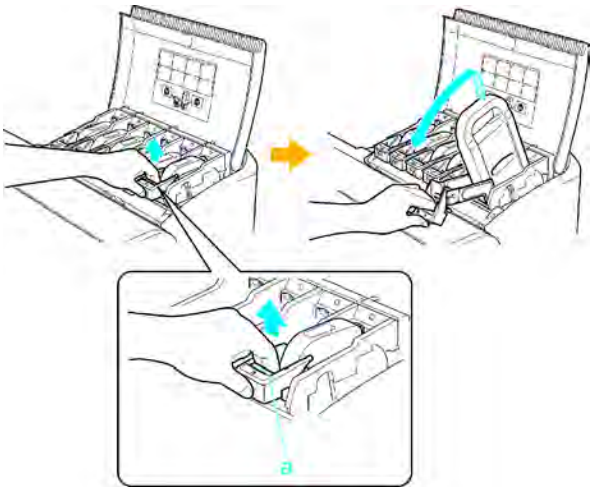
1. Open the Ink Tank Cover of the tank for replacement and check the Ink Lamp.
   The Ink Lamp flashes quickly if there is no ink left.



Caution

- Avoid hitting the printer when replacing an Ink Tank. Handle the printer gently when replacing tanks.

2. Lift the stopper (a) of the Ink Tank Lock Lever of the color for replacement. Lift the Ink Tank Lock Lever until it stops, and then push it down to the front.

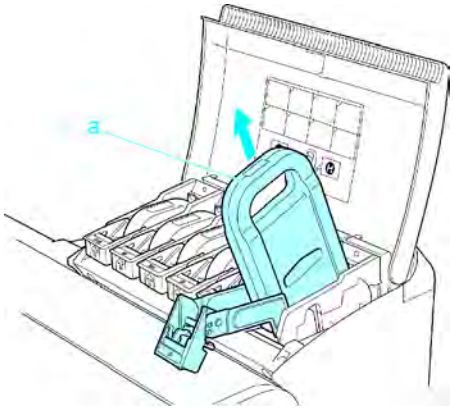


Important

- Push the Ink Tank Lock Lever down until it locks.
- Make sure the Ink Tank Lock Lever does not return to the previous position.

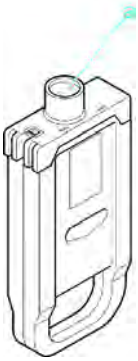
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

3. Hold the empty Ink Tank by the handle (a) to remove it, and press the **OK** button.



Note

- If there is still some ink left in the Ink Tank you removed, store the ink tank in the box with the ink holes (a) facing up. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains.

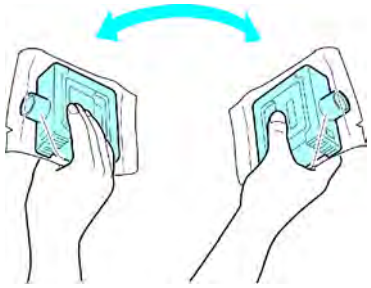


- Dispose of used Ink Tanks according to local regulations.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Install the Ink Tank (330 ml [11.2 fl oz])

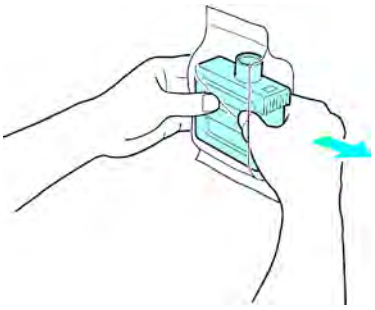
1. Before opening the pouch, tilt the Ink Tank to the left and right shaking gently seven or eight times.



Note

- If you do not shake the Ink Tank, the ink may sediment, which may affect printing quality.

2. Open the pouch and remove the Ink Tank.

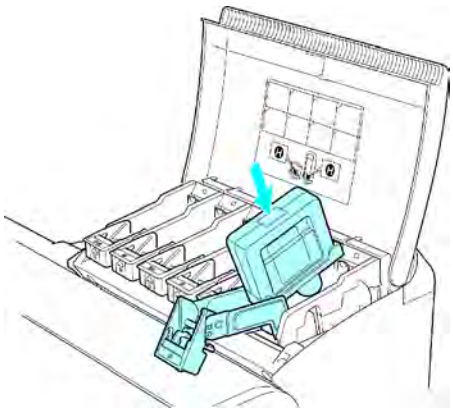


Note

- Never touch the ink holes or metal contacts. This may cause stains, damage the Ink Tank, and affect printing quality.
- Avoid dropping the Ink Tank after removing it from the pouch. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains.
- Do not remove and shake an Ink Tank that has already been installed in the printer. Ink may leak out.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

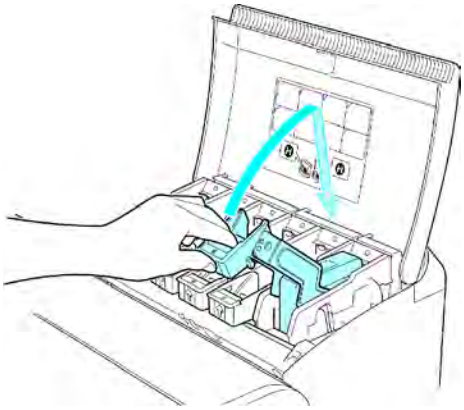
3. Press the **OK** button and insert the Ink Tank into the holder facing as shown in the figure, with the ink holes down.



Important

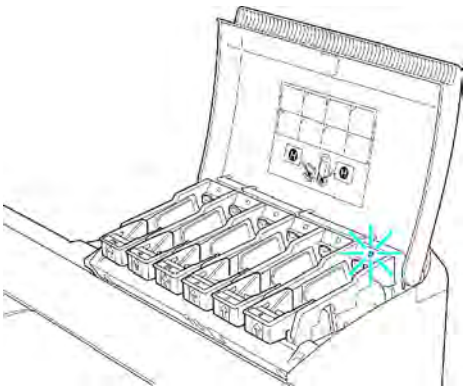
- Ink Tank cannot be loaded in the holder if the color or orientation is wrong.
  If the Ink Tank does not fit in the holder, do not force it into the holder. Make sure the color of the Ink Tank Lock Lever matches the color of the Ink Tank, and check the orientation of the Ink Tank before reloading it.

4. Lift the Ink Tank Lock Lever until it stops, and then push it down until it clicks into place.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

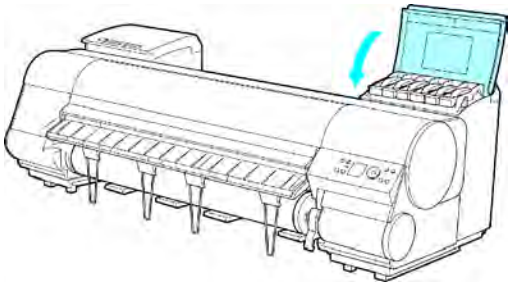
5. Make sure the Ink Lamp is lit in red.



Note

- If the Ink Lamp is not lit in red, reload the ink.
- Ink Lamp flashes when there is little ink left.

6. Close the Ink Tank Cover.



The printer now goes online or offline.

Important

- After Ink Tank replacement, always close the Ink Tank Cover. If the Ink Tank Cover cannot close, some Ink Tank Lock Lever may not be closed completely. Make sure every Ink Tank Lock Lever is fully closed.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Install the Ink Tank (700 ml [23.7 fl oz])

1. Before opening the pouch, hold the new Ink Tank with both hands and tilt it to the left and right as shown shaking gently seven or eight times.

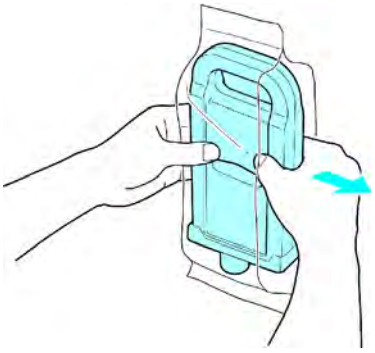
Caution

- The 700 ml (23.7 fl oz) Ink Tank is heavy, so use your whole arm to agitate it instead of just your wrist.

Note

- If you do not shake the Ink Tank, the ink may sediment, which may affect printing quality.

2. Open the pouch and remove the Ink Tank.

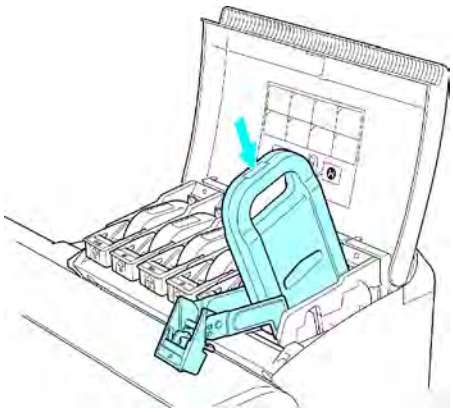


Note

- Never touch the ink holes or metal contacts. This may cause stains, damage the Ink Tank, and affect printing quality.
- Avoid dropping the Ink Tank after removing it from the pouch. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains.
- Do not remove and shake an Ink Tank that has already been installed in the printer. Ink may leak out.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

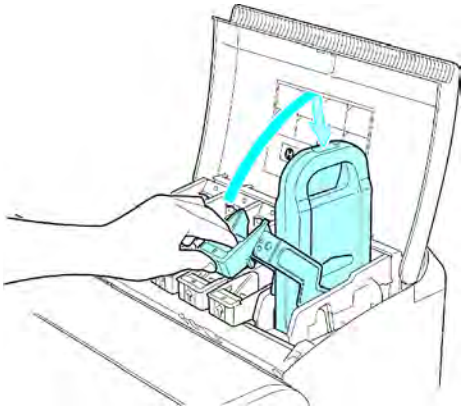
3. Press the **OK** button and insert the Ink Tank into the holder facing as shown in the figure, with the ink holes down.



Important

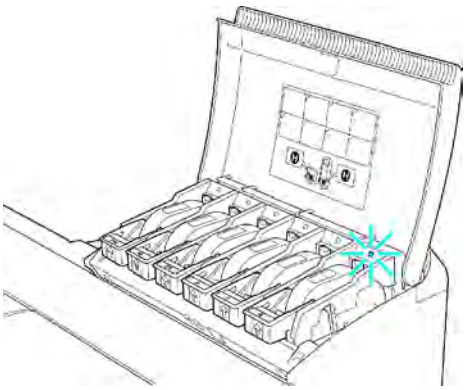
- Ink Tank cannot be loaded in the holder if the color or orientation is wrong.
  If the Ink Tank does not fit in the holder, do not force it into the holder. Make sure the color of the Ink Tank Lock Lever matches the color of the Ink Tank, and check the orientation of the Ink Tank before reloading it.

4. Lift the Ink Tank Lock Lever until it stops, and then push it down until it clicks into place.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

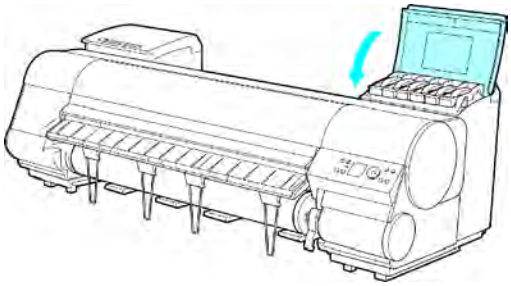
5. Make sure the Ink Lamp is lit in red.



Note

- If the Ink Lamp is not lit in red, reload the ink.
- Ink Lamp flashes when there is little ink left.

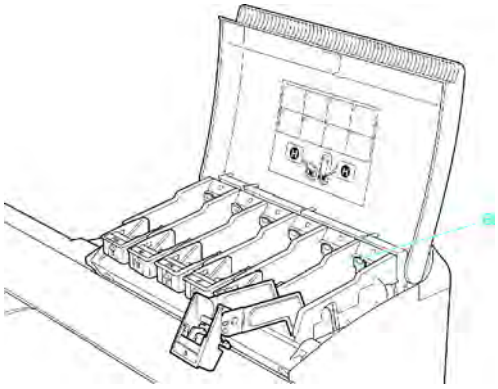
6. Close the Ink Tank Cover.



The printer now goes online or offline.

Important

- After Ink Tank replacement, always close the Ink Tank Cover. If the Ink Tank Cover cannot close, some Ink Tank Lock Lever may not be closed completely. Make sure every Ink Tank Lock Lever is fully closed.
- To close the Ink Tank Cover when no Ink Tank is installed (as when moving the printer), push the release lever (a) as shown while returning the Ink Tank Lock Lever to the original position.

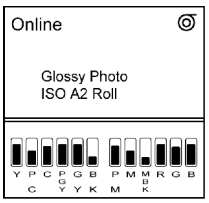


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

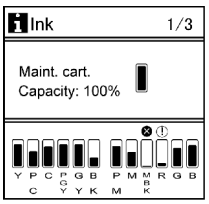
Checking Ink Tank Levels

On the Display Screen, you can check how much ink is left in the Ink Tank.

The Display Screen indicates the remaining ink levels, unless a message is displayed.



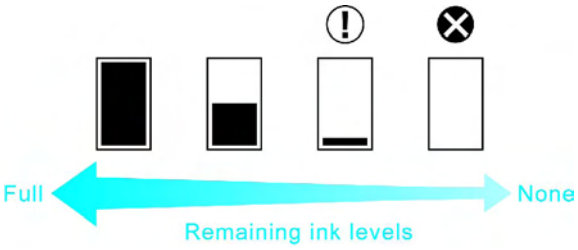
During messages, press the **Information** button to view the ink levels on the Display Screen.



These levels shown on the Display Screen correspond to the inks identified by the Color Label on the bottom of the Display Screen.

These symbols may be displayed above the ink level: “!” if ink is low, “×” if no ink is left, and “?” if you have deactivated ink level detection.

The remaining ink level is indicated as shown below.



If the Display Screen indicates to replace the Ink Tank, replace the Ink Tank. If a message is displayed indicating to check the remaining ink levels, or after tasks that consume a lot of ink such as large-format printing or head cleaning, check the remaining levels and replace Ink Tank as needed. (→P.680)

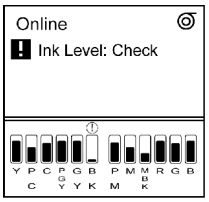
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

When to Replace Ink Tanks

Replace or prepare to replace Ink Tank in the following situations.

If a message for checking the ink is shown on the Display Screen

When there is little ink left, the **Message lamp** is lit and **Ink Level: Check** is shown on the Display Screen. You can continue to print, but prepare to replace the Ink Tank. (→P.692)



If a message for ink replacement is shown on the Display Screen

When the Ink Tank becomes empty, the **Message lamp** flashes, a message regarding Ink Tank replacement is shown on the Display Screen. You can continue to print, but replace the Ink Tank.

When ink runs out, the **Message lamp** flashes, a message regarding Ink Tank replacement is shown on the Display Screen, and printing is disabled. Replace the Ink Tank at this point.

Before print jobs and maintenance that consume a lot of ink

If little ink is left, there may not be enough for large-format printing, head cleaning, and maintenance, which require a lot of ink. In this case, replace or prepare to replace the Ink Tank before maintenance.

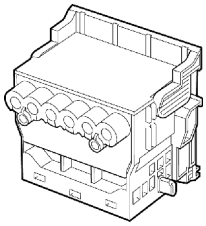
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printheads

Printhead

This is a replacement Printhead for the printer.

- Printhead PF-03



Note

- For instructions on replacing the Printhead, see “Replacing the Printhead”. (→P.697)

Checking the Print Quality

If printing is faint or streaked in different colors, make sure the Printhead nozzles are clear by printing a test pattern to check the nozzles.
For instructions, see “Checking for Nozzle Clogging”. (→P.695)

Improving the Print Quality

If printing is faint or streaked in different colors, make sure the Printhead nozzles are clear by printing a test pattern to check the nozzles. Clean the Printhead if the printed test pattern was faint.
For instructions on cleaning the Printhead, see “Cleaning the Printhead”. (→P.696)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Checking for Nozzle Clogging

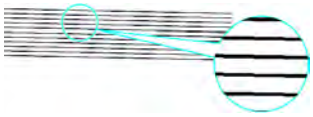
If printing is faint or streaked in different colors, make sure the Printhead nozzles are clear by printing a test pattern to check the nozzles.

Note

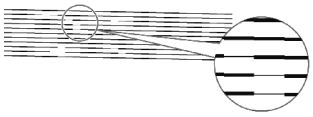
- You can specify a number of pages in the printer's **Noz. Check Freq.** menu for automatic nozzle checking every time you finish printing that quantity. (→P.49)

1. Load unused paper.
   - Setting the Roll on the Roll Holder (→P.179)
   - Loading the Roll in the Printer (→P.182)
   - Loading the Sheet in the Printer (→P.212)
2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Test Print**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Nozzle Check**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
   The printer goes online and prints a test pattern.
6. Check the printing results.
   The Printhead L prints the test pattern for nozzle checking on the top line in each color, and the Printhead R prints the test pattern on the bottom line.
   If the horizontal lines are not faint or incomplete, the nozzles are clear.



   If some sections of the horizontal lines are faint or incomplete, the nozzles for those colors are clogged.



   If horizontal lines are faint or incomplete, follow the steps below and check again for nozzle clogging.
   1. Clean the Printhead. (→P.696)
   2. Print a test pattern to check the nozzles.

Note

- If you repeat these steps several times but the horizontal lines are still faint or incomplete, contact your Canon dealer.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Cleaning the Printhead

Cleaning the Printhead may help clear nozzles that are clogged.

Note

- You can specify a number of pages in the printer's **Noz. Check Freq.** menu for automatic nozzle checking and cleaning every time you finish printing that quantity. (→P.49)
- You can start **Head Cleaning A** by holding down the **Information** button for three seconds or more.

Cleaning the Printhead

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Head Cleaning**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of cleaning, and then press the **OK** button.
   - **Head Cleaning A**

     Use **Head Cleaning A** if printing is faint or contains foreign substances. This method of cleaning consumes the least amount of ink. It takes about two minutes to complete.
   - **Head Cleaning B**

     Use **Head Cleaning B** if no ink comes out of the printhead, or if **Head Cleaning A** does not solve the problem. It takes about three minutes to complete.

   The printhead is cleaned, and the printer goes online.
4. Print a test pattern to check the nozzles, and determine whether cleaning has cleared the nozzles. (→P.695)

Note

- If printing does not improve after **Head Cleaning A**, try **Head Cleaning B**. If this does not solve the problem, repeat **Head Cleaning B** at least two times. If this still does not improve printing, the Printhead may have reached the end of its useful life. Contact your Canon dealer.

Caution

- Do not remove the Maintenance Cartridge or Ink Tanks during cleaning.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Replacing the Printhead

When to replace the Printhead

This printer uses two Printheads.
Replace one or both Printheads in the following situations.

- If the printing quality does not improve even after two cycles of **Head Cleaning B** from the printer menu
  Replace both Printheads in the following situations.
- If the Display Screen indicates **Open top cover and replace the left printhead.**
  Replace the left Printhead.
- If the Display Screen indicates **Open top cover and replace the right printhead.**
  Replace the right Printhead.
- If your Canon dealer has advised you to replace the Printhead
  Replace the Printhead that your dealer advised you to replace.

Compatible Printhead

For information on compatible Printhead, see “Printhead”. (→P.694)

Precautions when handling the Printhead

Take the following precautions when handling the Printhead.

Caution

- For safety, keep the Printhead out of the reach of children.
- If ink is accidentally ingested, contact a physician immediately.
- Do not touch the Printhead immediately after printing. The Printhead becomes extremely hot, and there is a risk of burns.

Important

- Avoid dropping or shaking the Printhead. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains.
- There may be ink around the nozzles of the Printhead you remove. Handle the Printhead carefully during replacement. The ink may stain clothing.
- Do not open the Printhead pouch until immediately before installation. After removing the Printhead from the pouch, install it right away. If the Printhead is not installed after the pouch is opened, the nozzles may dry out, which may affect printing quality.
- If you need to store a Printhead temporarily before installation, do not keep the nozzles and metal contacts (→P.702) facing down. If the nozzles or metal contacts are damaged, it may affect the printing quality.
- Never attempt to take apart or modify a Printhead. This may damage the printer.
- Never touch the Printhead nozzles or metal contacts. This may cause printing problems.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Replacing the Printhead

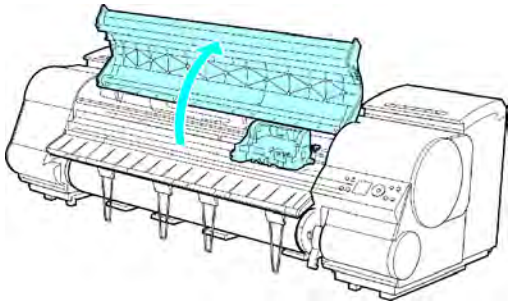
Follow the steps below to replace the Printhead. Failure to follow this procedure may cause ink to leak from the Printhead, resulting in stains.
Only remove or install the Printhead after selecting **Replace P.head** in the menu, and follow the instructions on the panel. Removing or installing the Printhead without following the correct procedure may damage the Printhead.

Note

- Prepare a new Ink Tank when ink levels are low.
- Your hands may become dirty during Printhead replacement. During replacement, wear the gloves provided with the new Printhead.
- Choose **On** in **Auto Print** to have the printer automatically adjust the Printhead alignment after Printhead replacement. (→P.49)

1. If the roll is not ejected because of the cutting method selected, cut it manually and remove it. (→P.487)
2. Clean inside the Top Cover. (→P.720)
3. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

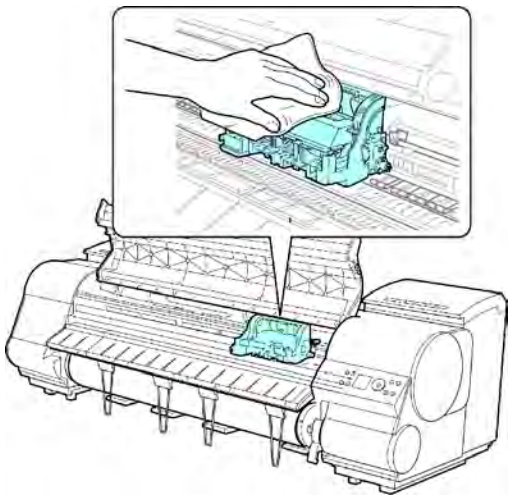
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Maintenance**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Replace P.head**, and then press the ► button.
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
   Select **Printhead L** when replacing Printhead L and **Printhead R** when replacing Printhead R. When replacing both, select **L & R Printheads**. Be sure to specify the correct Printhead.
   Ink is now absorbed.
   After about three minutes, a message is shown on the Display Screen instructing you to open the Top Cover.
7. Open the Top Cover.



Instructions are now shown on the Display Screen regarding Printhead replacement.

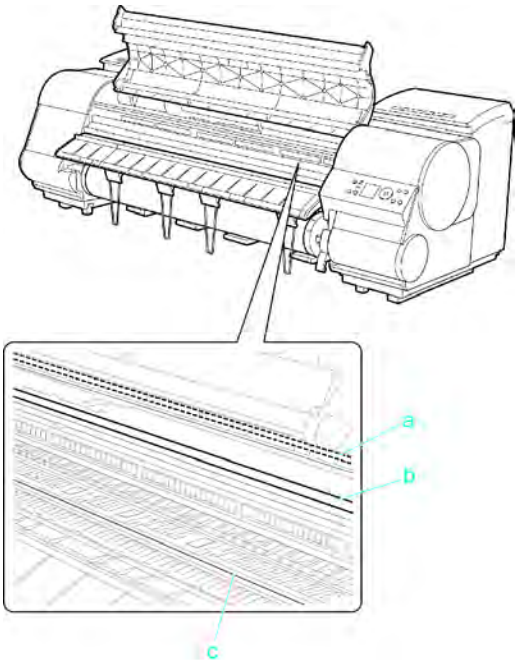
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

8. If the Carriage Cover is dirty, use a damp cloth that you have wrung out completely to wipe it clean.



Important

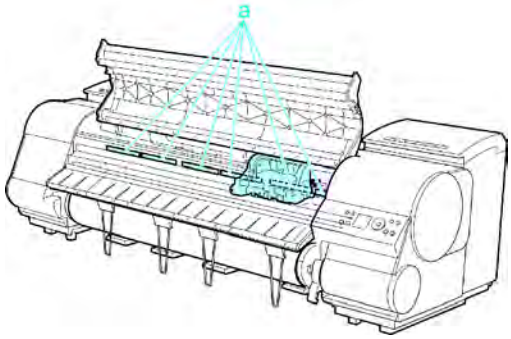
- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a), Carriage Shaft (b), or Fixed Blade (c).



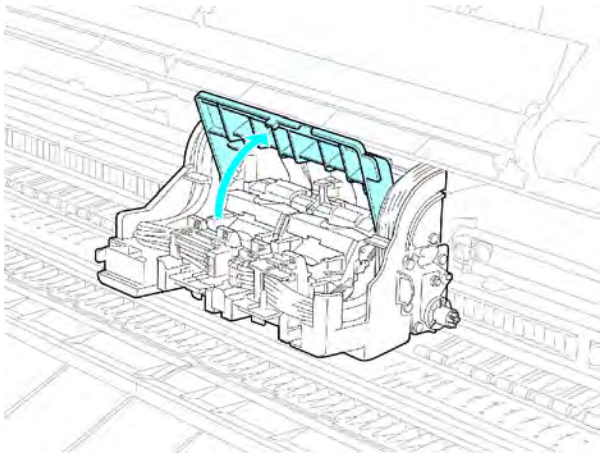
- Never touch the metal contacts of the Carriage. This may damage the printer.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

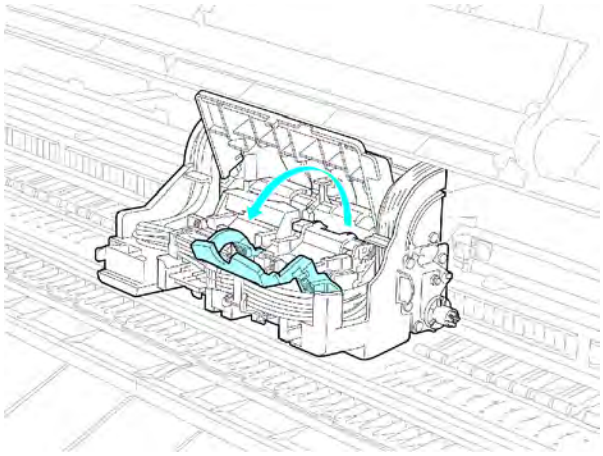
9. If the ventilation duct (a) is dirty, use a damp cloth that you have wrung out completely to wipe it clean.
Move the Carriage out of the way manually if Carriage is concealing the ventilation duct, and then clean the duct.



10. Lift the Carriage Cover to open it fully.

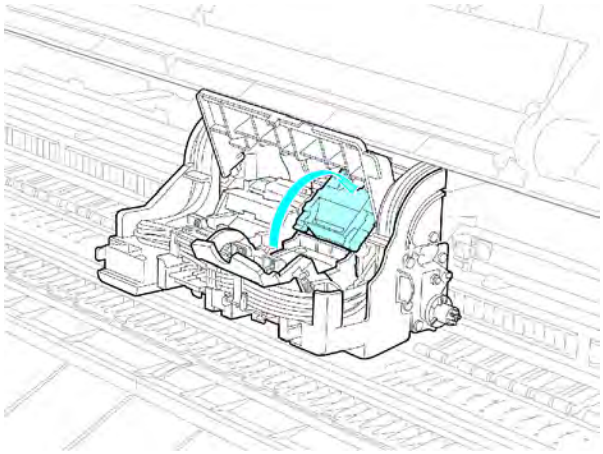


11. Pull the Printhead Fixer Lever forward all the way to open it completely.

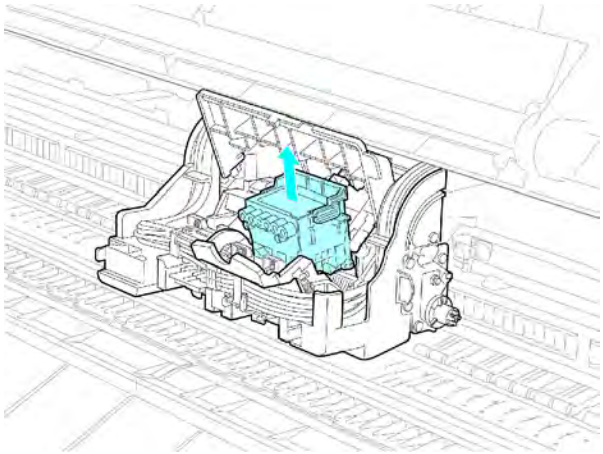


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

12. Lift the Printhead Fixer Cover to open it fully.



13. Remove the used Printhead.



Caution

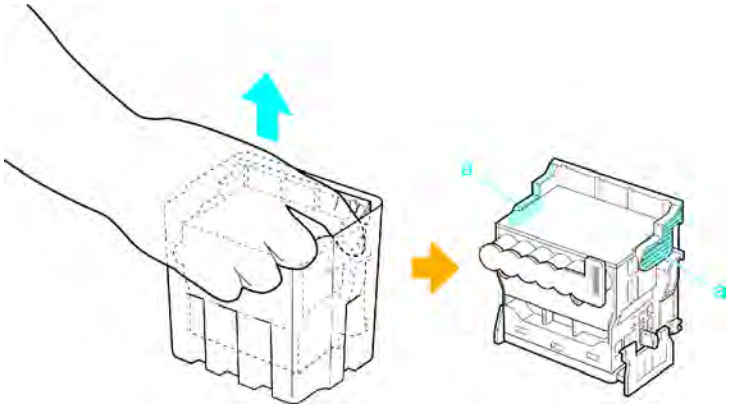
- When replacing the Printhead immediately after printing, wait a few minutes before replacing it. The metal parts of the Printhead become hot during printing, and there is a risk of burns from touching these parts.

Note

- Dispose of the used Printhead according to local regulations.

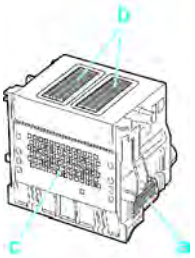
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

14. Holding the new Printhead by the grips (a), remove it from the case.

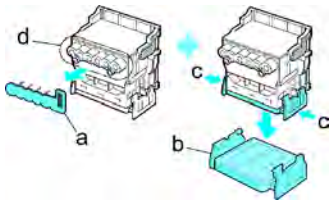


Important

- When handling the Printhead, always hold it by the grips (a). Never touch the nozzles (b) or metal contacts (c). This may damage the Printhead and affect printing quality.



15. While firmly holding the Printhead you have removed, use your other hand to remove the orange Safety Cap 1 (a). Squeeze the grips (c) of Safety Cap 2 (b) and pull it down to remove it.

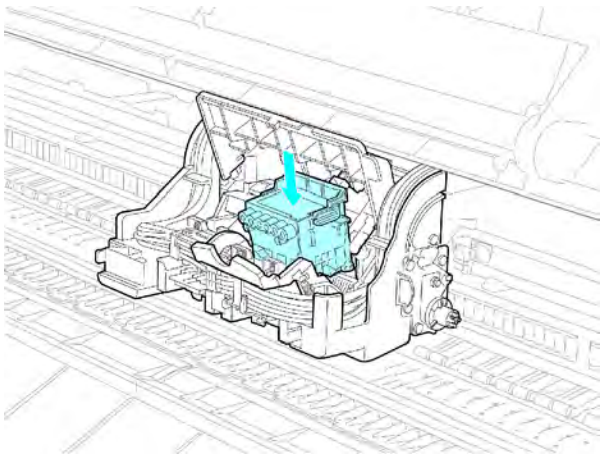


Important

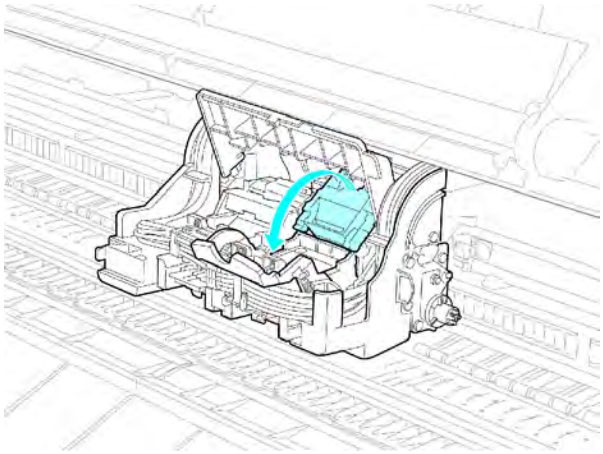
- Safety Cap 1 (a) may be coated with ink to protect the Printhead. Be careful not to touch areas other than the grips.
- Never touch the ink supply section (d). This may cause printing problems.
- The inside surface of Safety Cap 2 (b) is coated with ink to protect the nozzles. Handle it carefully to avoid touching the nozzles or spilling ink. Spilled ink may cause stains. The Printhead contains ink to protect the nozzles. If this ink is accidentally spilled, it may stain the printer or surrounding area. We recommend removing the Safety Cap 2 (b) on top of the Printhead package or safely out of the way. Wipe off any spilled ink with a dry cloth. This ink is non-toxic.
- Do not reattach the Safety Cap or protective material. Dispose of these materials according to local regulations.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

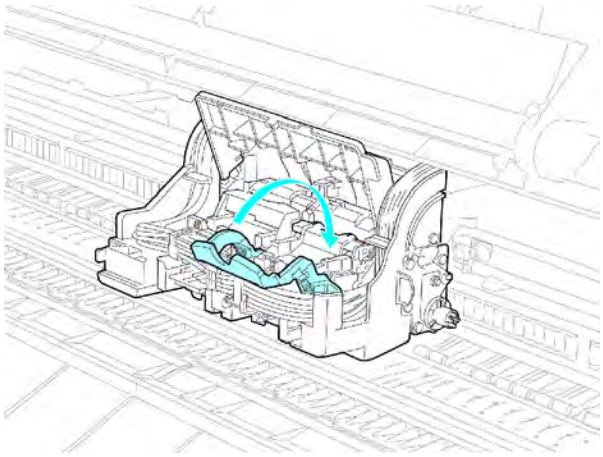
16. With the nozzles facing down and the metal contacts toward the back, tilt the Printhead slightly forward as you insert it in the Carriage. Carefully push the printhead firmly into the Carriage, ensuring that the nozzles and metal contacts do not touch the carriage.



17. Pull the Printhead Fixer Cover down toward the front to lock the Printhead in place.

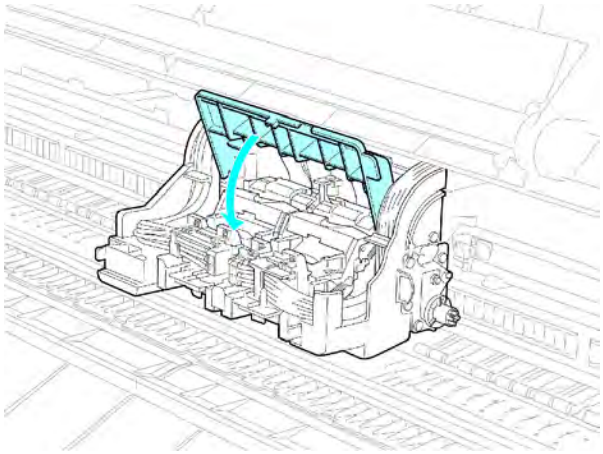


18. Push the Printhead Fixer Lever toward the back of the printer until it clicks.

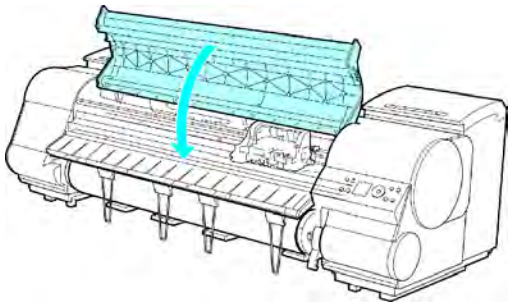


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

19. Push the Carriage Cover down toward the front.



20. Close the Top Cover.



Ink now fills the system.

After about ten minutes, the Printhead will be automatically aligned, and the printer will go online.

If no paper has been loaded, a message is displayed requesting you to load paper.

Important

- Never remove an Ink Tank or Maintenance Cartridge while the system is filling with ink.
- If **Auto Print** is **Off** in the printer menu, the Printhead will not be aligned. In this case, adjust the alignment after Printhead replacement by accessing **Advanced Adj.** in **Auto Head Adj.** (→P.650)

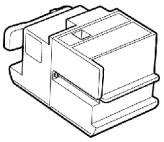
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Cutter Unit

Cutter Unit

A reaplacement Cutter Unit.

- Cutter Unit CT-06



Note

- For instructions on replacing the Cutter Unit, see “Replacing the Cutter Unit”. (→P.705)

Replacing the Cutter Unit

Note

- For information on compatible Cutter Unit, see “Cutter Unit”. (→P.705)

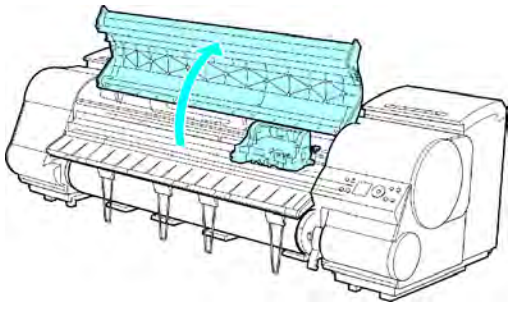
1. Turn the printer on. (→P.19)
2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Maintenance**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Change Cutter**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
   After the Carriage is centered, a message is shown on the Display Screen instructing you to open the Top Cover.

Note

- If you do not respond within two minutes, cutter replacement is canceled and the printer goes online automatically. In this case, repeat this procedure.

6. Open the Top Cover.

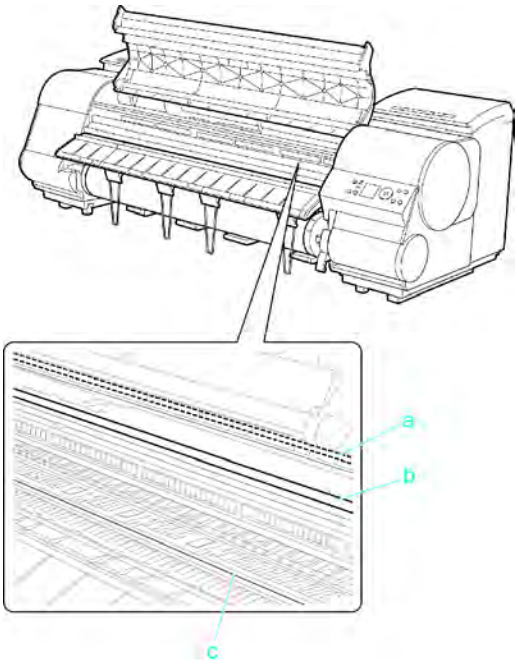


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

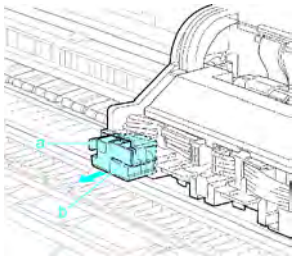
7. If the Cutter Unit or Carriage Cover is dirty, use a damp cloth that you have wrung out completely to wipe it clean.

Important

- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a), Carriage Shaft (b), or Fixed Blade (c).



8. Holding the Cutter Unit by the Lock Lever (a) and grip (b), remove it from the Carriage.



Important

- Never touch any part of the Cutter Unit except the Lock Lever (a) and grip (b). This poses a risk of injury and may stain your hands. Also, it may damage the printer.

Caution

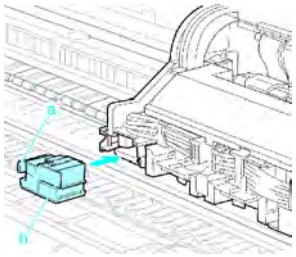
- Dispose of the used Cutter Unit in accordance with local regulations.
- Do not disassemble the Cutter Unit. Touching the blade may cause injury.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

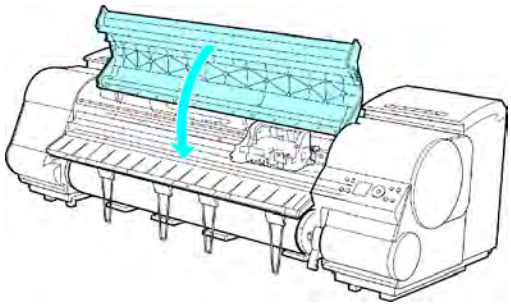
9. Holding the new Cutter Unit by the Lock Lever (a) and grip (b), push it onto the Carriage until it clicks into place.

Important

- After installing the Cutter Unit, hold it only by the grip (b) and pull the Cutter Unit forward to make sure it does not come off. If the Cutter Unit comes off, it may damage the printer.



10. Close the Top Cover.



The Carriage moves into position and a confirmation message is displayed regarding resetting the cut counter.

If you have replaced the cutter unit, reset the counter.

11. Press the **OK** button.

The printer now goes online.

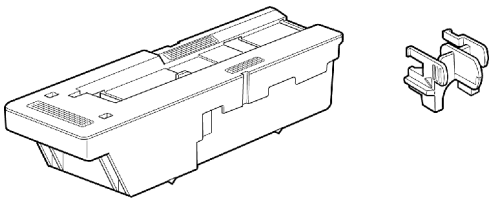
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Maintenance Cartridge

Maintenance Cartridge

A replacement Maintenance Cartridge. Maintenance Cartridge is provided with a Shaft Cleaner.

- Maintenance Cartridge MC-08



Note

- For instructions on replacing the Maintenance Cartridge, see “Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge”. (→P.708)

Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge

Compatible Maintenance Cartridge

For information on the compatible Maintenance Cartridge, see “Maintenance Cartridge”. (→P.708)

Precautions when handling the Maintenance Cartridge

Take the following precautions when handling the Maintenance Cartridge.

Caution

- For safety, keep the Maintenance Cartridge out of the reach of children.
- If ink is accidentally ingested, contact a physician immediately.

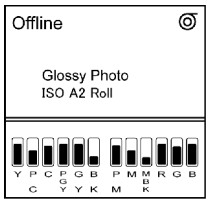
Important

- Do not remove the Maintenance Cartridge except to replace it.
- To prevent ink from leaking from a used Maintenance Cartridge, avoid dropping the cartridge or storing it at an angle. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains.
- Ink adheres to the top of the Maintenance Cartridge after it has been used. Handle the Maintenance Cartridge carefully during replacement. The ink may stain clothing.
- Do not install a used Maintenance Cartridge in another printer.

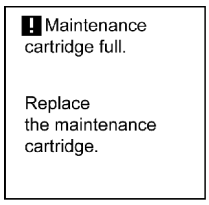
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge

1. Make sure no print jobs are in progress.
   You can replace the Maintenance Cartridge if the Display Screen indicates the printer is **Offline** or if messages advise you to replace the Maintenance Cartridge.

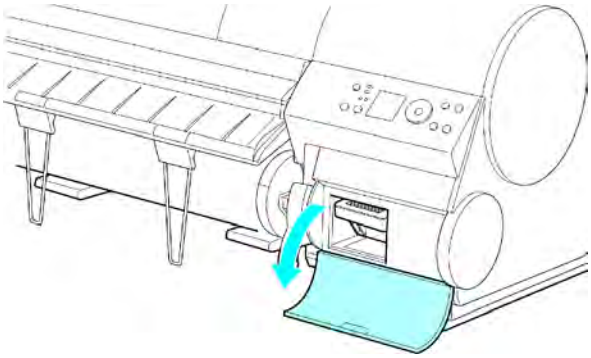


   If a message prompts you to replace the Maintenance Cartridge, press the **OK** button. Steps 2-5 are unnecessary in this case. Go to step 6 and remove the Maintenance Cartridge.



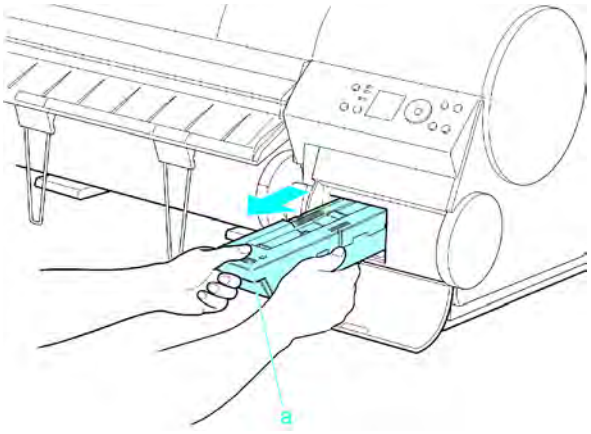
   Do not replace the Maintenance Cartridge during initialization immediately after turning on the printer, during Printhead cleaning, or while ink is being filled.
   If you pause printing to replace the Maintenance Cartridge, it may cause the printed images to be blurry.
2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Maintenance**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Repl. maint cart**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
   A message on the Display Screen advises you to open the Maintenance Cartridge Cover.
6. At this point, open the Maintenance Cartridge Cover.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

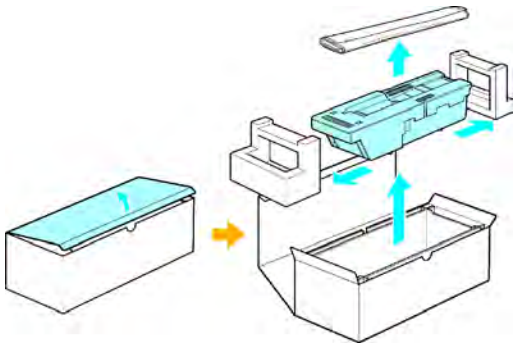
7. Hold the used Maintenance Cartridge by the grip (a) with one hand and put your other hand under the Maintenance Cartridge to hold it firmly on the bottom, keeping it level as you pull it out.



Important

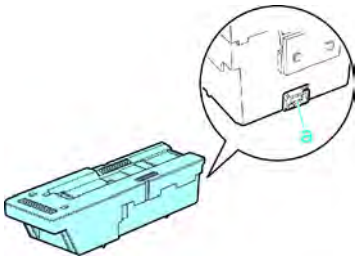
- Used Maintenance Cartridge is heavy. Always grasp the cartridge firmly and keep the cartridge level during removal and storage. If you drop a used Maintenance Cartridge or store it at an angle, ink may leak and cause stains.
- The remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity is recorded on each printer. Do not install a used Maintenance Cartridge in another printer.

8. Open the box, remove the plastic bag, packaging material, and Shaft Cleaner, and take out the Maintenance Cartridge.



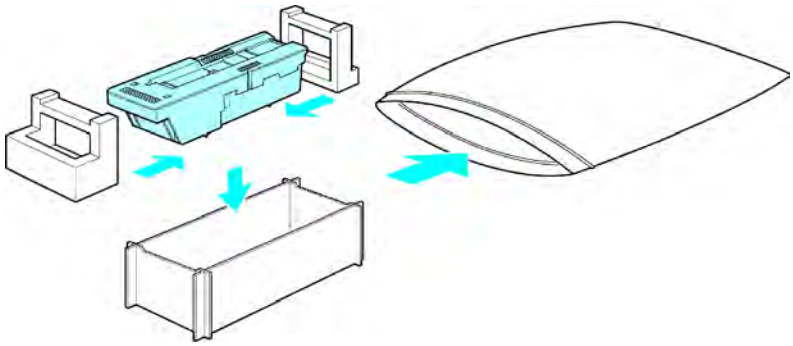
Important

- Never touch the metal contacts (a). This may damage the Maintenance Cartridge.

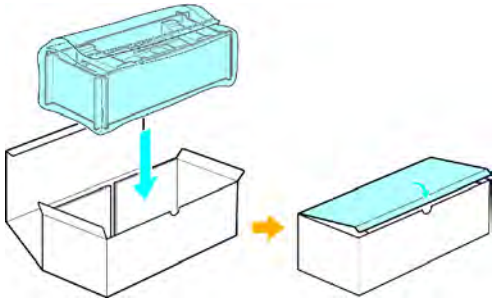


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

9. Attach the packaging material to the used Maintenance Cartridge and put it in the box. Keep it level as you put it in the plastic bag. Expel excess air from the plastic bag and seal the zipper.



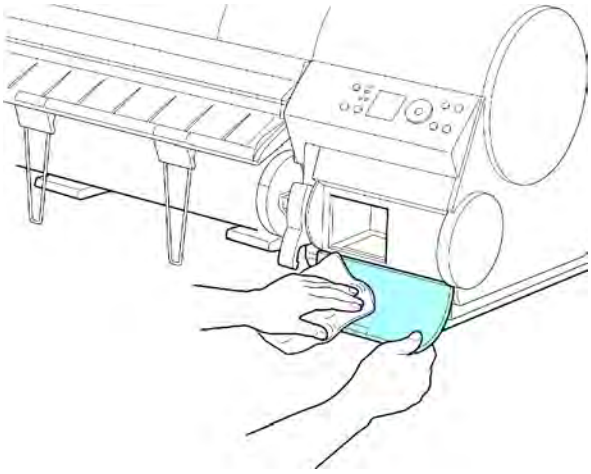
10. Confirm the Maintenance Cartridge is right-side up, put it in the box, and store it so that it stays level.



Important

- Always put the used Maintenance Cartridge back in the box and store the box on a flat surface. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains.
- In accordance with its active and ongoing policy to protect the environment, Canon collects used Maintenance Cartridge. Follow the instructions provided with the new Maintenance Cartridge that describe how to process the used Maintenance Cartridge.

11. Wipe away any soiling on the Maintenance Cartridge Cover.

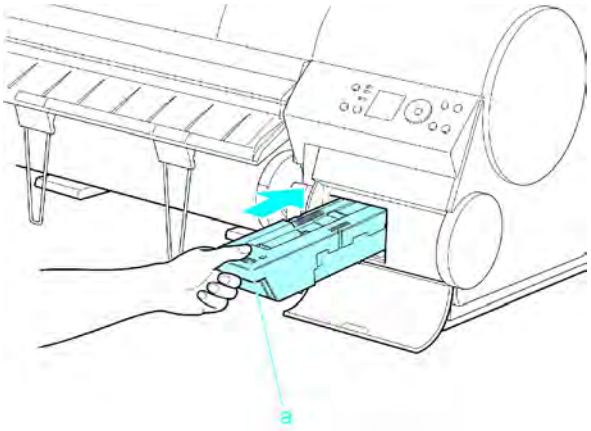


Important

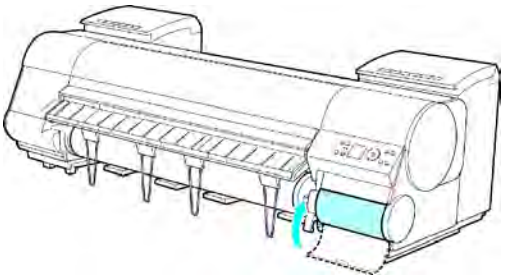
- Support the Maintenance Cartridge Cover from underneath as you wipe it.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

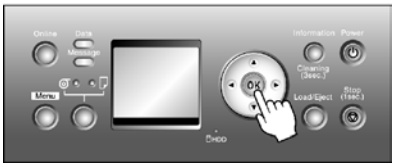
12. Keeping the new Maintenance Cartridge level, insert it all the way in.



13. Close the Maintenance Cartridge Cover.



14. Press the **OK** button.



The printer now initializes the Maintenance Cartridge.

Next, replace the Shaft Cleaner.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Replacing the Shaft Cleaner

Replace the Shaft Cleaner when you replace the Maintenance Cartridge. New Shaft Cleaner is included with replacement Maintenance Cartridge.
After you execute **Repl. maint cart** and replace the Maintenance Cartridge, a message will appear on the Display Screen requesting you to replace the Shaft Cleaner. Select **Yes** and press the **OK** button. Next, go to step 4.

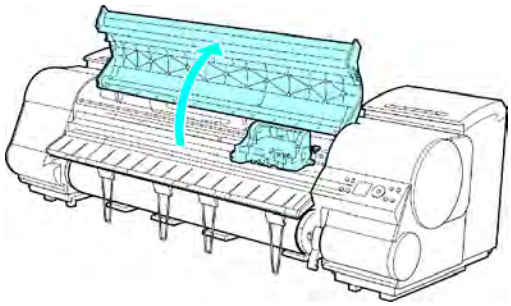
1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Maintenance**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Repl. S. Cleaner**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
   After the Carriage is moved, the Display Screen indicates **Open Upper Cover**.

Note

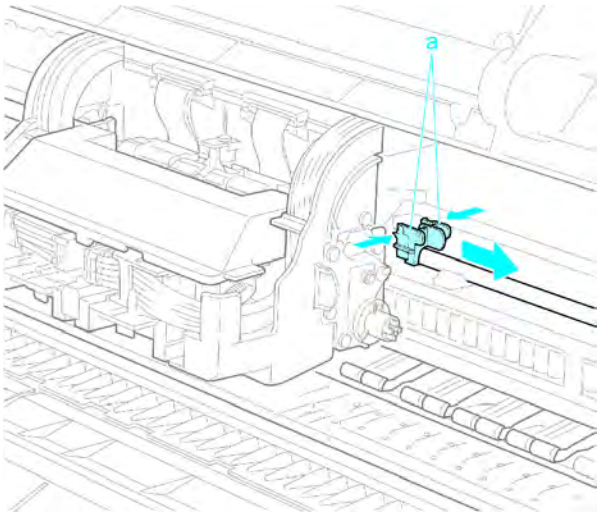
- If you do not respond within two minutes, shaft cleaner replacement is canceled and the printer goes online automatically. In this case, repeat the procedure.

5. Open the Top Cover.



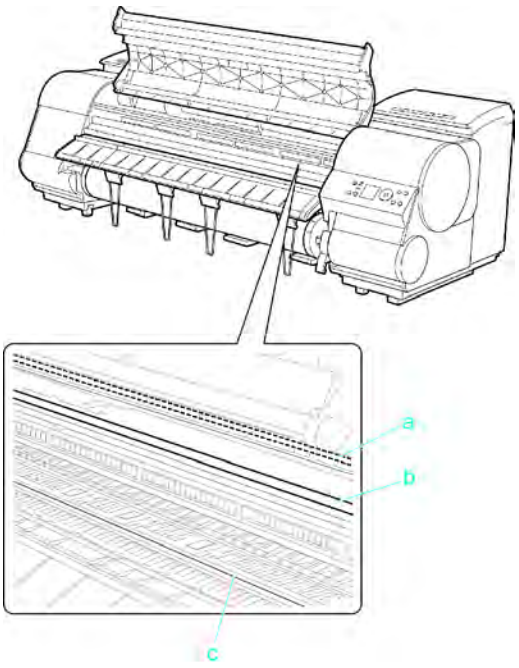
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

6. Grasp the Shaft Cleaner on the right side of the Carriage by the grips (a) and pull it toward the right to remove it.



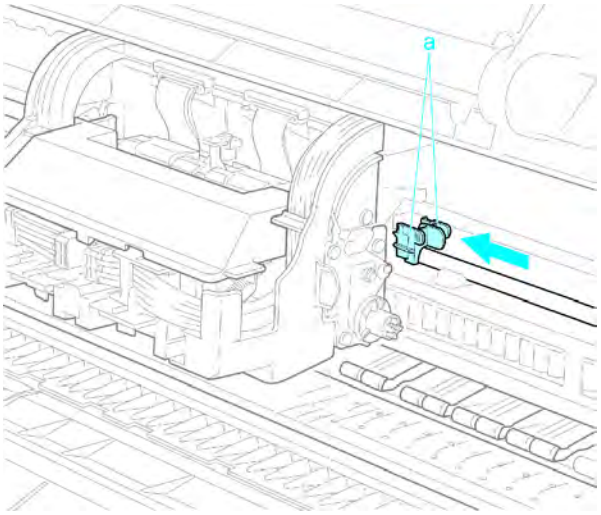
Important

- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a), Carriage Shaft (b), or Fixed Blade (c).



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

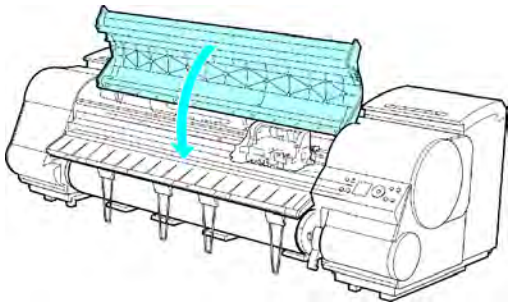
7. Holding the new Shaft Cleaner by the grips (a), attach it to the Carriage.



Note

- Be sure to put used Shaft Cleaner in the smaller box and put that box in the box of the used Maintenance Cartridge for recycling.

8. Close the Top Cover.

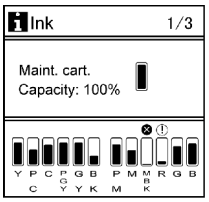


The Carriage is moved, and the printer goes online.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Checking the Remaining Maintenance Cartridge Capacity

The Maintenance Cartridge absorbs excess ink from borderless printing, printhead cleaning, and other processes. You can confirm the remaining capacity of the Maintenance Cartridge by checking the Maintenance Cartridge capacity shown on the Display Screen.
Press the **Information** button to display the remaining capacity of the Maintenance Cartridge on the Display Screen.



If the Display Screen indicates to replace the Maintenance Cartridge, replace the Maintenance Cartridge. If a message is displayed indicating to check the remaining capacity of the Maintenance Cartridge, or before tasks that deplete much of the capacity such as head cleaning or preparations to move the printer, check the remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity and replace the Maintenance Cartridge as needed. (→P.708)

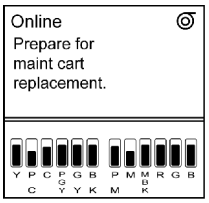
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

When to Replace the Maintenance Cartridge

Replace or prepare to replace the Maintenance Cartridge in the following situations.

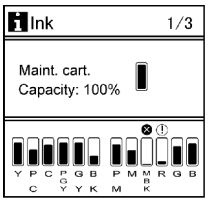
If a message for checking the Maintenance Cartridge is shown on the Display Screen

When the Maintenance Cartridge capacity is low, the **Message lamp** is lit and **Prepare for maint cart replacement.** is displayed. You can continue to print, but check the remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity and prepare to replace the Maintenance Cartridge with a new one. (→P.716)



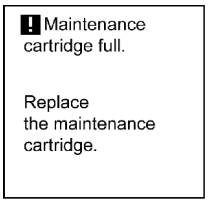
When much of the Maintenance Cartridge capacity is depleted

Printhead cleaning, Printhead replacement, and preparations to transfer the printer deplete much of the Maintenance Cartridge capacity. (In particular, preparing to move the printer depletes a lot of the capacity.) To check the remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity, press the **Information** button. Replace the Maintenance Cartridge and perform related maintenance as needed.



If a message for the Maintenance Cartridge replacement is shown on the Display Screen

When the Maintenance Cartridge is full, the **Message lamp** flashes and a message to replace the Maintenance Cartridge is shown on the Display Screen. Printing is disabled, and you cannot replace the Printhead or transfer the printer. Replace the Maintenance Cartridge with a new one.



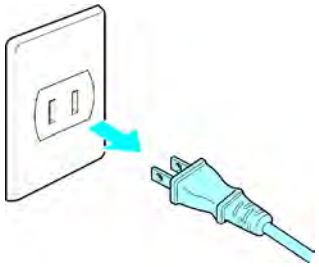
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Cleaning the Printer

Cleaning the Printer Exterior

Clean the printer regularly to maintain better printing quality and help prevent problems.
About once a month, clean the printer exterior.

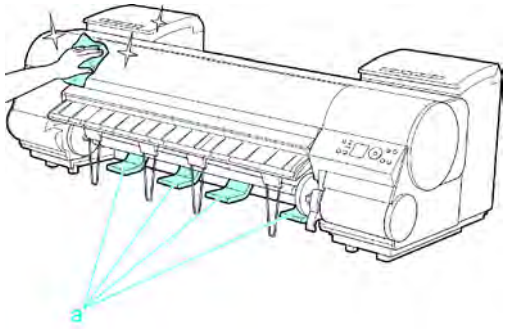
1. Turn the printer off. (→P.19)
2. Unplug the power cord from the outlet.



Caution

- Always turn off the printer and unplug the power cord before cleaning or maintenance. Accidentally leaving the printer on poses a risk of injury if you touch moving parts inside the printer.

3. Using a damp cloth that you have wrung out completely, wipe away any dirt or paper dust from the Paper Feed Slot (a), power cord plug, and so on. Dry these parts with a dry cloth.



Caution

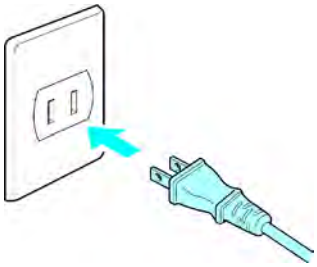
- Never use flammable solvents such as alcohol, benzene, or thinner. If these substances come into contact with electrical components inside the printer, there is a risk of fire or electrical shock.

Important

- If the Ejection Guide is dirty, it may soil the edge of the paper when the paper is cut. We recommend cleaning the Ejection Guide even if it does not appear dirty, because it may actually be covered with paper dust.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

4. Plug the power cord into the outlet.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Cleaning Inside the Top Cover

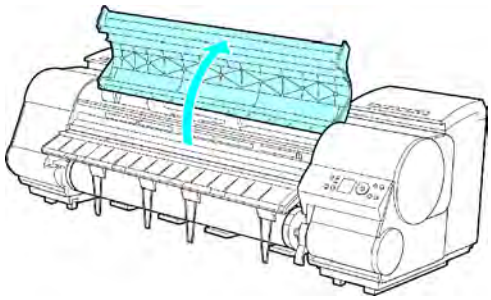
Clean inside the Top Cover to maintain better printing quality and help prevent problems.
Also clean inside the Top Cover in the following situations to ensure optimal operation.

- If the printed surface or the underside of paper is dirty after printing
- After you have used up a roll
- After borderless printing
- After printing on small paper
- After printing on paper that generates a lot of cutting debris
- If you have replaced the roll
- After printing on paper that generates a lot of paper dust

Important

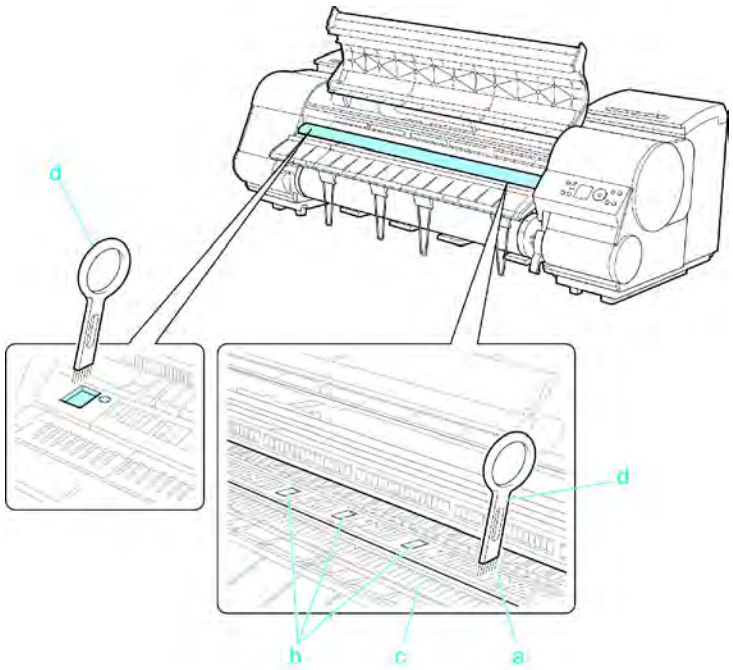
- If the Platen inside the Top Cover becomes dirty, it may soil the underside of paper. We recommend cleaning the Platen after borderless printing or printing on small paper.
- If the Ejection Guide is dirty, it may soil the edge of the paper when the paper is cut. We recommend cleaning the Ejection Guide even if it does not appear dirty, because it may actually be covered with paper dust.

1. Open the Top Cover.



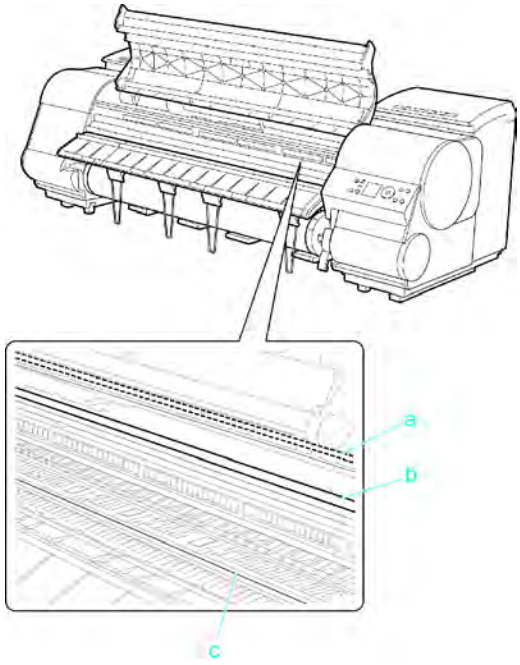
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

2. If paper dust has accumulated in the Vacuum holes (a) on the Platen, the Borderless Printing Ink Grooves (b), or cutter guide (c), use the Cleaning Brush (d) included with the printer to wipe it away.



Important

- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a), Carriage Shaft (b), or Fixed Blade (c).

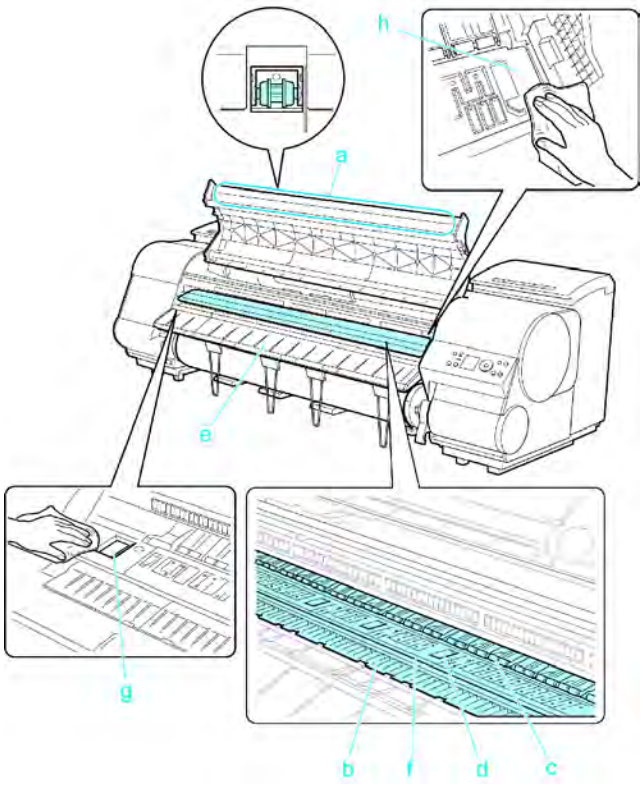


Note

- If the Cleaning Brush is dirty, rinse it in water.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

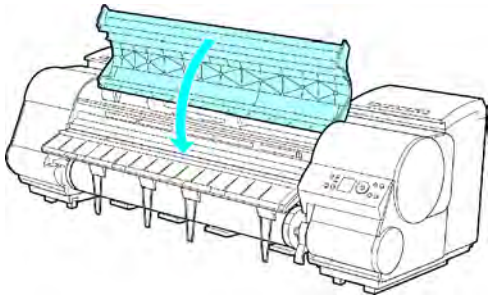
3. Using a damp cloth that you have wrung out completely, wipe inside the Top Cover to clean it. Wipe away any ink residue on the Top Cover Roller (a), all over the Platen (b), the Paper Retainer (c), the Borderless Printing Ink Grooves (d), the Ejection Guide (e), the cutter guide (f), the left-side ink suction ports (g), the section around the right-side Borderless Printing Ink Grooves (h), and so on.



Important

- Do not use a dry cloth to wipe inside the Top Cover. This may create a static charge, which may attract dust and affect the printing quality.
- Never use flammable solvents such as alcohol, benzene, or thinner. If these substances come into contact with electrical components inside the printer, there is a risk of fire or electrical shock.
- Do not touch the clear sheet on the side of the Top Cover Roller. This may damage the roller.

4. Close the Top Cover.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Cleaning the Printhead

Cleaning the Printhead may help clear nozzles that are clogged.

Note

- You can specify a number of pages in the printer's **Noz. Check Freq.** menu for automatic nozzle checking and cleaning every time you finish printing that quantity. (→P.49)
- You can start **Head Cleaning A** by holding down the **Information** button for three seconds or more.

Cleaning the Printhead

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Head Cleaning**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of cleaning, and then press the **OK** button.
   - **Head Cleaning A**

     Use **Head Cleaning A** if printing is faint or contains foreign substances. This method of cleaning consumes the least amount of ink. It takes about two minutes to complete.
   - **Head Cleaning B**

     Use **Head Cleaning B** if no ink comes out of the printhead, or if **Head Cleaning A** does not solve the problem. It takes about three minutes to complete.

   The printhead is cleaned, and the printer goes online.
4. Print a test pattern to check the nozzles, and determine whether cleaning has cleared the nozzles. (→P.695)

Note

- If printing does not improve after **Head Cleaning A**, try **Head Cleaning B**. If this does not solve the problem, repeat **Head Cleaning B** at least two times. If this still does not improve printing, the Printhead may have reached the end of its useful life. Contact your Canon dealer.

Caution

- Do not remove the Maintenance Cartridge or Ink Tanks during cleaning.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Other Maintenance

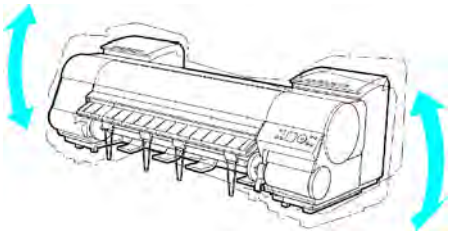
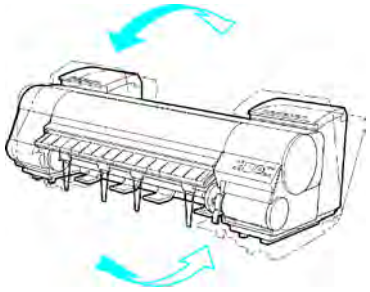
Preparing to Transfer the Printer

Important

- Be sure to contact your Canon dealer before transferring the printer to a new location. Ink may leak and damage the printer if you do not prepare the printer correctly and it is tipped in transit.

Note

- It is not possible to prepare the printer for transfer if the Display Screen prompts you to replace the Maintenance Cartridge or check the remaining capacity. Replace the Maintenance Cartridge before transfer preparations. (→P.708)
- Depending on the state of the printer, part replacement may be necessary when preparing to transfer the printer (that is, when you execute the printer menu item to prepare for transfer).
- Ink must be drained before Level 2 or Level 3 printer transfer, as described in the following table. Prepare a Maintenance Cartridge in advance.
- Always follow the instructions of the service representative when transferring the printer under Level 3 conditions.

Level	Shipping Method (Example)	Permitted Angle of Inclination	Amount of Ink to Dispose of	Required Maintenance Cartridge *1
1	By truck	Lengthwise: 0°-30°  Rotation: 0°-10° 	0	0(+1)
2	By plane	All directions: 0°-30°	Approx. 600 ml (20.3 fl oz)	1(+1)
3	Tipping the printer for elevators or stairs	Lengthwise: 0°-90° Rotation: 0°-30°	Approx. 1,900 ml (64.2 fl oz)	3(+1)

*1: Unused Maintenance Cartridge

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

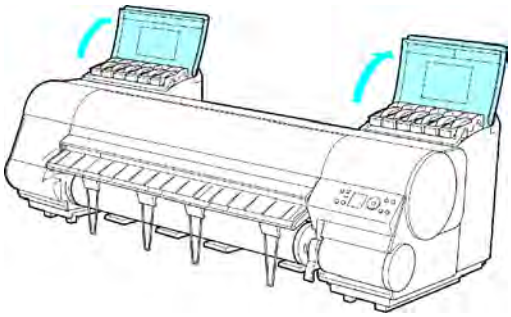
To protect the internal parts in transit, always follow the steps below before transferring the printer to a new location. Refer to the Quick Start Guide for details on packing the printer and installing it after transfer.

Caution

- Avoid tipping the printer excessively in transit. Ink inside the printer may leak and cause stains. If it is necessary to stand the printer up or tilt it, contact your Canon dealer.

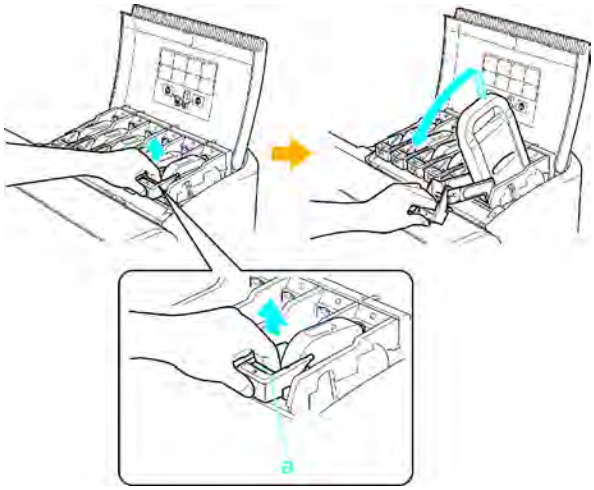
1. Remove the paper.
   - Roll
     (→P.186)
     (→P.181)
   - Sheet
     (→P.216)
2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Maintenance**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Move Printer**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the level of transfer, and then press the **OK** button.
   The printer now starts preparing for transfer.
   Under **Level 1** conditions, follow the procedure starting with step 10. There is no need to remove Ink Tank.
   When you are finished preparing to transfer the printer under **Level 2** or **Level 3** conditions, the Display Screen prompts you to open the Ink Tank Cover. You must remove the Ink Tank at this point. Follow the procedure starting with step 4.
6. Open the left and right Ink Tank Covers.

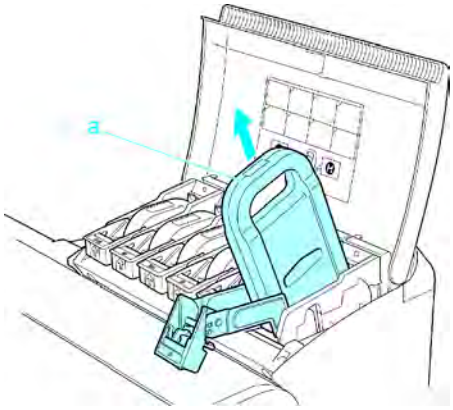


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

7. Lift the stopper (a) of the Ink Tank Lock Lever (a). Lift the Ink Tank Lock Lever until it stops, and then push it down to the front.

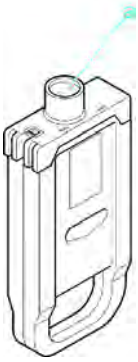


8. Remove the Ink Tank.



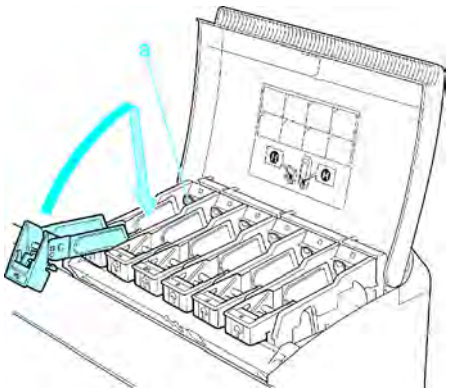
Note

- Store the Ink Tank you removed in the box with the ink holes (a) facing up. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains.

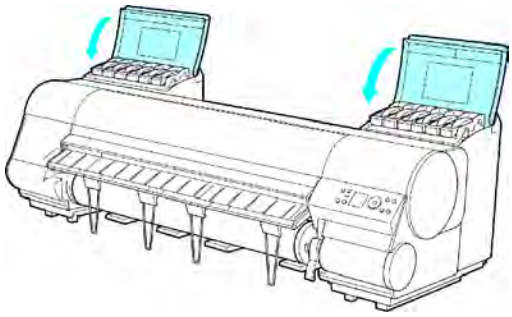


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

9. Repeat steps 5 and 6 to remove every Ink Tank.
10. Push down the release lever (a) as shown as you gently return every Ink Tank Lock Lever to the original position.



11. Close the Ink Tank Cover.



At this point, ink is drawn out from inside the tubes.

Important

- Do not remove the Maintenance Cartridge during this process.

When the process is finished, **Finished preparing to move printer. Turn off printer.** is displayed.

12. Press the **Power** button and turn off the printer.

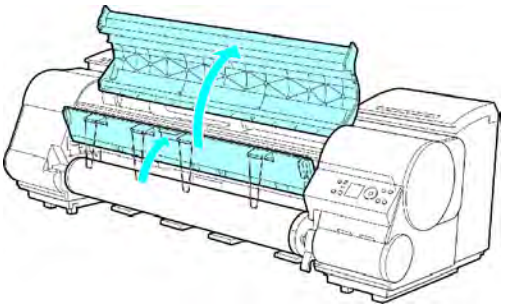
Important

- Turn off the printer before you unplug it. It may damage the printer if you unplug it before it is off and transfer it in that state. If you accidentally unplug the printer, plug it in again, reinstall the Ink Tanks, wait until the printer comes online, and follow this procedure again.

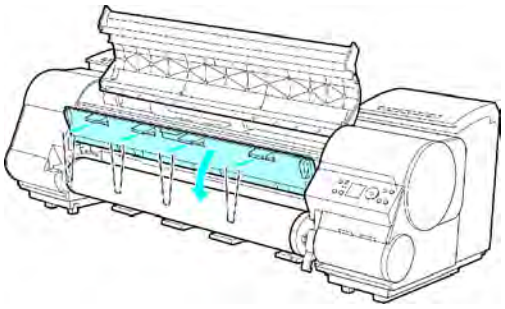
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

13. Disconnect the power cord, interface cable, and Media Take-up Unit Power Inlet.

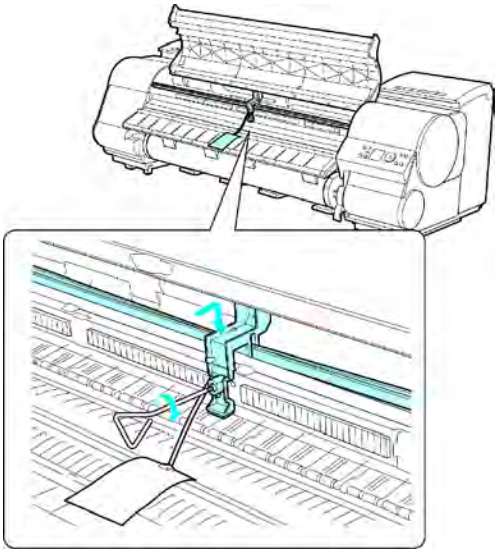
14. Open the Top Cover and lift the Ejection Guide.



15. Remove the six Ejection Supports and lower the Ejection Guide.



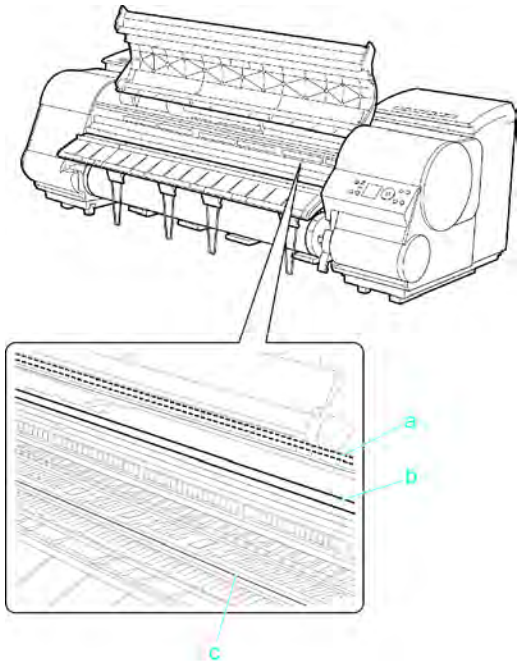
16. Grasp the Belt, insert it between the Belt Stopper, and affix the Belt Stopper with a hex screw at the position indicated.



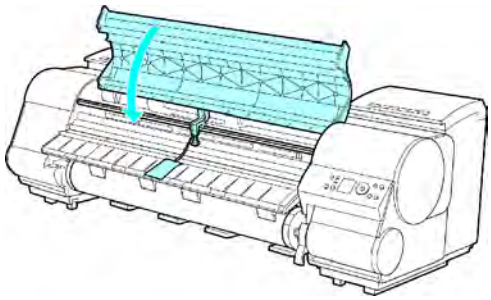
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Important

- Attach the Belt Stopper, which was removed and stored after initial installation. Neglecting to attach the Belt Stopper may damage the printer.
- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a), Carriage Shaft (b), or Fixed Blade (c).



17. Close the Top Cover.



18. Tape down printer covers to secure them, in the reverse order of tape removal during installation.
19. If the Output Stacker is installed, reverse the installation procedure to remove the Output Stacker.
20. Remove the Stand by reversing the installation procedure, when it was attached to the printer.
21. To disassemble and repackage the Stand, follow the procedure for printer installation with four people (that is, installation by lifting the printer) in reverse.

Caution

- Do not reverse the installation procedure that involves tipping the printer over. This may damage the printer. For more information, see the Quick Start Guide.

22. Repack the Roll Holder, Holder Stopper, and printer in the shipping materials, and then package them in the shipping box.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Updating the Firmware

Update the printer firmware to take advantage of new and improved printer functions.

Confirming the firmware version

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Information**, and then press ►.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **System Info**, and then press the **OK** button.

   The firmware version is displayed.

Updating the Firmware

To obtain the latest firmware, visit the Canon website. If the firmware available online is newer than the installed firmware, update the printer firmware. For details on downloading and updating the firmware, visit the Canon website.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Troubleshooting

Frequently Asked Questions

Frequently Asked Questions

This section presents frequently asked questions and answers. To view more detailed explanations, click the hyperlinks in the answer column.

Question	Answer
How do I print on a roll?	When printing on rolls, after loading the roll, specify the paper type and length, both on the Control Panel and in the printer driver. ⇒Loading and Printing on Rolls (→P.142)
How do I print manually?	When printing manually, specify the paper type and size in the printer driver, and then load the paper. ⇒Loading and Printing on Sheets (→P.146)
How do I switch between printing on a roll and printing manually?	Press the **Feeder Selection** button to switch the paper source between the roll and a sheet. ⇒Selecting the Roll as the Paper Source (→P.178) ⇒Selecting the Sheet as the Paper Source (→P.211)
How do I change the paper type or size?	Specify the type and size of paper, both on the Control Panel and in the printer driver. • Specifying it in the Printer Driver ⇒Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (→P.733) • Specifying it on the Control Panel Selecting the paper type ⇒Selecting the Paper Type (Roll) (→P.188) ⇒Selecting the Paper Type (Sheet) (→P.215) Selecting the Paper Size ⇒Specifying the Paper Length (Roll) (→P.189)
How do I cut the roll paper after printing?	You can wait until ink dries before cutting the roll, and you can cut rolls at a desired position. ⇒Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls (→P.193)
How do I print without borders?	Borderless printing is possible on rolls. You can also specify borderless printing in the printer driver by adjusting the original size to match the paper size. Borderless printing is not supported on sheets. ⇒Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size (→P.365) ⇒Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (→P.367) ⇒Borderless Printing at Actual Size (→P.348)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Question	Answer
How do I print an A4 original enlarged on A2 paper?	In the printer driver, you can adjust the original image to match the paper size or width, or you can specify enlargement or reduction before printing as desired. ⇒Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (→P.313) ⇒Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (→P.314) ⇒Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (→P.315)
How do I print without wasting paper?	To conserve paper, you can specify in the printer driver to rotate originals 90 degrees or to print without top and bottom margins. ⇒Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (→P.460) ⇒Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (→P.461)
How do I print without wasting all the blank space on the right side when printing an A4-sized original at A3 size?	By specifying to rotate originals 90 degrees in the printer driver, you can print at A4 size to fill the width of A3 paper. ⇒Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (→P.460)
How do I print in landscape (or portrait) orientation?	You can print originals that are in landscape (or portrait) orientation automatically enlarged to fit the roll width. This is an easy way to create vertical or horizontal banners. ⇒Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing) (→P.395)
How do I print on a custom paper size?	You can specify custom sizes temporarily in the printer driver. ⇒Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (→P.396)
How do I register custom paper sizes?	You can add desired sizes (Custom Media Sizes) in the **Size Options** dialog box of the printer driver. ⇒Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (→P.396)
How do I print lines thicker?	By specifying **Thicken Fine Lines** in the printer driver, you can print fine lines thicker to make them easier to see. ⇒Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing (→P.243)
How do I modify how colors are printed?	You can adjust colors as desired in the printer driver before printing. ⇒Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver (→P.254)
How do I use printer driver settings again in subsequent jobs?	By saving settings information in a favorite, you can apply the settings again before printing anytime as needed. ⇒Using Favorites (→P.487)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Question	Answer
How do I use the printer in combination with a **Color imageRUNNER** ?	The printer can be used for automatic enlargement and printing of scanned originals from a **Color imageRUNNER** . ⇒Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (→P.316)
How do I print enlargements of scanned originals from a **Color imageRUNNER** ?	By using Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy (iR enlargement copy), you can automatically print enlargements of scanned originals from a **Color imageRUNNER** . ⇒Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (→P.316)

Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver

If you replace the paper, complete the printer driver settings for the paper type and size.
For instructions on configuring paper settings in the printer driver, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows) (→P.156)
- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X) (→P.158)
- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS 9) (→P.160)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing does not start

The Data lamp on the Control Panel does not light up

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer is not on.	Make sure the power cord is securely plugged in, all the way. Press the **Power** button to turn the printer on.
The printer is not selected in the printer driver. (The printer is in Sleep mode.)	In Windows, select the printer by clicking **Select Printer** or **Printer** in the printing dialog box and try printing again.
	In Mac OS X, select the printer by clicking **Printer Setup Utility** (or **Print Center**) and try printing again.
	In Mac OS 9, select the printer in **Chooser** and try printing again.
The print job is paused. (The printer is in Sleep mode.)	In Windows, restart the print job as follows. 1. Select the printer icon in the **Printers and Faxes** (or **Printers**) window. 2. Clear **Pause Printing** in the **File** menu to restart the print job.
	In Mac OS X, restart the print job as follows. 1. Open the **Printer Setup Utility** (or the **Print Center**). 2. Select the printer, and then **Start Jobs** in the **Printers** menu to restart the print job.
	In Mac OS 9, restart the print job as follows. 1. Open **imagePROGRAF Printmonitor** . 2. Choose **Resume Printing** in the **File** menu to restart the print job.

The Printer Does Not Respond Even if Print Jobs are Sent

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer is offline.	Press the **Online** button on the Control Panel to bring the printer online.

The Display Screen indicates the system is filling with ink

Cause	Corrective Action
When the printer was turned off previously, some cleaning operation was terminated.	Wait until the system has been filled with ink. This process may take about ten minutes.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Cannot print over a network

Cannot connect the printer to the network

Cause	Corrective Action
The Ethernet cable is not connected correctly to the printer's Ethernet port.	1. Make sure the printer is connected to the network with the correct Ethernet cable, and then turn the printer on. For instructions on connecting the cable, refer to the Quick Start Guide . 2. Make sure the Link indicator is lit. The Link indicator is green if the printer is connected via 100 Base-TX and orange if connected via 10Base-T. If the Link indicator is not lit, check the following points. • Make sure the hub is on. • Make sure the end of the Ethernet cable is connected correctly. Insert the Ethernet cable until it clicks and locks in place. • Make sure there is no problem with the Ethernet cable. If there is any problem, replace the Ethernet cable. • Check the communication mode with the hub. Although the printer normally detects the hub communication mode and transmission rate automatically (in auto negotiation mode), sometimes the hub settings cannot be detected. In this case, configure the connection method manually, specifying the communication mode in use. (→P.736)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Configuring the Communication Mode Manually

This topic gives instructions for configuring the communication mode manually.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Interface Setup**, and then press ►.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Ethernet Driver**, and then press ►.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Auto Detect**, and then press ►.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Off**, and then press **OK**.
   Return to the **Ethernet Driver** menu.
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Comm.Mode**, and then press ►.
7. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the communication mode, and then press the **OK** button.
   Return to the **Ethernet Driver** menu.
8. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Ethernet Type**, and then press ►.
9. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the Ethernet type, and then press **OK**.
   Return to the **Ethernet Driver** menu.
10. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Spanning Tree**, and then press ►.
11. Press ▲ or ▼ to enable or disable spanning tree support, and then press **OK**.
    Return to the **Ethernet Driver** menu.
12. Press the **Online** button.
    After the confirmation message is displayed, press **OK**.
    The printer will now restart.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Cannot print over a TCP/IP network

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer's IP address is not configured correctly.	Make sure the printer's IP address is configured correctly. For details, see "Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility". (→P.537) or see "Configuring the IP Address Using the Printer Control Panel". (→P.619)
The printer's TCP/IP network settings are not configured correctly.	Make sure the printer's TCP/IP network settings are configured correctly. For details, see "Configuring the Printer's TCP/IP Network Settings". (→P.617)
The computer you are trying to print from is not configured correctly.	Make sure the computer's TCP/IP network settings are configured correctly. For details, see "Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Windows)". (→P.635)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Cannot print over AppleTalk or Bonjour networks

Cause	Corrective Action
The AppleTalk protocol is not enabled on the printer.	Activate AppleTalk on the printer. For details, see “Configuring the Printer’s AppleTalk Network Settings”. (→P.638)
The computer you are trying to print from is not configured correctly.	Make sure the computer’s AppleTalk settings are configured correctly. For details, see “Configuring the Destination for AppleTalk Network (Macintosh)”. (→P.640) or see “Configuring the Destination for Bonjour Network (Macintosh)”. (→P.648)
The computer and printer are not on the same network.	Due to the nature of Bonjour, you cannot print if the printer is on another network behind a router. Make sure the computer and printer are on the same network. For information about network settings, ask your network administrator.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Cannot print over a NetWare network

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer's NetWare settings are not configured correctly.	Make sure the printer's NetWare settings are configured correctly. In particular, make sure a valid frame type is selected. For details, see "Configuring the Printer's NetWare Network Settings". (→P.625)
The computer you are trying to print from is not configured correctly.	Make sure the computer's NetWare settings are configured correctly. For details, see "Configuring NetWare Network Settings". (→P.634)
The NetWare server and services are not configured correctly.	Check the following points. 1. Make sure the NetWare file server is running. 2. Make sure there is enough free disk space on the NetWare file server. Insufficient disk space may prevent you from processing large print jobs. 3. Start NWADMIN or PCONSOLE and confirm that the print service is configured correctly and the print queue is available. 4. If data transmission to a printer on another subnet fails, deactivate NCP burst mode in that printer's network protocol settings. 5. If the printer is used in queue server mode, specify "Other/Unknown" as the printer type.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

The printer stops during a print job

An error message is shown on the Display Screen

Status	Corrective Action
An error message is displayed during printing.	Check the error message and take action as necessary. (→P.766)
The last portion of roll paper was used during a print job, and paper could not be advanced because the trailing edge is taped to the roll.	Remove the used roll and insert a new roll. (→P.186) (→P.181) (→P.142)

The printer ejects blank, unprinted paper

Status	Corrective Action
The leading edge of the roll paper was cut to straighten it.	This operation is normal. The printer cuts the leading edge of the roll to straighten it and ejects the scraps when **Trim Edge First** in the printer menu is **On** or when **Trim Edge First** is **Automatic** and the leading edge is slanted. The printer is ready to print after this initial preparation. When **Off** is selected under **Trim Edge First** , the edge is not cut and scraps are not removed.
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Print a test pattern to check the nozzles and make sure the Printhead is in good condition for printing. (→P.695) Clean the Printhead if the nozzles are clogged. (→P.696)
A print job was received from an incompatible printer driver.	Use the correct imagePROGRAF printer driver for the printer and try printing again.
The printer is damaged.	Contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Problems with the printing quality

Printing is faint

Cause	Corrective Action
You may be printing on the wrong side of the paper.	Print on the printing surface.
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Print a test pattern to check the nozzles and see if they are clogged. (→P.695)
Because the printer was left without Ink Tanks installed for some time, ink has become clogged in the ink supply system.	After the Ink Tank has been installed for 24 hours, run **Head Cleaning B** . (→P.696)
Paper is jammed inside the Top Cover .	Follow the steps below to remove the jammed piece of paper inside the Top Cover . 1. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer offline. 2. Open the Top Cover and make sure the Carriage is not over the Platen . 3. Remove any scraps of paper inside the Top Cover . 4. Close the Top Cover . For tips on clearing paper jams, refer to the following topics. • Clearing Jammed Roll Paper (→P.201) • Clearing a Jammed Sheet (→P.217)
During borderless printing, the ink was not dry enough before cutting.	Specify a longer drying period in the printer menu, in **Roll DryingTime** in **Paper Details** . (→P.49)
Printing may be faint if **Print Quality** in **Advanced Settings** in the printer driver is set to **Standard** or **Draft** .	In **Advanced Settings** in the printer driver, choose **Highest** or **High** in **Print Quality** . (→P.243)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Paper rubs against the Printhead

Cause	Corrective Action
The paper type as specified in the printer driver does not match the type loaded in the printer. (*1)	Load paper of the same type as you have specified in the printer driver. (→P.182) (→P.212)
	Make sure the same type of paper is specified in the printer driver as you have loaded in the printer. 1. Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel printing. 2. Change the paper type in the printer driver and try printing again.
Paper has been loaded incorrectly, causing it to wrinkle.	Reload the paper. (→P.182) (→P.212)
The Printhead is set too low.	In **Head Height** , choose **Automatic** . (→P.654)
You are printing on heavyweight paper or paper that curls or wrinkles easily after absorbing ink.	When printing on Heavyweight Coated Paper or other paper-based media, choose a **VacuumStrngth** setting of **Strong** , or **Strongest** . If the paper is still scratched, try setting the Printhead level in **Head Height** to **Highest** . (→P.661) (→P.654)
	When printing on CAD Tracing Paper or other film-based media, choose a **VacuumStrngth** setting of **Standard** , **Strong** , or **Strongest** . If the paper is still scratched, try setting the Printhead level in **Head Height** to **Highest** . (→P.661) (→P.654)
	When printing on paper 0.1 mm (0.004 in) thin or thinner, choose a **VacuumStrngth** setting of **Weakest** . If the paper is still scratched, try setting the Printhead level in **Head Height** to **Highest** . (→P.661) (→P.654)

*1: Always make sure the loaded paper matches the media type setting on the printer.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

The edges of the paper are dirty

Cause	Corrective Action
The Platen has become dirty after borderless printing or printing on small paper.	Open the Top Cover and clean the Platen . (→P.720)
The paper type as specified on the printer does not match the type specified in the printer driver.	Make sure the same paper type is specified on the printer as in the printer driver. (→P.188) (→P.215)
	Make sure the same paper type is specified in the printer driver as on the printer. 1. Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel printing. 2. Change the paper type in the printer driver and try printing again.
The paper is wrinkled or warped.	Straighten out the wrinkles or curls and reload the paper. Do not use paper that has been printed on previously. (→P.182) (→P.212)
A cut line is printed because the function to reduce cutting dust has been activated.	If this function is not needed, deactivate **CutDustReduct.** through the printer menu. (→P.49)
You are printing on heavyweight paper or paper that curls or wrinkles easily after absorbing ink.	When printing on Heavyweight Coated Paper or other paper-based media, choose a **VacuumStrngth** setting of **Strong** or **Strongest** . If the paper is still scratched, try raising the Printhead higher in **Head Height** , one level at a time. (→P.661) (→P.654)
	When printing on CAD Tracing Paper or film-based media, choose a **VacuumStrngth** setting of **Standard** , **Strong** , or **Strongest** . If the paper is still scratched, try raising the Printhead higher in **Head Height** , one level at a time. (→P.661) (→P.654)
The Printhead is set too low.	In **Head Height** , choose **Automatic** . (→P.654)
The Ejection Guide is soiled.	Clean the Ejection Guide . (→P.718)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

The surface of the paper is dirty

Cause	Corrective Action
The Paper Retainer is soiled.	Clean the Paper Retainer . (→P.720)
You are using a paper that does not dry easily.	Specify a time of about a minute in **Roll DryingTime** .

The back side of the paper is dirty

Cause	Corrective Action
The Platen has become dirty after borderless printing or printing on small paper.	Open the Top Cover and clean the Platen . (→P.720)
	Set **CarriageScanWdth** to **Fixed** .
The Platen has become soiled due to printing on the Platen because width detection is deactivated.	Activate width detection, and open the Top Cover and clean the Platen . (→P.720)
The Paper Retainer is soiled.	Clean the Paper Retainer . (→P.720)

Banding in different colors occurs

Cause	Corrective Action
The paper feed amount is not adjusted correctly.	Adjust the feed amount. (→P.655)
Printing does not proceed smoothly because print jobs are interrupted during transmission.	Exit other applications and cancel other print jobs.
In the printer menu, **Print Length** is specified in **Feed Priority** .	Selecting **Band Joint** may improve printing results. Adjust the feed amount in the printer menu by specifying **Band Joint** in **Feed Priority** and try printing again. (→P.655)
The Printhead is out of alignment.	Adjust the Printhead alignment. (→P.650)
Streaks may occur if you set the **Print Quality** too low.	Choose a higher level of **Print Quality** in the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver and try printing again. (→P.243)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

The contrast becomes uneven during printing

Cause	Corrective Action
The paper feed amount is out of adjustment.	Adjust the feed amount. (→P.655)
	Execute **Fine Band Adj.** during printing. (→P.655)

Colors in printed images are uneven

Cause	Corrective Action
Line Drawing/Text is selected when printing images in many solid colors.	Specify **Image** in the printer driver.
You are printing on paper that curls easily.	Printed colors may appear uneven on the leading edge of paper that is susceptible to curling. Increase the level of vacuum holding the paper against the Platen or specify a margin of 20 mm (0.79 in) or more for the leading edge. (→P.661)
Printed colors may be uneven if you set the **Print Quality** too low.	Choose a higher level of **Print Quality** in the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver. (→P.243)
Color may be uneven between dark and light image areas.	Select **Unidirectional Printing** in the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver.
When using Borderless Printing, the edge of the paper is cut during printing. Thus, ink density may not be even at the edges.	Specify **No** in **Auto Cut** in the printer driver before printing. In this case, the paper can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only. Cut the printed document ejected from the printer, then use scissors to cut away the edges on the top and bottom.
	Choose a higher level of **Print Quality** in the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver. (→P.243)
The Printhead is out of alignment.	Adjust the Printhead alignment. (→P.650)
Drying documents stacked on each other may cause uneven colors.	To avoid uneven colors, we recommend drying each sheet separately.
Color density may be uneven if you use Glossy Paper , art paper, or Coated Paper .	In **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver, choose **Highest** or **High** in **Print Quality** .

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Problems with the printing quality caused by the type of paper

For paper-specific troubleshooting tips to improve the printing quality, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.169)

Lines are misaligned

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead alignment is not adjusted.	Adjust the Printhead alignment. (→P.650) (→P.652)

The length of printed images is inaccurate

Cause	Corrective Action
In the printer menu, **Band Joint** is specified in **Feed Priority** .	To ensure the feed amount matches the paper size, select **Print Length** in **Feed Priority** in the printer menu and enter the amount for adjustment in **Adjust Length** . You can adjust the feed amount in 0.02% increments. (→P.49)

Documents are printed in monochrome

Cause	Corrective Action
In the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver, **Monochrome** or **Monochrome (Photo)** , is specified in **Color Mode** .	In the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver, specify **Color** in **Color Mode** and try printing again.
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Print a test pattern to check the color ink nozzles and see if they are clogged. (→P.695)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printed colors are inaccurate

Cause	Corrective Action
Color adjustment has not been activated in the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver.	In the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver, access **Color Settings** in **Color Mode** to adjust colors.
Colors have not been adjusted on the computer or monitor.	Refer to the computer and monitor documentation to adjust the colors.
	Adjust the settings of the color management software, referring to the software documentation as needed.
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Print a test pattern to check the nozzles and see if they are clogged. (→P.695)
In the printer driver, **Application Color Matching Priority** is not selected.	Click **Special Settings** on the **Layout** sheet of the printer driver and select **Application Color Matching Priority** in the dialog box.
There may be a slight difference in how colors are printed after you replace the Printhead because of individual variation among Printheads .	Execute color calibration.
Printhead characteristics gradually change through repeated use, and colors may change.	Execute color calibration.
Color may change slightly even on the same model of printer if you use a different version of the firmware or printer driver, or when you print under different settings or in a different printing environment.	Follow these steps to prepare the printing environment. 1. Use the same version of firmware or printer driver. 2. Specify the same value for all settings items. 3. Execute color calibration.
The region selection of the Media Configuration Tool was changed when you reinstalled the printer driver. If you change the region selection of the Media Configuration Tool , region-specific paper information originally registered on the printer before installation will be deleted. If the information of paper you used for color calibration is deleted, such color calibration can no longer be applied to any type of paper.	Perform color calibration again using paper supported in the newly selected region and compatible with color calibration.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Image Edges are Blurred or White Banding Occurs

Cause	Corrective Action
The Platen suction is too strong.	Set **VacuumStrngth** to **Weakest** . (→P.661)
The Printhead is set too high.	Lower the Printhead . (→P.654)

Documents are printed crooked

Cause	Corrective Action
Skew **Skew Check Lv.** has been set to **Loose** or **Off** .	Choose **Standard** in **Skew Check Lv.** .
Width Detection has been set to **Off** .	Choose **On** in **Width Detection** .

Line thickness is not uniform (Windows)

Cause	Corrective Action
In the **Special Settings** dialog box of the Windows printer driver, **Fast Graphic Process** is selected.	Open the printer driver's **Properties** dialog box from **Print** in the application software's **File** menu, and try printing following the steps below. 1. Remove the check from **Open Preview When Print Job Starts** in the **Main** sheet. 2. Remove the check from **Page Layout** in the **Layout** sheet. 3. Click the **Special Settings** button in the **Layout** sheet to open the **Special Settings** dialog box, and remove the check from **Fast Graphic Process** .

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Installation problems

The IEEE 1394 Driver Cannot Be Installed Correctly

In Windows, the device interface driver may not be installed correctly in some cases if you connected the IEEE 1394 cable before installing the printer driver.
If so, reinstall the IEEE 1394 device interface driver and the printer driver as follows.

Important

- This procedure is based on an example for Windows XP. The name of the wizard may be different in other operating systems.

1. Right-click **My Computer** and choose **Properties** to display the **System Properties** window.
2. On the **Hardware** sheet, click **Device Manager** to display the **Device Manager** window.
3. Right-click **Other Devices** icon and choose **Properties**.
4. On the **Driver** sheet, click **Update Driver** to start the **Hardware Update Wizard** (or the **Upgrade Device Driver Wizard**.)
5. Follow the instructions on the screen.
6. When the window is displayed to choose the source for driver installation, select the CD-ROM drive. Insert the User Software CD-ROM provided with the printer and follow the instructions on the screen.
   The device/interface driver is installed.
   The device is detected, and the **New Hardware Wizard** (or **Add New Hardware Wizard**) is started.
7. Follow the instructions on the screen.
8. When the window is displayed to choose the source for driver installation, select the printer driver folder.
   Choose the CD-ROM drive > **Driver** > **WinXP_2K** > **Driver**, and click **OK**. (For Windows 2000/Windows XP/Windows Server 2003)
9. Follow the instructions on the screen.
   The printer driver is installed.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Removing Installed Printer Drivers

Follow the steps below to remove installed printer drivers and utilities.

Removing printer drivers (Windows)

Remove the printer driver as follows.

Note

- In Windows 2000/Windows XP/Windows Server 2003/Windows Vista, you must log on with administrative rights such as “Administrator” account.

1. From the Windows **start** menu, select **Programs** > **Canon Printer Uninstaller** > **imagePROGRAF Printer Driver Uninstaller** to display the **Delete Printer** window.
2. Select the printer in the list and click **Delete**.
3. Click **Yes** in the **Warning** message dialog box.
4. Make sure that the printer has been removed from the list, and click **Exit**.

Removing Printer Drivers and imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh)

Remove the printer driver or imagePROGRAF Printmonitor as follows.

1. Insert the User Software CD-ROM provided with the printer in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Start the printer driver installer included in the User Software CD-ROM.
   For Mac OS X, open **OS X** and double-click **iPF Driver Installer X**.
   For Mac OS 9, open **OS 9** and double-click **iPF Driver Installer 9**.
3. In the upper-left menu, choose **Uninstall**, and click **Uninstall**.
4. Follow the instructions on the screen to remove the printer driver or imagePROGRAF Printmonitor.

Removing imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)

Remove imagePROGRAF Status Monitor as follows.

1. From the Windows **start** menu, select **Programs** > **imagePROGRAF Status Monitor** > **Uninstaller (imagePROGRAF Status Monitor)** to start the wizard.
2. In the wizard window, click **Delete**, and then click **Next**.
3. Follow the instructions on the screen to remove imagePROGRAF Status Monitor.

Removing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility (Windows)

Remove imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility as follows.

1. From the Windows **start** menu, select **Programs** > **imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility** > **Uninstaller (imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility)** to start the wizard.
2. In the wizard window, click **Delete**, and then click **Next**.
3. Follow the instructions on the screen to remove imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Clearing jammed paper

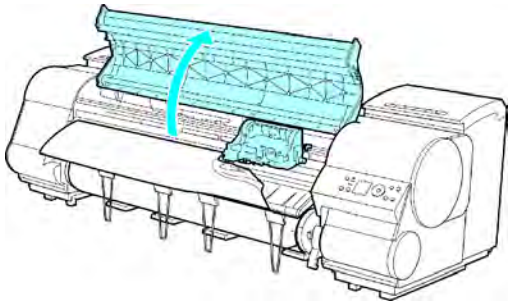
Clearing Jammed Roll Paper

If roll paper jams, follow the steps below to remove jams.

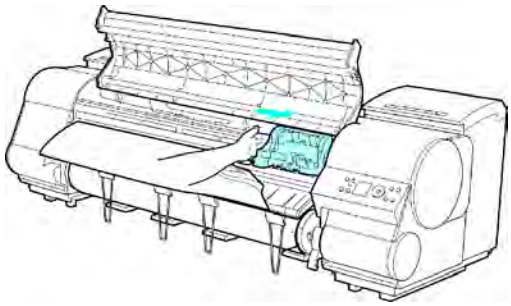
Caution

- Remove any jammed paper promptly.

1. Turn the printer off. (→P.19)
2. Open the Top Cover.



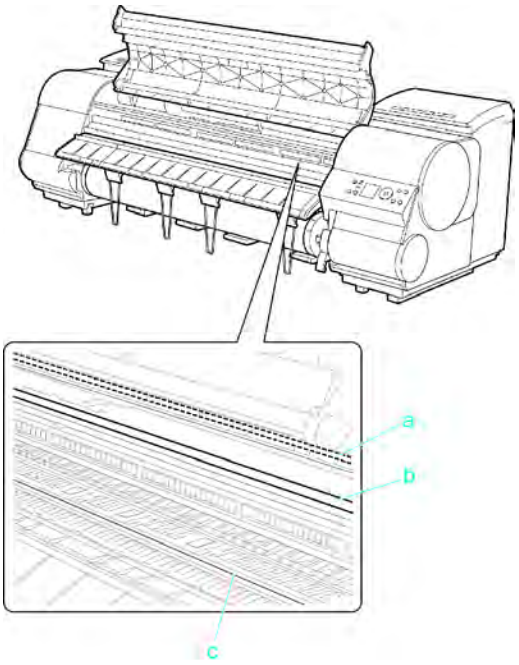
3. If the Carriage is out, move the Carriage to separate it from the paper.



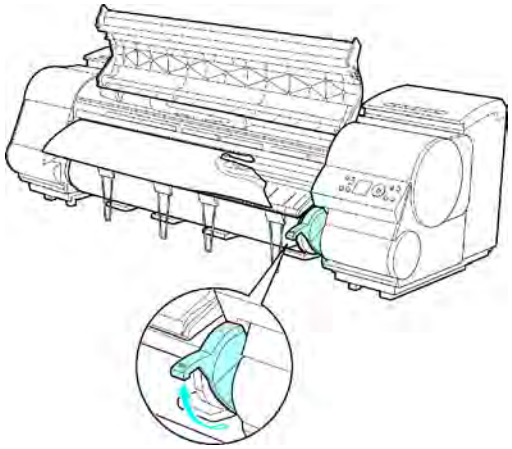
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Important

- If you push the Carriage to the left edge, the blade of the Cutter Unit will be lowered in preparation to cut the paper. Be careful not to pinch your fingers between the Carriage and Platen if you have pushed the Carriage to the left edge or if a paper jam occurs during cutting.
- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a), Carriage Shaft (b), or Fixed Blade (c).

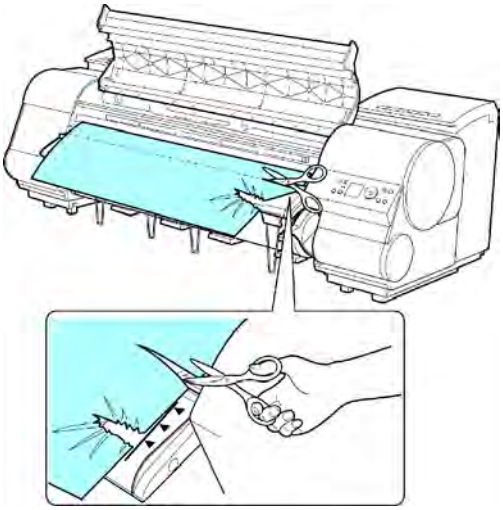


4. Lift the Release Lever.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

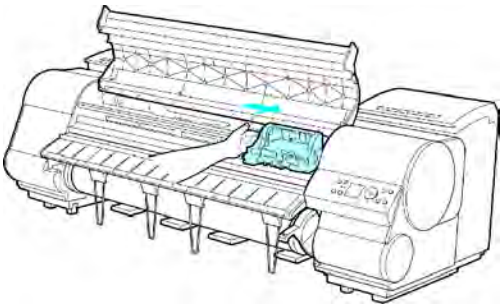
5. Holding the paper on both sides, pull the jammed portion out toward the front. Use a scissors or cutting tool to cut away the printed or wrinkled portion.



Caution

- When cutting paper, be careful to avoid scratching the printer.

6. If the Carriage is on the left, move the Carriage to the right until it stops.

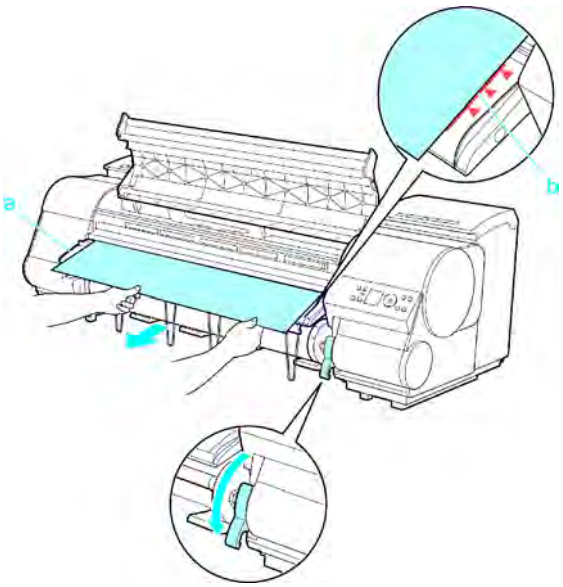


Important

- Always move the Carriage to the right side. If the Carriage is on the left, a Carriage error may occur when you turn on the printer.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

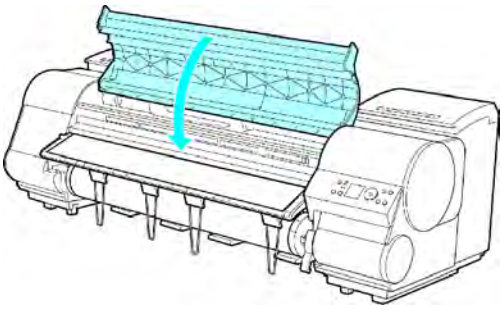
7. Hold the edge of the roll paper in the middle as you gently pull it evenly to the position of the Ejection Guide (a). Align the right side of the roll paper with the Paper Alignment Line (b), keeping this side parallel to the line, and then lower the Release Lever.



Important

- Do not force the roll paper into alignment with the Paper Alignment Line (b). This may prevent the paper from being advanced straight.
- If you pull out too much of the roll, an excessive amount will be cut away.

8. Close the Top Cover.



9. Turn the printer on. (→P.19)

The roll is now advanced. After it is finished being advanced, you can resume printing.

Note

- You can ensure that the edge is cut neatly by following the steps below.
  1. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer offline.
  2. Hold down the ▼ button to advance the paper.
  3. Set **Paper Cutting** to **Yes** in the printer menu to cut the edge. (→P.193)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

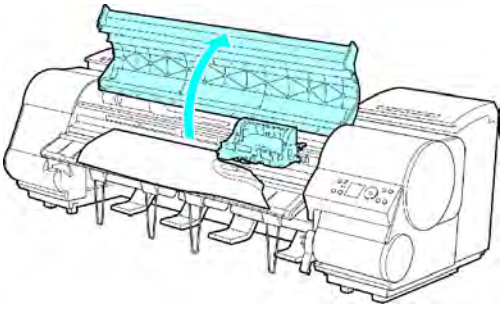
Clearing a Jammed Sheet

If a sheet jams, follow the steps below to remove it.

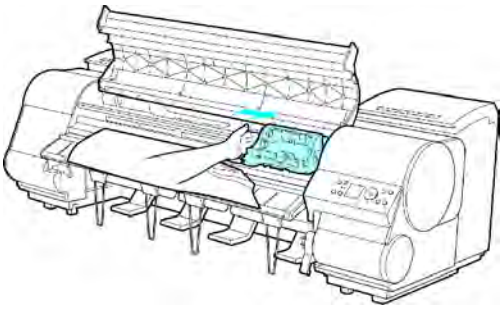
Caution

- Remove any jammed paper promptly.

1. Turn the printer off. (→P.19)
2. Open the Top Cover.

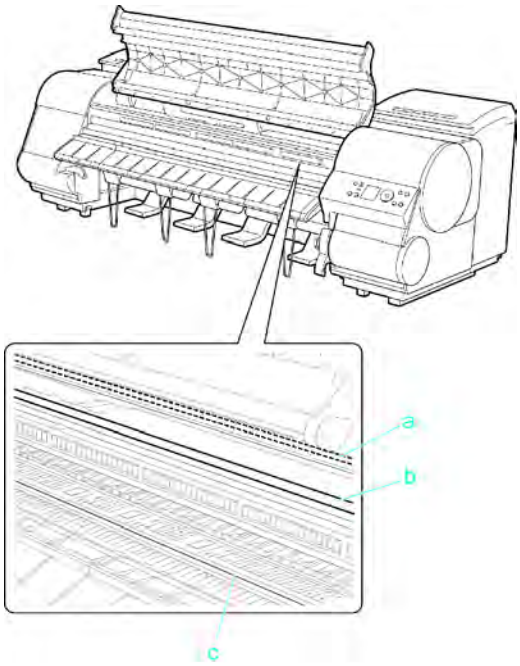


3. If the Carriage is out, move the Carriage to separate it from the paper.



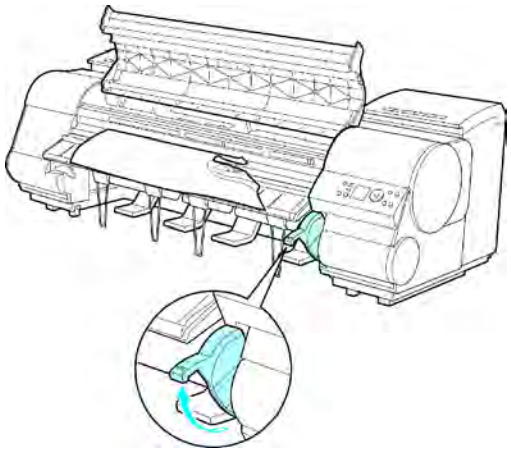
Important

- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a), Carriage Shaft (b), or Fixed Blade (c).

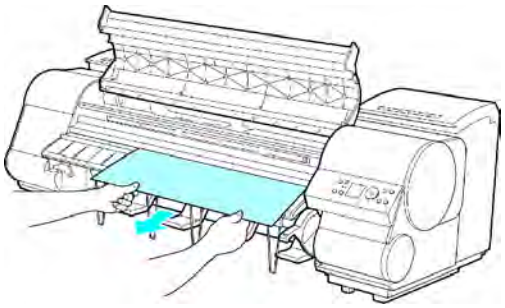


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

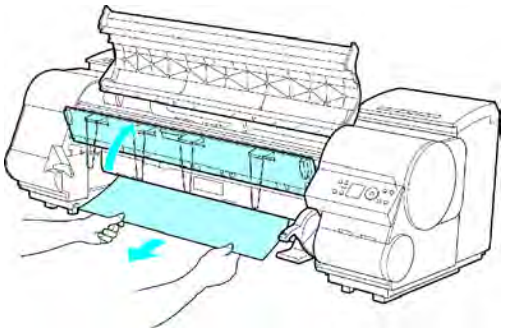
4. Lift the Release Lever.



5. If the paper is visible, grasp the paper and pull it forward.



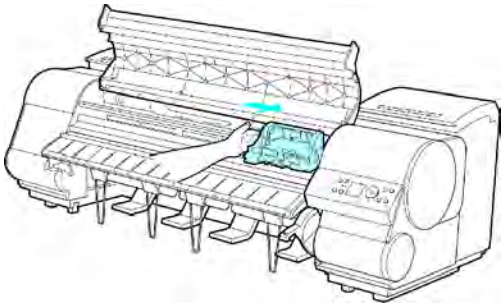
6. If the paper is not visible, lift the Ejection Guide, remove the Roll Holder, and remove the jammed paper from below.



After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer, and lower the Ejection Guide.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

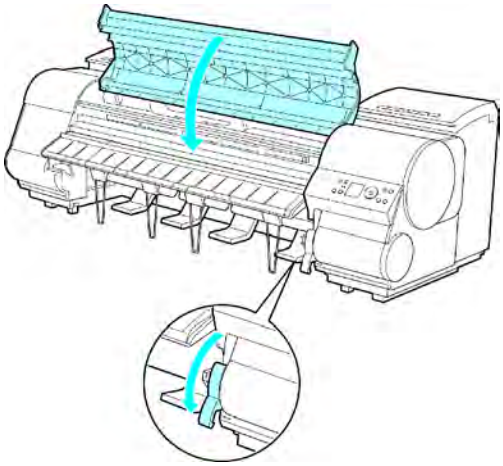
7. If the Carriage is on the left, move the Carriage to the right until it stops.



Important

- Always move the Carriage to the right side. If the Carriage is on the left, a Carriage error may occur when you turn on the printer.

8. Lower the Release Lever and close the Top Cover.



9. Turn the printer on. (→P.19)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

If the Printer makes a strange sound

If the Printer Makes a Strange Sound

The following sounds do not indicate a problem with the printer.

- There is a sound of vacuum from the Platen

  To prevent paper from rising, paper is held against the Platen by suction from Vacuum holes under it.
- There is a sound when a different size of paper is used and when the Carriage goes from side to side

  This may happen especially when using B0 or 44-inch paper.

  When paper of a different size is used, a valve is automatically activated to switch the area for paper suction, which may make a sound. This mechanism prevents vacuum from Vacuum holes where there is no paper.

  In addition, ink is ejected in sync with the movement of the Carriage back and forth to ensure optimal ink flow. At this time, the valve automatically switches the area for paper suction, which may make a sound.
- Roll paper makes a fluttering sound during printing

  There may be a fluttering sound when large paper is advanced.
- If you suddenly hear the tone for cleaning operations

  At regular intervals, for printer maintenance, cleaning operations will begin automatically, even if the printer is in Sleep mode.
- If you suddenly hear the tone for ink agitation

  At regular intervals, to ensure optimal printing quality, the ink is agitated automatically, even if the printer is in Sleep mode.(*1) The ink is also agitated automatically under the following conditions.

  Note that other operations are not possible while **Agitating** is displayed on the control panel.

  - After you turn the printer on (*2/*3)
  - After data transmission (*4)
  - After you replace an ink tank (*3/*5)

  *1: Ink agitation takes about a minute and a half.

  *2: The time for agitation varies depending on how long the printer has been turned off. (Between about a minute and a half to twenty minutes.)

  *3: During agitation, if **Online** mode is accessible, you can print or do other operations.

  *4: After about a minute and a half, the printer goes **Online**, and printing operations begin.

  However, printing may start later after data reception, depending on the size of print data.

  *5: Ink agitation takes about three and a half minutes.

In other cases, contact your Canon dealer.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Other problems

The printer consumes a lot of ink

Cause	Corrective Action
Many full-page color images are printed.	In print jobs such as photos, images are filled with color. This consumes a lot of ink. This does not indicate a problem with the printer.
Head Cleaning B is used often.	**Head Cleaning B** consumes a lot of ink. This does not indicate a problem with the printer. Unless the printer has been moved or stored for a long period or you are troubleshooting Printhead problems, we recommend not performing **Head Cleaning B** , to the extent possible.
You have just finished initial installation, when more ink is consumed to fill the system.	After initial installation or at the first-time use after transfer, ink flows into the system between the Ink Tank and Printhead , which may cause the ink level indicators to drop to 80%. This does not indicate a problem with the printer.

A message to check the Maintenance Cartridge is not cleared after you replace the Maintenance Cartridge

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer has not detected the new Maintenance Cartridge .	Remove the new Maintenance Cartridge you have just installed and insert it again firmly.
	Restart the printer.

Paper is not cut neatly

Cause	Corrective Action
The paper is bent or curled at the cut position.	Straighten out any curling by the edges of the paper.
Paper rises by the ends of the cut position before it is cut.	Reload the paper correctly.
The Cutter Unit is installed incorrectly.	Install the Cutter Unit correctly. (→P.705)
The blade of the Cutter Unit is dull.	Replace the Cutter Unit . (→P.705)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Paper cannot be cut

Cause	Corrective Action
In the printer driver, **No** or **Print Cut Guideline** is specified in **Auto Cut** .	Specify **Yes** in **Auto Cut** in the printer driver.
In **MAIN MENU** , **Eject** or **Manual** is specified in **Cutting Mode** .	Specify **Automatic** in **Cutting Mode** in **MAIN MENU** .
The Cutter Unit is not installed.	Install the Cutter Unit . (→P.705)
Rolls are not cut when you are using the Media Take-up Unit .	Either execute **Paper Cutting** in the Control Panel or lift the Release Lever and cut the roll with scissors. (→P.239)

The printer does not go on

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer is unplugged.	Plug the power cord into the outlet, and then turn on the printer.
The specified voltage is not supplied.	Check the voltage of the outlet and breaker. For information on the specified voltage, see “Specifications”. (→P.135)

Roll paper cannot be inserted into the Paper Feed Slot

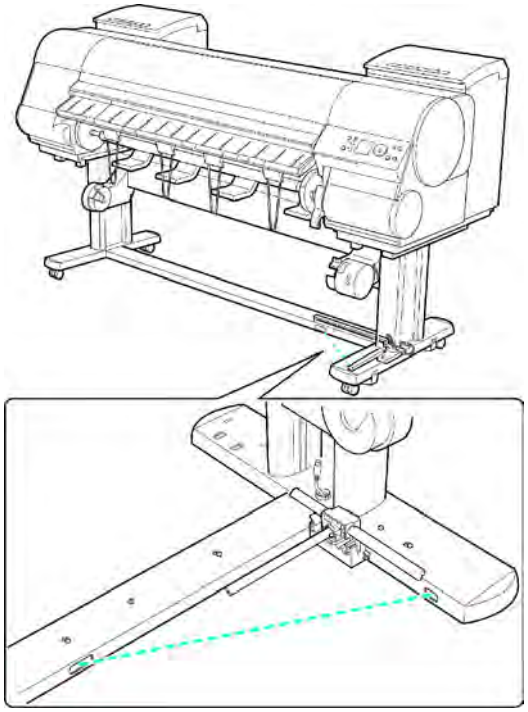
Cause	Corrective Action
The roll paper is warped.	Straighten out curls and reload the roll.

Cannot Load Sheets

Cause	Corrective Action
The paper source selection is incorrect.	Press the **Feeder Selection** button to activate the **Cut Sheet lamp** .

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

The Media Take-up Unit Continues Rotating

Cause	Corrective Action
There is a foreign object in the path of the Media Take-up Sensor (indicated by a dotted line). 	Remove the foreign object from the Media Take-up Sensor path. Arrange the Basket Cloth and Basket Rod so they do not interfere with the Media Take-up Sensor .
The Media Take-up Sensor cord is not connected to the Right Media Take-up Unit correctly.	Reconnect the Media Take-up Sensor cord as follows. 1. Turn the printer off. 2. Disconnect the Media Take-up Sensor cord from the Right Media Take-up Unit and reconnect it firmly, all the way in. 3. Turn the printer on. (→P.230)
	If the Media Take-up Unit continues rotating, contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Ink level detection

Ink level detection will be deactivated if you load ink tanks once emptied.

Ink level detection

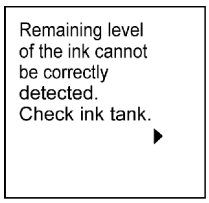
Ink Tanks (→P.678) specified for this printer feature an ink level detection function to prevent the ink from running out during printing, which prevents printer damage.
This function will not work correctly if you use refill ink tanks. As a result, printing stops. Thus, before using refill ink tanks, you must cancel the ink level detection.
Printing with the ink level detection canceled may lead to printer damage and printing problems. Canon Inc. is not liable for any damage that may occur as a result of refilling ink.

Caution

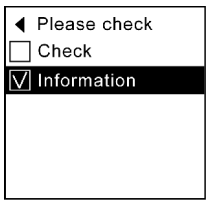
- After ink level detection has been disabled, this function cannot be reactivated for the currently loaded Ink Tank. To use ink level detection again, replace the Ink Tank with a new ink tank specified for use with the printer.
- Repeatedly removing and inserting an Ink Tank may damage the connection between the Ink Tank and the printer, which may cause ink leakage from the Ink Tank and damage the printer.

Disabling Ink Level Detection

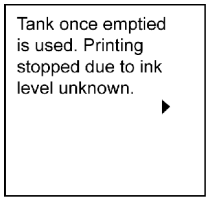
1. On the Display Screen, a message indicates that the ink level cannot be detected.



2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Information**, and then press the **OK** button.



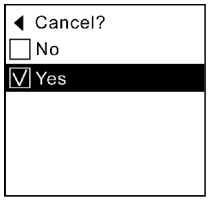
A confirmation message is shown on the Display Screen about disabling ink level detection.



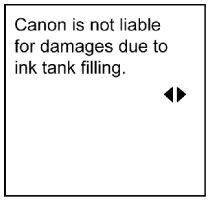
3. Press ► and check the message on the Display Screen.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

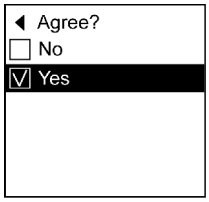
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.



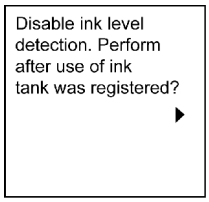
A confirmation message is shown on the Display Screen.



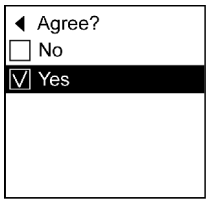
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.



A confirmation message about updating ink information is shown on the Display Screen.



6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.



Ink level detection is now disabled, and the printer goes online.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

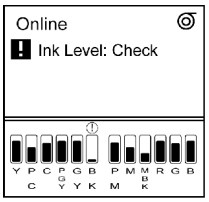
Error Message

Responding to Messages

Responding to Messages

Warning messages

Warning messages are shown on lines 2-4 of the Display Screen.
Although warning messages do not prevent printer operation, you should check the message and take the appropriate action. (→P.766)



Error messages (if action can be taken)

Error messages are indicated on the Display Screen if you must respond before the printer can resume operation.
Check the message and take the appropriate action. (→P.766)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

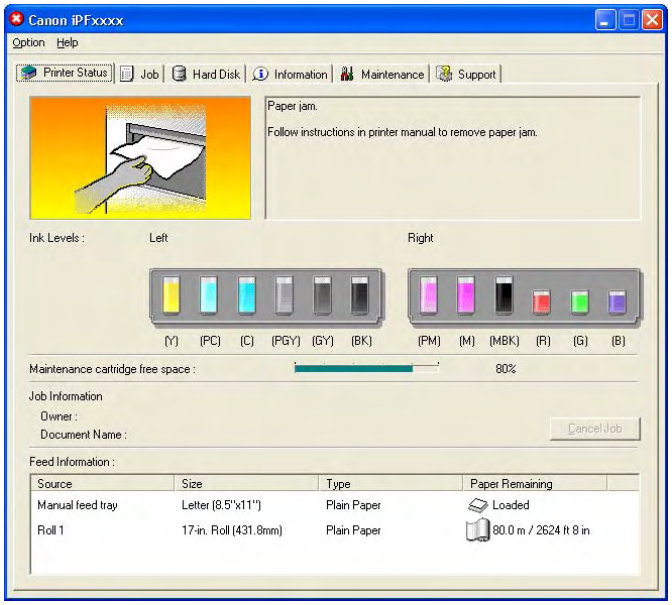
Error messages (if no action can be taken)

In the following situations, turn off the printer and wait at least three seconds before restoring power.
If the message is still displayed, write down the error code and message, turn off the printer, and contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

- The error message is displayed with the following instructions: **Turn off printer, wait, then turn on again.**
- “ERROR” is displayed, followed by the error code and **Call for service.**

Note

- Messages are also displayed in imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows) or **imagePROGRAF Printmonitor** (Macintosh).



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Error Messages

Warning messages

Warning messages are shown on lines 2-4 of the Display Screen.
Although warning messages do not prevent printer operation, you should check the message and take the appropriate action.

- **GARO Wxxxx** (x represents a number) (→P.787)
- **Close Ink Tank Cover** (→P.779)
- **Ink tank is empty. Replace the ink tank.** (→P.778)
- **No ink tank loaded.** (→P.777)
- **Ink Level: Check** (→P.777)
- **End of paper feed.** (→P.774)
- **Prepare for parts replacement.** (→P.788)
- **Parts replacement time has passed.** (→P.788)
- **Problem with Printhead x** (x is L, R, or LR) (→P.783)
- **Mail box full. Now printing without saving data.** (→P.785)
- **Mail box nearly full.** (→P.785)
- **Mail box full. Delete unwanted data** (→P.785)
- **Turn on the media take-up unit.** (→P.776)
- **Prepare for maint cart replacement.** (→P.784)
- **Paper Mismatch** (→P.768)
- **Papr Size Mismatch** (→P.769)
- **Papr Type Mismatch** (→P.768)

Error messages (if action can be taken)

Check the message and take the appropriate action.

- **Ink tank is empty. Press OK and replace ink tank.** (→P.778)
- **Ink insufficient.** (→P.778)
- **Ink tank error.** (→P.779)
- **No ink tank loaded.** (→P.777)
- **Top cover is open.** (→P.787)
- **Sheet printing is selected.** (→P.771)
- **Regular printing is selected, but a roll is loaded.** (→P.771)
- **No sheets.** (→P.770)
- **Carriage Cover is open.** (→P.787)
- **Cannot calibrate.** (→P.781)
- **Insufficient paper for job** (→P.770)
- **Use another paper.** (→P.780)
- **This paper cannot be used.** (→P.769)
- **Cannot print as specified.** (→P.780)
- **Hard disk error.** (→P.786)
- **Cannot adjust band.** (→P.780)
- **Unknown file.** (→P.788)
- **File read error.** (→P.786)
- **Borderless printng not possible.** (→P.772)
- **x printhead error** (x is Left or Right) (→P.783)
- **x printhead needs cleaning.** (x is Left or Right) (→P.782)
- **PHeads: wrong pos.** (→P.782)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

- **Cannot adjust printhead.** (→P.781)
- **Mail box full. Delete unwanted data on your computer to resume printing.** (→P.785)
- **Mail box full. Cannot save.** (→P.785)
- **Rewinding error.** (→P.776)
- **Media take-up unit ready.** (→P.776)
- **Multi-sensor error** (→P.788)
- **Maintenance cartridge full.** (→P.784)
- **Maintenance cartridge problem.** (→P.784)
- **No maintenance cartridge.** (→P.784)
- **No Maintenance Cartridge capacity.** (→P.784)
- **Paper Mismatch** (→P.768)
- **Paper jam.** (→P.774)
- **Paper loaded askew.** (→P.773)
- **Papr Size Mismatch** (→P.769)
- **Paper size not detected.** (→P.774)
- **Papr Type Mismatch** (→P.768)
- **Leading edge detection error.** (→P.774)
- **Cannot feed paper.** (→P.774)
- **Cannot cut paper.** (→P.775)
- **Rel lever is in wrong position.** (→P.775)
- **The roll is empty.** (→P.776)
- **Roll printing is selected.** (→P.771)
- **Roll printing is selected, but sheets are loaded.** (→P.771)

Error messages (if no action can be taken)

- **Hardware error. xxxxxxxx-xxxx** (x represents a letter or number) (→P.788)
- **ERROR Exxx-xxxx** (x represents a letter or number) (→P.787)

Other Messages

These messages do not prevent printer operation. Check the information on the Display Screen and take action as necessary. Messages requiring special attention are as follows:

- **Remaining level of the ink cannot be correctly detected.** (→P.779)
- **Excessive temperature or humidity.** (→P.781)
- **Cannot execute this command. Use other paper.** (→P.780)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Messages regarding paper

Paper Mismatch

Cause	Corrective Action
You printed a test pattern for printer adjustment on several sheets, but sheets of different types or sizes of paper were used.	When printing a test pattern, use sheets of the same type and size of paper.

Papr Type Mismatch

Cause	Corrective Action
The paper type as specified on the printer does not match the type specified in the printer driver.	Make sure the same type of paper is specified on the printer as in the printer driver. (→P.142) (→P.146)
	Follow these steps to ensure the paper type matches on the printer and in the printer driver. 1. Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel printing. 2. Either change the type of paper specified in the printer driver settings or replace the loaded paper and change the paper type setting on the printer.
	Press the **Online** button to resume printing. However, this may cause a paper jam or printing problem.

*Printing will continue if you have set **Detect Mismatch** to **Warning** or **None**.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Papr Size Mismatch

Cause	Corrective Action
The paper size as specified on the printer does not match the size specified in the printer driver.	Adjust the paper size setting in the printer driver to match the size loaded in the printer as follows. 1. Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel printing. 2. Change the paper size setting in the printer driver to the size loaded in the printer and try printing again.
	Replace the loaded paper with paper of a size that matches the size setting in the printer driver as follows. 1. Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel printing. 2. Replace the loaded paper to match the paper size setting in the printer driver and try printing again.
	Press the **Online** button to resume printing. However, this may cause a paper jam or printing problem.

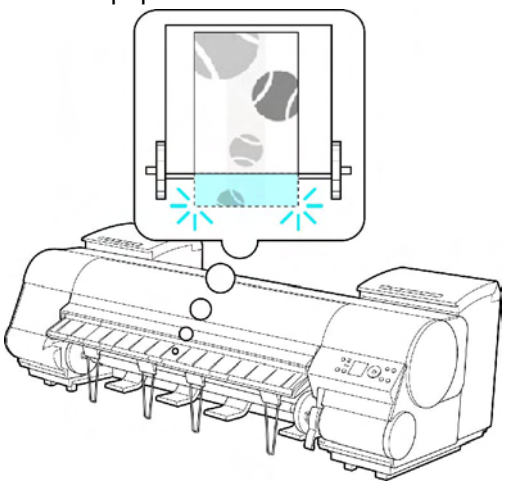
This paper cannot be used.

Check supported paper sizes.

Cause	Corrective Action
The loaded paper is too large for the printer.	Load paper of the correct size. (→P.175)
The loaded paper is too small for the printer.	Load paper of the correct size. (→P.175)
Paper has been loaded that is too small to print the test pattern for printhead adjustment or nozzle checking.	Load unused paper A4/Letter-sized or larger. More than one sheet may be required depending on the adjustment.

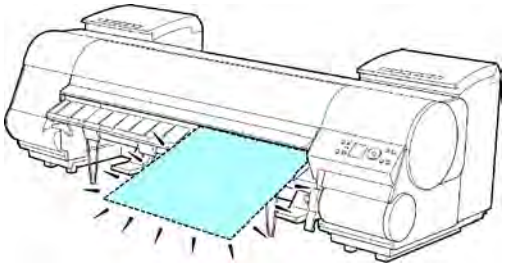
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Insufficient paper for job

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer has received a print job longer than the amount of roll paper left. 	Follow the steps below to replace the roll. 1. Press the **Load/Eject** button and remove the roll. (→P.186) (→P.181) 2. Load a roll with enough paper left. (→P.179) (→P.182) 3. If no barcode was printed on the roll, specify the paper type. (→P.188) 4. Specify the paper length, unless a barcode has been printed on the roll and you have deactivated the automatic detection function of the remaining roll paper. (→P.189)
	Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel printing.
	Press the **Online** button to resume printing. However, the roll paper may run out during the print job and you may not be able to print all of the document.

* When using the Media Take-up Unit, either hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel printing or press the **Online** button to continue printing. However, if you continue printing, the roll paper may run out during the print job and you may not be able to print all of the document.

No sheets.

Cause	Corrective Action
A sheet has not been loaded. Or, paper was removed during feeding. 	Load paper of the type and size you have specified in the printer driver. (→P.212)
	Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel printing.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Regular printing is selected, but a roll is loaded.

Cause	Corrective Action
A print job for printing on sheets was sent when a roll is loaded.	Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel printing.
	Press the **OK** button and remove the roll, and then load a sheet of the paper type and size you have specified in the printer driver. (→P.186) (→P.146)
	Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel printing. Change the printer driver settings to match the roll already loaded and try printing again.
You are using a roll with the Media Take-up Unit , but a print job requiring sheets was sent.	1. Press the **Stop** button for a second to cancel the job involving sheets. 2. Choose **Paper Cutting** in the menu. 3. Press the **Load/Eject** button and remove the roll. 4. Load a sheet and resend the print job.

Roll printing is selected, but sheets are loaded.

Cause	Corrective Action
A print job for rolls was received when a sheet is loaded.	Press the **OK** button and remove the sheet. (→P.216) Load a roll and try printing again. (→P.142)
	Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel printing.

Roll printing is selected.

Cause	Corrective Action
You have attempted to print a test print sheet or other printer status information on a roll, but no roll is loaded.	Load a roll and try printing again.
	To print on a sheet instead, hold the **Stop** button for more than a second to cancel printing, load a sheet, and then print. (→P.146)

Sheet printing is selected.

Cause	Corrective Action
You have attempted to print a test print sheet or other printer status information on a sheet, but no sheet is loaded.	Load a sheet and try printing again.
	To print on a roll instead, hold the **Stop** button for more than a second to cancel printing, load a roll, and then print. (→P.142)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Borderless printng not possible.

Check roll position.

Cause	Corrective Action
The paper is loaded askew.	Press the **Load/Eject** button and reload the paper. Insert the roll firmly until it touches the flange of the Roll Holder . (→P.179) (→P.182)
	If you press the **Online** button and continue printing, the document will be printed with a border.
The paper loaded is not compatible with borderless printing.	Load paper compatible with borderless printing and try printing again. Paper you can use for borderless printing is restricted to particular types of paper and rolls of particular widths. For information on types of paper compatible with borderless printing, refer to the Paper Reference Guide . (→P.169)
Because paper expands or contracts depending on the environment of use, it may become narrower or wider than the supported width for borderless printing.	Use each type of paper only where the recommended environmental conditions are met. For details on environmental conditions for various paper, see the Paper Reference Guide . (→P.169)

Lift the release lever and reload paper.

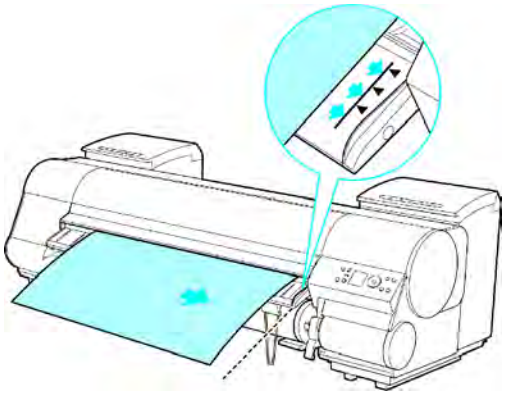
Cause	Corrective Action
Data for a borderless printing job was sent when you are using the Media Take-up Unit , but the paper is loaded crooked.	Lift the Release Lever and reload the paper. Insert the roll firmly until it touches the flange of the Roll Holder . (→P.179)
	If you press the **Online** button and continue printing, the document will be printed with a border.

Check supported paper.

Cause	Corrective Action
The print job received specifies a type or width of paper that is not compatible with borderless printing.	Follow these steps to change the settings of the print job to enable borderless printing. 1. Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel printing. 2. Make sure the correct printer driver for the printer is selected and try printing again. For information on types of paper compatible with borderless printing, refer to the Paper Reference Guide . (→P.169)
	If you press the **Online** button and continue printing, the document will be printed with a border.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Paper loaded askew.

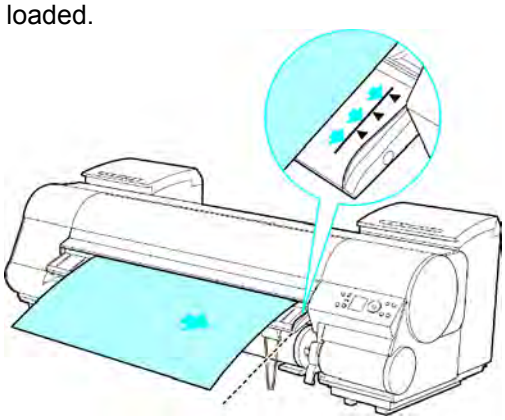
Cause	Corrective Action
Paper has been loaded askew. 	Follow the steps below to reload the roll. 1. Lift the Release Lever . 2. Open the Top Cover . 3. Align the right edge of the roll paper parallel to the Paper Alignment Line . 4. Lower the Release Lever . 5. Close the Top Cover . (→P.182)
	Remove the Roll Holder , insert the roll on the Roll Holder firmly until it reaches the flange, and load the Roll Holder in the printer again. (→P.179)
	Follow the steps below to reload the sheet. 1. Lift the Release Lever . 2. Open the Top Cover . 3. Align the right edge of the sheet parallel to the Paper Alignment Line and the trailing edge of the sheet parallel to the paper alignment line under the Paper Retainer . 4. Lower the Release Lever . 5. Close the Top Cover . (→P.212)

Note

- To disable this message (if it is displayed repeatedly despite reloading paper, for example), choose **Off** or **Loose** in the **Skew Check Lv.** setting of the printer menu. However, this may cause jams as paper may be askew when it is printed. Also, the Platen may become soiled, which may soil the back of the next document when it is printed.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Paper size not detected.

Cause	Corrective Action
Paper has been loaded askew, or warped paper has been loaded. 	Reload paper straight, in the correct position. (→P.182) (→P.212)
	Remove the Roll Holder , insert the roll on the Roll Holder firmly until it reaches the flange, and load the Roll Holder in the printer again. (→P.179)

Leading edge detection error.

Cause	Corrective Action
A roll has been loaded when sheets are selected as the paper source on the Control Panel .	Either remove the roll and load a sheet or select the roll as the media source on the Control Panel .
The sheet is loaded askew.	Reload the sheet straight, in the correct position. (→P.212)

End of paper feed.

Cause	Corrective Action
You are pressing the ▲ button on the Control Panel and trying to rewind the roll to the edge.	Release the ▲ button.
Paper can be retracted only up to 17 mm when using the Media Take-up Unit .	Release the ▲ button.

Cannot feed paper.

Cause	Corrective Action
Paper came out of the feed path during feeding.	Reload the paper correctly and advance it again. (→P.182)
	If the message is displayed when paper is not being advanced, contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Paper jam.

Cause	Corrective Action
A paper jam occurred in the printer during printing.	Lift the Release Lever and remove the jammed paper. (→P.201) (→P.217)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Cannot cut paper.

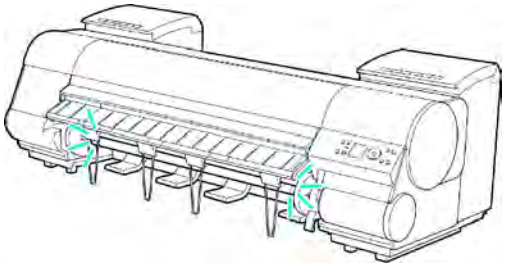
Cause	Corrective Action
There are sheets left on the Ejection Guide .	Remove the paper.
There is a foreign object by the Output Tray , obstructing the Cutter Unit .	Remove the foreign object.
You are not using the printer under the recommended environmental conditions for the paper.	Use the printer only where the recommended environmental conditions for the paper are met. Note that various environmental conditions are recommended for various types of paper. For details on the recommended environmental conditions for paper, see “Types of Paper”. (→P.169)
You are using paper that is not compatible with automatic cutting.	Cut the roll manually. (→P.193)
The Cutter Unit stops in the middle of cutting.	Move the Carriage to the left, remove the paper, and return the Carriage to the right. If the roll cannot be cut using the Cutter Unit , cut the roll manually. (→P.201) (→P.217) (→P.193)
The Cutter Unit is not installed.	Install the Cutter Unit . (→P.705)
In other cases, the Cutter Unit may be damaged.	Contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Rel lever is in wrong position.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Release Lever is up.	Lower the Release Lever .
	If the error occurs again, turn off the printer and wait a while before restoring power.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

The roll is empty.

Cause	Corrective Action
There is no more paper left on the roll. 	Follow the steps below to replace the used roll with a new roll of the same type and size. 1. Remove the roll. (→P.186) (→P.181) 2. Load the new roll. (→P.182) 3. If no barcode was printed on the roll, specify the paper type. (→P.188) 4. If no barcode was printed on the roll, specify the paper length. (→P.189)

Rewinding error.

Cause	Corrective Action
There is some foreign object near the Media Take-up Unit sensor and the roll cannot be detected.	Remove the foreign object near the sensor.
The Media Take-up Unit sensor is soiled and the roll cannot be detected.	Wipe the sensor with a dry cloth to clean it.
The roll is out of range of detection of the Media Take-up Unit sensor.	Reload the roll. (→P.182)
The Media Take-up Unit sensor is damaged.	Contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

* Printing will stop momentarily if an error involving the Media Take-up Unit occurs. If you prefer printing not to stop, set **Skip Take-Up Err** to **On**.

Turn on the media take-up unit.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Media Take-up Unit was off when you selected **Enable** for **Take-up Reel** .	Turn the Media Take-up Unit on.

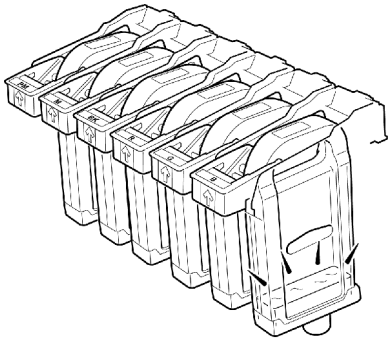
Media take-up unit ready.

Cause	Corrective Action
The **Take-up Reel** setting in the printer **MAIN MENU** was changed from **Enable** to **Disable** , but a print job was received before the roll was removed.	Press the **Stop** button and stop printing. The mode switches from take-up mode to regular mode after you change the **Take-up Reel** setting in the **MAIN MENU** from **Enable** to **Disable** and lift the Release Lever , or after you execute **Paper Cutting** .
	Press the **Online** button to resume printing.

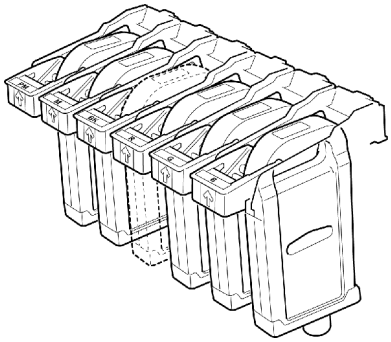
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Messages regarding ink

Ink Level: Check

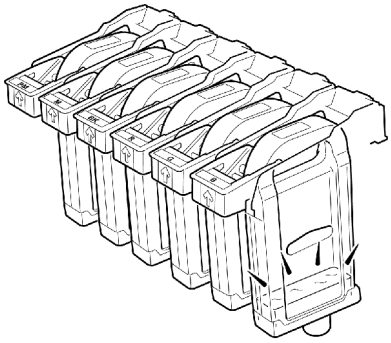
Cause	Corrective Action
Not much ink is left. 	Prepare a new Ink Tank . We recommend replacing the Ink Tank with a new Ink Tank at this point if you plan to print large-format or high-quantity jobs.

No ink tank loaded.

Cause	Corrective Action
There is no Ink Tank of the indicated color in the printer. 	Load or reload the Ink Tank . (→P.680)
There is a problem with the Ink Tank .	Replace it with a new Ink Tank . (→P.680)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

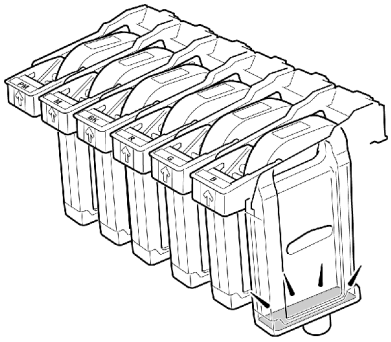
Ink insufficient.

Cause	Corrective Action
The ink level is low, so you cannot print, clean the Printhead , or do other operations that require ink. 	Replace the Ink Tank that is low with a new Ink Tank . (→P.680)

Ink tank is empty. Press OK and replace the ink tank.

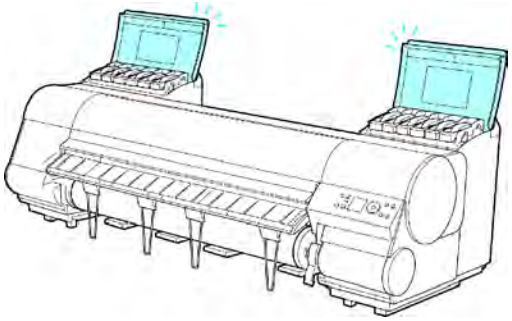
Cause	Corrective Action
There is no ink left.	Open the Ink Tank Cover and replace the Ink Tank for which the Ink Lamp is flashing. (→P.680)

Ink tank is empty. Replace the ink tank.

Cause	Corrective Action
There is no ink left in an ink tank. 	Open the Ink Tank Cover and replace the Ink Tank for which the Ink Lamp is flashing. (→P.680)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Close Ink Tank Cover

Cause	Corrective Action
The Ink Tank Cover is open. 	Close the Ink Tank Cover .

Ink tank error.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Ink Tank in the printer is incompatible.	Load an Ink Tank specified for use with the printer. (→P.680)

Remaining level of the ink cannot be correctly detected.

Cause	Corrective Action
Ink level detection cannot work correctly if you use refill ink tanks.	The refill ink tank can no longer be used. See the section “Ink level detection” and take the appropriate action. (→P.762)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Messages regarding printing or adjusment

Use another paper.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead and feed amount cannot be adjusted when highly transparent film is loaded.	We recommend using a type of paper that you often use, other than film, for Printhead adjustment. (→P.650)
	Adjust the feed amount manually. (→P.658)

Cannot execute this command. Use other paper.

Cause	Corrective Action
The loaded paper cannot be used for color calibration.	Load paper compatible with color calibration.*1 See "Paper Reference Guide ." (→P.169)

*1: Always make sure the loaded paper matches the media type setting on the printer. Adjustment cannot be completed correctly unless the setting value matches the loaded paper.

Cannot print as specified.

Lift the release lever and replace paper with A4/LTR (vertical) or larger

Cause	Corrective Action
The loaded paper is too small.	Switch to paper A4/Letter (vertical) or larger.

Lift the release lever and replace roll with 10 in. wide or larger roll

Cause	Corrective Action
The loaded paper is too small.	Load a roll 10 inches wide or larger.

Cannot adjust band.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Follow the steps below to check the nozzles. 1. Print a test pattern to check the nozzles. (→P.695) 2. Clean the Printhead if the nozzles are clogged. (→P.696)
Highly transparent film is loaded that cannot be used for feed amount adjustment.	Adjust the feed amount manually. (→P.658)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Cannot adjust printhead.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Follow the steps below to check the nozzles. 1. Print a test pattern to check the nozzles. (→P.695) 2. Clean the Printhead if the nozzles are clogged. (→P.696)
Highly transparent film is loaded that cannot be used for Printhead adjustment.	We recommend using a type of paper that you often use, other than film, for Printhead adjustment. (→P.650)

Excessive temperature or humidity.

Cause	Corrective Action
The temperature or humidity where the printer is installed is out of the acceptable range for printer operation.	Press the **Stop** button and stop printing. Use the printer in an environment that meets the requirements for the operating environment. Note that various environmental conditions are also recommended for various types of paper. For details on the recommended environmental conditions for paper, see "Paper Reference Guide ." (→P.169)
	Press the **OK** button and complete color calibration. However, calibration may not be completed successfully.

Cannot calibrate.

Cause	Corrective Action
The paper for printing a test pattern for adjustment is soiled. Otherwise, colored paper is loaded.	Load unused paper compatible with color calibration. (→P.169)
The printed test pattern is faint.	Take steps to remedy the faint printing. (→P.741)
Direct sunlight or strong lighting may be shining on the printer and causing the sensor to malfunction.	Take steps to ensure the printer is not used when exposed to direct sunlight or strong lighting.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Messages regarding printheads

Cannot adjust printhead.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Follow the steps below to check the nozzles. 1. Print a test pattern to check the nozzles. (→P.695) 2. Clean the Printhead if the nozzles are clogged. (→P.696)
Highly transparent film is loaded that cannot be used for Printhead adjustment.	We recommend using a type of paper that you often use, other than film, for Printhead adjustment. (→P.650)

Cannot adjust band.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Follow the steps below to check the nozzles. 1. Print a test pattern to check the nozzles. (→P.695) 2. Clean the Printhead if the nozzles are clogged. (→P.696)
Highly transparent film is loaded that cannot be used for feed amount adjustment.	Adjust the feed amount manually. (→P.658)

x printhead needs cleaning. (x is Left or Right)

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Specify Printhead cleaning options. (→P.696) If the message is still displayed after you execute **Head Cleaning B** two or three times, contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

PHeads: wrong pos.

Cause	Corrective Action
The left Printhead is installed in the right position and vice versa.	Turn off the printer and wait at least three seconds before restoring the power. If the message is displayed again, contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Problem with Printhead x (x is L, R, or LR)

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead nozzles are becoming clogged.	If printing is faint, clean the Printhead . (→P.696)

x printhead error (x is Left or Right)

Cause	Corrective Action
An incompatible Printhead has been installed.	Install a Printhead specified for use with the printer. If “Printhead L” is displayed, install the Printhead L ; if “Printhead R” is displayed, install the Printhead R . (→P.697)
There is a problem with the Printhead .	Open the Top Cover . If the Carriage is over the Platen , replace the Printhead with a new one. If “Printhead L” is displayed, replace the Printhead L ; if “Printhead R” is displayed, replace the Printhead R . (→P.697)
	If, after opening the Top Cover , you see that the Carriage is not over the Platen , follow the steps below. 1. Close the Top Cover and press the **Online** button. 2. If “Printhead L” is displayed, install the Printhead L ; if “Printhead R” is displayed, install the Printhead R . (→P.697)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Messages regarding the maintenance cartridge

No maintenance cartridge.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Maintenance Cartridge is not installed.	Install the Maintenance Cartridge . (→P.708)

Prepare for maint cart replacement.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Maintenance Cartridge is almost full.	You can continue to print, but prepare a new Maintenance Cartridge to use when the message for replacement is displayed.

No Maintenance Cartridge capacity.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Maintenance Cartridge cannot absorb enough ink for Printhead cleaning or other operation.	After confirming that the printer has stopped operating, replace the Maintenance Cartridge . (→P.708)

Maintenance cartridge full.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Maintenance Cartridge is full.	After confirming that the printer has stopped operating, replace the Maintenance Cartridge . (→P.708)

Maintenance cartridge problem.

Cause	Corrective Action
An incompatible or used Maintenance Cartridge has been installed.	Install an unused Maintenance Cartridge specified for use with the printer. (→P.708)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Messages regarding the hard disk

Mail box nearly full.

Cause	Corrective Action
The free hard disk space left for Personal Boxes in the printer's hard disk does not have more than 1 GB, combined.	Delete unneeded jobs stored in Personal Boxes. (→P.109)

Mail box full. Now printing without saving data.

Cause	Corrective Action
No more space is available on the printer's hard disk, so jobs are now printed without saving them. (Print jobs can no longer be saved on the hard disk.)	After printing, this message is cleared.

Mail box full. Cannot save.

Cause	Corrective Action
Saved jobs exceed the Personal Box capacity.	Press the **Stop** button to cancel the print job.
	Delete print jobs from the queue. (→P.115)
	Delete unneeded jobs stored on the hard disk. (→P.109)

Mail box full. Delete unwanted data on your computer to resume printing.

Cause	Corrective Action
There is no more space on the printer's hard disk.	Press the **Stop** button to cancel the print job.
	Delete print jobs from the queue. (→P.115)
	Delete unneeded jobs stored on the hard disk. (→P.109)

Mail box full. Delete unwanted data

Cause	Corrective Action
100 jobs are stored in the Personal Box.	Delete unneeded jobs stored in Personal Boxes. (→P.109)

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Hard disk error.

Cause	Corrective Action
The format of the printer's hard disk is invalid.	Press the **OK** button to start reformatting the hard disk. When formatting is finished, the printer automatically restarts. (Formatting will erase all data on the hard disk.)

File read error.

Cause	Corrective Action
Files on the printer's hard disk have become corrupted.	Restart the printer. Only the corrupted files will be deleted, and the printer will restart.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Other Messages

GARO Wxxxx (x represents a number)

Cause	Corrective Action
There is a problem with the print job.	Try printing again, using the correct printer driver.
	It is also possible to continue printing in this state. However, you may not be able to obtain the desired printing results.

Top cover is open.

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer has detected that the Top Cover is open.	Open the Top Cover fully, remove any foreign objects, and close the Top Cover again.
	If the error occurs again, turn off the printer and wait a while before restoring power.

Carriage Cover is open.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Carriage Cover is open.	Close the Carriage Cover . (→P.697)
	If the error occurs again, turn off the printer and wait a while before restoring power.

ERROR Exxx-xxxx (x represents a letter or number)

In the following situations, turn off the printer and wait at least three seconds before restoring power.
If the message is still displayed, write down the error code and message, turn off the printer, and contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

- “ERROR” is displayed, followed by the error code and **Call for service.**

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Unknown file.

Cause	Corrective Action
Data sent to keep the printer up to date (such as paper information) is in the wrong format.	Check the print job. Turn off the printer and wait a while before restoring power, and then resend the data.
You have uploaded firmware for a different model.	Check the firmware version. Turn off the printer and wait a while before restoring power, and then resend the firmware.
	If the message is displayed again, contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Prepare for parts replacement.

Cause	Corrective Action
It is almost time to replace consumables for which service is required.	If **Parts replacement time has passed.** is displayed, you can continue to use the printer for some time. Contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Parts replacement time has passed.

Cause	Corrective Action
It is past the recommended time to replace consumables for which service is required.	Contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

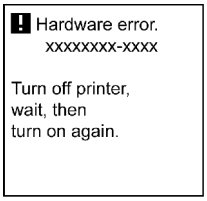
Multi-sensor error

Cause	Corrective Action
Direct sunlight or strong lighting may be shining on the printer and causing the sensor to malfunction.	Take steps to ensure the printer is not used when exposed to direct sunlight or strong lighting.
The performance of a sensor inside the printer may be impaired.	Contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Hardware error. xxxxxxxx-xxxx (x represents a letter or number)

In the following situations, turn off the printer and wait at least three seconds before restoring power. However, keep the printer off and remove the roll if the last portion of roll paper was used during a print job and paper could not be advanced because the trailing edge is taped to the roll. If tape and the Belt Stopper have not been removed from inside the Top Cover, turn off the printer, open the Top Cover, and remove the tape and Belt Stopper before restoring power.
If the message is still displayed, write down the error code and message, turn off the printer, and contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

- The error message is displayed with the following instructions: **Turn off printer, wait, then turn on again.**



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Index

A

A message to check the Maintenance Cartridge is not cleared after you replace the Maintenance Cartridge....759
About This User Manual....1
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Mac OS 9)....603
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Mac OS X)....578
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows)....539, 676
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu (Windows)....206, 541
Additional Settings Pane (Mac OS 9)....595
Additional Settings Pane (Mac OS X)....571
Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver....254
Color Adjustment....254
Color Mode....254
Gray Tone Adjustment....256
Matching....255
Adjusting the feed amount....655
Adjusting the Feed Amount Automatically....655
Adjusting the feed amount during printing....657
Adjusting the Feed Amount Manually....658
Adjusting the feed amount during printing....660
Adjusting the Measurement Scale for Better Accuracy....662
Adjusting the Printhead....650
Adjusting the Printhead Alignment Automatically....650
Adjusting the Printhead Alignment Manually....652
Adjusting the Printhead Height....654
Adjusting the Vacuum Strength....661
An error message is shown on the Display Screen....740

B

Back....9
Banding in different colors occurs....744
Basic Environmental Performance....140
Packaging materials....140
Printer....140
Basic Printing Workflow....142
Borderless Printing....365
Borderless Printing at Actual Size....348, 369
Borderless Printing....348, 369
Borderless Printing Method....348, 369
Print Image with Actual Size....349, 370
Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS 9)....355, 376
Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS X)....352, 373
Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Windows)....350, 371
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width....367
Borderless Printing....367
Borderless Printing Method....367
Scale to fit Roll Paper Width....368
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS 9)....384
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS X)....381
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows)....379
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS 9)....392
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS X)....389
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows)....387
Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size....365
Borderless Printing....365
Borderless Printing Method....365
Fit Media Size....366
Borderless printng not possible.....772
Check roll position.....772
Check supported paper.....772
Lift the release lever and reload paper.....772
By selecting color tones on Charts before printing (Windows)....669

C

Canceling print jobs....162
Canceling Print Jobs from Mac OS 9....166
Canceling background print jobs....166
Canceling foreground print jobs....167
Canceling Print Jobs from Mac OS X....164
Canceling Print Jobs from the Control Panel....162
Canceling Print Jobs from Windows....163

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Cannot adjust band. 780, 782
Cannot adjust printhead. 781, 782
Cannot calibrate. 781
Cannot connect the printer to the network 735
Cannot cut paper. 775
Cannot execute this command. Use other paper. ..780
Cannot feed paper. 774
Cannot Load Sheets....760
Cannot print as specified. 780
Cannot print over a NetWare network 739
Cannot print over a network 735
Cannot print over a TCP/IP network....737
Cannot print over AppleTalk or Bonjour networks ..738
Carriage....11
Carriage Cover is open. 787
Centering originals 443
Checking a List of Saved Jobs 80
Displaying a List of Saved Jobs 80
Printing a List of Saved Jobs....84
Checking for Nozzle Clogging 695
Checking Ink Tank Levels....692
Checking the Free Hard Disk Space 129
Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor 131
Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor 130
Using RemoteUI 129
Using the Control Panel 129
Checking the Layout Before Printing....561
Preview (Macintosh)....561
Checking the Layout Before Printing (Mac OS X) ..562
Checking the Print Quality....694
Checking the Remaining Maintenance Cartridge Capacity 716
Choosing a Paper for Printing 242
If the paper type is not listed for selection....242
Media type....242
Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Mac OS 9) 264
Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Mac OS X)....261
Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Windows) 259
Cleaning Inside the Top Cover 720
Cleaning the Printer....718
Cleaning the Printer Exterior 718
Cleaning the Printhead....696, 723
Cleaning the Printhead....696, 723
Clearing a Jammed Sheet....217, 755
Clearing jammed paper 751
Clearing Jammed Roll Paper 201, 751
Close Ink Tank Cover 779
Color adjustment 664
Color Settings Pane: Color (Mac OS 9) 605
Color Adjustment pane: color 605
Matching pane....607
Object Adjustment dialog box....606
Color Settings Pane: Color (Mac OS X) 579
Color Adjustment pane: color 579
Matching pane....580
Color Settings Pane: Monochrome (Mac OS 9) 608
Color Adjustment pane: monochrome 608
Object Adjustment dialog box....609
Color Settings Pane: Monochrome (Mac OS X)....581
Color Adjustment pane: monochrome 581
Color Settings Sheet: Color (Windows)....543
Color Adjustment : color 543
Light Source Check Tool 548
Matching sheet: Ambient Light Matching Mode (Kyuanos) 547
Matching sheet: Driver Matching Mode....545
Matching sheet: ICC Matching Mode,Driver ICM Mode,and Host ICM Mode 546
Object Adjustment dialog box....544
Color Settings Sheet: Monochrome (Windows) 549
Color Adjustment : monochrome 549
Object Adjustment dialog box....550
Colors in printed images are uneven....745
Configuring NetWare Network Settings....634
Configuring the Communication Mode Manually....736
Configuring the Destination for AppleTalk Network (Macintosh)....640
Activating AppleTalk on the printer 640
Configuring the destination (Mac OS 9) 641
Configuring the destination (Mac OS X)....642
Configuring the Destination for Bonjour Network (Macintosh)....648
Configuring the Destination for TCP/IP Network (Macintosh)....644
Configuring the Destination (Mac OS 9)....644
Configuring the Destination (Mac OS X) 646
Configuring the IP Address on the Printer 615
Configuring the IP Address Using ARP and PING Commands 620
Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility 537, 637
Configuring the IP Address Using the Printer Control Panel 619

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Macintosh) 639
Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Windows) 635
Configuring the Printer's AppleTalk Network Settings 638
Configuring the Printer's NetWare Network Settings 625
Configuring the Printer's TCP/IP Network Settings 617
Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9) 585
Checking a preview of the settings 585
Checking a print preview 586
Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X) 559
Checking a preview of the settings 559
Checking a print preview 560
Confirming Print Settings (Windows) 509
Checking a preview of the settings 509
Checking a print preview 510
Confirming the Print Image Before Printing 551
Conserving roll paper 460
Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins 461
No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper) 461
Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Mac OS 9) 467
Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Mac OS X) 464
Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Windows) 462
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees 460
Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper) 460
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Mac OS 9) 474
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Mac OS X) 471
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Windows) 469
Control Panel 14, 19
Correcting Print Misalignment 650
Cutter Unit 705
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing 487
Automatic Cutting 487
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Mac OS 9) 493
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Mac OS X) 491
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Windows) 490
Cutting the Leading Edge of Roll Paper Automatically 192

D

Deleting Saved Jobs 109
Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor 114
Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor 112
Using RemoteUI 110
Using the Control Panel 109
Detection of the Remaining Roll Paper 191
Device Settings Pane (Mac OS 9) 594
Device Settings Sheet (Windows) 528
Digital Photo Front-Access 538
Disabling the Take-Up Reel Function 231
Documents are printed crooked 748
Documents are printed in monochrome 746

E

Email Notification When Printing is Finished or Errors Occur 624
Enabling the Take-Up Reel Function 231
End of paper feed. 774
Enhanced Printing Options 242
Erasing all data on the printer's hard disk 132
ERROR Exxx-xxxx (x represents a letter or number) 787
Error Message 764
Error Messages 766
Error messages (if action can be taken) 766
Error messages (if no action can be taken) 767
Other Messages 767
Warning messages 766
Excessive temperature or humidity 781

F

Favorites Sheet (Windows) 525
Feeding Roll Paper Manually 190
File read error. 786
Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Mac OS 9) 273
Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Mac OS X) 270
Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Windows) 267
Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Photos (Mac OS 9) 281
Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Photos (Mac OS X) 278
Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Photos (Windows) 276
Finishing Pane (Mac OS 9) 592

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Frequently Asked Questions 731
Front 7

G

GARO Wxxxx (x represents a number) 787
Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing 243
Advanced Settings 243
Color Settings 245
Enhancing Printing Quality 246
Print Priority 243
Print Quality 244
Gray Adjustment Pane (Mac OS 9) 593
Gray Adjustment 593
Gray Adjustment Pane (Mac OS X) 570
Gray Adjustment 570
Gray Adjustment Sheet (Windows) 524
Gray Adjustment 524

H

Handling Paper 168
Handling rolls 178
Handling sheets for paper feed slots 211
Hard Disk 71
Hard disk error. 786
Hardware error. xxxxxxxx-xxxx (x represents a letter or number) 788
How to use this manual 1
HTML Version of the Manual for Printing 3

I

IEEE 1394 (FireWire) Expansion Board 134
If the Printer Makes a Strange Sound 758
Image Edges are Blurred or White Banding Occurs 748
imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility 535
imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh) 576, 601
imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows) 534
Improving the Print Quality 694
Initializing the Network Settings 616
Ink insufficient. 778
Ink level detection 762
Disabling Ink Level Detection 762
Ink level detection 762
Ink Level: Check 777
Ink Tank Cover (Inside) 12
Ink tank error. 779
Ink tank is empty. Press OK and replace the ink tank. 778
Ink tank is empty. Replace the ink tank. 778
Ink Tanks 678
Installation problems 749
Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility 536, 636
Insufficient paper for job 770
Introduction 1

L

Layout Sheet (Windows) 522
Leading edge detection error. 774
Line thickness is not uniform (Windows) 748
Lines are misaligned 746
Loading and Printing on Rolls 142
Loading and Printing on Sheets 146
Loading the Rewind Spool on the Media Take-up Unit 232
Loading the Roll in the Printer 182
Loading the Sheet in the Printer 212

M

Mac OS 9 584
Mac OS X 558
Mail box full. Cannot save. 785
Mail box full. Delete unwanted data 785
Mail box full. Delete unwanted data on your computer to resume printing. 785
Mail box full. Now printing without saving data. 785
Mail box nearly full. 785
Main Menu Operations 30
Accessing Menus 31
Executing menu commands 34
Specifying menu items 32
Specifying numerical values 33
Main Menu Settings 49
Adjust Printer 54
Information 59
Interface Setup 55
Job Management 53
Maintenance 56
Media Menu 50
Paper Details 51
System Setup 57
Main Menu Settings (During Printing) 60
Information 61
Job Mgmt Menu 62

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Main Pane (Mac OS 9) 588
Configuration using Advanced Settings 589
Configuration using Easy Settings 588
Main Pane (Mac OS X) 565
Configuration using Advanced Settings 566
Configuration using Easy Settings 565
Main Sheet (Windows) 516
Configuration using Advanced Settings 518
Configuration using Easy Settings 516
Maintenance 650
Maintenance Cartridge 708
Maintenance cartridge full. 784
Maintenance cartridge problem. 784
Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation 486
Mirror 486
Orientation 486
Rotate 180 degrees 486
Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Mac OS 9) 500
Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Mac OS X) 497
Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Windows) 495
Managing Saved Jobs 91
Displaying details of saved jobs 97
Moving saved jobs 91
Renaming saved jobs 102
Manually Loading Paper to the Position for Printing 150, 220
Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS 9) 210, 610
Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS X) 209, 582
Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Windows) 208, 552
Media Size Options Dialog Box (Windows) 553
Media Take-up Unit 133, 228
Media Take-up Unit (Optional) 17, 229
Media take-up unit ready. 776
Menu Structure 35
Main Menu 35
Main menu during printing 47
Submenus 46
Messages regarding ink 777
Messages regarding paper 768
Messages regarding printheads 782
Messages regarding printing or adjusment 780
Messages regarding the hard disk 785
Messages regarding the maintenance cartridge 784
Modifying Personal Boxes 119
Naming Personal Boxes 124
Setting Passwords for Personal Boxes 119
Modifying the Current Job (Deleting or Preempting Other Jobs) 115
Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor 118
Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor 117
Using RemoteUI 116
Using the Control Panel 116
Multi-sensor error 788

N

Network Environment 613
Network environment 614
System requirements 613
Network Setting 613
Network Setting (Macintosh) 638
Network Setting (Windows) 625
No ink tank loaded. 777
No Maintenance Cartridge capacity. 784
No maintenance cartridge. 784
No sheets. 770

O

Optional accessories 133
Other Maintenance 724
Other Messages 787
Other problems 759
Other useful settings 485
Output Stacker 18, 221

P

Page Setup Pane (Mac OS 9) 590
Page Setup Pane (Mac OS X) 567
Page Setup Sheet (Windows) 520
Paper 168
Paper size 168
Types of paper 168
Paper cannot be cut 760
Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box (Mac OS X) 564
Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box (Windows) 512
Paper is not cut neatly 759
Paper jam. 774
Paper loaded askew. 773

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Paper Mismatch 768
Paper rubs against the Printhead 742
Paper size not detected. 774
Paper Sizes 175
Rolls 175
Sheets 176
Papr Size Mismatch 769
Papr Type Mismatch 768
Parts replacement time has passed. 788
PHeads: wrong pos. 782
Prepare for maint cart replacement. 784
Prepare for parts replacement. 788
Preparing to Transfer the Printer 724
Previewing Images Before Printing (Mac OS 9) 587
Previewing Images Before Printing (Mac OS X) 563
Previewing Images Before Printing (Windows) 511
Print Area 141
Rolls 141
Sheets 141
Print quality and color settings 242
Printed colors are inaccurate 747
Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS 9) 584
Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X) 558
Printer Driver Settings (Windows) 507
Printer Hard Disk Operations 71
Printer Menu Operations 28
Main menu operations during printing 28
Main menu operations when no print job is in progress 28
Submenu operations 29
Printer Modes 21
Menu mode, and state of the Control Panel 25
Mode transition 22
Modes 21
Offline, and state of the Control Panel 24
Online, and state of the Control Panel 23
Submenu mode, and state of the Control Panel 25
Printer parts 7
Printer Specifications 135
Printhead 694
Printheads 694
Printing Adobe RGB Images (Mac OS 9) 598
Printing Adobe RGB Images (Mac OS X) 573
Printing Adobe RGB Images (Windows) 531
Printing at full size 346
Printing at Full Size (Mac OS 9) 363
Printing at Full Size (Mac OS X) 360
Printing at Full Size (Windows) 358
Printing banners or at other non-standard sizes 395
Printing CAD Drawings 476
Printing does not start 734
Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER 316
Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Mac OS X) 319
Completing the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER. 320
Registering a hot folder on your computer 319
Scanning the original and print an nlargement 320
Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Windows) 317, 554
Completing the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER. 318, 555
Registering a hot folder on your computer 317, 554
Scanning the original and print an enlargement 318, 555
Printing enlargements or reductions 313
Printing from Mac OS 9 154
Printing from the application software 155
Selecting the printer 154
Printing from Mac OS X 152
Printing from the application software 153
Registering the printer 152
Printing from Photoshop 488
Using the Plug-in to Print 488
Using the Printer Driver to Print 488
Printing from Windows 151
Printing in Colors Matching the Measured Ambient Light 673
Printing in Ideal Colors for Light in the Viewing Environment 257, 668
By selecting color tones on Charts before printing 257, 668
Printing in Colors Matching the Measured Ambient Light 257, 668
Printing is faint 741
Printing Large Posters (Mac OS 9) 424
Printing Large Posters (Windows) 422
Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS 9) 252, 289, 482
Easy Settings 252
Print Target 252
Print targets for line drawings and text 252
Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS X) 286, 479

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows) 284, 477
Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows, Mac OS X) 251
Easy Settings 251
Print Target 251
Print targets for line drawings and text 251
Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other 417
Free Layout (Windows) 417
imagePROGRAF Free Layout (Macintosh) 418
Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Mac OS X) 428
Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Windows) 426
Printing Multiple Pages Continuously 419
Roll paper (banner) 419
Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Mac OS 9) 433
Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Mac OS X) 431
Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Windows) 430
Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet 420
Page Layout 420
Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Mac OS 9) 440
Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Mac OS X) 437
Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Windows) 435
Printing Office Documents 253
Easy Settings 253
Print Target 253
Print targets for office documents 253
Printing Office Documents (Mac OS 9) 295
Printing Office Documents (Mac OS X) 293
Printing Office Documents (Windows) 291
Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes 396
Registering non-standard paper size in the printer driver 396
Specifying custom media sizes for temporary use 396
Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Mac OS 9) 403
Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Mac OS X) 401
Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Windows) 397
Printing by using Custom Media Size 399
Printing by using Custom Size 397
Printing on Oversized Paper 346
Oversize 346
Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets 149
Paper size 149
Printing options using rolls and sheets 149
Rolls and sheets 149
Printing Originals Centered on Rolls 443
Centering originals relative to roll paper width 443
Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Mac OS 9) 450
Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Mac OS X) 447
Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Windows) 445
Printing Originals Centered on Sheets 444
Centering originals on sheets 444
Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Mac OS 9) 457
Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Mac OS X) 455
Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Windows) 453
Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS 9) 249, 302
Easy Settings 249
Print Target 249
Print targets for photos and images 249
Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS X) 299
Printing Photos and Images (Windows) 297
Printing Photos and Images (Windows, Mac OS X) 247
Easy Settings 247
Print Target 247
Print targets for photos and images 247
Printing Photos in Monochrome 258
Printing Photos in Monochrome (Mac OS 9) 310
Printing Photos in Monochrome (Mac OS X) 307
Printing Photos in Monochrome (Windows) 305
Printing Posters in Sections 421
Page Layout 421
Printing procedure 142
Printing Saved Jobs 85
Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor 90
Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor 88
Using RemoteUI 86
Using the Control Panel 85
Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing) 395
Fit Roll Paper Width 395

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Mac OS 9) 413
Print the banner 415
Register a Custom Media Size 413
Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Mac OS X) 410
Printing the banner 411
Register a Custom Page Size 410
Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Windows) 406
Creating the banner in the application 407
Printing the banner 407
Registering a Custom Media Size 406
Printing With Watermarks 485
Watermark 485
Printing with Watermarks-COPY, FILE COPY, and so on (Mac OS 9) 504
Printing with Watermarks-COPY, FILE COPY, and so on (Windows) 502
Problem with Printhead x (x is L, R, or LR) 783
Problems with the printing quality 741
Problems with the printing quality caused by the type of paper 746
Reducing Dust from Cutting Rolls 197
Regular printing is selected, but a roll is loaded. 771
Rel lever is in wrong position. 775
Remaining level of the ink cannot be correctly detected. 779
Removing a Roll from the Roll Holder 181
Removing Installed Printer Drivers 750
Removing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility (Windows) 750
Removing imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows) 750
Removing printer drivers (Windows) 750
Removing Printer Drivers and imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh) 750

R

Removing Printed Documents from the Media Take-up Unit (Optional) 239
Removing the Roll from the Printer 186
Removing the Sheet 216
Replacing Ink Tanks 680
Access the menu for Ink Tank replacement 681
Compatible Ink Tank 680
How to Replace the Ink Tank 680
Install the Ink Tank (330 ml [11.2 fl oz]) 686
Install the Ink Tank (700 ml [23.7 fl oz]) 689
Make sure the printer is ready for Ink Tank replacement 681
Precautions when handling an Ink Tank 680
Remove the Ink Tank (330 ml [11.2 fl oz]) 682
Remove the Ink Tank (700 ml [23.7 fl oz]) 684
Replacing the Cutter Unit 705
Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge 708
Compatible Maintenance Cartridge 708
Precautions when handling the Maintenance Cartridge 708
Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge 709
Replacing the Shaft Cleaner 713
Replacing the Printhead 697
Compatible Printhead 697
Precautions when handling the Printhead 697
Replacing the Printhead 698
When to replace the Printhead 697
Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value 315
Enlarged/Reduced Printing 315
Scaling 315
Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Mac OS 9) 326
Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Mac OS X) 323
Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Windows) 321
Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width 314
Enlarged/Reduced Printing 314
Fit Roll Paper Width 314
Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS 9) 335
Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS X) 332
Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows) 330
Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size 313
Enlarged/Reduced Printing 313
Fit Media Size 313
Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS 9) 343
Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS X) 340
Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows) 338
Responding to Messages 764
Error messages (if action can be taken) 764
Error messages (if no action can be taken) 765
Warning messages 764
Rewinding error. 776
Roll Holder Set 133, 205

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Roll paper cannot be inserted into the Paper Feed Slot 760
Roll printing is selected, but sheets are loaded. 771
Roll printing is selected. 771

S

Saved Print Jobs 72
Format of saved print jobs 72
Storage destination 73
Saving Print Jobs 74
Using imagePROGRAF Print Plug-in 79
Using the printer driver (Mac OS 9) 78
Using the printer driver (Mac OS X) 76
Using the printer driver (Windows) 74
Selecting the Paper Type (Roll) 188
Selecting the Paper Type (Sheet) 215
Selecting the Roll as the Paper Source 178
Selecting the Sheet as the Paper Source 211
Setting the Roll on the Roll Holder 179
Settings Summaries Dialog Box (Windows) 513
Sheet printing is selected. 771
Software 507
Special Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS 9) 611
Special Settings Dialog Box (Windows) 556
Specifications 135
Hard Disk 139
Ink 137
Interface 136
Paper 138
Printer 135
Printing performance 136
Specifying NetWare Print Services 629
Choosing the type of print services 629
Using NWADMIN or PCONSOLE to set up the print server 630
Specifying NetWare Protocols 632
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver 733
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS 9) 160
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X) 158
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows) 156
Specifying Printer-Related Information 622
Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls 193
Eject (waiting for ink to dry after printing) 194
Manual (when using media that cannot be cut using the Cutter Unit) 195
Paper Cutting (to have the roll cut at your specified position) 196
Specifying the Ink Drying Time for Rolls 198
Mac OS 9 200
Mac OS X 199
Windows 198
Specifying the Paper Length (Roll) 189
Specifying the Printer's Frame Type 627
Specifying the frame type using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility 627
Specifying the frame type using the printer Control Panel 628
Stand 16
Status Print 64
Checking the information in the Status Print report 64
Printing Status Print Reports 64
Stowing the Output Stacker 226
Submenu Display 63
Information of the loaded paper 63
Printer information 63
Remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity and ink levels 63
Support Pane (Mac OS X) 572
Support Sheet (Windows) 527
Switching Modes 26
Switching the Printer Online/Offline 26
Switching to Menu Mode 27

T

The back side of the paper is dirty 744
The contrast becomes uneven during printing 745
The Data lamp on the Control Panel does not light up 734
The Display Screen indicates the system is filling with ink 734
The edges of the paper are dirty 743
The IEEE 1394 Driver Cannot Be Installed Correctly 749
The length of printed images is inaccurate 746
The Media Take-up Unit Continues Rotating 761
The printer consumes a lot of ink 759
The printer does not go on 760
The Printer Does Not Respond Even if Print Jobs are Sent 734
The printer ejects blank, unprinted paper 740
The printer stops during a print job 740
The roll is empty. 776
The surface of the paper is dirty 744

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

This paper cannot be used. 769
Tiling and multiple pages per sheet 417
Top Cover (Inside) 10
Top cover is open. 787
Troubleshooting 731
Turn on the media take-up unit. 776
Turning the Printer On and Off 19
Turning the printer off 20
Turning the printer on 19
Types of Paper 169
Updating paper information 173
Viewing the Paper Reference Guide 170

U

Unknown file. 788
Updating the Firmware 730
Confirming the firmware version 730
Updating the Firmware 730
Use another paper. 780
Using Color Calibration to Adjust Colors 664
Using Favorites 487
Favorites 487
Using Favorites (Mac OS 9) 596
Printing using the favorite 596
Registering a favorite 596
Using Favorites (Mac OS X) 572
Using Favorites (Windows) 514
Printing using the favorite 515
Registering a favorite 514
Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals 489
Edit Using PosterArtist 489
Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals (Windows) 529
Using RemoteUI 623
Using the Media Take-up Unit (Optional) 230
Using the Output Stacker 221
Using the Output Stacker in the position for ejection in the front of the printer 223
Utility Pane (Mac OS X) 569
Utility Sheet (Windows) 526

V

View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Mac OS 9) 612
View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Mac OS X) 583
View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Windows) 557

W

When to Replace Ink Tanks 693
Before print jobs and maintenance that consume a lot of ink 693
If a message for checking the ink is shown on the Display Screen 693
If a message for ink replacement is shown on the Display Screen 693
When to Replace the Maintenance Cartridge 717
If a message for checking the Maintenance Cartridge is shown on the Display Screen 717
If a message for the Maintenance Cartridge replacement is shown on the Display Screen 717
When much of the Maintenance Cartridge capacity is depleted 717
Windows 507

X

x printhead error (x is Left or Right) 783
x printhead needs cleaning. (x is Left or Right) 782

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

©CANON INC. 2007

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals